

ANCIENT EGYPT

VOL. II.

ION ON 1 UNIT) BY
F J HSWOODS AND O NEW STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

HISTORY
OF
ANCIENT EGYPT

BY
GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A.

CHAPMAN & CO. 15, ANGLICAN STREET, LONDON, W.C.
PRINTED BY THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, CAMBRIDGE.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

LONDON
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1881

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XII.

THE CHRONOLOGY

Difficulties of the Subject whence arising Chronological Deficiencies of the Monuments Schemes of Manetho, of Herodotus, of Diodorus, untrustworthy Impossibility of an exact Chronology. Limits of the Uncertainty (1) for the Third Period, or 'New Lampne' (2) for the Second or Hyksos Period (the Middle Ages) (3) for the First or Earliest Period (the 'Old Lampne') Possibility of an instructive History without exact Chronology

CHAPTER XIII.

11. OLD FATHER — THE FIRST THINGS

Uncertainty of the Succession of the Early Kings Official Order,
 determined on the Expulsion of the Shepherd Kings, ~~on the~~
 believed as historical The list, as given by the chief Native
 Authorities Doubts as to the Existence of Manu's Rites
 the same At of a Hindu in the Court of a British
 attaching to Manu's Various Lists of Gods and Characters
 of the Natives in the Notices of the Manu's
 Society and valuable Description of the Egyptian People this
 only one Character of the Art and of the Religion Principles
 of their Life

23

CHAPTER XIV.

I DAVID KING.

[illegible]

CHAPTER XV.

THE SIXTH DYNASTY—CULMINATION AND DECLINE

Marked Division between the Fifth and Sixth Dynasties	Shift of	161
Power to the South	First Evidence of a united Egypt	
Group of four Monarchs—Teta, Pepi (Menna), Meremna, and Nefsekara		
Probable Position of Ati	Reign of Teta	
Reign of Pepi	First great War	
Reflections to which it gives rise	Pepi's Pyramid and Titles	
Position of Una under him	Family of Pepi	
Reign of Meremna	Reign of Nefsekara	
Traditions respecting Nitocris	Sudden Decline of Egypt at the Close of the Sixth Dynasty	
Culmination of the Early Egyptian Art, and Advance of Civilisation under it		17

CHAPTER XVI

THE DYNASTIES BETWEEN THE SIXTH AND THE ELEVENTH

No Monuments left by any Dynasty between the Sixth and the Eleventh, which were, however, separated by an Interval	Disintegration of Egypt—Parallel Kingdoms of Memphis, Heracleopolis, and Thebes	
Causes of the Disintegration and Decline, and probable Length of the Interval	Situation of Thebes. Its Antiquity, Name, and primitive Position	
Rise of Thebes to Independence	Dynasty of the Antefs and Mentuhoteps	
Reign of Sankhkara	Expedition to Punt. Close of the Dynasty	
Features of the Early Theban Civilisation		121

CHAPTER XVII

THE TWELFTH DYNASTY

Period of Disturbance	Accession of Amenemhat I.	his Military Expeditions—his great Works	his Addiction to Field Sports—he associates his Son Usurtasen, and leaves him written 'Instructions'	Reign of Usurtasen I.	his Obelisks—his Temples—his Cushite War	his Chief Officers, Amenemhat and Mentuhotep	his Association of Amenemhat II.	Reign of Amenemhat II.	Reigns of Usurtasen II. and Usurtasen III.	Conquest of Ethiopia, and Construction of Forts at Sennar and Koommeh	Usurtasen III. the Original of the mythic Sesosthis	—Estimate of his Character	Reign of Amenemhat III.	his Throne Name	his great Irrigation Scheme	his Nilometer	his Palace and Pyramid—his other Works	Reigns of Amenemhat IV. and Sabakneferu	a Civilisation of the Period—Arts of Life	Architecture and Glyptic Art	Changes in the Religion	11

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE DYNASTIES ELEVEN, TWELVE, AND THIRTEEN

the Thirteenth (Theban) Dynasty in part contemporary with the Fourteenth (Xel'o) and the Fifteenth and Sixteenth (Shepherd) Dynasties. Decline of Egypt at this period. New and secondary Migrations of the Kings. Permanent Soudic Presence in the Nile Valley. Fictional Invasion of Egypt about by previous Disturbances and Disintegration. 175

CHAPTER XIX.

THE MIDDLE EMPIRE. CONQUEST OF EGYPT BY THE HYKSES

Instability of the Hyksos Conquest. Growing Power of the Tribes to the East of the Delta: the Sakti, the Khari, the Shasu. Temptations offered by Egypt to Invaders. First Lodgments effected in her Territory. Consequent Exile and among the Eastern Tribes. Question of the Nationality of the Hyksos. Circumstances of the Conquest. Character of the Hyksos Rule. Advantages which it conferred on Egypt. Reigns of the Hyksos Kings. Apopis Queen. War with the Sakti. Wars and eventual Expulsion of the Hyksos. Supposed Sympathy of Joseph with Apopis. 181

CHAPTER XX.

THE NEW EMPIRE. EGYPT UNDER THE FOURTEENTH DYNASTY

(ABOUT 1600-1400)

Reign of Aakmes. His Wars with the Hyksos. His Expedition against the South. His Buildings. His Wife, Nebet-hi-Aakmes. Reign of Amenhotep I. Reign of Thutmose I. His Nubia Conquests. His Syrian and Mesopotamian Wars. His Manners. His Rigor. His Thutmose II. Accession of Thutmose I. Buildings and other Monuments. Her Thutmose to Pharaoh. Association of Thutmose III, and Death. Glorious Reign of Thutmose III. His Invasion of Asia. Promises with which he came to contact the Khari, the Zahi, the Khari, the Ra'oi, the Nubia. Reduction of Syria. Success in Mesopotamia. His Planting. Booty carried off. Inscription set up by Thutmose III. His Buildings, Statues, and Obelisks. His Employment of forced Labour. Condemnation of the Israelites under him. His Southern Wars. His supposed Maritime Empire. Summary of his Character. Reign of Amenhotep II. His Wars and Buildings. Reign of Thutmose IV. His Temple to the Sphinx. His Wars. His Lion Hunt. Reign of Amenhotep III. His Wife Tia. Commencement of

the Disk Worship His Wars His Buildings and Statues His Love of Field Sports Personal Appearance and Character Reign of Amen-hotep IV, or Khuenaten His strange Physiognomy. His establishment of the Disk Worship His New Capital His Wars Reigns of Sa-a-nekht, Ai, and Tutankh-anen Restoration of the Old Religion Reign of Hor-en-heb Close of the Dynasty 205

CHAPTER XXI.

THE NINETEENTH DYNASTY (ABOUT B.C. 1400-1280)

Accession of Rameses I His Syrian War Accession of Seti I His Wars with the Shasu, Kinnu, and Khita Peace made with the Khita Timber cut in Lebanon Recovery of Mesopotamia Wars with the Libyans and Ethiopians Seti's great Works His Table of Kings His Personal Appearance His Association of his Son, Rameses Reign of Rameses Meriamon Overestimate formed of him His Wars with the Negroes and Ethiopians with the Hittites—with Nalaim His Treaty of Peace with the Hittites Importance of it He marries a Hittite Princess His later African Wars Large Number of his Captives Plan pursued in locating them then Employment Great Works of Rameses useful and ornamental His Personal Appearance, Domestic Relations, and Character Accession of his Son, Menephthah his troubled Reign Insignificance of his Monuments Pacific Character of his Foreign Policy Sudden Invasion of Egypt by the Libyans and their Allies Proposed Identification of these Allies with European Nations. Repulse of the Libyan Attack Relations of Menephthah with the Israelites and Moses. Troubles of his later years. Struggle between his Son, Seti II, and Amonmes, or Amonmeses Brief Reign of these Monarchs Reign of Siptah Period of Anarchy Division of Egypt under the Eighteenth and Nineteenth Dynasties Architecture and its Kindred Arts Religion Manners and Customs—Literature Drawbacks on the general Prosperity 281

CHAPTER XXII.

THE TWENTIETH DYNASTY (ABOUT B.C. 1280-1100)

Accession of Setnekht his Birth and Parentage doubtful His brief Reign His Tomb Setnekht associates his Son, Rameses Reign of Rameses III His Apollinis His new Arrangement of the Official Classes His Wars with the Shasu with the Libyans with the great Confederacy of the Libu, Suti, Sheklusha, Tushu, Washesh, Puntuti, and Tokamu—with the Mashasha with the Negroes and Ethiopians with the N-

the use of Syria His great Works His Planting His II
 Encouragement of Mining and The Crisis of his
 him His Domestic History His Personal Appearance and
 Character His Tomb Rapid Decline of Egypt under his Death
 its Causes Reigns of Rameses IV, Rameses V, Rameses VI
 and Rameses VII and VIII Reigns of Rameses IX
 and Conclusion of Priestly Theocracy under Rameses X
 and XI Rameses XII The Twenty-second Dynasty
 Reign of Rameses XIII General View of the Period Decline
 of Architecture, Art, and Literature Determined by the
 slight Changes in Civilization and Fabric of Life 103

CHAPTER XXIII

THE TWENTY-THIRD DYNASTY (A.D. 660-340)

Accession of Necho, the first Pharaoh King of Egypt and his
 Reign His Semitic Connection His Titles Personal Appearance,
 and Character Doubtful Reign of Psammetichus I
 Psammetichus II His Son, Merchepus, re-establishes his authority at
 Thebes Uneventful Reign of Merchepus Later Kings of the
 Dynasty General Prevalence of Peace and Prosperity Decline
 of the Dynasty 108

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE TWENTY-SECOND AND CONTIGUOUS DYNASTIES
 (A.D. 660-340)

The Twenty-second Dynasty not Assyrian, but Egyptian Accession
 of Sennacherib His Royal Descent His Alliance with the
 Tenth Dynasty His Reception of the Assyrian King into Palestine
 His Alliance with the Assyrian King His Buildings His two Sons
 Death of the first Son, and Accession of the second
 Osorkon I Peaceful Reign of Osorkon I Reigns of Osorkon II
 and Osorkon III Expulsion of the Assyrian King Reigns
 of Shoshenq II, Taharqa II, Shoshenq III, and Shoshenq IV
 Other Contemporary Kings of Egypt Decline of Art and Literature
 under the Shoshenqs 110

CHAPTER XXV

THE ETHIOPIAN INVASIONS (A.D. 340-350).

Geography of Ethiopia and Connection of the Ethiopians with
 the Egyptians Position and Influence of Nubia Connection of the
 Kings with the Egyptian Pharaohs Sennacherib's Invasion of
 Egypt, and Nature of his Rule over Egypt Revival of the
 Great Civil War and Re-establishment of Pharaoh's Authority

Revolt and Reign of Bocchoris Invasion of Shabak (Sabaco) His Reign His Monuments First Contest between Egypt and the Assyrian Kingdom of the Saigonids Reign of Shabatok Ac- cession of Tahakah. His Connection with Hezekiah His First Assyrian War His Monuments His Second War with the Assyrians His Death Reigns of Rutammon and Miammon Npt End of the Ethiopian Power in Egypt	PAGE 433

CHAPTER XXVI

THE TWENTY-SIXTH DYNASTY (B.C. 600-527).

Depressed State of Egypt at the Close of the Ethiopic Rule Com- munications between Psammeticus I and Gyges of Lydia Battle of Momemphus and Establishment of the Power of Psam- meticus over the whole of Egypt Personal Appearance and supposed <i>Libyan Origin of Psammeticus</i> Settlement of the Greeks at Bubastis Revolt and Secession of the 'Warriors' Other Results of the Greek Influx Psammeticus takes Asidod He buys off the Scyths His Buildings Accession of Nec His two Fleets His Ship canal His Circumnavigation of Africa. His Expedition to Canchemish. Counter expedition of Nebuchad- nezzar Reign of Psammeticus II His War with Ethiopia Reign of Apries His First War with Nebuchadnezzar His Phoenician War His Second Babylonian War and Deposition His Obelisk and Inscriptions Reign of Amasis Condition of Egypt under him He conquers Cyprus and makes alliance with Lydia His great Works His Wives. Short Reign of Psam- meticus III Egypt conquered by Cambyses Civilisation and Art under the Twenty-sixth Dynasty Novelties in Religion Conclusion	PAGE 456

APPENDIX

NOTE A (see p. 9)	PAGE 511
NOTE B (see p. 371)	513
LIST OF AUTHORS AND EDITIONS	519
INDEX	527

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

PLATES.

6 Statues of a Man and his Wife (from Munro's 'Monuments Divers')	79
7 Obelisk of Usutasen I at Heliopolis	118
8 Map of the Fayoum, showing the Birket-el-Kelouf and the ancient Lake Moeris (chiefly from the Chart of M. Linant de Bellefonds)	162
9 The Twin Colossi of Amenophis III (called by the Greeks Memnon)	207

WOODCUTS IN THE TEXT

193 Tomb near the Pyramids (from the 'Description de l'Égypte')	31	20 Ornaments worn by Men (from Lepsius's 'Denkmäler')	85
194 Dog and Antelope (from Lepsius's 'Denkmäler')	37	202 Hats worn by Women (from the same)	86
195 Head of Egyptian Noble early period (from Lepsius's 'Denkmäler')	42	203 Earliest Sandals (from the same)	86
196 Tablet of Seneferu at Wady Magharah (from the same)	47	204 Tablet of Pepi (from the same)	102
197 Tablet of Khufu at Wady Magharah (from the same)	54	205 Second type of Egyptian Dog (from the same)	116
198 Upper portion of Statue of Sais (from the Vicomte de Rougé's 'Recherches')	58	206 Tablet of Menthotep II (from the same)	130
199 Tablet of Sakhmet at Wady Magharah (from Lepsius's 'Denkmäler')	70	207 Dresses worn under the Twelfth Dynasty (from the same)	168
200 Bas-relief of Menkauhor (from the Vicomte de Rougé's 'Recherches')	75	208 Dog resembling a Turrit (from the same)	169
		209 Nefertiti receiving life from Anubis (from the same)	170

	PAGE		PAGE
210 Head of Nefertari Aahmes (Lepsius's 'Denkmaler')	210	231. Tasteful Capital (from the 'Denkmaler' of Lepsius)	355
211. Bust of Amenôphis I (from the same)	212	232 Throne of Egyptian King (from the same)	356
212. Bust of Thothmes I (from the same)	214	233 Ornamental Carving Ethiopian (from the same)	358
213 Head of Thothmes II (from the same)	218	234 Head of Set-nekht (from the same)	366
214. Head of Queen Hatsu (from the same)	219	235 Head of Rameses III. (from the same)	384
215. House on Piles in the Land of Punt (from Du michen's 'Flotte emer agyptischen Konigin')	223	236 Head of Rameses IV (from the same)	388
216 Bust of Thothmes III (from Lepsius's 'Denkmaler')	253	237. Head of Rameses IX (from the same)	394
217 Head of Thothmes IV (from the same)	259	238 Dress of a Noble in the time of Rameses III.	405
218 Head of Queen Mutemua (from the same)	260	239. Dresses of a Noble and his Wife in the time of the Twentieth Dynasty (from the same)	406
219 Head of Queen Ti (from the same)	261	240 Head of Herhor (from the same)	411
220 Head of Amenôphis III (from the same)	270	241 Head of Sheshonk I (from the same)	419
221 Head of Amenôphis IV. (from the same)	272	242 Supposed Head of Reho- boam (from Rosellini's 'Monumenti Storici')	423
222 Head of Horemheb (from the same)	281	243 Head of Osorkon I (from the same)	425
223 Head of Seti I. (from the same)	299	244 Head of Osorkon II (from Lepsius's 'Denkmaler')	427
224. Head of Rameses II (from the same)	323	245 Piankhi receiving the Sub- mission of Namut and others (from Mariette's 'Monuments Divers')	441
225 Head of Menephthah (from the same)	335	246 Head of Shabak or Sabaco (from the 'Denkmaler' of Lepsius)	445
226 Head of Seti II (from the same)	338	247 Head of Shabatok (from the same)	448
227. Peculiar Head-dress of Nefertari-Aahmes (from the same)	352	248 Head of Tnhakah (from Rosellini's 'Monumenti Storici')	454
228 Novel Head-dresses of Kings (from the same)	353		
229 New-style of Sandal (from the same)	354		
230 Varieties of Female Ap- parel (from the same)	354		

249	Head of Mammun-Nut (from Mariette's Monu- ments Divers)	457	252	Bischofs of Psammeti- chus I (from Mariette's 'Monuments Divers') .	501
250	Head of Psammeticus I (drawn by the Author from a bas relief in the British Museum) .	462	253	Curious Ornament, perhaps a charm worn by Men of the Psamatik period (from Lepsius's 'Denkmäler') .	507
251	Capital of Pillar, belonging to the time of the Psam-				

IX^e 13

HISTORY

or

ANCIENT EGYPT.

CHAPTER XII.

THE CHRONOLOGY.

Difficulties of the Subject whence arising Chronological Deficiencies of the Monuments Schemes of Manetho, of Herodotus, of Diodorus, untrustworthy Impossibility of an exact Chronology Limits of the Uncertainty (1) for the Third Period, or 'New Empire,' (2) for the Second or Hyksos Period (the Middle Empire) (3) for the First or Earliest Period (the 'Old Empire'). Possibility of an instructive History, without exact Chronology.

IT is a patent fact, and one that is beginning to obtain general recognition, that the chronological element in the early Egyptian history is in a state of almost hopeless obscurity. Modern critics of the best judgment and the widest knowledge, basing their conclusions on identically the same data, have published to the world views upon the subject which are not only divergent and conflicting, but which differ, in the estimates that are made most extreme, to the extent of above three thousand years! Böckh gives for the year of the accession of Menes (M'na), the supposed first Egyptian king, the

year B.C. 5702, Unger the year B.C. 5613, Mariette Bey and Lenormant B.C. 5004, Brugsch-Bey B.C. 4455, Lauth B.C. 4157, Lepsius B.C. 3852, Bunsen B.C. 3623 or 3059, Mr. Reginald Stuart Poole B.C. 2717, and Sir Gardner Wilkinson B.C. 2691¹. It is as if the best authorities upon Roman history were to tell us, some of them that the Republic was founded in B.C. 508, and others in B.C. 3508. Such extraordinary divergence argues something unique in the conditions of the problem to be solved; and it is the more remarkable, since the materials for the history are abundant, and include sources of the most unimpeachable character. The best of ancient classical historians has left an important monograph on the history of the Egyptians,² a native writer of high position and intelligence³ wrote an elaborate work upon the subject, whereof we possess several extracts and an epitome; and the monuments discovered in the country and recently deciphered contain a mass of historical information more varied, more abundant, and more curious than has been yielded by the researches made in any other of the great seats of early empire.

The chronological value of these various sources of information is, however, in every case slight. The great defect of the monuments is their incompleteness. The Egyptians had no era. They drew out no chronological schemes. They cared for nothing but to know how long each incarnate god, human or bovine, had condescended to tarry upon the earth. They recorded carefully the length of the life of each Apis bull, and

¹ Compare the list given by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 30*, E. T., 1st ed.) with that of the author in his *Origin of Nations*, p. 21.
² Herodotus, book ii.
³ Manetho of Sebennytus, priest of On, or Heliopolis.

the length of the reign¹ of each king; but they neglected to take note of the intervals between one Apis bull and another, and omitted to distinguish the sole reign of a monarch from his joint reign with others. A monarch might occupy the throne ten years in conjunction with his father, thirty-two years alone, and three years in conjunction with his son—in an Egyptian royal list² he will be credited with forty five years, although his first ten years will be assigned also to his father, and his last three to his son. Contemporary dynasties, if accepted as legitimate, will appear in an Egyptian list as consecutive, while dynasties not so accepted, however long they may have reigned, will disappear altogether. Only one calculation of the time which had elapsed between a monarch belonging to one dynasty and one belonging to another has been found in the whole range of Egyptian monumental literature, and in that which is the (apparently) rough estimate of ‘four hundred years’—neither the *terminus a quo* nor the *terminus ad quem* is determined. Generally speaking, the Egyptian monumental lists are not chronological at all; the only one which is so, the Turin papyrus, exists in tattered fragments, the original order of which is uncertain, while the notices of time which it once contained are in many cases lost or obliterated. The latest historian of Egypt says of it: ‘As the case stands at present no mortal man possesses the means of removing the difficulties which are inseparable from the attempt to restore the original list of kings from the fragments of the Turin papyrus. Far too many of

¹ It would seem that a king did not become a god until he ascended the throne

² This is the case with Usutason I, according to Briggsch (*History* vol i p. 120, 1st ed.), who is given in the Turin papyrus forty-five years

the most necessary elements are wanting to fill up the *lacunæ*. . . . It also appears certain that the long series of the kings, which the papyrus once contained, was arranged by the author according to his own ideas and views.¹ It may be added that the chronological element is altogether wanting in the earlier part of the papyrus, while, as the papyrus itself belongs to the time of the eighteenth dynasty, it furnishes no materials at all either for the chronology or the history of the later kingdom. These many and great defects of the Turin papyrus it is quite impossible to supply from any other monumental source. Occasional corrections of the numbers given in the papyrus may be made from the annals of the kings; but there is no possibility of filling up its gaps from the monuments, nor of constructing from them alone anything like a consecutive chronological scheme, either for the Early, the Middle, or even the Later Empire.² The Middle Empire—that of the Hyksos—left no monuments at all; and from the monuments alone no estimate of its duration can be formed. The Early and the Later Empires left important monuments, but not a continuous series of them, and the result is that, even for the last, a monumental chronology is absolutely unattainable.

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 36-7, 1st ed.

² This is confessed by most Egyptologists, though not as yet very clearly apprehended by the general public. Brugsch says: 'It is only from the beginning of the twenty-sixth dynasty that the chronology is founded on data which leave little to be desired as to their exactitude' (*ibid* p. 32*). Bunsen: 'History is not to be elicited from the monuments, not even its framework, chronology'

(*Egypt's Place in Universal History*, vol. i p. 32). Stuart Poole: 'The evidence of the monuments with regard to the chronology is neither full nor explicit' (*Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. i p. 506). Lefort: 'Le plus grand de tous les obstacles à l'établissement d'une chronologie égyptienne régulière, c'est que les Égyptiens eux-mêmes n'ont jamais eu de chronologie' (*Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient*, vol. i p. 322).

Under these circumstances it is scarcely probable that modern historians would have made any attempts to reconstruct the chronology of Ancient Egypt, had not certain schemes on the subject descended to them from their predecessors in the historical field, possessing, or appearing to possess, a certain amount of authority. Herodotus, the earliest of classical inquirers into Egyptian history, laid it down that the monarchy had lasted between eleven and twelve thousand years before its destruction by Cambyses.¹ He partitioned out this time among 347 kings, of whom, however, he mentioned nineteen only by name. Of these one had built Memphis;² another had constructed the Lake Moëris,³ three, who were consecutive, had built the three great pyramids,⁴ another had set up the two chief obelisks at Heliopolis;⁵ and so on. His chronology was very imperfect, and not altogether consistent.⁶ Still, it seemed to furnish an outline; and it contained some important synchronisms, as one with the Trojan war;⁷ and another with Sennacherib.⁸ It professed to have been derived from the Egyptian priests, men especially, 'well skilled in history;' and it represented, according to the writer, not the views of any one school, but those in which the three great sacerdotal colleges of Thebes, Memphis, and Heliopolis were agreed.⁹

Another Greek writer of repute, Diodorus Siculus, while less exact than Herodotus, seemed to furnish

¹ Herod. ii. 100, 142.
² Ibid. § 99.
³ Ibid. § 101.
⁴ Ibid. §§ 124-34.
⁵ Ibid. § 111.
⁶ Moëris, he says, lived 900 years before his time (i. 13). Sabaco 700

(ibid. § 140) yet nine kings intervened, to whom his method of calculation would assign *three* centuries.
⁷ Ibid. §§ F12-20.
⁸ Ibid. § 141.
⁹ Ibid. § 3.

some important additions to his chronological scheme, and some corrections of it; since, while—to speak generally—following in Herodotus's footsteps, he occasionally added a king to the Herodotean list, and also frequently noted that several generations intervened between monarchs whom Herodotus represented as immediately succeeding one the other.

Great vagueness, however, must have characterised any chronology which should have based itself simply on the views and statements of these two authors, and, had it not been for the extant remains of a third writer upon the history of Ancient Egypt, it is scarcely probable that any of the complete chronological schemes, to which we have adverted, would ever have been composed, much less published. It happens, however, that, in the third century before the Christian era, a native Egyptian priest, named Manetho, wrote for the information of the Greeks, then recently settled in Egypt as the dominant race, a history of his country, which was professedly complete and in a certain sense continuous, and which contained a vast number of chronological statements, though not (so far as appears) anything like a definite chronology. Manetho's work was not so much a history of Egypt as a history of the Egyptian kings, whom he divided into thirty dynasties, which he treated of separately, apparently without distinctly marking whether they were contemporaneous or consecutive.¹ Against each king's name was set the

¹ At the commencement of his account of Manetho's dynasties, Eusebius says 'If the quantity of time [covered by these kings] is in excess, we must remember that there were, perhaps, at one and the same time, several kings in Egypt, for we are told that the Thinites and Memphites reigned simultaneously, and likewise the Ethiopians and the Saites, and others also. Moreover, some seem to have reigned in one place, some in another, each dynasty being confined to its own canton, so that the several kings did not rule successively, but differ-

number of years that he reigned, and at the close of each account of a dynasty these years were added together and the total sum given.¹ The imperfection of the method was twofold. Joint reigns were counted as if they had been successive in the summation of the years of a dynasty;² and, contemporary dynasties not being in many cases distinctly marked, the sum total of all the years of the dynasties was greatly in excess of the real period during which the monarchy had lasted. In early times attempts were made to correct the serious chronological errors thus resulting. Eratosthenes reduced the 2,900 years³ of Manetho's 'Old Empire' to 1,076;⁴ and a later writer, probably Panodorus, cut down the 5,000, or more, of the entire thirty dynasties to 3,555;⁵ but it does not appear that either writer possessed trustworthy data for his conclusions, or reached them in any other way than by arbitrary alteration and a free use of conjecture. Scholars of the present day have probably quite as ample materials for criticising Manetho's scheme as either Panodorus or Eratosthenes, but are better aware of, or more ready to acknowledge, their insufficiency for the purpose

ent kings reigned at the same time in different places' (*Chron. Can.* i 20, § 3). The expression, 'we are told' is of special importance as showing that Eusebius did not himself invent the theory of contemporary dynasties in Egypt, but it is unfortunately vague, and does not enable us to determine whether Manetho, or some commentator on his history, whose work Eusebius had read, is referred to.

¹ The sum total does not generally agree with the items, but it is sufficiently near to make it probable that it was arrived at by simple addition.

² See Bunsen's *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 120, 1st ed. Errors of this kind, Dr Bunsen says, make him 'despair of putting together a chronological table of the Old Egyptian Empire.'

³ This is the number produced by adding together the years assigned to the first fourteen of the Manethonian dynasties by Africanus. The Armenian Eusebius raises the number to 3,023.

⁴ See Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. i pp. 119-125.

⁵ Ibid. p. 80. Compare Muller, *Pragm. Hist. Gr.* vol. ii p. 537.

It adds to the difficulty of eliciting a satisfactory chronology from Manetho's work, that we possess it only in epitomes, and that these epitomes are conflicting. Two writers of Christian times, Africanus, probably in the second century, and Eusebius in the fourth, professed to give a synopsis of Manetho's dynasties, with his numbers. The actual work of Africanus is wholly lost; that of Eusebius has come down to us, but only in an Armenian version. While, however, the originals of both were still in existence, they were read by a Byzantine court official, George the Syncellus (ab. B.C. 800), who embodied the main statements of both writers, as he understood them, in his 'Chronography.' This work is extant; and thus we have what are in fact three professed epitomes of Manetho, one by Africanus, and two rival claimants to represent the original epitome of Eusebius—the Armenian translation, and the recension of George the Syncellus. If the numbers in the three epitomes corresponded, we should be tolerably sure that we possessed Manetho's actual views; but they do not correspond—on the contrary, they differ very considerably. The total number of years assigned by Manetho to his thirty dynasties is given, in the Eusebius of the Syncellus, as 4,728; in the Armenian Eusebius as 5,205; in the Africanus of the Syncellus as 5,374.¹ The total assigned to a dynasty is very rarely the same in the three versions,² the difference between the totals sometimes amounting to hundreds of years. The result is that we do not know with any exactness what Manetho's real numbers were;

¹ Results slightly differing from these are given by Bunsen (*Egypt*, vol. i. p. 32). Differences in the MSS and in the statements made by the Syncellus make absolute ac-

curacy impossible.

² In six only out of the thirty dynasties is the number exactly the same in all the three versions.

much less what were his real chronological views, if he had any

Finally, it has to be borne in mind that Manetho's chronological statements, even when fully ascertained by the agreement of all the epitomes, are not unfrequently contradicted by the monuments, and consequently rejected by all modern critics.¹ This occurs even in the later part of the history, where the dates are, as nearly as possible, certain. If Manetho could make mistakes with respect to the reigns of kings who were removed from his time by no more than three centuries, how can he be implicitly trusted with respect to reigns at least twenty centuries earlier?

The entire result is • (1) that Manetho's general scheme, being so differently reported, is in reality unknown to us; (2) that its details, being frequently contradicted by the monuments,² are untrustworthy; and (3) that the method of the scheme, the general principles on which it was constructed, was so faulty, that, even if we had it before us in its entirety, we could derive from it no exact or satisfactory chronology.

Thus the defect of the monuments is not made up to us by the chronological data which are supplied by authors. These latter are copious; but they resolve themselves ultimately into statements made by the Egyptian priests for the satisfaction of the Greeks and Romans upon points on which they felt no interest themselves, and on which their records did not enable

¹ Eg Manetho, according to all the three versions, assigned six years only to Neco, the Pharaoh-Nechoh of Scripture. But an Apis *stela* assigns him sixteen years, and this is regarded as settling the matter.

² It is especially remarkable that

the numbers of the Turin papyrus differ so greatly from Manetho's, showing that the Egyptians had no one definite, generally admitted scheme. As this is a very important point, the details are given in the Appendix (Note A.)

them to give exact information. The Egyptians themselves, it can never be too often repeated, 'had no chronology' ¹ It never occurred to them to consider, or to ask, how long a dynasty had occupied the throne. The kings dated their annals by their regnal years; ² and it is probable that the dates of a king's accession and of his demise were commonly placed on record by the priests of his capital city, so that the entire length of his reign could be known; but no care was taken to distinguish the years of his sole reign from those during which he was associated with his predecessor. Neither were contemporary dynasties distinctly marked, as an ordinary rule. In one case alone did Manetho apparently note that two of the dynasties which he mentioned reigned simultaneously ³ Yet all modern critics, or almost all, believe that several other instances of contemporaneousness occur in his list ⁴ The extent to which the practice of entering contemporaneous or collateral lists in an apparently continuous line has been carried is disputed; and the divergence of the modern chronologies is due principally to the different views which have been taken on this subject. Lenormant makes two out of the thirty dynasties collateral; ⁵ Brugsch, five; ⁶ Bunsen, seven; ⁷ Wilkinson and Stuart

¹ Lenormant, *Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient*, vol. i p. 322

² *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp. 19-21, vol. iv. p. 27; vol. vi pp. 23, 43-44, 63, &c

³ Manetho's seventeenth dynasty consisted of an equal number of Theban and Shepherd kings, whom he represented as reigning side by side during the space of 161 years (*Syncell Chronograph* p. 61)

⁴ Even Lenormant admits that in one part of his work, 'Manethon, pour comble d'obscurité, avait indubitablement (le témoignage des chronographes est formel) admis

dans ses listes des dynasties collatérales, mais qu'en même temps, dans les extraits que nous en avons, aucune indication positive n'indique celles qui furent contemporaines (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient*, vol. i pp. 355-6)

⁵ The eleventh with the ninth and tenth (*ibid* p. 348) and the thirteenth with the fourteenth (p. 358).

⁶ *History of Egypt* (1st ed.), vol. i pp. 107-119, 184, vol. ii. pp. 313-4

⁷ *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii pp. 106, 208, 239; ~~vol. ii~~ pp. 499, 500, 510-12

Poole, twelve.¹ Until some fresh light shall be thrown upon this point by the progress of discovery, the uncertainty attaching to the Egyptian chronology must continue, and for the early period must be an uncertainty, not of centuries, but of *milleuia*.

When the difficulties of Egyptian chronology are stated in this broad way, it may seem at first sight that the entire matter is hopeless, and that historians of Ancient Egypt had best drop out the chronological element from their narratives altogether, and try the experiment of writing history without chronology. But it is not necessary to adopt quite so violent a remedy. The difficulties of the Egyptian chronology are not spread uniformly over the entire period covered by the history; they diminish as we descend the stream of time, and for the period occupied by Manetho's 'New Empire' are not much greater than those which meet us in Assyrian, Phœnician, or Jewish history, where it is the usual practice of historians to grapple with them and reduce them to a *minimum*. We propose, therefore, to endeavour, in the remainder of this chapter, to mark the limits of the uncertainty with respect to each of the three periods into which it has been customary, from the time of Manetho, to divide the history of Ancient Egypt.

I. With respect to the latest period, or that of the New Empire. This period includes the last thirteen dynasties of Manetho, or, if we terminate the history of Ancient Egypt with its conquest by Cambyses and the Persians, it reaches from the beginning of Manetho's eighteenth to the close of his twenty-sixth dynasty, containing thus the history of nine dynasties. These are the eighteenth, nineteenth, and twentieth, Theban ;

¹ See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 338, 3rd edit.

the twenty first, Tanite, the twenty second, Bubastite; the twenty third, Tanite, the twenty fourth, Saite; the twenty fifth, Ethiopian, and the twenty sixth, Saite, like the twenty fourth. The chronology of this last-named dynasty is very nearly exact. Cambyses conquered Egypt in the year B.C. 527.¹ Psamatik III., whom he dethroned, had reigned only six months,² his father, Amasis, forty-four years;³ Apries, the predecessor of Amasis, probably, twenty five years,⁴ Psamatik II, the father of Apries, six years;⁵ Neco, his grandfather, sixteen years; and Psamatik I., the father of Neco, fifty four years⁶—total, 145 years. Thus Psamatik I., the founder of the dynasty, ascended the throne in B.C. 672. His immediate predecessor, Tirhakah, reigned twenty six years,⁷ and we may therefore place his accession in B.C. 698. Thus far the dates are, as nearly as possible, certain. They rest mainly upon Egyptian sources, but are confirmed to a considerable extent by Herodotus, and accord with the Scriptural dates for Pharaoh-Hophra (Apries), Pharaoh Nechoh (Neco), and Tirhakah.⁸

¹ Cambyses died in B.C. 521, having reigned six years in Egypt (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 305, 1st ed.), which he must therefore have conquered in B.C. 527, not in B.C. 525, as generally supposed.

² Herod. iii. 14, ad init. Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* vol. i p. 75, D.

³ Herod. iii. 10. Manetho (according to Africanus) gave the same number, but, according to Eusebius, forty two years only.

⁴ So Herod. ii. 161, and Manetho, according to Eusebius. But, according to Africanus, Manetho's number was nineteen.

⁵ This is proved by one of the Apis stelæ (Mariette, No. 40 Brugsch, vol. ii p. 237, 1st ed.), which also makes certain the six-

teen years of Neco.

⁶ Another of the stelæ (No. 30 of Mariette) determines the reign of Psamatik I. to fifty four years.

⁷ The fifty-four years of Psamatik I. were counted from the end of the twenty-six years of Tirhakah as appears from stela No. 37 of Mariette, which is given also by Brugsch (vol. ii p. 286, 1st ed.). Manetho assigned to Tirhakah only eighteen or twenty years.

⁸ Pharaoh-Hophra appears in Jeremiah as the Egyptian antagonist of Nebuchadnezzar, and as contending with him after the time when Jeremiah was taken into Egypt. This was about B.C. 585, which would be the twelfth year of Apries, according to the numbers in the text. Pharaoh-Nechoh warred

From the date of Tirhakah's accession we are thrown almost wholly upon Manetho. He seems to have ascribed to the two kings, who, with Tirhakah, made up the twenty fifth dynasty, either twenty two or twenty-four years¹—which would bring the accession of the dynasty to B.C. 720 or B.C. 722—a date confirmed by the synchronism of Shabak (Seveh or So) with Hoshea.²

The Saite dynasty preceding this consisted of but one king, Bocchoris, who reigned either six or forty four years³ the uncertainty now beginning to take larger dimensions. His accession may have been as early as B.C. 766, or as late as B.C. 726. To the two dynasties preceding the twenty fourth Manetho assigned a period of 209 years,⁴ which would make the date for the accession of the twenty second (Bubastite) dynasty B.C. 975 or B.C. 935. Now this dynasty was founded by the great king Sheshonk, or Shushak, who received Jeroboam as a fugitive,⁵ and warred with Rehoboam.⁶ It is a remarkable confirmation of the Egyptian numbers that, in the margin of our Bibles, the date for the

with Josiah of Judah, and caused his death in the fourth year before the accession of Nebuchadnezzar, according to the Second Book of Kings, or B.C. 608. Now, according to the above numbers, reigned from B.C. 618 to 602. Tirhakah is in Scripture contemporary with the great expedition of Sennacherib against Hezekiah, which fell in the earlier part of Sennacherib's reign, probably about B.C. 608.

¹ Twenty-two, according to Africanus (Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 74 B) * twenty-four, according to Eusebius (ib. p. 75, B).

² It is generally allowed that the So or Seveh (סו) of 2 Kings xvii 4, represents Shabak, in whose name the *k* is unimportant, being merely the suffixed article (Brugsch,

Hist. of Egypt, vol. ii p. 275 1st ed.) This king was called in to aid him by Hoshea, a short time before the capture of Samaria which was in B.C. 722 or B.C. 721.

³ Six, according to the Manetho of Africanus (Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 74 B) forty-four, according to the same author as reported by Eusebius (ibid p. 75 A).

⁴ So Africanus (ap. Syncell pp. 73 A) and Eusebius, as reported by Eusebius, scarcely come into competition here, since he assigns identically the same number of years (forty-four) to the 22 dynasties in succession—the twenty-third, twenty-fourth and twenty-fifth.

⁵ 1 Kings xi 40.

⁶ Ibid xiv 25, 26, 2 Chron. xii 2, 9.

expedition of Shishak against Rehoboam, calculated from Hebrew and Babylonian sources only, is placed in the year B C 971. This synchronism lends a strength and a support to the Egyptian chronology thus far, from which we may reasonably conclude that we are still upon *terra firma*, and have not entered into cloud land.

To the dynasties intervening between the twenty second and the nineteenth Manetho is said to have given either 265, 302, or 308 years,¹ thus bringing the accession of the twentieth dynasty to B C. 1283 as a *maximum*, or B C. 1200 as a *minimum*. The former of the two dates is, on the whole, preferable.²

The nineteenth dynasty of Manetho held the throne—according to him—either a little more or a little less than 200 years.³ It appears, however, by the monuments, that this number is exaggerated; and moderns are not inclined to allow to the dynasty a longer period than about 160 years,⁴ which would give for its commencement either B C 1360 or B C. 1443.

Yet, greater doubt attaches to the duration of the eighteenth dynasty. Manetho's names and numbers are here in extreme confusion, and are quite irreconcilable with the monuments.⁵ The time which he

¹ Two hundred and sixty five, according to Africanus (Syncell pp 73 4), but 302, according to the Amen Eusebius, and 308, according to the Eusebius of Syncellus (pp 74 5)

² Minimum are generally to be preferred to maximum numbers in the Egyptian lists, on account of the tendency to swell the totals by counting in the entire reigns of kings who were at first associated with their fathers. But the evidence of the monuments at this point tends to show that even the highest estimate of Manetho's numbers is

here insufficient

³ Manetho's total, according to Africanus, was 200 years, according to Eusebius, 194 years (Syncell pp 72 3)

⁴ Wilkinson, in the author's *Memories*, vol. ii pp 364-71, 3rd edit., Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p 314, 1st ed. Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p 321, &c.

⁵ The four kings named Thothmes have but one certain representative in Manetho's list, his Tuthmosis the three or four Amenophis (Amenhoteps) are reduced to two. Horus,

assigned to the dynasty was, according to Eusebius,¹ very nearly three centuries and a half; according to Africanus, a little more than two centuries and a half,² according to Josephus, rather less than that period.³ Moderns vary in their estimates between 180 years and 300,⁴ but incline, on the whole, to about 200. This number, if we accept it, will produce for the accession of this great and glorious dynasty, and the inauguration of the New Empire, the year B.C. 1643, for which, however, Dr. Birch substitutes B.C. 1600, and Dr. Brugsch B.C. 1700.⁵ There are writers who place the date as low as B.C. 1525.⁶ Thus the limits of uncertainty in the 'New Empire' extend, at the utmost, to somewhat less than two centuries.

II With respect to the Middle Empire, or period of the Shepherd kings. The limits of uncertainty are here very much increased. Manetho, according to Africanus,⁷ gave three dynasties of Shepherds, the fifteenth, sixteenth, and seventeenth of his list, who reigned respectively 284, 518, and 151 years, making the entire period one of 953 years. Josephus reduces this total to 511 years,⁸ and the dynasties, apparently,

really the last king of the dynasty, is followed by six or seven others; a 'Chebros' is interpolated between Aahmes and Amunoph I. Manetho's numbers are insufficient for some of the kings, in excess for others. If the dynasty be closed with Ho, the sum total will not amount to 200 years, according to any computation, and according to one that of the Armenian Eusebius will be only 165 years.

¹ Ap. Syncell vol. i p. 73, A. The summation of the reigns is given as 348 years, though the actual sum of the years assigned to the kings is, at the most, 325 years.

² Two hundred and sixty-three years (ap. Syncell pp. 62, 69, 70).

³ Two hundred and forty six years, if we take Rameses I. as heading the nineteenth dynasty (Joseph. *Apion.* § 14).

⁴ Mariette and Lanormant give 241 years (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 321). Brugsch, 300 years (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 314, 1st ed.). Wilkinson, 196 years (Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. ii pp. 352-364), Bunsen, 221 years, &c.

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 78, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, 1 s. c.

⁶ Stuart Poole in Dr. Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible*, ad voc. *EGYPT* (vol. i p. 510).

⁷ Ap. Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 61.

⁸ *Contr. Apion* i § 14.

to two. Eusebius allows only a single Shepherd dynasty, and assigns it no more than 103 years.¹ Thus the various reporters of Manetho differ here enormously, varying between one century and nine centuries and a half.

It happens, however, that in this case the monuments come to our aid. There is one which shows Apepi, or Apophis, to have been the last of the Shepherd kings, and contemporary with a certain Ra-Sekenen,² who immediately preceded Aahmes, the founder of the eighteenth dynasty. There is another which not obscurely intimates that Set or Saïtes was (as Manetho also witnesses³) the first of the Shepherd kings, and also gives his date as 400 years⁴ before some year in the reign of Rameses II. Now the only dynasty of Shepherd kings whose names Manetho gave began with a 'Saïtes' and ended with an 'Apophis,' according to both Africanus⁵ and the Armenian Eusebius; so that there are strong grounds for believing that the rule of the Shepherds really began and ended with this dynasty,⁶ to which Manetho assigned 284 years, according to Africanus, or, according to Josephus, 259 years and ten months. These numbers are probably, both of them, in excess, since the dynasty consisted of only six kings, whose united reigns can scarcely have

¹ *Chron. Can.* i 20, § 5 ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* vol. i p. 62 A. The two agree exactly.

² See *Records of the Past*, vol. viii pp. 3-4. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 230-41, 1st ed.

³ All the reporters of Manetho agree that he made Saïtes (Salatis) the first of the shepherd kings.

⁴ See the 'Tablet of 400 years,' given in the *Records of the Past* vol. iv pp. 35-6 and compare Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 75-6, and 120.

⁵ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* pp. 60-1. It is true that Josephus deranges the names (*Contr. Ap.* l. 3 c.) making Apophis the fourth instead of the sixth king; but Africanus and the Armenian Eusebius together must be taken to outweigh his authority.

⁶ This point has been well argued by Canon Cooke in the *Speaker's Commentary* (vol. i part 1 pp. 447-8). His arguments seem to me quite irresistible.

covered more than two centuries. Such an estimate produces for the accession of Saites the probable date of B.C. 1843, which is between four and five hundred years before the probable year for the accession of Rameses II (about B.C. 1410).

If the four hundred years of the Tanis inscription be regarded as an *exact* number, which is a possible view, the only alterations required in the dates hitherto suggested would be the following. We should have to shorten the periods assigned to the seventeenth and eighteenth dynasties by twenty years each; to make the date for the accession of the eighteenth dynasty B.C. 1623 instead of B.C. 1643; and that for the accession of the seventeenth or Shepherd dynasty c. 1803 instead of 1843. The four hundredth year from the accession of Saites will then fall within the reign of Rameses II.

If the views here propounded be accepted, the additional uncertainty attaching to the dates of the 'Middle Empire,' beyond that which attaches to the earlier part of the 'New Empire,' will be one of some sixty or eighty years only. As, however, there are still writers of repute, who assign to the Shepherd kings a period of above five centuries, practically the additional uncertainty to the unlearned must be admitted to be one of about three centuries. The 'New Empire' commenced its existence not earlier than B.C. 1700, and not later than B.C. 1520; the 'Middle Empire' is thought by some to have commenced as early as B.C. 2400, by others as late as B.C. 1720. The uncertainty has now risen from two centuries to five.

III. With respect to the 'Old Empire,' or native kingdom anterior to the Shepherd invasion. It is in this portion of Egyptian history that the main doubts

and difficulties with respect to the chronology occur, and that the uncertainty changes from one measured by centuries to one of *millennia*. Manetho assigned to his first fourteen dynasties terms of years, which, if the dynasties were in all cases consecutive, would make the whole period covered by them one of 2905 years. Mariette Bey, who scouts altogether the idea of there being any contemporary dynasties in Manetho's list, a little diminishes this amount by corrections of a few of the numbers, and makes the 'Old Empire' occupy a space of 2,790 years¹ Brugsch Bey, who admits, but admits sparingly, the theory of dynasties being contemporary, and substitutes for Manetho's estimates of reigns a calculation by generations,² makes a further deduction of nearly four centuries from Manetho's sum total, and gives the old native kingdom a duration of 2,400 years Baron Bunsen, adopting the 'contemporary' idea to a much larger extent than Brugsch, and accepting a calculation of Eratosthenes by which he supposes the real length of the 'Old Empire' to have been correctly fixed, reduces it to the comparatively moderate term of 1,076 years, giving for its commencement B.C. 3059.³ Lastly, Mr. Stuart Poole and Sir Gardner Wilkinson, by still further carrying out the 'contemporary' theory, effect a further reduction of about four centuries, assigning to the first native king-

¹ See the table given by Lenoir-mant on the authority of Mariette (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 321)

² *Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 33-4, vol. ii pp. 311-15, 1st ed. Calculations founded upon generations are, by the nature of the case, exceedingly uncertain, and become a source of large error, if the ordinary

length of a generation in the time and country for which the calculation is made is improperly estimated. Brugsch allows 33½ years for his Egyptian generations, which is an over estimate of at least one third. A correction of this error would reduce his 2,400 years to 1,600.

³ *Egypt's Place*, vol. v p. 62

dom no longer a period than about six centuries and a half, whereby the commencement of monarchy in Egypt is brought down to about B.C. 2700, or a little later.¹ We have thus for the period of this First Empire an uncertainty extending to above 2,000 years, the maximum term assigned to it by recent writers being 2,790 years, and the minimum 637.

There appear to be at present no means of terminating this controversy. The monuments belonging to the ancient kingdom cluster mainly about four dynasties—the fourth of Manetho, the fifth, the sixth, and the twelfth. A few belong to the eleventh and the thirteenth. There are none which can be positively assigned to kings of the first, second, or third, and thus we have no direct proof of those dynasties having existed. Egyptian monumental history commences with Seneferu,² who seems to correspond to Manetho's Soris, the first king of the fourth dynasty. The fourth and fifth dynasties were certainly consecutive; and the sixth probably followed the fifth. The seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth may have been—probably were—collateral. None of the kings belonging to them have left any monuments; Manetho has not condescended to record their names; and it cannot therefore but be suspected that they were really secondary kings, contemporary with each other, or with the monarchs of the eleventh dynasty, perhaps even with the early monarchs of the twelfth. Again, the fourteenth dynasty is as unknown as the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth, and must be placed in the same category. The monuments thus confirm six only of Manetho's

¹ See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii pp. 340-1, and Dr Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. i p. 508. ² Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 63, 1st ed., Rich *Ancient Egypt* p. 31, DeRougé, *Recherches*, &c. p. 34.

first fourteen dynasties; and from seven to nine centuries would perhaps be a sufficient space to allow to these six

On the other hand, the Egyptian monuments are of such a character that they scarcely ever *prove* any two kings to have been contemporary; and it is therefore quite open for an historian to maintain that all the dynasties are both historical and consecutive, in which case the conclusions of Mariette would be reasonable. The support given by the monuments to some of Manetho's early dynasties being taken to corroborate the whole, and the entire fourteen dynasties being viewed as consecutive, 2,800 years, or an average of 200 to a dynasty, will not be manifestly excessive. It is probable, therefore, that Egyptian chronologists will always be divided into the advocates of a longer and a shorter chronology, the estimate of the former class for the commencement of the monarchy exceeding that of the latter by something like two thousand five hundred years

Exact chronology is, beyond all doubt, a most important adjunct to history; and, where the foreign relations of a state form a main element in its life, and the parallel histories of distinct countries have to be taken into account, exact chronology, or an approach to it, is a necessity for the proper understanding of the course of affairs, and of the bearing which events in one country had upon those in another. But, where a nation is isolated, or where its history at any rate is unmixed with other histories, and flows on in its own separate channel without contact with any neighbouring stream, the need of exact chronology is much less, and a considerable vagueness in the dates may be tol-

rated. It is possible to have a very fair knowledge of the general character of a river of the direction of its course, the hue and quality of its waters, the equableness or variableness of its flow, even of the countries upon its banks—without exact acquaintance, or anything more than a very vague notion, of its length. It is the same with history. If we can obtain a clear knowledge of the condition of a people at different periods, if we can represent the different phases of its life in the order of their occurrence, if we can—to some extent, at any rate perceive and appreciate the causes which produced the various alterations, we may present an instructive picture of them—compose an agreeable and useful history even though we can only conjecture vaguely the length of time during which each condition lasted. It is this which an historian of *early* Egypt must aim at effecting; and if he succeeds in effecting it, he must be satisfied. The chronological riddle is insoluble. He must set it aside. But he needs not therefore to set aside that immense mass of material, possessing the highest interest, which the toils of travellers and explorers, and the patient labours of philologists, have accumulated during the last century. The ‘Old Empire’ of Manetho is a reality. It lives and moves before us in the countless tombs of Ghizeh, Saccarah, and Beni Hassan, on the rocks of Assouan and the Wady Magharah, on the obelisk of Heliopolis, and in numerous ancient papyri; its epochs are well marked; its personages capable in many cases of being exhibited distinctly, its life as clearly portrayed as that of the classical nations. And that life is worth studying. It is the oldest presentation to us of civilised man which

the world contains, being certainly anterior, much of it, to the time of Abraham; ¹ it is given with a fulness and minuteness that are most rare; and it is intrinsically most curious. A picture, therefore, of the Old Empire may well be required of the historian of Ancient Egypt, and will be here attempted, notwithstanding the vagueness of the chronology

For the 'Middle Empire' an approximate chronology will be given. The author is strongly convinced of the shortness of the 'Shepherd' period, and cannot bring himself to assign to it a duration of above two centuries. He regards it as commencing about B.C. 1840 and terminating about B.C. 1640

The dates for the 'New Empire' will be found gradually to advance towards absolute exactness. Its commencement, circ. B.C. 1640, is doubtful to the extent already allowed,² but the uncertainty of the chronology diminishes with each successive dynasty; and when we reach the twenty second, it scarcely exceeds twenty years, since the synchronism of Sesonchis with Rehoboam fixes the commencement of that king's reign to some date between B.C. 975 and B.C. 955. From the accession of Tahakah the chronological difficulties almost disappear, and thenceforth exact dates will take the place of those vague and merely approximate ones which are necessary for the earlier periods

¹ No historian of Egypt places in Egypt as belonging to the time Abraham before the twelfth or the of the eighteenth dynasty
 later part of the eleventh dynasty ² See above, p. 15.
 One (Lepsius) regards his sojourn

CHAPTER XIII

THE OLD EMPIRE—THE FIRST BEGINNINGS

Uncertainty of the Succession of the Early Kings Official Order, determined on after the Expulsion of the Shepherd Kings, not to be viewed as historical The List, as given by the chief Native Authorities. Doubts as to the Existence of Menes Remarks on the Name Athotlis Hehsepi mentioned in the Ritual Distinction attaching to Merihpu Variations in the Lists. General Character of the Names The traditional Notices of the Monarchs scanty and valueless Condition of the Egyptian People at this early time Character of their Art and of their Religion Principal Features of their Life

Ἀνεξέλεγκτα καὶ τὰ πολλὰ ὑπὸ χρόνου αὐτῶν ἀπίστως ἐπὶ τὸ μυθώδες ἐνεπικράει. THUCYD. I. 21

WHEN the great monarchs of native Egyptian blood, who bore sway in Egypt after the expulsion of the 'Shepherd' kings, resolved, for the 'honour of their excellent majesty,' to set forth before the eyes of their subjects the long list of their royal predecessors, and for this purpose ransacked such remains of the 'Old Empire' as had survived the 'shipwreck' of the state brought about by those foreign invaders,¹ they undertook a task for which it may be doubted whether there existed any sufficient materials. Egyptian civilisation had been annihilated by an avalanche of barbarians;²

¹ See Lenormant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 300: 'Nous assistons donc, sous la quinzième et seizième dynasties, à un nouveau naufrage de la civilisation égyptienne.' ² Ibid. p. 303: 'La civilisation égyptienne, d'abord comme anéantie par l'invasion repart ainsi le dessus dans la Thébaïde, &c.'

the whole country had been devastated; tombs had been rifled, papyri burnt or torn to shreds, even the stone monuments partially defaced and injured; how should the succession of kings from father to son during a space of even seven centuries be recovered after so complete an overthrow and destruction of all that had gone before? Royal names, rendered conspicuous by the *cartouches* enclosing them, existed no doubt in large numbers, as they exist to this day, on monuments which had escaped the wear and tear of time and the ravages of the 'Tartars of the South;' ¹ but what clue could there have been to their true order and proper arrangement? what means of discovering the real relationship of the kings who bore them? Egyptian monarchs did not, ordinarily, glorify their predecessors, or even put on record the name of their true father. They merged their earthly in their heavenly parentage, and spoke of Horus, or Ra, or Ammon, or Phthah as their fathers, totally ignoring the real sire from whose loins they had sprung. Private persons, in the inscriptions upon their tombs, might sometimes indicate the succession of two or three monarchs under whom they flourished, but this would be a very partial and incomplete means of arriving at the truth, and it would be altogether wanting for the earliest period ² It would seem that there must have been a large amount of arbitrariness in the order which was assigned to the names recovered from the monuments, as there certainly was in the number of the ancestors which the different monarchs claimed to themselves. ³

¹ See Lenoirant, *Manuel*, vol. 1 p. 362; 'Les Pasteurs dans la Basse-Egypte, comme les *Tartares* en Chine, se laissent,' &c.

found on the tombs of individuals anterior to the times of the fourth dynasty (De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c., pp. 12-36)

² No names of kings have been

³ Thothmes III. exhibits sixty-

Still a certain order, presenting fewer variations than might have been expected, seems to have been arrived at, and to have become, at any rate, the officially recognised one; and this order, though it has no claims to be regarded as historical, must, under existing circumstances, be placed before the reader, both as being the basis on which various 'Histories of Egypt' are built, and as that which is supported by the largest amount of authority. It is not certain that all the kings on the list are real personages, or that some of those who are did not reign contemporaneously; but on the whole there is ground for believing that the great majority of them were kings who actually bore sway in some part of Egypt before the erection of the pyramids; and though the bare names tell us little, and the traditions which belong to them are almost worthless, yet a certain interest attaches even to mere names of so ancient a date, and for the full understanding of the later native kingdom it is important to know what its belief was as to that more ancient monarchy from which it claimed descent, and with which it strove to establish in every way a solidarity and a continuity.

The subjoined is a tabular arrangement of the early Egyptian kings, according to the chief native authorities. It is, in its principal features, based upon the table drawn up by M. de Rougé in his interesting 'Researches,' but embodies corrections which he subsequently made, and a few alterations of names from other sources.

ne of his in the 'Hall of the Ancestors' at Karnak (Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol 1 p 44), Seti I exhibits seventy-even, though living only three gene-

rations later (De Rougé, p 14); while Rameses II, the son of Seti I, exhibits only fifty two (Bunsen, vol 1 pp 50 1).

The Early Kings

Manetho (according to Africanus).	Fragments of the Tiri Papyrus	New Table of Abydos (Set I).	Table of Saccarah (title of Ramesses II.)
Dyn I			
1 Menes	I { Mena	Mena	
2 Athothis	II { . a	Teta	
3 Kenkenes		Atet	
4 Unephe		Ata	
5. Usaphædus	III { . . .	Ilsepti	
6 Meribidus	IV { Meribipen	Meribipu	Meribipen
7 Semempses		Ati?	
8 Bieneches	VI { . buhu	Kabuhu	Kabuhu
Dyn II			
9 Boëthus	V { . bu	Butau	Neterbu
10 Kæechôs		Kakau	Kakau
11. Binotus		Binutei	Binutei
12 Tis		Utnas	Utnas
13 Sêthenes		Senta	Senta
14 Chæies			
15 Nefecheres			Nefekara
16. Sesochus	IX { Nefekara Sokari		Sokari nefekara
17 Cheneies	X { (Ilu)tesa		. . . tosa
Dyn. III			
18 Necherôphes	XI { Beb .	(Teti)	Bebi
19 Toserthus		Nebka	
20 Tyois		Sai sa	Sar
21 Mesochus		Teta	Sar-teta
22 Sôyphis		Setes	
23 Toseriasis		Nefekara	
25 Aches &c	IIuni		Ra-nebka
Dyn IV			
28 Sosis	Seneferu	Seneferu	Seneferu

A few remarks only need be made on these names. In Mena, or M'na, the supposed first king—the Mên of Herodotus,¹ the Menes of Manetho,² and the Menas of Diodorus³—we have probably no real personage,⁴ but a

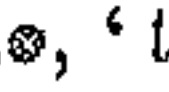
¹ Herod ii 99. Herodotus does not actually give this form; but his dative Mên and his accusative Mênas imply it.

² Ap. Syncell *Chronograph.* vol p 54, B

³ Diod Sic i 45

⁴ Dr Birch says with equal

judgment and force 'Nothing known to have been made at the time of Menes remains; and he must be placed among those founders of monarchies whose personal existence a severe and enlightened criticism doubts or denies' (*Ancient Egypt*, p 25)

heros eponymus, the mythic *establisher* of the kingdom,¹ and founder of the first capital, Memphis. The Egyptian name, which the Greeks made into Memphis, is *Men nofer*,²   , 'the good station,' or 'the good establishment;' and M'na, , is the '*establisher*' or 'founder' of this 'station.' The name has not been discovered on any monument of the Early Empire.³ It first appears in the 'New Table of Abydos,' where it heads the list set up by Seti I., the second king of the nineteenth dynasty;⁴ it is found again in the list of Rameses II. at the Ramesseum,⁵ and appears also on a fragment of the Turin papyrus. But we have no evidence that it was known in Egypt earlier than about B.C. 1440.

Of the kings Teta, , Atet, , and Ata, , there is no other record than the occurrence of their names in the list of Seti I. and some supposed remains of them in the fragments of the Turin papyrus.⁶ The Greeks seem to have expressed all three names by the form *Athôthis*⁷ or *Athôthes*,⁸ which seems like a Grecised form of the god of learning, Thoth. It was perhaps with some reference to this connection that the first *Athôthis* was said to have been a physician and to have written books on anatomy.⁹

¹ Compare the 'Theseus' of Athenian legend, whose name meant 'disposer,' 'founder,' 'law-giver.'

² Brugsch, *Histoire d'Egypte*, p. 31, Buch, in Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. v. p. 585.

³ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 21. 'No contemporary monument is known of his age or inscribed with his name.'

⁴ De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c., p.

17, and pl. 2 at the end of the book.

⁵ Bunsen, *Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 54.

⁶ These remains appear to be so slight as to make it quite uncertain whether the papyrus really contained them (De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c. p. 18, note).

⁷ Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. p. 54, c; p. 55, b.

⁸ Eusebius ap. Eund. p. 91, b.

⁹ Manetho ap. Eund. p. 54, c.

The fifth king in the list of Seti I, who appears also in a fragment of the Turin papyrus, the king Hesepti or Hesept, ~~##~~ ~~##~~ (called Uasaphædus by Manetho), is mentioned in several copies of the 'Ritual,' or 'Book of the Dead,' as the author of two of its most important chapters.¹ He is also mentioned in a papyrus of the date of Rameses II. as a king anterior to Senta.² The context rather implies that he was immediately anterior,³ but the expression used is to some extent doubtful. If admitted to have this meaning, it would show that, as early as Rameses II., there were different traditions as to the succession of the ancient monarchs.

The sixth king, Meribipu, the Micbidus of Manetho,⁴ has the singular honour of being mentioned in the Turin papyrus, in the list of Seti I., and in that of Saccarah, as well as in the catalogues both of Manetho and Eratosthenes. The list of Saccarah places him at the head of the whole series of kings,⁵ as if he had been a monarch of more than common importance. But nothing is recorded of him, either by Manetho or by any other ancient writer, to justify or account for his being held in peculiar honour; no mention is made of him in the 'Ritual,' nor has his name been found on any monument of the Early Empire.

¹ Chs lxiiv and cxxx. See De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c., p. 30, note¹.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 58, 1st ed.

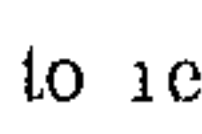
³ The passage runs as follows —

This is the beginning of the collection of receipts for curing leprosy. It was discovered in a very ancient papyrus, enclosed in a writing case, under the feet of the god Anubis,

in the town of Sochem, at the time of the reign of his majesty the defunct king, Hesepti. After his death it was brought to the majesty of the defunct king Senta, on account of its wonderful value (ibid. l. 30).

⁴ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. p. 51, c.

⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c., pl. 1, No. 1.

In the place of the Semempses of Manetho,¹ who is perhaps Eratosthenes Pemphôs,² there appears in the Turin papyrus a name greatly defaced, which M. de Rougé is inclined to read³ as Ati, . The New Table of Abydos has an entirely different representation, the *cartouche* containing only a single hieroglyph, which is the figure of a man standing, and holding in his hand the sceptre of a god.⁴ It is scarcely possible that this single figure can represent the trisyllabic name of Manetho. That name has been identified⁵ with a king, (Ra-hem)-Sementet, who appears in the lists of his ancestors given by Thothmes IV. at Karnak, but is ignored by the Turin papyrus, as well as by Seti I and the author of the list of Saccarah. Here again we have evidence of a variety in the traditions as to the primitive times current under the early dynasties of the New Empire.

Proof of the same is also furnished by the names Butan, , and Teti , in the New Table of Abydos, which are replaced by those of Neter bir  and Bebi  in the list of Saccarah and the Turin papyrus,⁶ as well as by the substitution of Ranebka and Hum in the Saccarah list for Setes and Neferkara in the Abydos one. The supposition that monarchs of this early period bore two names, which De Rougé makes,⁷ is wholly gratuitous, and quite contrary to the

¹ Ap. Syncell l s c.

² Ibid p 96, c

³ *Recherches sur les monuments qu'on peut attribuer aux six premières dynasties*, p 20

⁴ Ibid pl n No 7

⁵ By Bunsen (see his *Egypt*, vol. ii p 61) Dr. Birch appears to

take the same view, when he says (*Ancient Egypt*, p 26) that the name of Semempses 'is found both in the Egyptian and the Greek lists

⁶ De Rougé, *Recherches*, &c, pp 21, 24

⁷ Ibid p 21.

monumental evidence, which shows no double name until Ra-n-user of the fifth dynasty.¹

Of the entire list of names down to Seneferu it is to be observed, that they have an archaic and (as Dr. Brugsch expresses it) a 'plebeian' character² 'They do not at all resemble the Pharaonic names of succeeding epochs'³ Consisting uniformly of a single appellation, encircled by a single elliptical line, or *cartouche*, they are, with few exceptions, short, simple, severe They express moreover, for the most part, ideas of force and terror⁴ Teta, 'he who beats'—Huni, 'he who strikes'—Kakau, 'the chief bull,' literally 'the bull of bulls' Senta, 'the terrible' Into the titles of the later kings the names of divinities, whom they specially worshipped—Ra, Ammon, Thoth, Phthah, Shabak, Hor, Set—usually enter. Among the names of these early monarchs there are but three which are composed with the appellation of a god Neferka-Sokari, , the ninth in the table of Saccarah, whose name occurs also in a fragment of the Turin papyrus, Nefer ka Ra, , the predecessor of Seneferu, according to the New Table of Abydos, and Ranebka, or Nebka Ra , the fourteenth in the Saccarah list, the predecessor of Huni, have a divine element in their names, the first of these names being compounded with the god Sokari, a form of Phthah,⁵ and having the signification of 'perfect through Sokari,' the second meaning 'perfect through Ra,' and the third 'lord through Ra.'

It cannot be said that any facts are really known of these monarchs Tradition made Mena the founder of

¹ That Ra-n-user was also called An will appear in its proper place

² *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 55, 1st ed.

³ Ibid

⁴ Ibid p. 50

⁵ See above, vol. i p. 335

Memphis,¹ and his son Teta the builder of the royal palace in that city, and a writer of anatomical books.² Hesepti, or Hesep, was regarded as the author of some chapters of the religious work known as the 'Book of the Dead'.³ Under Semempses, or Sementet, who was perhaps a king of this period, there was said to have been a great plague.⁴ In the time of Butau (Boéthus) the earth gaped near the city of Babastis, and swallowed up a vast number of persons.⁵ Kakau (Kæcchôs) introduced the worship of the Apis-bull at Memphis, the Mnevis bull at Heliopolis, and the sacred goat at Mendes. Binnuter (Binôthris) made a law that the crown should be allowed to descend to women.⁶ Nefei ka Sokai was a giant;⁷ and under Nefer-ka-Ra (Nephercheres) the Nile flowed with honey for eleven days.⁸ Under Necherôphes (Neoka?) the Libyans, who had revolted, made their submission on account of a sudden increase in the moon's size, which terrified them.⁹ Tosorthrus (Sar sa?) was worshipped after his death as the Egyptian Æsculapius (Aemhept) on account of his medical skill; he paid attention to inscriptions, and was the first to construct buildings with polished stone.¹⁰ •

Such are the traditions which have alone come down to us with respect to these early monarchs. Their value would be but slight, even were they to be depended on: as the case stands, it is difficult to assign them any value at all.¹¹ They come to us, almost

¹ Herod ii 99. Diodorus, however ascribes the foundation to a later king, Uchoreus (i 50).

² Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i p. 54, c.

³ See above, p. 28.

⁴ Manetho, l. s. c.

⁵ Ibid. p. 54, n.

⁶ Ibid.

⁷ Ibid. p. 56, A.

⁸ Ibid. p. 55, A.

⁹ Ibid. p. 56, B.

¹⁰ Ibid.

¹¹ Brugsch says: 'More ends,

without exception, from Manetho, who wrote two thousand years after the time, and who, in his accounts of far more recent reigns, is frequently contradicted by contemporary monuments. No doubt Manetho found these traditions in Egyptian authorities; but his credulity was great,¹ his critical discernment small, his diligence in research less than might have been expected.² To rely on Manetho is to put trust in a writer too negligent to care for truth, and, had he cared, too uncritical to discover it.

It is a relief to turn from the scanty accounts left us of (perhaps) apocryphal kings to the condition of the Egyptian people at this early period. The people certainly existed; and though not very much may be known of their condition, yet an interest attaches to all that is known very greatly beyond that which belongs to kings and dynasties. We propose to consider their condition under the three heads of art, religion, and mode of life, including manners and customs.

The history of Egypt will always be, to a very large extent, a history of art. Art had, so far as we know, its birth and earliest development in the valley of the Nile, and grew up there by a natural and gradual progress, without being affected to an appreciable extent by any extraneous influences. The earliest of the arts to start into being was no doubt architecture; and its first employment, there as elsewhere, was in the

according to the Manethonian writing the information half fable, half true of the first rulers of Egypt. *It teaches us little.* We are still waiting for the door of the chamber of the ancestors of the most ancient kingdom to be opened to us' (*History of Egypt*, vol. 1 p. 62, 1st ed.)

¹ He believed in the Nile flowing with honey in Mena being devoured by a *hippopotamus*, and in a lamb speaking!

² A very small amount of inquiry must have taught Manetho that Neco reigned sixteen and not six years.

construction of habitations capable of affording shelter from the solar rays, and from the occasional, though not very frequent, showers of hail and rain.¹ The earliest of the Egyptian houses seem to have been of wood, which was easier to work than stone, and which was furnished in tolerable plenty by the palm groves. It grew luxuriantly in ancient times, probably along the whole course of the river. Indications of the character of the houses are furnished by some of the most ancient tombs,² which, though constructed in stone, bear traces, like the tombs in Lycia,³ of a pre-existent wooden architecture, which has impressed its forms upon the alien material. The rounded mass of stone which forms the lintel above the doorways of the early tombs⁴ can have derived its shape from nothing but a reminiscence of the unsawn palm stem which served the purpose in the primitive mansions, the long thin pilasters and architraves are clear imitations of woodwork; and the latticed windows, most difficult to construct in stone, are such as would be produced by the simplest possible arrangement of wooden bars. We may gather from the tombs that the early houses were not without ornament. Alternate pilasters and depressions, adorned with a species of paneling, extended (it would seem) along the entire façade of a house; the door was placed in the middle, and was narrow for its height; over the door was a latticed window of a considerable size, which gave light probably to a central hall, while the rooms on either side of the hall were also lighted by windows, which were small, and

¹ See above, vol. i. p. 15.

² Compare the illustrations in vol. i. pp. 84 and 102.

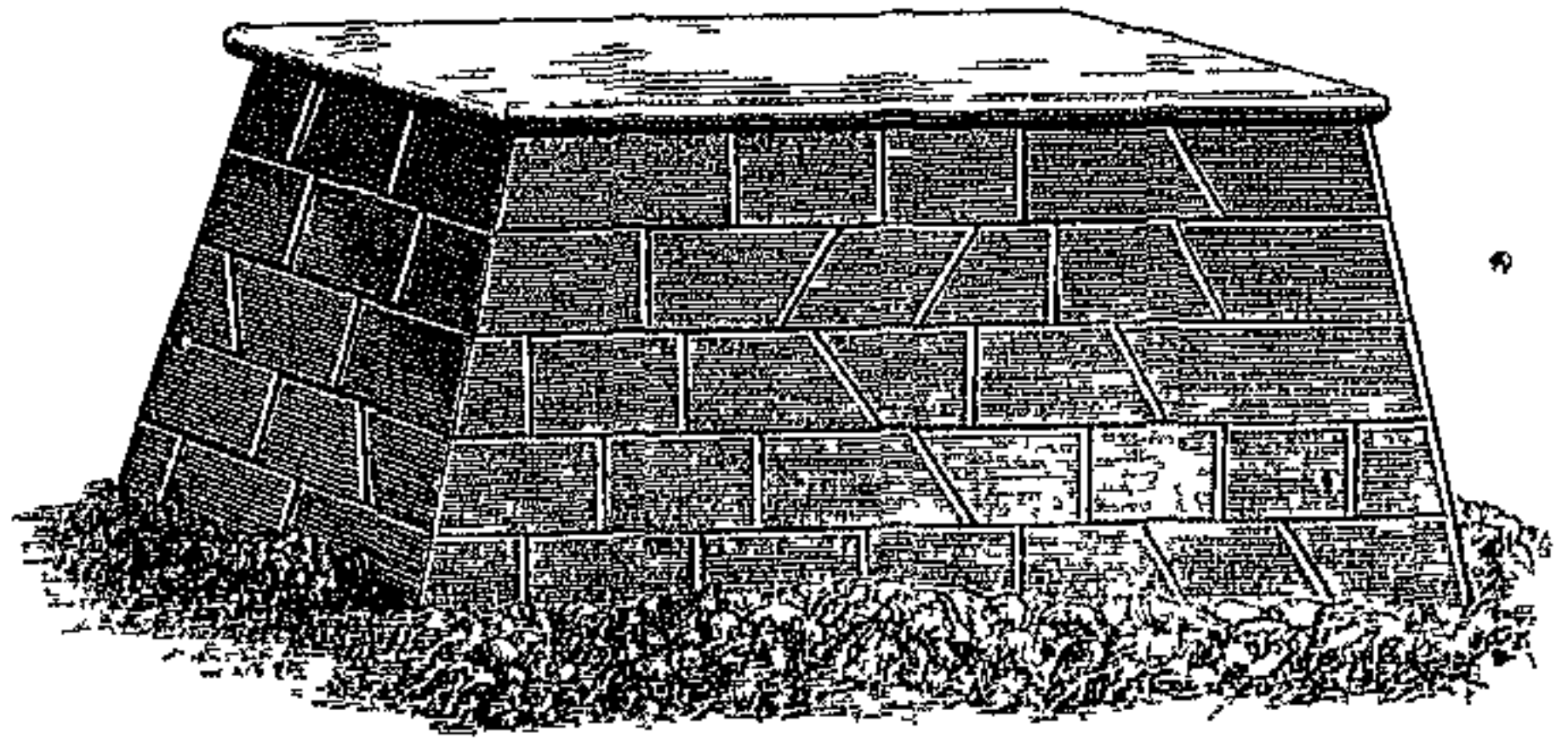
³ Tolls, *Travels in Asia Minor*, pls. opp. pp. 220 and 238. *Lycia*,

pls. opp. pp. 128, 129, 130, &c.

⁴ Well represented by Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt. ii. pls. 3, 8, 18, &c.

placed high up in the walls. The roof would appear to have been flat, and was formed probably by palm trees split in two, and then covered with a coating of mud or cement.

From the idea of a house for the living the Egyptians passed rapidly, and at a date so early that we cannot possibly fix it, to the idea of a house for the dead. Their religious notions required that this last should be as permanent as possible; and it seems certain that, long before houses were built of any other material than wood, stone was carefully quarried and squared to be employed in the construction of the 'eternal abodes' ¹ of the departed. The earliest sepulchres now extant are stone buildings, looking externally like small houses ². They stand isolated, like the monuments in our churchyards, each consisting of an oblong



Tomb near the Pyramids

chamber or chambers, enclosed with massive walls, which slope externally at an angle of 75° or 80° , but internally are perpendicular. A single door, in no way concealed, gives entrance into the interior, and it is in the ornamentation of this doorway that we have the representations of houses in wood. The chamber is

¹ Diod. Sic. i. 51.

² Fergusson, *History of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 102.

roofed over with large flat stones; and, if it exceeds a certain size, the roof is supported internally by a massive square stone pier. In this simple and primitive construction we have the germ of the pyramid, which grew up out of it by a number of slight changes.

One of these changes belongs, by general consent,¹ to the period of which we are speaking. In the 'tower' or 'pyramid of Meydoun'² we see an enlarged edition of one of these early tombs, differing from them in greatly increased size and solidity, as well as in the novel feature of superimposed stories in a retreating series, the entire number of the stories being three. The Meydoun pile has a grandeur of its own. Emplaced upon an isolated rocky knoll of some considerable height, and standing in the middle of the grassy plain, 'which, green as an emerald, stretches eastward to the holy stream,'³ it has a proud and imposing appearance, and in almost any other country than Egypt would be considered a monument of high architectural importance. The base measures 200 feet each way, and the height of the edifice is little short of 125 feet. The solid contents amount to nearly three millions of cubic feet.

The great 'pyramid of Saccarah,' as it is called, which is also thought to belong to these early times,⁴ shows a further advance in architectural skill and power on the part of the primitive builders. Take the Meydoun building, it was a tower in stages—the number of the stages being six—and, as in the Meydoun

¹ See Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 29. Bugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 66, 1st ed.; Leigueson *History of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 160.

² See above vol. i. p. 184, note³, and for a representation of the 'tower,' or 'pyramid,' see p. 185.

³ Bugsch, *l. c.*

⁴ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 332. Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 25; Bunson, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 380; Bugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 69, 1st ed.

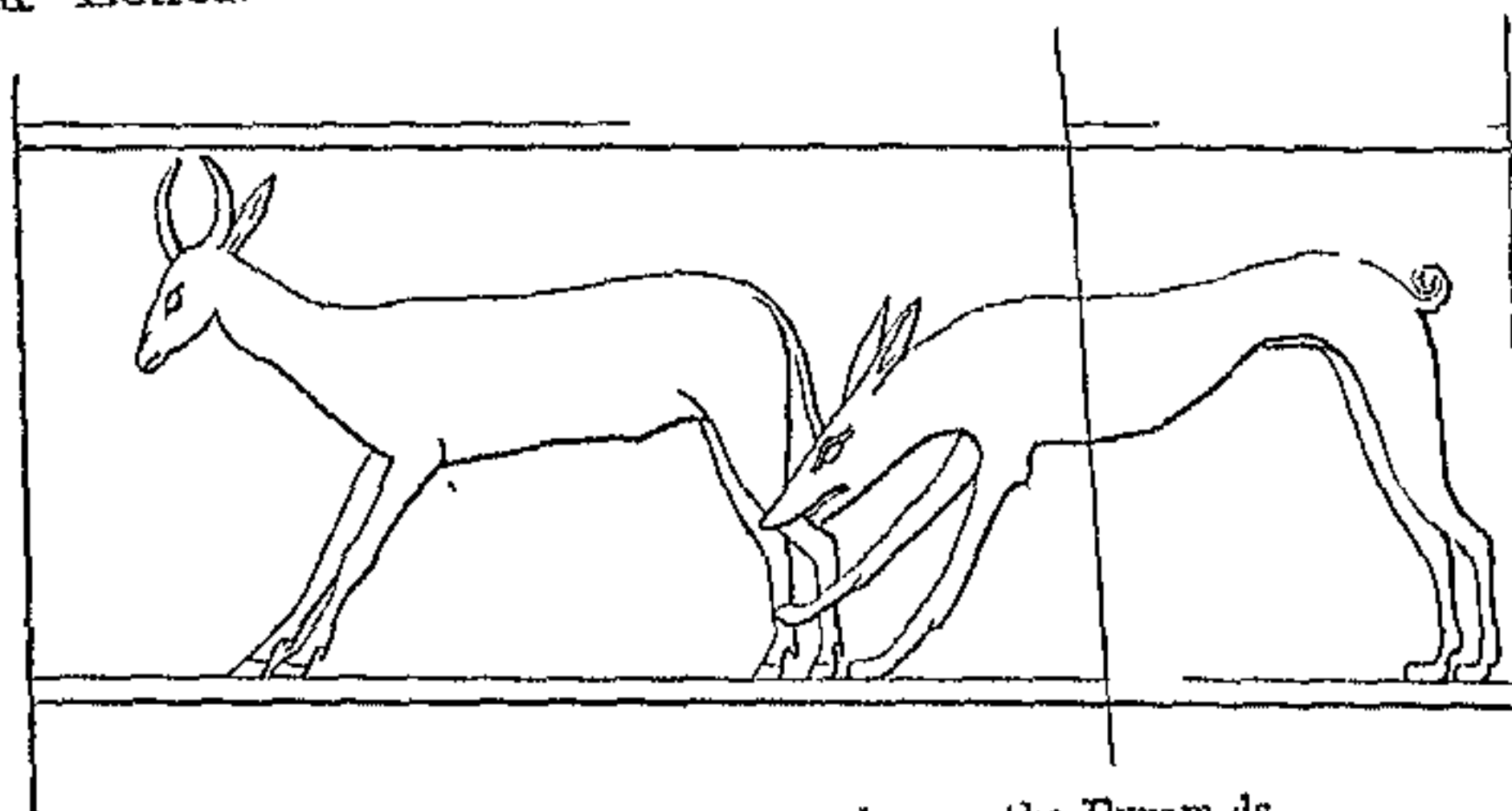
building, the external walls sloped inwards at a slight angle. This edifice is even more imposing than that of Meydoun,¹ since it rises to a height of nearly 200 feet, and covers an area of 135,000 square feet, instead of one of only 40,000. It is emplaced upon a rocky plateau, which has an elevation of nearly a hundred feet above the Nile valley, and is a conspicuous object on all sides.

Such, so far as appears, was the furthest point to which architectural skill was carried by the Egyptians of these early days. They did not erect a true pyramid. They did not venture to build in perpendicular stages. They did not give to their work the minute care and finish of later times.² Their loftiest creations were less than half the height of those designed and executed subsequently. Gently, tentatively, the builders advanced from the small to the great, always aiming at solidity and permanence, comparatively careless of ornamentation, and looking to obtain the impressive effect, at which they aimed, by size and massiveness rather than by elegance or beauty.

Glyptic art was also known, and practised within certain limits, at this early period. The most ancient tombs are adorned internally with the sculptured forms of the owner, his wife, his children, his attendants, represented in the low relief peculiar to Egypt. These forms have all the ordinary defects of Egyptian drawing—the hard outline, the stiff limbs, the ill made hands, the over long feet—but are not greatly inferior even to those of the best epoch. There is a more marked inferiority in the representations of animals, which are not only stiff but ungainly, not only conven-

¹ For a representation see above—measurements see p. 186
vol. i. p. 187, and for the exact ² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, 1 s. c.

tional but absurd¹ Grouping seems to be an unknown idea; each figure stands by itself, or is followed by its counterpart, the same form being repeated as often as is requisite in order to fill up vacant spaces on the walls of the sepulchral chambers. Sculpture 'in the round' was also attempted by the primitive artists; and five or six statues exist which the best Egyptologists assign to a time anterior to that of the Pyramids² Of these M. Lenormant remarks that, 'on studying them, we ob-



• Dog and antelope from a tomb near the Pyramids.

serve a rudeness and indecision of style, which make it clear that at this period Egyptian art was still trying to find the right path, and had not yet formed itself fully.'³

A single mosaic, supposed to be of the same early date, tends to raise the art of the time to a higher level. Brugsch says of it: 'The double picture, a little smaller than the natural size, shows a man and his wife in a dignified attitude sitting by the side of one another in a chair of the form of a die. The bril-

¹ See the tomb of Amen, whence the above illustration is taken (Lepsius *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt. ii pl. 6.)
² Three of Sepsa and his sons, discovered near the Pyramids and now in the Museum of the Louvre, two others, 'with a European cast of features,' found at Meidum, and forming a part of the same collection and a statue of Amen in the Museum of Boulaq (See Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 30.)
³ *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 333.

liancy of the eye—imitated in shining crystal and white ivory and dark ore in a masterly manner—has all the appearance of life’ On the whole, he accounts the work ‘a marvel of art, venerable from its antiquity, and exquisite in its workmanship.’¹

With respect to the religion of this period, the evidence that we possess is rather negative than positive. The twenty six names of kings supposed to belong to it reveal the worship of two gods only, Ra, and Phthah, or Sokari. The name of a functionary, Thoth hotep,² reveals the worship of Thoth. With regard to the other gods we have no monumental evidence to show whether at this time they were worshipped or no.³ Certainly, temples of any pretension were not erected, or we should have some remains of them. The oldest existing Egyptian temple belongs to the reign of Chephren⁴ (Shafra), the builder of the Second Pyramid; and, though the classical writers ascribe temples to earlier monarchs,⁵ and several certainly existed in Khufu’s time,⁶ yet their fabric must have been slight, and the religion which consisted in the public worship of gods must have been secondary. No doubt Phthah, Ra, and Thoth—possibly Osiris, Isis, Athor, Horus, and Set⁷—received some worship, and there *may* have

¹ *History of Egypt*, vol i p 66, 1st ed.

² Lenormant, lsc, Buch, lsc

³ Anubis is mentioned as a god of the early times by a writer of the age of Rameses II (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p. 58, 1st ed.)

⁴ For a description of this temple, see vol i pp. 215 16

⁵ Herod ii. 99, Diod Sic i 45, 46, &c

⁶ An inscription given by M de Rougé in his *Recherches* (pp 46 9) attributes to Khufu the erection of

a temple to Isis, and speaks of temples of Osiris and of the Sphinx, who is identified with Horus (Harmachis), as previously existing

⁷ Athor (identified with Isis) is mentioned as having a temple in the same inscription (p 47) Horus and Set are mentioned as objects of veneration to Khufu’s mother. The religious practice of the primitive times is not *proved* by these texts, but is not likely to have been very different

been buildings dedicated to them as early as there was monarchy in Egypt ; but the real practical religion of the primitive period was that worship of ancestors, whereof we have spoken in the previous volume ¹ as an important portion of Egyptian religious practice. The sepulchral chambers above described were the true temples of the period, here the worshippers met from time to time for sacred ceremonies ; here hymns were sung, offerings made, and services conducted, from which both the dead and the living were expected to derive advantage. The worshippers regarded their sacrifices, libations, and offerings as contributing to the happiness of the departed, and looked to receive from them in return spiritual, or perhaps even temporal, benefits. They viewed their ancestors as still living, and as interested in the condition and prospects of their descendants ; they regarded them as invested with a quasi divinity, probably addressed their prayers to them, and, like the Chinese, appealed to them for help and protection.

Hence it would seem that from the first there lay at the root of the Egyptian religion the belief in a future life, and of happiness or misery beyond the grave. Embalming was practised long before the construction of the Pyramids, and mummies were deposited in stone sarcophagi, with a view to their continued preservation ². The 'Ritual of the Dead' had, we are told, its origin in these times, ³ and, whatever subsequent refinements may have been introduced, it would seem to be certain that the fundamental conceptions of the continuance of the soul after death, its passage through the Lower World, and its ultimate reunion

¹ See vol. 1 pp 423-4

² Birch, *Guide to British Mus.* — ³ See above, p. 28.

— *scum*, p. 54.

with the body which it once inhabited, must have been entertained by large numbers from the very first beginnings of the nation. Whence these doctrines were derived, who shall say? There is no human name which stands in the history of Egyptian opinion where the name of Zoroaster stands in Persia, or that of Moses in the history of the Jews. The composition of the 'Book of the Dead' was ascribed, in the main, to the gods.¹ How it happened that in Egyptian thought the future life occupied so large a space, and was felt to be so real and so substantial, while among the Hebrews and the other Semites it remained, even after contact with Egypt, so vague and shadowy, is a mystery which it is impossible to penetrate. We can only say that so it was; that, from a time anterior to Joseph, or even Abraham, the children of Mizraim, in their bright and fertile land on either side of the strong flowing Nile, thought as much of the future life as of the present; that their religious ideas clustered rather about the tomb than about the temple; and that their worship, domestic rather than national, though it included among its objects some beings regarded as wholly divine, was directed especially towards the spirits of those who had been their 'fathers in the flesh,' and were thought to have a natural interest in the welfare of persons sprung from their loins.

There was another worship, also of a practical character, which belongs almost certainly to this early period—the worship of the reigning monarch. Each king was regarded as an incarnation of Horus,² was

¹ Compare vol. i p. 186

² Seneferu, the earliest king of
whom we possess any monument,
calls himself 'the crowned Horus,'
and 'the victorious Horus' (De
Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 32, 33,
Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt. ii.
pl. 2, a.)

assigned a priest or priests,¹ and a temple, or at any rate a chapel. He was styled 'the victorious Horus,' 'the divine lord,' 'the ever-living.'² His subjects worshipped him, not only during his life, but after his death. The priesthood once instituted in a king's honour was maintained ever afterwards; sacrifices were offered to the defunct sovereign at stated intervals, and in this way each occupant of the Egyptian throne, unless some revolution occurred, continued to be held in perpetual remembrance.³

Life in Egypt under the early kings was simpler and less varied than it became at a later period, but not very markedly different. Towns⁴ existed at the furthest date to which our materials carry us back, and the distinction between town and country life was a necessary consequence. In the town dwelt the monarch, the courtiers, the royal attendants, the artisans, the shopkeepers, in the country, large landed proprietors, their servants, agricultural labourers, cowherds, perhaps boatmen. Landed property was hereditary,⁵ and an upper class was thus maintained, which regarded itself as a nobility. Royal blood often flowed in the veins⁶ of these persons, who are frequently said to be *Suten rek*, 'grandsons of a monarch.'⁶ Their wealth, which was considerable, enabled them to maintain a numerous household, which consisted both of male and

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 30, 34, &c

² Ibid. p. 33, *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp. 3, 6, &c

³ Priesthoods of Mena and Teti continued down to the latest time of Egyptian independence. Seta, Ra-nebka, and Sai (Sais?) are also found to have had priests attached to their worship long after their decease (De Rougé, *Recherches*

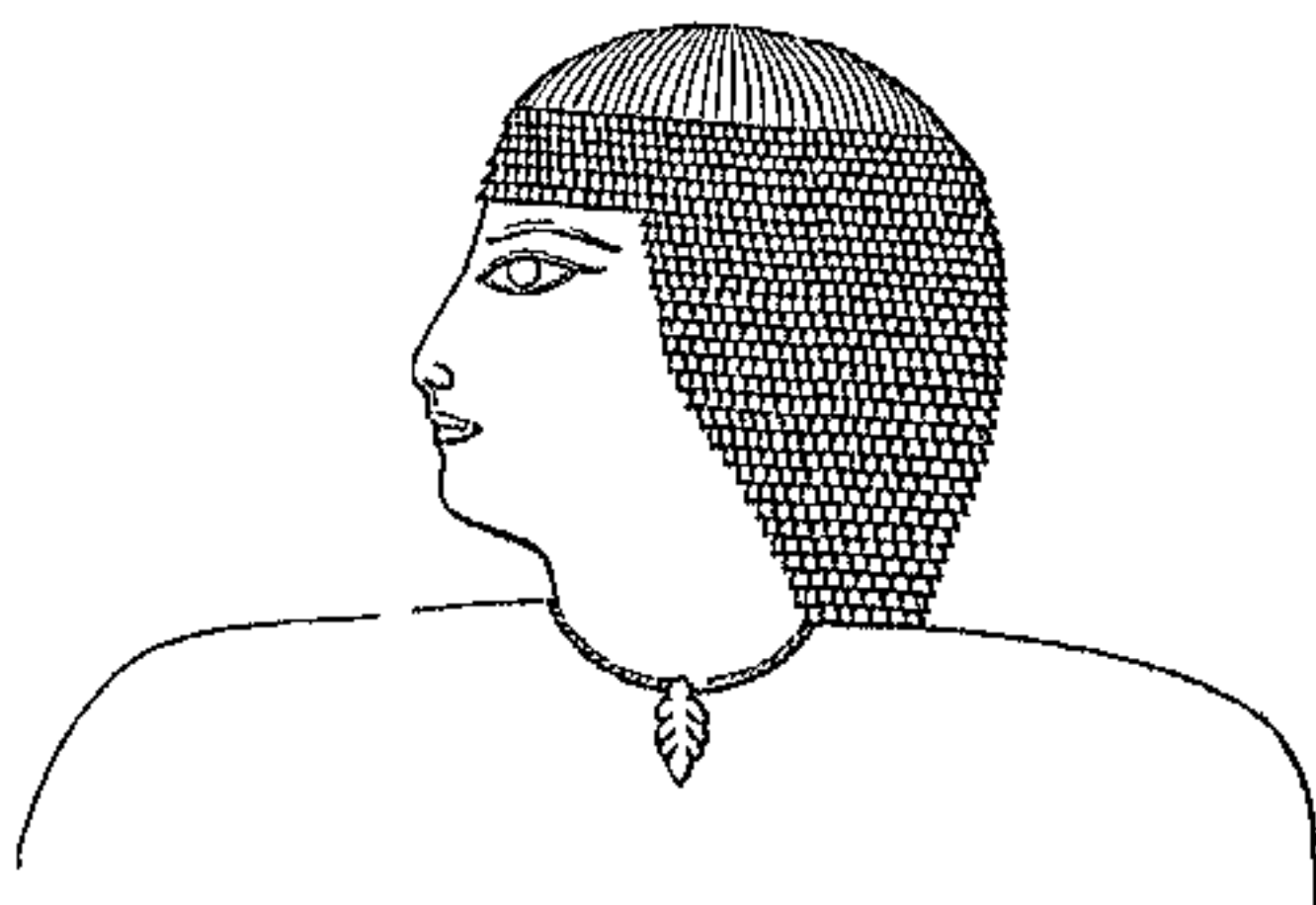
p. 31. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 48, 1st ed.)

⁴ Tani or Tini, and Men-nefer or Memphis, are connected with the earliest of the traditions. The early tombs belong mainly to the necropolis of the latter city.

⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 40, Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 44.

⁶ De Rougé, pp. 41, 44, &c

female servants, and reached in some instances the number of thirty.¹ Little was spent by them upon personal display. The dress of the upper class, even considerably later than the time whereof we are speaking, was wonderfully simple and unpretending, presenting little variety, and scarcely any ornament.² The grandees wore indeed an elaborate wig, but that was indispensable for the sake of cleanliness;³ otherwise his attire is almost unparalleled in ancient times for simplicity. A short tunic, probably of white linen,



Head of Egypt'ian noble (early period)

reaching from the waist to a little above the knees, was ordinarily his sole garment. His arms, chest, legs, even his feet, were naked, the use of sandals not being as yet known. The only decoration which he wore was a chain or riband about the neck, on which was suspended an ornament like a locket.⁴ In his right hand he carried a long staff or wand, which he seems to have used as a walking stick. Such was the

¹ See Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol iii pt ii pls 3-7. The exact number of attendants represented on the walls of the sepulchral chamber of Amen is thirty three.

² Compare the entire series of

drawings in the *Denkmäler*, vol iii pt ii, which descend as low as the time of the fifth dynasty.

³ Herod ii 36.

⁴ See the above woodcut

great noble's ordinary apparel, his 'undress' costume, to use a modern expression; when he ventured beyond this, and allowed himself to indulge in the refinement of 'dress,' he exchanged his tunic for a somewhat scanty robe reaching from the neck to the ankles, replaced his chain and locket by a broad collar, and, having adorned his wrists with bracelets, was ready to pay visits or to receive polite company.¹ The costume of his wife, if he happened to be married, was not a whit more elaborate. She wore her hair long and gathered in three masses, one behind the head, and the other two in front of either shoulder. On her body she had a single garment—a short gown or petticoat reaching from just below the breasts to halfway down the lower joint of the leg, and supported by two broad straps passed over the two shoulders. Her feet were bare, like her husband's, and, like him, she encircled her wrists with bracelets.² We have no representation or account of the houses in which these persons resided. Probably they were plain in character, but their furniture was not inartistic. The chairs on which both sexes sat—or rather stools, for they had no back—were supported on legs fashioned after those of animals, and the extremity of the seat on either side terminated in a lotus flower.³ Tables seem to have been round, and to have been supported by a single pillar in the centre. Couches are not represented, but they probably differed little from those of later times, and there had already been invented the peculiarly Egyptian piece of furniture known as the 'head rest.'⁴

¹ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt 1 pl 3 (upper figure).

² Ibid. pl 7. Compare pls 20, 29, &c

³ Ibid. pls 3 and 6

⁴ See above, vol i p 490, and compare Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol iii pt 11 pl 4, line two on left, where an attendant carries a head-rest in his left hand

The animals domesticated at this early period were, so far as appears the dog, the cow, the goose, and perhaps the antelope. Antelopes were, however, also hunted,¹ and it is possible that those which appear to be tame² were wild ones taken young and kept as pets. Pet animals seem to have been much affected, and included the jerboa, the hare, and the porcupine.³ The only animals that can be proved to have been killed for food at this date are the ox and the goose; but we may suspect that fish, whereof several species appear in the hieroglyphics of the time, were also articles of common consumption, as they certainly were in later times.⁴ Bread no doubt was the main 'staff of life;' and attendants carrying baskets, which appear to contain loaves, are common.⁵

The artisan class of the time must have included weavers, workers in metal, stone-cutters, masons, carpenters, upholsterers, wig makers, embalmers, and probably boat builders. Stone-cutting was an art very necessary in a country where the only timber tree was one which was valued both for its shade and for its fruit. For the shaping of blocks the saw and the chisel must have been very early invented; and a metallurgy of no small merit must have formed and hardened the implements whereby materials such as those employed by the Egyptian builders and sculptors were worked with ease and freedom. Granite, indeed, was not made use of at first, a compact limestone supplied its place,

¹ See the woodcut on page 37.

² Lepsius, pl. 4. Two antelopes, which make no struggles to free themselves, are carried in the arms of attendants, who bring them to their master.

³ *Ibid* pl. 3.

⁴ Supra, vol. i. p. 556.

⁵ Lepsius, pls. 5 and 7. Loaves also appear above the sacrificial table, where Amen is seated, as at a feast. They are small, and are arranged in two baskets (pl. 3).

and contented the primitive constructors of tombs and towers. But it was not long ere Egyptian skill and inventiveness succeeded in finding means to subdue even the most intractable materials, and we shall find the Pyramid kings employing freely such stubborn substances as syenite, arragonite, red granite, and green basalt.

To conclude this brief review of a time on which the Egyptian remains throw but a dim and uncertain light, it must be noted that the hieroglyphical system of writing was already not only invented, but elaborated, the interior of the sepulchral chambers being covered with long inscriptions, which give the titles and employments, describe the domains and other possessions of the deceased, if not with the copiousness and verbosity of a later date, at any rate with considerable fulness of detail. The hieroglyphs themselves are somewhat rude and wanting in finish, but the language is said to be completely formed; the different kinds of hieroglyphs, symbolic, determinative, phonetic, are all in use; the values of the characters are fixed; grammatical modifications are indicated by signs which for the most part continued in use; and, in a general way, it may be said that 'the hieroglyphical writing reveals itself to us in the monuments of the first dynasties with all that complication which belonged to it down to the last day of its existence' ¹

¹ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 331. 'L'écriture hiéroglyphique se montre à nous dans les monuments des premières dynasties avec toute la complication qu'elle a conservée jusqu'au dernier jour de son existence.'

CHAPTER XIV.

THE PYRAMID KINGS.

Reigns of Seneferu, Khufu, Shafra, Menkaura, and Aseshaf, of the Fourth Dynasty; and of Usurkaf, Sahura, Kaka, Nefer-ankara, Ranuser, Menkhot, Tatkara or Assa, and Unas, of the Fifth General Condition of Egypt under these Kings Progress of Art—of Religion of Civilisation and the Arts of Life

Pulcher fugatis dies tenebris' Hor. Od. iv. 4, ll. 39-40

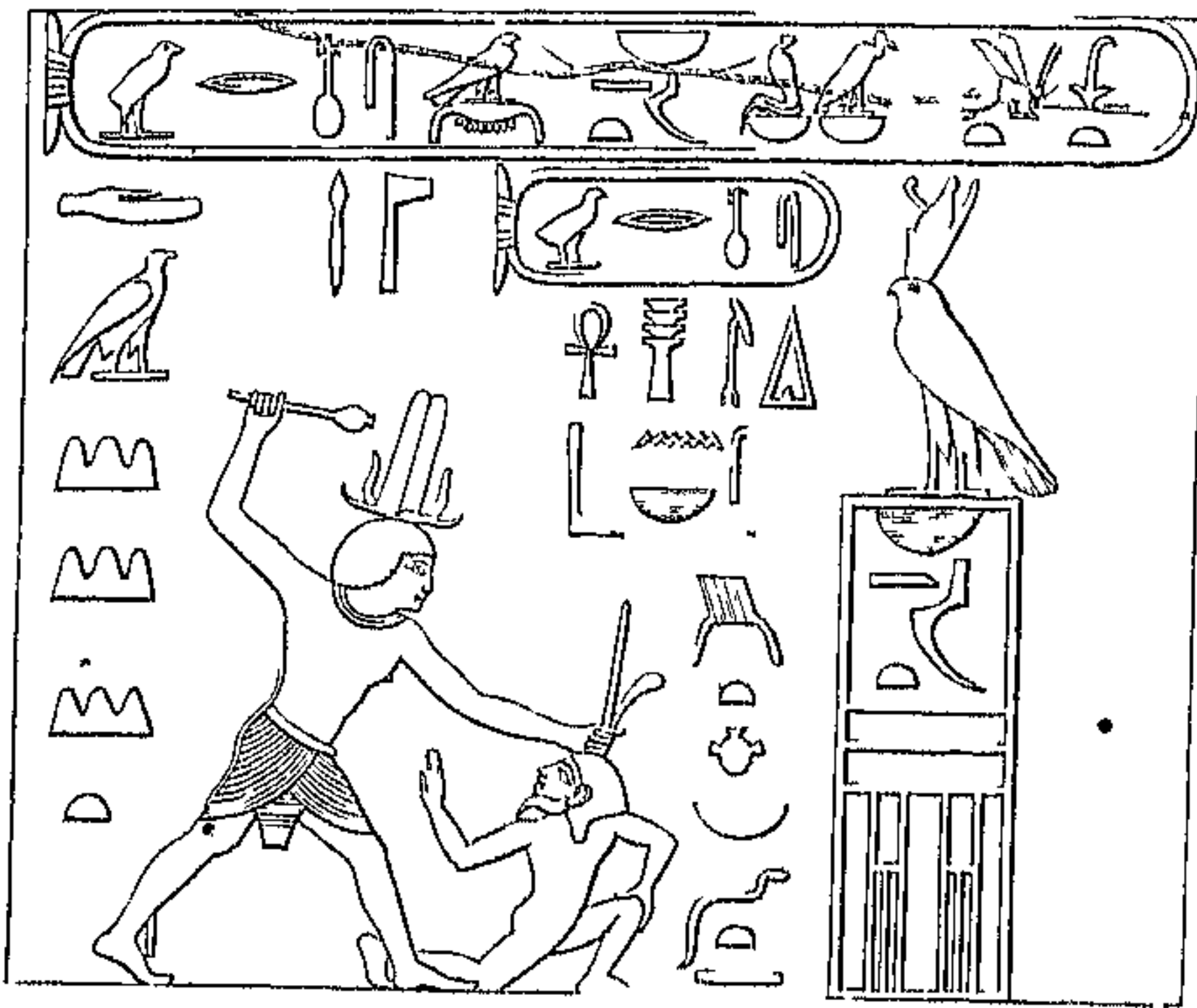
HISTORIC light dawns, and truly historic personages begin to move before us, with the accession of the dynasty which Manetho styled 'the fourth.' Manetho placed at the head of this dynasty a king whom he called Soris, and though the name itself corresponds rather with the 'Sar' of the Turin papyrus, and of the table of Saccarah, yet, as the place assigned to him makes him definitely the predecessor of Suphis (Khufu), it would seem that we may properly identify him with Seneferu, who beyond all doubt occupied that position.¹

Seneferu  appears to have succeeded Huni, but to have exceeded him in the extent of his dominions.² He had the character of a good and beneficent king; and it is in harmony with this description of an Egyptian writer, that we find him in his lifetime taking the

¹ The succession of Khufu to Seneferu is shown most clearly on the tomb of Meritites, who was successively the favourite wife of each (De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 37.)

² In the Pisse papyrus we read: 'Lo the majesty of King Huni died: and lo! the majesty of King Seneferu became a beneficent king for the entire country.' (Ibid. p. 29.)

title of *neb mat*,¹ or 'lord of justice,' which was not one commonly borne by Egyptian sovereigns. Senereru is the first Egyptian monarch who has left behind him an inscription,² and the first of whom we have monumental evidence that he made war beyond his own borders, and established the power of Egypt over a foreign country. Thus he was great both at home and abroad; he dispensed justice to his subjects with such wisdom and impartiality as to acquire a character for benefi-



Tablet of Senereru at Wady Magharah

¹ See the woodcut above, where the third title, , has this meaning

² See Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, pp 30-1. 'It is with the fourth Momphite dynasty that the history of Egypt begins to assume greater importance the events recorded are no longer dependent for their remembrance on the glosses or cult

notices of Greek epitomists, but the monuments of the country contain exact and contemporary accounts of the events which took place' De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 30. 'J'ai fait remarquer depuis longtemps que le plus ancien monument connu jusqu'ici est le trophée de la campagne du roi Snesu contre les populations qui occupaient la presqu'île

cence; and he employed the Egyptian arms beyond his frontiers with such success that he could claim also the title of 'conqueror'.¹ It must always be with a profound interest that travellers contemplate that rock tablet in the Sinaitic peninsula which contains his name and titles, together with a representation of his prowess as he engages with and fells a foreign adversary. The chief with whom he contends is the sheikh or prince of the *Mena nu sat*, or 'Shepherds of the East,'² who at that time held the mountain country between the two arms of the Red Sea. Attracted thither by the mineral treasures of the region,³ the Egyptian monarch, 'King of Upper and of Lower Egypt,' as he proclaims himself, 'Lord of Justice,' and 'Vanquisher of his adversary,' carried all before him—defeated and dispersed the old inhabitants of the country, received their submission, and established a military and mining post in the heart of the region, which was thenceforth for centuries carefully guarded by an Egyptian garrison. The remains still to be seen in the Wady Magharah show the strong fortress within which the Egyptian troops were lodged, the deep well within the walls which secured them an unfailing supply of water, and the neighbouring temples of their native deities, wherein the expatriated soldiers might have the enjoyment of the worship to which they were accustomed in their own land.⁴

It is not certain that Seneferu adorned Egypt with

¹ The fourth title in the inscription of Wady Magharah the hawk of Horus perched upon the sign for gold , is translated on the Rosetta Stone by 'vanquisher of his adversaries'.

² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 31.

³ Brugsch supposes mines of tin quose to have been the great attraction of this region (lsc), but

most Egyptologists consider that the tract was occupied on account of its copper-mines (Wilkinson, in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 344 3rd edit; De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 31 Bunsen, *Egypt & Place* vol. iii p. 382, &c.)

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 65, 1st ed.

ny buildings. The Mejdoun pile has been ascribed to him,¹ but scarcely on sufficient data. Various members of his family were interred in the tombs of Ghizeh, and it is in this way that we make acquaintance with his favourite wife, Meritites,² his son, Nefermat;³ his grandson, Shaf Seneferu, the son of this latter;⁴ and his eldest daughter, Nefer t-kau, who was buried in the same tomb as her brother.⁵ It has been suggested that his own mummy was perhaps deposited in the lower chamber of the Great Pyramid,⁶ which in that case must be supposed to have been commenced by him; but there are no sufficient grounds for this supposition.

The Turin papyrus appears to have assigned to Seneferu a reign of nineteen years. His son, Nefermat, is thought to have died during his lifetime, and Shaf-Seneferu, his grandson, to have been thereupon invested with the title of hereditary prince (*erpa suten*), which he certainly bore;⁷ but the royal dignity, instead of passing to this prince on his grandsire's demise, was obtained by Khufu, , under what circumstances it is impossible to say. Khufu can scarcely have been a son of Seneferu, for he took no wife but Seneferu's widow, Meritites. He was perhaps a usurper, and no relation, or possibly he may have been a brother, and have inherited the throne, because Shaf-

¹ By Bunsen conjecturally. *Denkmales*, vol. iii. pt. ii. pl. 17.
² *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 63, 1st ed.

³ See a paper by M. Mariette in *Revue Archéologique* for September, 1861. The tomb, No. 56 at Ghizeh, of which a representation is given in the *Denkmales*, vol. iii. pt. ii. pl. 10.

⁴ Lepsius *Denkmales* vol. iii. pt. ii. pl. 16. De Rougé, *Recherches*, note 2, p. 38.
⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches*, 41.
⁶ *Ibid* p. 39.

Seneferu was not thought to be old enough to exercise the functions of royalty when Senoferu died. Shaf-Seneferu seems to have held a high place at his court, and to have died, while Khufu was still living, before the accession of Shafra.

In Khufu must be acknowledged, if not the greatest of Egyptian kings, yet certainly the greatest of Egyptian builders, and a sovereign of extraordinary energy. From the conception of the step pyramid of Saccarah, which was the highest light of Egyptian architectural daring at the time, to that of the Great Pyramid of Ghizeh, was so vast a stride, that the monarch who took it must be credited with a grandeur and elevation of thought approaching to genius. To more than double the height of the highest previous building, to multiply the area by five, and the mass by ten, was a venture into the untried and the unknown, which none but a bold mind could have conceived, none but an iron will could have resolved to execute. So far as conception went, Khufu may have been assisted by his architect;¹ but the adoption of a plan so extraordinarily grand, the determination to embody the conception in solid stone, this must have been wholly his own act, his own doing; and it implies a resolution and a strength of mind of the highest order. The fact must ever remain one to excite our profound astonishment, that in Egypt, almost at the commencement of its history, among a people living by themselves and deriving no instruction from without, a king—for there is every reason to believe that the whole work was

¹ Khufu seems to have employed his son, Saf-hotep as his chief architect, at least this son takes the title of 'chief of the works to the king' (De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 43). He is buried in a tomb close to the Great Pyramid (ibid.)

begun and finished by a single monarch¹—conceived and carried out a design so vast, completing a structure which has lasted four thousand years, which is even now among the world's chief marvels, and remains, in respect of size and mass, the most prodigious of all human constructions²

A description of the Great Pyramid has been already given.³ It must have been commenced by Khufu almost as soon as he ascended the throne, and must have been the occupation of a lifetime. Herodotus is not likely to have obtained an exactly authentic account; but his estimate of thirty years for the time consumed in constructing the pyramid itself, together with its subsidiary structures, and of 100,000 labourers as the number constantly employed upon the work,⁴ is quite in accordance with the probabilities of the case, though scarcely deserving to be accepted as matter of positive history.⁵ An enormous amount of unskilled human labour, gradually advancing the work by expenditure of mere brute strength, is necessitated by the circumstances of the time, and the conditions under which the pyramid was erected. A considerable employment of very highly skilled labour upon those wonderful passages and chambers, which form the true marvel of the building,⁶ must also be regarded as certain; and it seems to follow that such a work could not have been carried to its completion without engaging the energies of almost the whole talent of the

¹ De Rougé has suggested that Seneferu may have begun, and Khufu have completed, the Great Pyramid (*Recherches*, p. 41). But there is no sufficient reason for connecting Seneferu with it.

² Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 335 (quoted

above, vol. i. p. 198, note ⁵)

³ Supra, vol. i. pp. 107-208.

⁴ Herod. ii. 124. The labourers are said to have been relieved every three months, so that 400,000 were employed in the course of each year.

⁵ So Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 31.

⁶ Supra, vol. i. p. 208.

state, as well as almost its whole labouring population, during the period of an entire generation. Great sufferings would naturally accompany such an interference with men's natural employments, and such a concentration of vast numbers upon a limited area. The construction of the Suez Canal in the years 1865-1869 cost the lives of thousands, who perished through want and disease. It cannot be supposed that it was possible in the infancy of the world's history to execute a far vaster work without similar calamities. Hence probably the ill repute which attached to Khufu, and the other pyramid builders, in after times¹ an ill repute which, though falsely explained as resting upon religious grounds, was itself a fact, not doubtful nor disputable.²

In very truth, such constructions as the Pyramids, however they may move our admiration as works of art, in their kind, utterly astonishing and unapproachable, are to the politician and the moralist miserable instances of the lengths to which a paltry egotism will go for the gratification of self at the expense of others. All Egyptians had the same belief with respect to a future life—all equally desired the safe conservation of their earthly remains through many centuries³. Yet the bulk, even of the rich, were content to have their remains deposited in a deep pit, the mouth of which was closed and concealed from view by having one of the walls of the sepulchral chamber or chapel built over it. But the Egyptian kings, or at any rate the kings

¹ Herod ii 124 9

² The identification of the pyramid-builders with the 'Shepherds' (Herod ii 128) unhistorical as it was, indicated the abhorrence in which their memories were held,

for the 'Shepherds' were detested by the Egyptians of the New Empire

³ See above, vol i pp 317 10, and 511 14

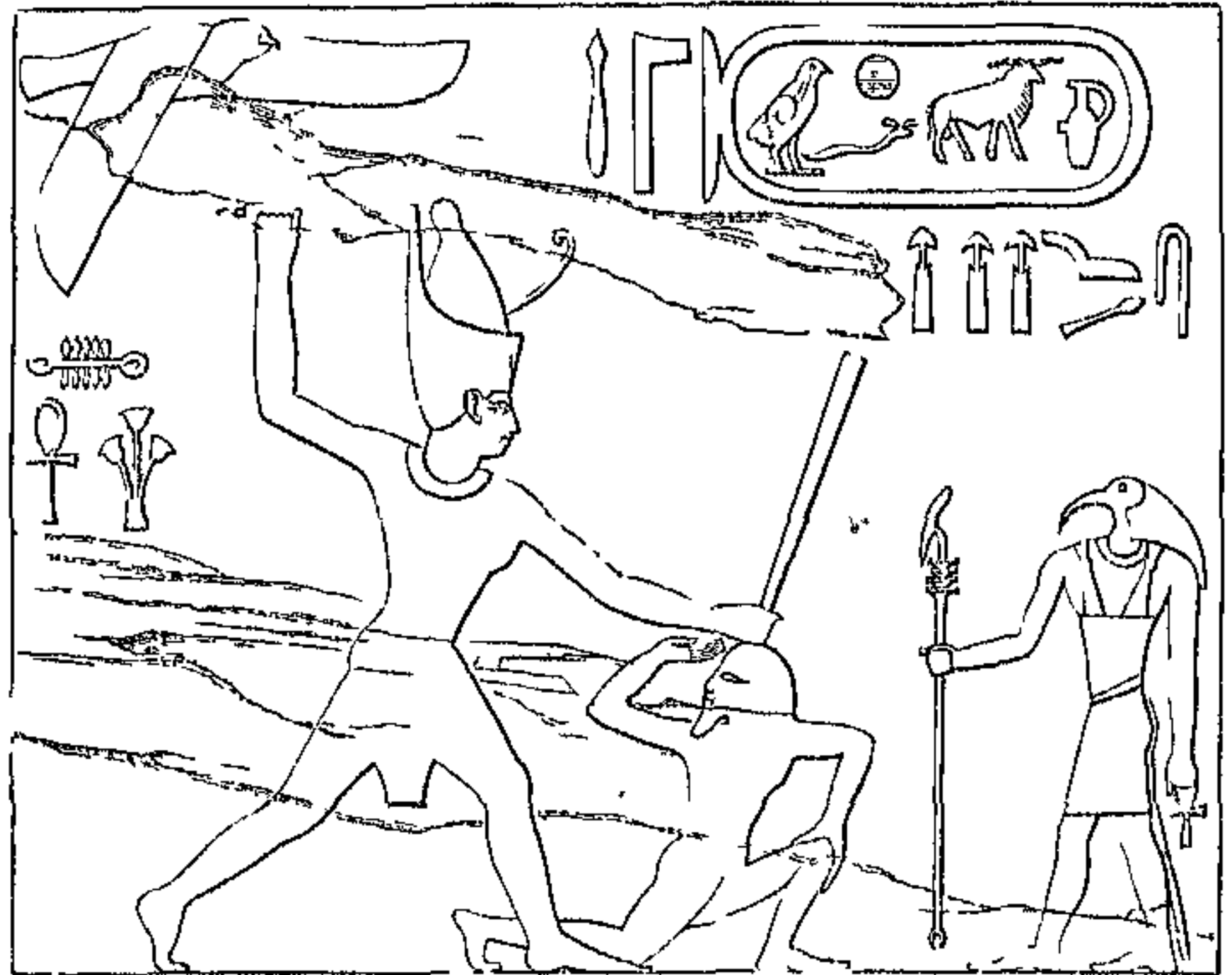
of this period, because they could command the services of their subjects, being absolute and able to employ as many of them as they chose in forced labours, would not be satisfied with the common lot. Nothing less would content them than granite chambers, sealed by portcullises, and enclosed in the centre of 'artificial mountains,'¹ formed of massive blocks of stone, moved into place with sighs and groans by impressed workmen, and too often cemented with the blood of those who were maimed or crushed to death, when a block slipped, as the attempt was being made to lift and emplace it. Such accidents must have been frequent, and have occasioned a considerable loss of life; but it was easy to replace the mutilated and the killed by a fresh conscription, and so to carry out the monarch's proud design at the cost of increased suffering to his subjects. Egyptian kings did not shrink from enforcing their will at this cost. One only seems, at a certain point, to have paused in his design, and made a change, which brought his work to an earlier termination than that originally contemplated.²

It must ever therefore remain a reproach to Khufu, that by the extravagance of his egotism, of his vanity, and of his ambition to excel all who had gone before or should follow him, he held his people in an intolerable bondage for a longer term of years than any other Egyptian king. We possess no representation of him that can be regarded as approaching to the nature of a portrait, or we should expect to see in his countenance indications of an iron will, a stern pride, and a cruel hardness, such as appear in the later pictures of the

¹ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol i p 335 an stone pyramid of Dashur in vol i pp 211 12

² See the description of the south-

first Napoleon. The only bas-relief of him which exists is one at the Wady Magharah, modelled after the earlier representation of Seneferu,¹ which shows him clutching an enemy by the hair of his head, and about to deal him his death stroke with a club or mace. The relief is in a bad state of preservation, but it appears to be thoroughly conventional, and not to aim at truthfulness of expression. Khufu has a face little

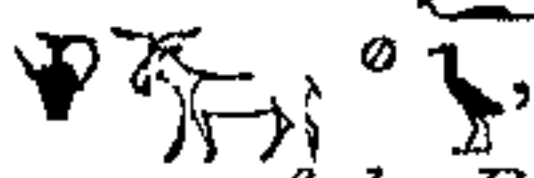


Tablet of Khufu at Wady Magharah

differing from that of Seneferu, to whom in character he presented a striking contrast.

We gather from the Wady Magharah tablet, that Khufu made two expeditions into the Sinitic peninsula, one to take possession of the mines, on which occasion he merely set up his cartouche and his titles, calling himself *Khufu,  , King of Upper and Lower Egypt,

¹ See the woodcut, *supra*, p. 47.

the conquering Horus,' and another—that commemorated on the opposite page—where he gave his name as Num-Khufu, , and represented himself as 'striking down one of the Pet or An foreigners in the presence of the ibis-headed god, Tahuti or Thoth.'¹ Both these names are found in the Great Pyramid,² and, though some have supposed them to designate different individuals,³ it seems to be now most commonly held⁴ that they are merely two appellations of the same monarch, the successor of Seneferu, who, having been originally called Khufu, at a certain period of his life assumed the prefix of Num or Knum, intending thereby to identify himself with the god whom the Greeks called Kneph, one of the chief objects of worship in Upper Egypt.⁵

This fact, and some others recorded on the native monuments, sufficiently refute the legend of the Greeks⁶ which represented the builder of the Great Pyramid as wholly irreligious, one who shut up the temples, and was opposed to the polytheism of his subjects. The very reverse appears to have been the fact. Khufu not only took the name of Knum, in acknowledgment of the Elephantine deity, and placed Thoth upon the trophy of victory which he set up at Wady Magharah, but called himself 'the living Horus,'⁷ and

¹ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 30.

² Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pl. 1, Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 138.

³ As Bunsen (*Egypt's Place* 1 s c) and Wilkinson (in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 204, note 1, 3rd ed.)

⁴ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 32-8, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 69-76, 1st ed.; Lenoirant,

Histoire Ancienne, vol. i. p. 337,

De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 41-54.

⁵ Supra, vol. i. pp. 332-3.

⁶ Herod. ii. 121, Mariette ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. p. 50, n.

⁷ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 46.

It is possible that this inscription may be of a later date, as De Rougé suspects, and Dr. Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 81, 1st ed.) pro-

actually built a temple to Isis, whom (as being Horus) he called 'his mother,' and whose image he placed in her sanctuary, attaching at the same time to the edifice an estate by way of endowment.¹ He also, if we may trust an inscription of comparatively late date, found at the temple of Denderah, furnished the plan upon which the original edifice, dedicated to Athor on that site, was built.² Even the Greeks³ inform us that Khufu, notwithstanding his alleged impiety, composed a religious work entitled 'The Sacred Book,' which continued to be highly valued in later ages. The extant remains certainly bear strong witness to his religious zeal, presenting him to us in the character of the first known builder of temples, the first king who is found to have acknowledged almost all the principal Egyptian gods,⁴ and the first person known to have brought into use the system of religious endowments.

The family of Khufu appears to have been large. He took to wife, on his accession, Queen Mertitefs, the widow of his predecessor,⁵ and had by her a number of sons and daughters, whose tombs 'form a crown around his pyramid.'⁶ Mer het,  , one of his sons, is said to have been the 'priest of Khufu's

nounces but, if so it was at any rate modelled on the line of some inscription of the time, the phrases of which it probably reproduced without much alteration.

De Rougé, p. 47. Brugsch, however, translates differently (*History of Egypt*, l.s.c.).

² Buch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 37.

³ *I.e.* the Greek epitomists Africanus and Eusebius (see Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i pp. 66, n, and 67, c).

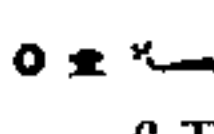
⁴ Khufu connects with himself especially Horus and Kneph. He

represents Thoth on his tablet at the Wady Magharah. His wife regards him as an impersonation of Horus and Set. (De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 45.) He builds a temple to Isis, whom he identifies with Athor, and he mentions with respect the temples of Osiris and of Harmachis, on the Sphinx. (Ibid. pp. 46-7.)

De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 37.

⁶ Ibid. p. 42. Compare, for the fact, Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 70, 1st ed.)

obelisk,'¹ whereby we perceive that this architectural embellishment, although it may not have taken an important place in the great designs of architects until the time of the twelfth dynasty, was yet already known and employed in the fourth, though probably upon a smaller scale than afterwards. Sakhotep, another son, was (as already mentioned²) the 'chief of the works of Khufu,' and the more most likely his head architect. A third son, Shaf-Khufu, was priest of Apis³. A daughter, Hents, , was buried under a small pyramid in immediate proximity to the great monument of her father⁴. Two other sons, Kaab and Khemtatf, had tombs in the same vicinity.⁵ Merisankh, the wife of Shafra, is thought to have been also one of his daughters.⁶

Khufu was, according to the lists of Abydos and Saccarah, succeeded by a king named Ratatf, , who is supposed to be Manetho's 'Ratoises'. There are several monumental evidences of this monarch's existence,⁷ and the place assigned to him in the lists seems to be the correct one; but his reign must have been unimportant, and was probably extremely brief, to be counted not by years, but by months. At his demise, the throne was occupied by a son-in-law of the great Khufu, a monarch who bore the name of Shafra or Khafra, , the Chephren of Herodotus⁸ and the Chabryes of Diodorus Siculus.⁹

¹ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pls 18-22

² Supra, p. 50, note 1

³ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 44

⁴ Ibid. p. 47. Compare Herod. ii 126

⁵ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pls 26 and 33

⁶ Le Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 57-61

⁷ These have been carefully collected by De Rougé, and will be found in his *Recherches*, pp. 52-4

⁸ Herod. ii 127

⁹ Diod. Sic. i 61

Shafra is the first of the Egyptian kings whose personal appearance we can distinctly and fully realise. Two statues of him, in green basalt,¹ his own gift to the temple of the Sphinx, show him to us such as he existed in life, bearing upon them as they do the stamp of a thoroughly realistic treatment. The figure of the king is tall and slender the chest, shoulders, and upper arm well developed, but the lower arm and the lower leg long and slight. The head is smallish, the forehead fairly high and marked with lines of thought, but a little retreating, the eye small,



Upper portion of Statue of Shafra

the nose well shaped, the lips slightly projecting, but

¹ I am indebted for my knowledge of these statues to M. de Rougé's valuable work, *Recherches sur les Monuments de*, where two photographs are given, from one of which the accompanying illustration has been taken. The statues themselves are in the Museum of Boulaq.

not unduly thick, the chin well rounded, and the cheek somewhat too fat. The expression, on the whole, is pleasing, the look thoughtful and intelligent, but with a touch of sensuality about the under jaw and mouth. There is no particular sternness, but there is certainly no weakness, in the face, which is that of one not likely to be moved by pity or turned from his purpose by undue softness of heart.

Like his predecessor, Shafra must have made it the main business of his life to provide himself with a tomb that should be an eternal monument of his greatness and glory. He gave to his pyramid the name of *Uer*, 'the great,' 'the principal,'¹ and though the inferiority of its actual dimensions² has caused it in modern times to receive the appellation of 'the Second Pyramid,' it is quite possible that he expected to deceive his subjects into the belief that it was a vaster edifice than that of Khufu, by the side of which he placed it. For the lie of the ground favours such a deception. The rocky platform on which the three pyramids are built rises towards the centre, and the central position of the Second Pyramid gives it a marked advantage over the first, causing its summit to attain actually a higher elevation above the level of the plain than is attained by the pyramid of Khufu.³ In another respect also Shafra aimed at outdoing his predecessor. Not content with the compact limestone of the opposite or Mokattam range, from which Khufu drew the vast blocks with which he revetted his

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 56.
Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,
vol. i. p. 77, 1st ed.

² See above, vol. i. pp. 104-9.

³ Ibid. p. 107. The difference in
the actual height of the edifices was

one of 26½ feet in favour of the py-
ramid of Khufu. The difference in
elevation of the summits above the
plain was one of 6½ feet in favour
of the pyramid of Shafra.

enormous monument, Shafra caused his workmen to ascend the Nile as far as Elephantiné, and there to quarry the hard granite of that distant locality, in order to encase, partially at any rate,¹ his own tomb with that better and far more costly material.

It is probable that Shafra also 'built the small temple behind the great Sphinx,'² which he certainly decorated with his statues. The peculiarity of this temple is, that it is composed entirely of great blocks of the hardest materials—red granite, syenite, or arragonite—brought from the neighbourhood of Syene, or else of yellow alabaster. The stones are polished to a perfectly smooth surface, and fitted block to block 'to a hair's breadth,'³ with a skill and an exactness that provoke the astonishment of modern architects. Similar exactness appears in the masonry of the internal chambers and passages of the pyramid of Khufu,⁴ and it is beyond question that the Egyptian builders of this early period had attained to a perfect power of cutting and shaping stones of the hardest quality—a power equal to that possessed at the present day by the most advanced nations. What tools were used, what methods were employed, we do not know, and can only conjecture; but the fact is certain that the stubbornness of the hardest materials was overcome, and we may add that there is nothing in the results produced to indicate that any greater difficulty was experienced in dealing with the harder qualities of stone than with the softer.

Among the tiles taken by Shafra there are some

¹ Borch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 38
Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus* vol. ii p. 204 note ², 3rd edit.

² Borch, loc. cit. On the other hand it is quite possible that this temple may have been an older construc-

tion, and that Shafra only added to its ornamentation.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 77, 1st ed.

⁴ See above, vol. i p. 208

which are remarkable, and which seem to indicate an advance on the bold and bald presentation of themselves to their subjects as the main Egyptian divinities, on which the kings ventured. Shafia not only calls himself 'Horus, lord of the heart,' and 'the good Horus,' but *neter au*, 'the great god,' and *sa Ra*, 'Son of Ra,' or 'of the Sun'.¹ This famous title, , so familiar to us from the cartouches of the later Pharaohs, appears in the inscriptions of Shafra *for the first time*. To him we must therefore assign the credit, or the discredit, of having invented a phrase which, exactly falling in with the vanity of subsequent kings and the adulation of their subjects, became a standing immutable title, the necessary adjunct to the proper name of every later sovereign. Shafra also added to the ordinary royal title of 'conquering Horus' the prefix of *Khem*, either in the sense of 'master,' 'ruler,' or with the intention of attaching to himself another divine name, and claiming to be an incarnation of the god Khem no less than of the god Horus.

Shafra seems to have been married to a daughter of his predecessor, named Meri ankhs, or Merisankh.² Her tomb has been found at Saccarah, and has on it an inscription, by which it appears that she bore the office of priestess to Thoth, and also to one of the sacred animals regarded as an incarnation of deity.³ She claims association with the 'lord of diadems,'⁴ and it is thought to be not improbable that Shafra reigned in her right rather than in his own.⁵ It does not appear from the monuments that he was in any way related to

¹ De Rougé *Recherches*, p. 50

² *Ibid* pp. 57-61

³ On these animals, see above, vol. i. pp. 413-16. It is uncertain to which of these Merisankh was

priestess, as the expression used upon her tomb is ambiguous

⁴ De Rougé *Recherches*, pp. 58-9

⁵ *Ibid* pp. 61-2

Khufu, or that he had in his veins any royal blood, and the conjecture is made that at this ancient epoch there was some special right of daughters to succeed their father, either in preference to sons, or in case of their being the elder children. A right of the kind is known to have obtained in Lycia¹ and other eastern countries, and the want of any indication of the succession from father to son in the monuments of this time raises the suspicion that some such practice prevailed in Egypt under the early Pharaohs. But, however this may have been, Meri sankh was at any rate a personage of great importance in Shafra's reign. She was 'exalted to the highest degree of dignity to which it was possible for the wife of an Egyptian monarch to attain.'² Associated with the 'lord of diadems,' she had the entire control of the royal gynæceum, or 'house of the women,' enjoyed two priesthoods, and was deep in the confidence and high in the favour of her royal consort. She bore Shafra at least two sons. One of these, who had the name of Neb-m-akhu t, is represented as his father's 'heir.'³ He was a superior priest of the order of Heb, a sacred scribe, and 'clerk of the closet' to his father. Five estates, of which he was the owner, had all been presented to him by his liberal parent, and had received names in which Shafia was an element.⁴ Another son, S kem ka ra, possessed fourteen such properties,⁵ and must have been one of the wealthiest landed proprietors of the time. He enjoyed his wealth for a long term of years, living to a good old age under five

¹ Herod. i. 173

² De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 59

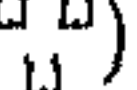
³ Ibid. p. 57

⁴ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt.

ii. pl. 12 b

⁵ Ibid. pl. 42 a

successive kings,¹ whose escutcheons he displays upon his monument.

The immediate succession of Mencheres (Menkau ra, •  ) to Shafra, asserted by Herodotus² and Manetho,³ is indicated on the tomb of S kem ka ra,⁴ and confirmed by the table of Seti I. at Abydos.⁵ Yet here again we are unable to trace by means of the monuments any blood relationship, and can say nothing of the connection between Menkaura and his predecessors beyond the fact of there having been a tradition that he descended, not from Shafia, but from Khufu,⁶ the first and greatest of the pyramid kings. Born and bred up during the years when the whole thought and attention of Egypt was given to the construction of these wonderful edifices, he would have been more than human if he had not been carried away by the spirit of the time, and felt it his duty to imitate in some degree, if he could not hope to emulate, his predecessors. The pyramid in which he engaged was on a humble scale. As designed and executed by himself, it seems to have been a square of no more than one hundred and eighty feet, with an elevation of one hundred and forty five feet.⁷ A sepulchral chamber of no remarkable pretension,⁸ excavated in the solid rock below the monument, contained the sarcophagus and coffin of the king. The

¹ Shafia, Menkaura, Aseskif, Uskaf, and Sabura (Lepsius, l.s.c., pl. 42. Compare De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 77)

² Herod ii 120.

³ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 56, n

⁴ *Denkmäler*, l.s.c.

⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pl. 2 at the end of the volume, Nos 23 and 24

⁶ Herod l.s.c.

⁷ See above, vol i p 104. These dimensions are considerably less than those of the step-pyramid of Saccarah, and indicate an entire abandonment of the magnificent ideas of Khufu and Shafia

⁸ That is, as compared with the remarkable chamber of Khufu (see vol. i p 203). Otherwise, the construction is curious and worthy of notice (Compare vol i p 101)

tion assigned to this monarch. He was also said to have been distinguished for justice and kindness of heart¹. The monuments of his reign are not sufficiently abundant to enable us fully to test this statement; but it is certainly in accordance with it, that we find Mencheres singling out a youth of no high birth or connection for his special favour, introducing him as an inmate into the palace, and causing him to receive his education together with his own children². The youth in question, whose name was Ptahases, retained a lively recollection of this act of kindness, and in the inscription upon his tomb took care to commemorate the gracious favour of his royal benefactor.

Mencheres was succeeded by a monarch whose name is written , which is expounded differently by different writers, some calling it Aseskaf and some Shepseskaf³. We shall adopt the former reading. Aseskaf's immediate succession to Mencheres is indicated alike by the tomb of Ptahases,⁴ and by that of Skemkara⁵. Ptahases tells us that Aseskaf continued towards him the kind treatment commenced by his predecessor, allowed him still to receive education in the palace with the royal children, and, when he had come to years of discretion, gave him to wife his eldest daughter, Metsha, preferring him as a husband for her to any other man. This first act of signal favour was followed up by such a multitude of others that the modern historian is driven to remark on the antiquity of the system of pluralities,⁶ and the early date at

¹ Herod. ii. 120.

² De Rougé *Recherches*, pp. 66-7.

³ De Rougé prefers the form Aseskaf (*Recherches*, pp. 66-75), though the form Shepseskaf (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 85-7,

see ed.) De Borch' allows either reading (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 41).

⁴ De Rougé p. 67.

⁵ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt. ii, pl. 42.

⁶ Borch, l. s. c.

which ecclesiastical posts were assigned to court favourites for the mere purpose of enabling their holders to draw a large revenue from benefices which they must have treated as simple sinecures. Ptahases was prophet of Phthah, of Sokari, and of Athor, priest of the temple of Sokari, and of that of Phthah at Memphis, prophet of Ra Harmachis, of Ma, and of Horus, as well as overseer of the granaries, royal secretary, chief of the mines, and 'chief of the house of bronze'.¹ He says that he was 'esteemed by the king above all his other servants';² and we may therefore hope that so shameless an accumulation of offices upon a favourite as that which Ptahases' tomb reveals to us was unusual.

Aseskaf, like the other monarchs of this period, built himself a pyramid, and gave it the name of *Keb*, or 'refreshment.'³ This pyramid has not at present been identified among the existing sixty six; but it is quite possible that further research may lead to its discovery. It is probably among the group known as 'the pyramids of Saccarah,' which became the favourite burial place when the Ghizeh site ceased to be thought suitable, since the enormous constructions of Khufu and Shafra could not possibly, it was felt, be exceeded, and they dwarfed all ordinary erections.

The successor of Aseskaf was Uskaf or Usurkaf,⁴ , who is thought to be the Usercheres of Manetho, the first king of his fifth dynasty. An unusually close correspondence is traced between the

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp 68 p 87 1st ed)
72

² Ibid p 67

³ Ibid p 72 Brugsch reads the word Qebsh, but gives it the same meaning (*History of Egypt*, vol i

⁴ Uskaf, according to Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol i p 87);

Usurkaf, according to De Rougé (*Recherches* pp 75 80) and Brugsch (*Ancient Egypt*, p 47).

monumental names of this period and those of Manetho's list,¹ indicative of the fact that Manetho at this point of his history has for once obtained tolerably good information. His dynastic list consists of nine kings, who are made to occupy a space of 248 years, which, however, is probably too much. The Turin papyrus reduces the period to one of 141 years only, and even this number is most likely in excess, since as many as twenty one years are assigned to monarchs, of whom the contemporary monuments show no traces, and who must be regarded as secondary associated princes.² The line seems really to have been one of seven kings only—Usurkaf, Sahura, Nefer ar ka ra, Ranuser, Menkauhor, Tatkara or Assa, and Unas; and the time which it occupied seems a little to have exceeded a hundred years. If we assign to the four or five preceding monarchs³ a similar term, we shall make a liberal allowance, and have for the entire space from the accession of Seneferu to the death of Unas one of about two centuries.

It is difficult to conjecture any reason for Manetho's division of the kings of this period into two separate dynasties, one Memphite, and the other Elephantine. Nothing is more distinctly shown by the monuments than the fact, that the entire series from Seneferu to Unas lived and reigned at Memphis; nor do we possess in all our ample materials the slightest trace of any break or division in the series, any change of policy, or religion, or art, to account for the fiction of two houses. It would seem that the Sebennytic priest had made up his

¹ See De Rougé's table in the *Recherches*, p. 75

² Ibid. p. 76. De Rougé compares these princes to the 'Cæsars' of the time of Diocletian and Con-

stantino

³ Seneferu, Khufu, Shafia, Menkauia, and *perhaps* Ratatt, who, however, may have been a 'Cæsar.'

mind to have thirty dynasties down to the close of Egyptian independence, and was not very particular how he produced them. To swell the number of years and obtain the total which he wanted, he introduced secondary associated princes into his lists by the side of the true monarchs, without distinguishing them, and from time to time he seems to have even gone the length of interpolating into his lists wholly fictitious kings. The Bicheres, Sebercheres, and Thamphthis, who close the fourth dynasty of Manetho, if not absolute fabrications, have at any rate no right to the place which they occupy. They are fictions *at that point* certainly;¹ possibly they are fictions altogether.

The reign of Usurkaf was short and undistinguished. He built a small pyramid, which he called *Uab asu*, 'the most holy of all places,'² and established the usual worship of his own deity in connection with it, which he committed to the charge of a priest named Khnum-hotep. In this worship he associated with himself the goddess Athor.³ Among his other titles he took that of *Hor an mat*,⁴ or 'Horus, the dispenser of justice,' which would appear to imply that, like Seneferu,⁵ he regarded it as one of his chief duties to have justice carefully and strictly administered throughout the country under his rule. Only a very few monuments belonging to his reign have been as yet discovered;

¹ De Rougé says. 'Il résulte de notre inscription que les trois derniers noms de la quatrième dynastie, dans la liste d'Africain, n'ont pas de place chronologique sur les monuments.' Riché, *Sebercheres* et Thamphthis sont évidemment interpolés dans cet endroit' (p. 78).

² Ibid. l. 8 c.

³ Ibid. p. 80.

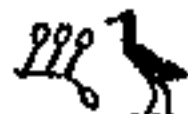
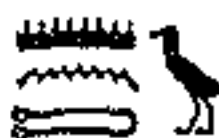
⁴ Mariette (in his *Monuments*

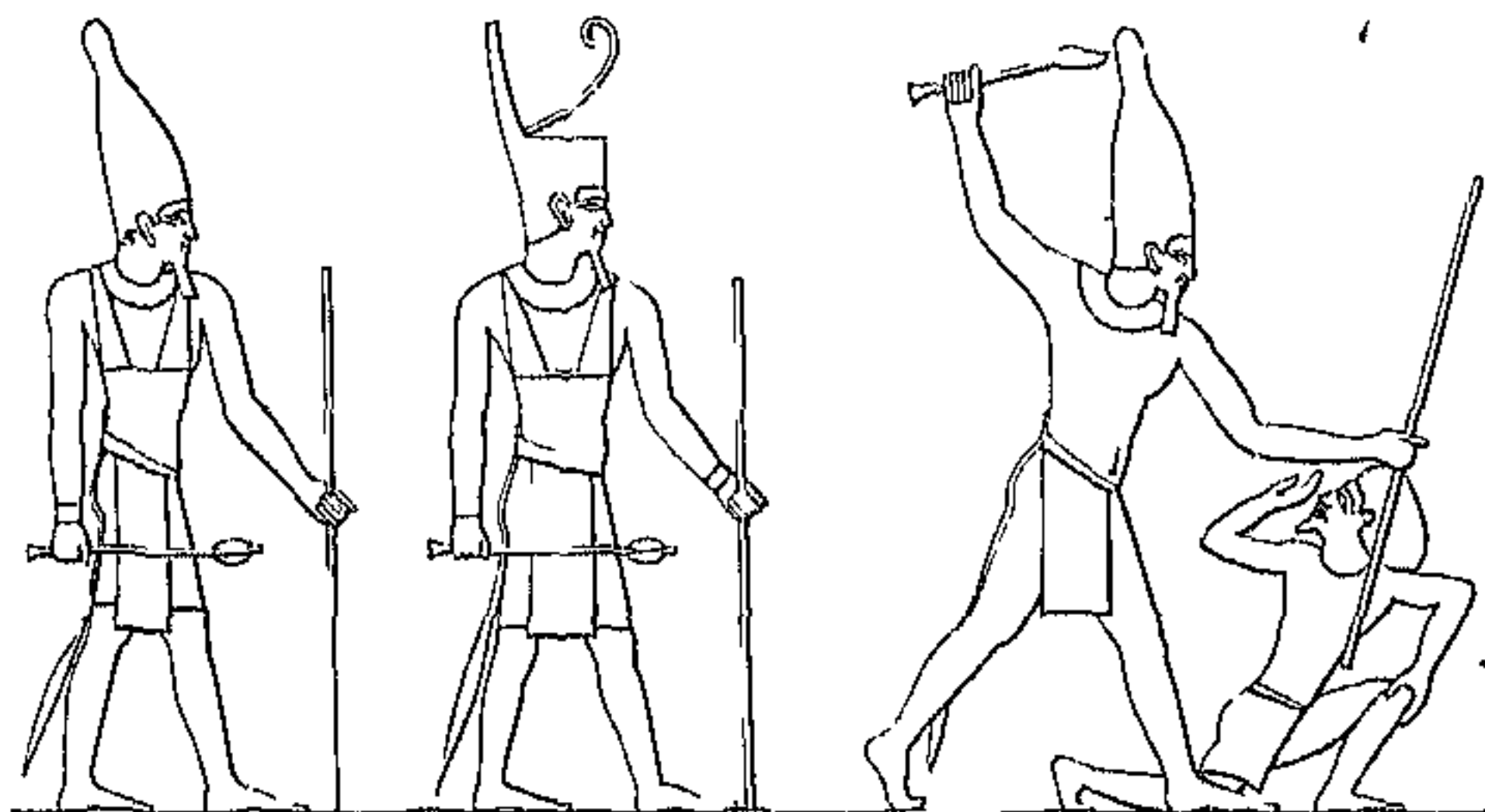
Divers, pl. 51, e) gives a representation of a cylinder now in the Museum of Boulaq, where the cartouche of Usurkaf is twice accompanied by this title, which is written thus. 

De Rougé translates it by 'le dieu faisant justice' in his *Recherches*, p. 79.

⁵ See above, p. 47.

but his place in the list of kings, between Aseskaf and Sahura, is certain

The succession of Sahura •  to Usurkaf is sufficiently established by the tomb of Skemkara,¹ and is further supported by the tables of Saccarah and Abydos,² as well as by Manetho,³ if we admit his 'Sephres' to represent this monarch. Sahura followed in the steps of Seneferu and Khufa by making an expedition into the Sinaitic peninsula, where he had to contend with a new enemy, the Mentu, , who had by this time become the ruling tribe in the vicinity of the copper mines. He appears in the usual attitude of a conqueror, smiting a half-prostrate enemy with uplifted mace,⁴ but wears in this representation the crown of Upper Egypt only, though another figure of him, a little behind, has the other crown instead.



Tablet of Sahura at Wady Magmah.

In the text which accompanies his sculpture he calls

¹ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt. ii pl. 41 a

² De Rougé, *Recherches*, pl. i. No. 23, pl. ii No. 27.

³ Ap. Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 57, D

⁴ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt. ii pl. 39 f

himself 'the great god, who destroys the Mentu *and strikes down all nations*' There is, however, no evidence beyond this statement, that he carried his arms into any other region besides that of Sinai, or waged with any other nation besides the Mentu, and it is on the whole most probable that his military achievements were limited to this people and quarter, despite the grandiloquent terms of his inscription. The Egyptian kings of the period were decidedly not warlike; and we have no reason to suppose that Sahura was an exception to the general rule, or did more than repeat the former deeds of Khufu and Seneferu.

The only other fact recorded of Sahura is his erection of a pyramid, to which he gave the name of *Shu ba*, or 'the rising of the soul,' to mark his belief in the resurrection.¹ This building has been identified, by the occurrence of his name on some of its blocks, with the 'northern pyramid of Abousir,' an edifice of some considerable pretension. It was a true pyramid, perfectly square, each side measuring 150 Egyptian cubits, or 257 of our feet, and with a perpendicular height of 95 cubits or 163 feet,² being thus considerably larger than the pyramid built for himself by Menkaura.³ Directly below the apex, and a little above the level of the natural ground, was the sepulchral chamber, roofed over in the usual way, with huge blocks set obliquely, the blocks measuring in some instances thirty six feet by twelve!⁴ The sarcophagus appears to have been of basalt, but had been demolished before the modern explorations, the chambers

¹ De Rougé, p. 81.

² Bunsen *Egypt's Place in Universal History* vol. ii. p. 103, and compare the table at the end of the volume.

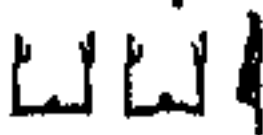
³ See above, p. 63. The original

Third Pyramid of Ghizeh is here meant, not the later enlarged one.

⁴ Bunsen, l. c.

and passages are said to have been 'formed, in the most skilful and artistic manner, of vast blocks of lime stone from the quarries of Turah' ¹ The pyramid stood in the middle of an oblong court, surrounded by a low wall or peribolus

Sahura established as priest of his pyramid an Egyptian named An kheft ka, who was also priest of the pyramid of his predecessor, Usurkaf, and held other important offices.² Sahura's worship was continued to a late date in Egypt, his priests obtaining mention in the time of the Ptolemies ³ It is conjectured that he was the builder of an Egyptian town called Pa sahura,⁴ but not written with the characters by which it was usual to express Sahura's name This town was near Esneh, and is mentioned in the religious calendar of that city.

The table of Abydos places a king named Kaka, , in the place immediately following that occupied by Sahura, ⁵ and, as traces of this royal name are found in the tombs of the period,⁶ it is to be supposed that there was such a sovereign, or rather perhaps such a prince, who was allowed the rank of king about this time. The real successor, however, of Sahura appears to have been Nefer ar ka ra, who follows him in the table of Saccarah,⁷ in the list of Manetho,⁸ and in the inscriptions on several tombs ⁹ We possess no par-

¹ Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii p. 104

De Rougé *Recherches*, p. 82

Ibid p. 83

Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 88, 1st ed., De Rougé, *Recherches* loc.

⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches* pl. ii at the end of the volume No. 28

⁶ Some of the blocks in the interior of the tomb of Ti had the name of Kaka on them, roughly

painted in red by the masons (De Rougé, p. 97) It occurs also on the tomb of Senothem lot (*Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt. ii pl. 75) and on a vase found at Saccarah (De Rougé, p. 84)

⁷ See De Rougé's table No. 24

⁸ Under the form Nefereches (Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 57 n.)

⁹ *Denkmäler*, vol. iii pt. ii. pls. 43-49

particulars of this monarch's reign which have more than a very slight claim on the reader's attention. He built a pyramid which he called *Ba*, or 'the soul'.¹ He raised to high position the officials Uei Khui and Pahenuka, whose genius was literary, but on whom were accumulated various and sometimes most incongruous offices.² But otherwise we know nothing of him, except that he reigned, according to Manetho, twenty, or, according to the Turin papyrus, seven years.³ His pyramid has not been recognised.

Nefer ar ka ra was followed by Ra n user, or User n ra, as some read the name (which is expressed as follows in the Egyptian, ) who bore also the name⁴ of An, . He followed the example of Sahura by making an expedition against the Mentu of the Sinaitic peninsula, and represents himself at Wady Magharah in the usual form of a warrior armed with a mace, wherewith he threatens to destroy a shrinking and almost prostrate enemy.⁵ He takes the proud titles of 'the great god, lord of the two lands, king of Egypt, king of the upper and lower countries, conquering Horus, and son of the Sun'. The device upon his ensign is *as het tat*, 'place of the heart (*i. e.* object of the affections) of the two lands.' Ranuser built the middle pyramid of Abousir, which is the smallest of the three, having a base of no more than 274 feet,

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 85.

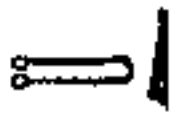
² Ibid. pp. 86-8. Uei khui besides being 'scribe of the palace,' keeper of the writings, and head receiver of petitions, was also 'chief of the granaries' and 'commander of the corps of recruits for the infantry service' (ibid. p. 86).

³ Ibid. p. 75.

⁴ This is the first instance of a

Egyptian king with two names, one that given to him when he was a child the other assumed at his accession. Persian monarchs had sometimes, in the same way, a original and a throne name. (*Ancient Monarchies*, vol. iii. p. 485, 2nd ed.)

⁵ *Derkmüller*, vol. iv. pt. ii. pl. 152 a.

with an elevation of 171 feet 4 inches.¹ His sepulchral chamber occupied the usual position, in the centre of the base, and was guarded with jealous care by granite blocks and a portcullis, which, however, did not prevent the penetration and plunder of the tomb by the Mohammedan conquerors. These insatiable treasure seekers 'broke through the pyramid from the top, and split up with iron wedges most of the blocks which seemed indestructible,'² disappointing the hopes of the builder, who had called his pyramid *men asu*, 'the (most) stable of places,'³ and at the same time disappointing their own hopes, for they assuredly found nothing therein to repay their labours. Ranuser's reign appears to have been long and prosperous. The Turin papyrus assigns him twenty five,⁴ and Manetho forty four⁵ years. A large number of magnificent tombs belong to his time,⁶ and reveal to us the names, titles, and circumstances of numerous grandees of his court, who basked in his favour while living, and, by inscribing his name upon their tombs, glorified him when dead. The finest of all these monuments is that which has been called 'the marvel of Saccarah,'⁷ the tomb of Ti, . This monument furnished to the Museum of Boulaq some of the most admirable of the portrait statues that it possesses,⁸ and is decorated with a series of elaborate painted bas reliefs in the best style of the early Egyptian art. We gather from the inscriptions upon its walls that the noble who erected it had at the outset of his career no advantages of birth, but rose by merit and by the favour of successive sove-

¹ Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 58, A.
² Ibid. p. 101. ³ *De Rougé*, vol. iii. pl. in pls. 55-59, *De Rougé, Recherches*, pp. 80-92.
⁴ Ibid. p. 102. ⁵ *De Rougé, Recherches*, p. 80.
⁶ Ibid. p. 75. ⁷ *De Rougé*, p. 92.
⁸ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. p. 103.

reigns to the highest position whereto it was possible for a subject to attain. The tomb of Ti was commenced under Kaka and finished under Ranuser,¹ who must be credited with the merit of rewarding talent and good conduct wherever he found it, whether in the ranks of the nobles or among the common people.

The immediate successor of Ranuser was Menkauhor, , who must have come to the throne when he was quite a youth, as appears by the subjoined representation of him,² which was found upon a slab built into one of the walls of the Serapeum at Memphis.³



Bas relief of Menkauhor

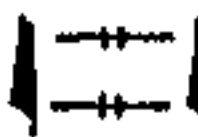
¹ De Rougé *Recherches* p. 97.

² Birch says, with reference to this portrait: 'He appears to have been youthful, with a good profile and rather a full face' (*Ancient*

Egypt, p. 18). De Rougé (*Recherches*, p. 99). 'Il paraît jeune, et son profil est très fin.'

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 91, De Rougé, l. s. c.

On this monument he is called 'the good god, lord of the two lands' ¹ He wears the elaborate projecting tunic commonly worn by kings in the later times, and a double chain or necklace, with a broad collar, round his neck. There are traces of a bracelet upon the left wrist. Over his head hovers the protecting hawk of Horus. Almost the only other existing monument of the reign of Menkauhor is his tablet at Wady Magharah, ² a very unpretending memorial, with no representation of his person upon it, no claim of conquest, and no title excepting the simple one 'king of Egypt.' Menkauhor, the Mencheres II. of Manetho, ³ must have died while still a young man, since his reign did not extend beyond eight, or at the most nine years ⁴ He was buried in a pyramid called *neter asu*, 'the (most) divine of places;' ⁵ but his tomb has not yet been identified

From Menkauhor the crown passed to Tat ka ra, , or Assa , the second king with two names ⁶ Like his immediate predecessor, he visited, in person or by his commissioners, the mines of Wady Magharah, where there had been some failure in one of the minerals on account of which they were worked ⁷ The investigations undertaken by his orders were not without result; a tablet was discovered, supposed to have been written by the god Thoth, which pointed out the exact locality where the precious *ma/ka* was to be found. Assa further built a pyramid which he called

¹ See the plate in M. de Rougé's *Recherches*, opp. p. 98, where I read these titles

² *Denkmaler* vol. iii pt. ii. pl. 30 c

³ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* l. sc.

⁴ The Turin papyrus gives the

for nor, Manetho the latter number (De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 75)

⁵ *Ibid* p. 99

⁶ See above, p. 73

⁷ Buch *Ancient Egypt* p. 48 Compare the *Denkmaler*, vol. iii pt. ii pl. 30 d

simply *nefer*, 'the good,'¹ and introduced the customary worship of his own divinity in connection with it.² His favourite title was Sa Ra  "son of the sun."³ The tombs of Saccarah and Ghizeh contain numerous notices of him,⁴ and show that, like the other kings of the period, he was fond of accumulating offices upon his favourites without much regard to their compatibility.⁵

The most interesting of the extant memorials belonging to the time of Assa is a papyrus—'probably the most ancient manuscript in the world'⁶ written by the son of a former king,⁷ who calls himself Ptah-hotep. The character used is the hieratic, and the subject of the treatise is the proper conduct of life, and the advantages to be derived from a right behaviour. Ptah-hotep states that he was a hundred and ten years old when he composed the work, and that he wrote it 'under the majesty of King Assa.' We shall make further reference, in the later part of this chapter, to its contents.⁸

The fifth Manethonian dynasty closes, and the period of Egyptian history commencing with Senusert terminates,⁹ with a monarch called Unas,  who

¹ De Rougé *Recherches*, p. 100.

² *Ibid.* pp. 100-1.

³ This title is found at Wady Magharah, and also in a legend quoted by De Rougé (*Recherches* p. 100, note 1). It was not as yet at all an ordinary title of the kings.

⁴ *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt. ii. pls. 60-72, and 73-8.

⁵ Khut-hotep, for instance, was 'priest of the pyramids of Rameses Menkaure, and 'Tatkari,' lord of the double treasury, 'commandant of the granaries, 'keeper of the records, and 'governor of Memphis' (De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 101-2).

⁶ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 92, 1st ed.

⁷ Dr. Brugsch calls him 'the son of Unas' (Is.), but De Rougé has pointed out the impossibility of this (*Recherches*, p. 102) since he wrote his book while Unas was still alive, and when his own age was 110.

⁸ See below, pp. 92-3.

⁹ This is an important point. The first marked division in the list of kings which appears in the Turin papyrus was after Unas, when there was an enumeration of the kings from the time of Menes, and of the sum total of the years

is no doubt the Onnos of Manetho¹ He reigned, according to the Turin papyrus thirty, according to Manetho thirty three, years² No great reliance can be placed on these numbers, and the fact that his pyramid, the *Mustabat-el Haraoun*, is truncated, or in other words unfinished,³ would seem to imply that his life came to an untimely end This edifice is an oblong building, constructed of enormous blocks of limestone, and was named by its builder *nefer asu*, 'the best place'⁴ Its original length from north to south was 309 feet, and its breadth 217. The height to which it had been carried up when the work ceased was no more than sixty feet⁵ There are no traces of Unas at Wady Magharah and his reign would, on the whole, seem to have been short and inglorious.

From the brief and bald account which is all that can be given of these kings, unless we surrender the reins to the imagination, and allow ourselves to depict from fancy the scenes of their life, and their civil or military employments, we may pass once more to the general condition of Egypt during the period, and its progress in arts, in religion, and in refinement of manners.

It is the glory of the period that it carried its own proper style of architecture to absolute and unsurpassable perfection The weak and tentative efforts of primitive times were suddenly thrown aside; and the

of their reigns. (See De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 105.)

¹ Ap. Syncell *Chronograph* vol i. p. 58, A

² Ibid. Compare De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 75.

³ De Rougé observes very pertinently. 'Si le Mustabat el-Haraoun avait dû avoir primitivement la forme de pyramide tronquée, on

ne voit pas pourquoi cette forme n'apparaîtrait pas comme déterminatif de la pyramide *Nefer-asu* (*Recherches* p. 103, note 1) But the determinative is the ordinary

complete pyramid, 

⁴ Ibid. p. 103.

⁵ Vyse, *Pyramids of Gizeh*, vol ii p. 53

early kings of the period advanced by an audacious leap from buildings of moderate dimensions not beyond the constructive powers of architects in most civilised countries to those gigantic piles which dwarf all other structures, and for size and mass have, up to the present time, no rivals. Khufu and Shafra found builders willing and able to carry out their desires for tombs that should shame all past and reduce to despair all future architects. They found men who could carry up solid stone buildings to the height of nearly 500 feet,¹ without danger of instability, or even any increased risk from pressure or settlement. These builders were able, first of all, to emplace their constructions with astronomical exactness; secondly, to employ in them, wherever it was needed, masonry of the most massive and enduring kind; thirdly, to secure the chambers and passages, which were essential features of such structures, by contrivances of great ingenuity, perfectly adapted to their purpose;² and fourthly, by their choice of lines and proportions, to produce works which, through their symmetry and the imposing majesty of their forms, impress the spectator, even at the present day, with feelings of awe and admiration, such as are scarcely excited by any other architectural constructions in the whole world.³

It is not surprising that the extraordinary burst of architectural power under Khufu and Shafra was followed by a reaction. Fashion, or religious prejudice, still required that the body of a king should be entombed in a pyramid;⁴ and from Menkaura to Unas

¹ See above, vol. i p. 197.

² Ibid pp. 191, 203, &c.

³ Vyse, *Pyramids of Gizeh*, vol. i p. 176.

⁴ We must not make the mistake

of converting this proposition, and assuming that 'every pyramid is the tomb of a king' (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 72, 1st ed.) Many, it is probable, cover the bodies

every successive monarch gave a portion of his time and attention to the rearing of such a monument. But, as all felt it 'hopeless to attempt to surpass the vast erections which the builders of the First and Second Pyramids had piled upon the rocky platform of Ghizeh, they not unnaturally gave up all idea of even vying with those 'giants of old time,' and were content with comparatively moderate and unpretending sepulchres. Menkaura set the fashion of constructing for himself a modest tomb,¹ and his example was followed by the remaining kings of the period. The monuments distinctly assignable to the later kings of Manetho's fourth, and to those of his fifth dynasty, are not any more remarkable than those which may be best referred to the times anterior to Khufu.

Besides their pyramids, the kings of the fourth and fifth dynasties built temples in a solid and enduring fashion; and within the last twenty years one of these has been dug out of the sand so far as to show what were its internal arrangements and general form and design. An account of this building, together with its ground plan, has been given in the first volume of this work.² It possesses the merit of great solidity and strength, and exhibits the employment of piers for the support of a roof, the original out of which grew the column. It is altogether without sculpture of any kind, the walls being perfectly plain and flat, and deriving their ornamentation entirely from the material of which they are composed, which is yellow alabaster,

of more princes and princesses. (See Herod. ii. 126.)

¹ This would be true, even if the entire Third Pyramid were the work of Menkaura, for it is less than one seventh of the size of the

Second. But it is still more strikingly true, if we regard the original nucleus of the pyramid (see above vol. i. p. 104) as alone the work of Menchouis.

² See vol. i. pp. 215-16.

yenite, or arragonite. Still we are told that the effect of the whole is good. 'The parts are pleasingly and effectively arranged;' and the entire building has 'that stately grandeur which is inherent in large masses of precious materials.'¹

The sculpture of the pyramid period is also remarkable. Shafra, the probable builder of the temple just described, ornamented it with several statues of himself, which at a later time were thrown into a pit or well within the building, and for the most part, most unfortunately, broken. One, however, survives, perfect in all its parts except the beard;² and the upper half of another is in tolerable preservation,³ so that the sculptural art of the time can be pretty fairly estimated. Some statues belonging to the reign of the later king, Manuser, have also been furnished by the tomb of Ti, and afford the critic further material upon which to form a judgment. The opinion of experts seems to be, that all the specimens have considerable merit.⁴ The figures are well proportioned; the faces carefully elaborated with all the minuteness of a portrait; the osseous structure and the muscles are sufficiently indicated; the finish is high, and the expression calm and dignified. There is, however, as universally in Egyptian sculpture, a certain stiffness, and an undue formality. The two feet are equally advanced; the arms repose side by side along the thighs, the head has no inclination to either side; the face looks directly in

¹ Fergusson, *History of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 106

² An excellent representation of this statue, taken from a photograph, will be found in the work of M. de Rougé so often quoted (*Recherches sur les Monuments*, &c., opp. p. 54)

³ See the woodcut on p. 58 of this

volume

⁴ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 38, 43. De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 54, 93. Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 337. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 78, 1st ed.; &c.

front of the figure, the beard is wholly conventional. If we compare the statues in question with even the archaic Greek,¹ we shall find them exceedingly inferior in all that constitutes the excellence of art. But it may be questioned whether Egyptian art, in the matter of statuary, ever went beyond, or even equalled, the productions of this early period. 'Art at this time,' as Lenormant justly says,² 'attains the most remarkable degree of perfection. It is thoroughly realistic; it aims, above everything, at rendering the bare truth of nature, without making any sort of attempt to idealise it. The type of man which it presents is characterised by something more of squatness and of rudeness than are seen in the works of the later schools; the relative proportions of the different parts of the body are less accurately observed; the muscular projections of the legs and arms are represented with too much exaggeration. Still, in this first and absolutely free development of Egyptian art, however imperfect it was, there lay the germs of more than Egypt ever actually produced, even in her most brilliant epochs. The art had life—a life which at a later date was choked by the shackles of sacerdotal tyranny. If the Pharaonic artists had preserved this secret to the time when they acquired their unequalled excellences of harmony of proportion and of majesty—qualities which they possessed in a higher degree than any other people in the world—they would have made as much progress as the Greeks; two thousand years before it was reached by the Greeks, they would have attained to the absolute

¹ As with the Æginetan marbles Egyptian.
 in the Glyptothek at Munich. Some
 from Blanchidæ in the British Mu-
 seum are more on a par with the

² *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*,
 vol. i pp. 340-1

perfection of artistic excellence. But then natural aptitudes were to a certain extent smothered in the cradle, and they remained imperfect, leaving to others the glory of reaching a point which will never be surpassed in the future.'

The principles laid down in this extract will apply, to a certain extent, to the bas-reliefs of the period, and not merely to the sculptures 'in the round.' While these fall short considerably of the later Egyptian efforts in variety, in delicacy of touch, and in vigour of composition, they have a simplicity, a naturalness, and an appearance of life which deserve high praise, and which disappear at a later date, when the inflexible laws of the hieratic 'canon of proportions' come into force, and the artists have to walk in fetters.¹ Notwithstanding a coarseness and clumsiness in some of the human forms, and an occasional uncertainty in the delineation of the animal ones, the sculptures which ornament the tombs of Ghizeh and Saccarah, and which can be assigned almost with certainty to this period, are both interesting and pleasing. They show that Egyptian art is alive, is progressive, is aiming at improvement. The forms, especially the animal forms, are better as we proceed; they show greater freedom and variety of attitude; and the new attitudes are both graceful and true to nature. At the same time, there is no straining after effect; the modesty of nature is not outraged by the artists; there is still abundance of the simple and the conventional; the whole effect is quiet, tranquil, idyllic, we seem to see Egyptian country life

¹ Buch holds that there was a 'canon of proportions' always, but that it varied at different periods (Wilkinson's *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. ii. p. 270, note, edition of 1878). Lenormant is of opinion that it was not the artists who were free (ibid., vol. i. p. 340).

reflected as in a mirror. Delicacy may be sometimes shocked by the result; but what is lost in refinement is gained in truthfulness and accuracy of representation.

In religion there is also an advance, but one that is less satisfactory. The Pantheon increases in its dimensions. Besides the gods of the primitive time¹—Ra, Set, Thoth, Hor or Harmachis, Osiris, Isis Athor, Phthah or Sokari, and Anubis—we find distinct traces of the worship of Nut, Seb, Khem, Kneph, Neith, Ma, Saf, and Heka.² Athor also is recognised as a substantive goddess, distinct from Isis;³ and Sokari appears to be distinguished from Phthah.⁴ The esteem in which Ra is held has grown, and one half of the kings have appellations which are composed with his name.⁵ The title *sa Ra*, 'son of the Sun,' begins to be used as a royal prefix,⁶ though not yet regularly. The divinity of the kings is more pronounced. They take the designations of 'the great god,' 'the good god,' 'the living Horus,' 'the good Horus,' as well as those of 'conquering Horus' and 'son of the Sun.' They add divine titles to their original names, as Khufu did when in the middle of his reign he became Num Khufu. They institute the worship of their own divinity in their lifetime, appoint their sons or other grandees to the office of their prophet or priest, and

¹ See above, p. 38.

² Of Nut and Seb on the coffin lid of Menkaura, of Khem in the name Kheintou (De Rougé *Recherches*, p. 50) and in the title taken by Shafia (supra, p. 61) of Kneph in Khufu's prefix, of Neith and Ma in the mention of their prophetesses (De Rougé, pp. 86, 88, 91, 97, &c.), of Saf in the name Saf-hotep (ib. p. 43) and in the appellation *Saf-meri*, 'beloved of Saf,' applied to a certain Akauhor (ib. p. 84), and of Heka in

one of the employments of Pehenuka which includes her name (ib. p. 88).

³ De Rougé, pp. 72, 80, &c.

⁴ Pehenuka, the favourite of Menkaura and Asoskaf, was priest both of Phthah (Ptah) and of Sokari (ib. p. 71).

⁵ *Ratatf*, *Shaf-ia*, *Menkaura*, *Sakura*, *Nesemkara*, *Ranuser*, and *Tatkaia*.

⁶ Supra, pp. 61 and 77.

load the persons so appointed with further favours. At the same time, however, they themselves worship the gods of the country, build temples to them, and assign lands to the temples by way of endowment.¹ Priests and 'prophets' are attached to these buildings, and the 'prophets' include persons of both sexes. The doctrine of the future life and of the passage of the soul through the Lower World acquires consistence; Osiris takes his place as the great Ruler of the Dead;² Anubis sinks to a lower position; and the 'Ritual' receives fresh chapters.³ Finally, the animal worship comes to the front; Apis has his priests and priestesses;⁴ and a 'white bull' and a 'sacred heifer' are also mentioned as invested with a divine character.⁵

An advance is also made in civilisation and the arts of life. Dress, on the whole, continues much the same; but the tunic of the higher classes becomes fuller, so as to project in front, and latterly it is made considerably longer, so as to descend halfway between the knee and the ankle.⁶ Its colour is either yellow or white, or partly one and partly the other, the yellow portion in such cases being often striped with lines of red.⁷ The collars worn by men become more complicated, and have sometimes a chain and pendant attached in front. Men are also seen with fillets adorning their heads;⁸ and women have head dresses of various kinds, some of which are exceedingly elegant. Their long gowns

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 47.

² Ibid. p. 65. Compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 41-2.

³ Supra, p. 65.

⁴ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 44, 58-61, &c. Perhaps the females attached to the worship of Apis should be called 'prophetesses' rather than 'priestesses'. Their

title is *netet hon*, 𓂏 not *ab*, 𓂏

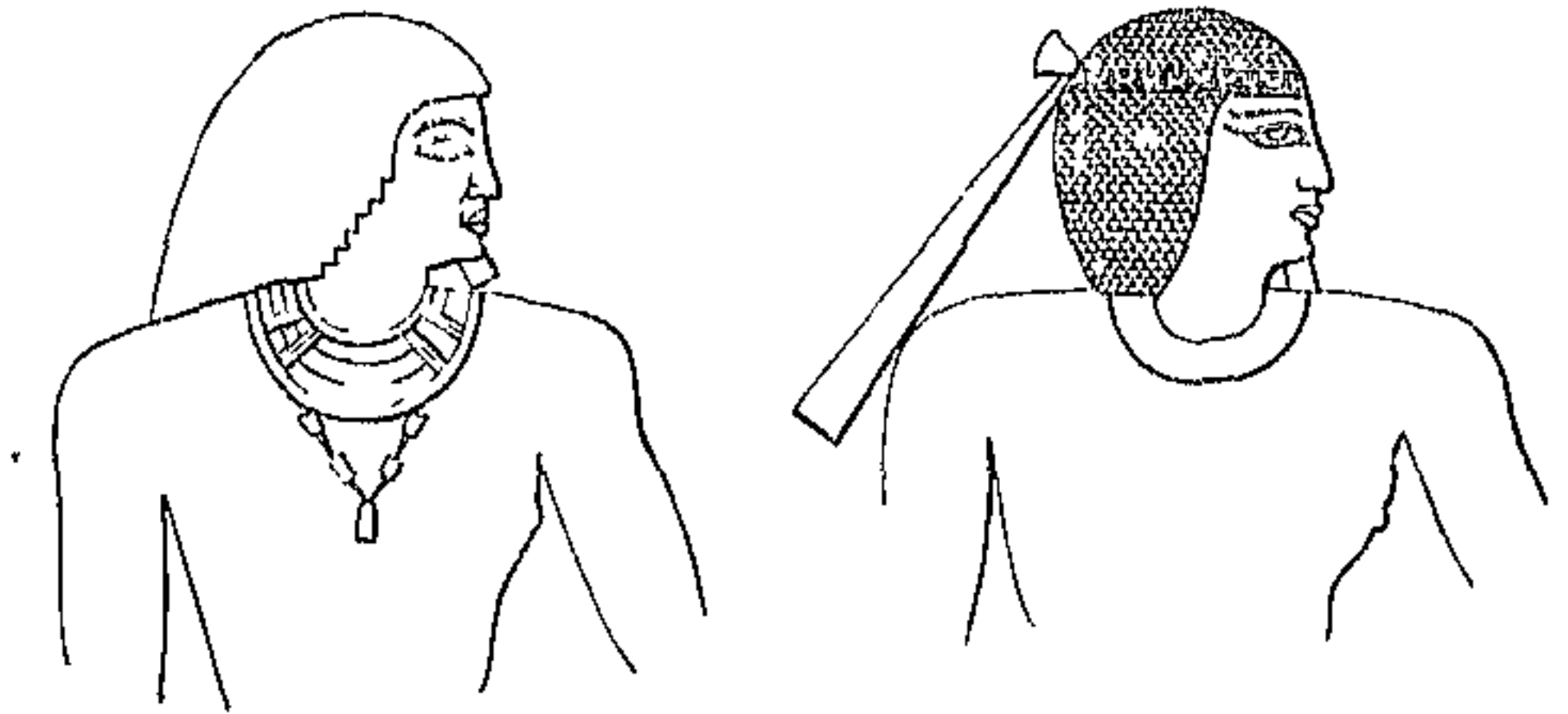
⁵ Ibid. p. 51.

⁶ See the *Denkmäler*, vol. iii. pt. 11 pls. 78, 79.

⁷ Ibid. pls. 19, 20.

⁸ Ibid. pls. 78, 97. This, however, is very unusual.

continue as scanty as ever, and are represented as



Ornaments worn by Men

either red or yellow. They wear broad collars, very much like those of the men, and have sometimes brace



Head dresses worn by Women

lets and anklets. The collars are commonly blue, or blue and white. The feet of the women are still in



Earliest Sandals.

every case naked; those of the men show sometimes

an incipient sandal, which is at first a mere strap passed under the heel and secured upon the instep,¹ but afterwards has a sole extending the whole length of the foot²

The division of classes, and the general habits of life, continued nearly as before; but the wealth of the upper class increased, and with it the extent of their households, and the number and variety of their retainers. Large landed estates descended from father to son, of which the cultivation necessitated the employment of hundreds of labourers or slaves. These required numerous superintendents; and the general business of the farm necessitated the services of some ten or a dozen scribes,³ who rendered their accounts to a steward or bailiff. The chief trades needed for providing the necessaries of life were established upon the estate, and the carpenter, the potter, the tailor, the worker in metal, the furniture maker, and even the glass blower,⁴ seem to have had their place among the dependents of every opulent family, and to have worked for a single master. The estate itself consisted of two portions—arable and pasture lands; the former cultivated in grain and vegetables with great care, the latter utilised for the breeding and fattening of cattle. Domestication had by this time brought into subjection not only cows and oxen, but goats, sheep, several kinds

¹ See the *Denkmalen*, vol iii pt ii pls 18, 50 b. The former of these two monuments belongs to the time of Shafīa.

² Ibid. pl. 80 c.

³ Scribes are seen at work from the time of Shafīa. They have a pen or paint-brush in the right hand and one or two behind the ear. With their left hand they hold

then paper and palette. They commonly sit or squat at their work (See the *Denkmalen*, pt ii, pls 9, 11, 19, 51, &c.)

⁴ For glass blowing, see the *Denkmalen*, vol iii pt ii pls. 28 and 74, and for the other trades named see especially pl 49 of the same work.

of antelope,¹ asses, and at least seven kinds of birds.² These included geese, ducks, pigeons, and cranes or herons,³ together with other species not to be distinctly recognised. The domestic fowl was, however, still unknown, and indeed remained a stranger to Egypt throughout the entire period of independence.⁴ The wealth of some landowners consisted to a large extent in their animals, we find one at a very early date who possessed above a thousand cows and oxen, besides 2,235 goats, 974 sheep, and 760 asses.⁵ Pet animals were also much affected, and included, besides dogs, the fox, the hare, the monkey, and the cynocephalous ape.⁶

An important produce of the farm was wine. Vines were trained artificially,⁷ and the juice was expressed from the grapes either by treading,⁸ or by means of a wine press.⁹ After passing through the vat, it was drawn off and stored in amphoræ. Profit was also derived from the wild creatures which frequented the marshes or the waters included within the property. Fish were caught, split, and dried in the sun,¹⁰ after which they became an article of commerce, wild fowl were taken in clap-nets, and either killed or subjected to a process of domestication.

The ass was the only beast of burden; horses

¹ Domesticated antelopes are frequently represented in the tombs (See *Denkmaler*, pt ii pls 12 b, 17 b, 28, 80, 140, &c.)

² Seven kinds of domesticated birds, with their respective names, are figured on a tomb given in the *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 70.

³ Cranes or herons are also very frequently represented among the poultry of a farm (*ibid* pls 17 b, 45 c, 50 b, &c.)

⁴ Ruel, *Ancient Egypt*, p 45

⁵ *Denkmaler*, vol iii pt ii pl. 9.

⁶ Foxes appear in pls. 11, 14 c, 15 b, 45 c, &c. hares in pls 3 12 b, and elsewhere, the common small monkey in pls 30 b and c, and the cynocephalous ape in pl. 13

⁷ See above, vol i p 107

⁸ *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 93 s

⁹ *Ibid* pls 13, 40, 93 s, &c.

¹⁰ *Ibid* pls 12 b and 43.

were unknown¹ There were no wheeled vehicles; and the burdens which the asses were made to bear appear to have been excessive² For heavy commodities, however, water carriage was preferred; and the Nile with its canals formed the chief means for the transportation of farming produce Large boats were in use from a very early period, some being mere row-boats,³ while others were provided with masts, and could hoist a big square mainsail⁴ The number of rowers was in the early times from eight or ten to eighteen or twenty, but at a later date we find as many as forty six⁵ When the sail was hoisted, the rowers ordinarily rested on their oars, or even shipped them and sat at their ease, but sometimes both sail and oars seem to have been employed together A heavy kind of barge without a sail was used for the transport of cattle and of the more weighty merchandise,⁶ and was propelled by six or eight rowers Light boats were also employed to a large extent for the conveyance of animals, for the saving of cattle from the inundation, and for sporting and other purposes.⁷

The amusements of the upper classes seem to have consisted mainly in hunting, fowling, and listening to music Dogs were still of one kind only—that which has been called the ‘fox-dog’ or ‘wolf-dog,’⁸ which has long pricked up ears, a light body, and a stiffly curled tail.⁹ This was admitted into the house, and is

¹ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 44

² See the *Denkmalen*, pt. ii. pls. 43 a, 47, 56, 80 c, 103 b, &c.

³ Ibid. pls. 10, 12 a, 22 d, &c.

⁴ Ibid. pls. 22 d, 45 a, 64 bis, &c. For a representation, see above, vol. i. p. 509.

⁵ See the *Denkmalen*, pt. ii. pl. 45 b.

⁶ Ibid. pls. 92, 103, and 104.

On page Herod. ii. 96.

⁷ Lepsius, *Denkmalen*, pt. i. pls. 12 b, 60, 77, &c.; Mariette, *Momuments Divers*, pl. 17.

⁸ Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. ii. pp. 99–100 (edition of 1878), and Buch's note.

⁹ For one representation see above, page 37; and for another, see vol. i. p. 77, No. 2.

commonly seen sitting under the chair of its master, but it was also frequently employed in the chase of wild animals. The antelope was no doubt the beast chiefly hunted, and the dogs must have been exceedingly fleet of foot to have run it down; but the chase appears to have included other animals also, as hares, jerboas, porcupines, lynxes, and even hedgehogs!¹ In some of the hieratic papyri, packs of hounds, numbering two or three hundred, are mentioned;² but these belong to a later age; under the fourth and fifth dynasties we have no evidence that any individual hunted with more than three or four dogs at a time, or indeed possessed a greater number. Dogs had names, which are often written over or under their representations,³ e.g. Abu, , Ken, , Tarm, , Akna, , &c., as horses had at a later time; but the other domestic pets would seem not to have enjoyed the distinction.

Fowling was practised in the way already described,⁴ by entering the reedy haunts of the wild fowl in a light skiff, provided with decoy birds, probably taught to utter their note, and thus approaching sufficiently near them to kill or wound them with a throw stick. The throw-stick of the early times is either the curved weapon common later, or a sort of double bludgeon presenting a very peculiar appearance.⁵

Music was an accompaniment of the banquet. It was always concerted, and in the time of the fourth and fifth dynasties consisted ordinarily of the harmony

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii pls. 12 and 46

² Birch in Wilkinson's *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. ii p. 100, note

³ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii pls. 17 c, 36 a, 42, and 52

⁴ See above, vol. i pp. 540-1

⁵ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii pl. 12 b.

of three instruments, the harp, the flute, and the pipe Bands numbered about four or five persons, of whom two were harpers, one or two players on the flute, and one a piper. Two or three others assisted to keep time, and increased the volume of sound by the loud clapping of their hands¹. All the musicians were men. Sometimes dancing of a solemn and formal kind accompanied the musical performance, both sexes taking part in it, but separately, and with quite different gestures.

An amusement, but a very occasional amusement, of the upper classes at this time would seem to have been literature. The composition of the ordinary inscriptions upon tombs, and in sepulchral chambers, belonged probably to a professional class, who followed conventional forms, and repeated with very slight changes the same stereotyped phrases upon monument after monument. But, now and then, there was a production of something which approached more nearly to a literary character. The 'Book of the Precepts of Prince Ptah-hotep' though the only extant work of the kind which can be referred to this period, is probably a *specimen* of performances, not very uncommon, wherewith the richer and more highly educated classes of the time occupied their leisure, and solaced their declining years. It is stated to be 'the teaching of the governor, Ptah-hotep, under the majesty of King Assa long may he live!' The object aimed at by the work was 'to teach the ignorant the principle of good words, for the good of those who listen, and to shake the confidence of such as wish to infringe' It lays down, primarily, the duties of sons and of subjects, who

¹ *Denkmdler*, pls 30 b, 52, 74 c, &c

are alike exhorted to obedience and submission. 'The obedience of a docile son,' says Ptah hotep, 'is a blessing; the obedient walks in his obedience. He is ready to listen to all which can call forth affection; obedience is the greatest of benefits. The son who accepts the words of his father will grow old in consequence. For obedience is of God; disobedience is hateful to God. The obedience of a son to his father, this is joy . . . such a one is dear to his father; and his renown is in the mouth of all those who walk upon the earth. The rebellious man, who obeys not,' he goes on to say, 'sees knowledge in ignorance, the virtues in the vices, he commits daily with boldness all manner of crimes, and herein lives as if he were dead. What the wise know to be death is his daily life; he goes his way, laden with a heap of imprecations. Let thy heart,' he adds, 'wash away the impurity of thy mouth; fulfil the word of thy master. Good for a man is the discipline of his father, of him from whom he has derived his being. It is a great satisfaction to obey his words; for a good son is the gift of God.' And the upshot of all is—'The obedient will be happy through his obedience; he will attain old age, he will acquire favour. I myself have in this way become one of the ancients of the earth; I have passed 110 years of life by the gift of the king, and with the approval of the aged, fulfilling my duty to the king in the place of his favour.' The moral level attained cannot be regarded as high; but as a composition the work is not devoid of merit. The balance of ideas and of phrases recalls the main essential of Hebrew poetry;¹ the style is pointed and terse, the

¹ See the *Bampton Lectures* of the present Bishop of Derry, pp. 177-80.

expressions natural, the flow of the language easy and pleasing. If Ptah hotep is not a great moral philosopher, he is a fair writer; there are passages in his work which resemble the Proverbs of Solomon or the Wisdom of the Son of Sirach.¹ We can well understand that in the infancy of literary composition, when there were no models to follow, or standards with which to fear comparison, men of education would find the rôle of author agreeable, and would devote to it a portion of their leisure time with a feeling of great satisfaction.

The advance of luxury is seen in the number and variety of the dishes served at the sacrificial feasts, where the joints may be counted by the dozen, ducks and geese by the half dozen, loaves by the score, cakes and rolls by the hundred, amphoræ by the dozen, and where the viands provided comprise also fish, hares, onions, eggs, and fruit of a variety of kinds.² According to the best English authority, the Egyptian lord of this time 'no more disdained the hyæna for food than a modern epicure the semi-carnivorous bear; but he abhorred that universal animal, the pig, and neglected the sheep; veal and beef, not pork or mutton, were the principal meats that appeared at his table. The

¹ As for instance, the following
1 'If thou art become great after thou hast been humble, and if thou hast amassed riches after poverty, and art come to be the first man in thy city, if thou art known for thy wealth, and hast become a great lord, let not thy heart grow proud because of thy riches for it is God who has given them unto thee

2 'Despise not another who is as thou wast, be towards him as towards thine equal'

3 'Happiness makes one content with any abode; but a small dis-

grace darkens the life of a great man'

4 'Good words shine more than the emerald which the hand of the slave finds among a heap of pebbles'

5 'The wise man is satisfied with what he knows; content dwells in his heart and his lips speak words that are good.'

6 'Let thy face be cheerful as long as thou livest. Has anyone who has once entered the grave come forth from it?'

² *Denkmalen*, pt. ii. pls. 52, 57 b, 61 c, &c.

different kinds of venison were much prized; cranes and herons he sometimes ate, but his principal poultry consisted of different kinds of ducks and geese, the chenalopex or vulpanser amongst them. The dove and the pigeon passed into his flesh pots, nor was the insipid fish of the Nile unknown to him. His bread was made of barley, but conserves of dates and various kinds of biscuits or pastry diversified his diet; and of fruits he had grapes, figs, dates; of vegetables, the papyrus, the onion, and other greens. Wine and beer were both drunk at the period, in addition to water and milk.¹ Among the elegancies of the banquet was the use of flowers. Lotuses were carefully gathered by his servants in the ponds and canals, were wreathed round the wine jar and the water jar, twisted in garlands about the head of the host and his guests, decorated many of the dishes, and were held in the hand as a nosegay.² Instead of the stool which had contented his ancestors, he indulged not unfrequently in a chair with a low back and a square arm, on which he rested his hand or elbow.³ When he left the house for an airing, he was sometimes conveyed in a species of palanquin, which was placed between two poles like a sedan chair, and borne on the shoulders of his servants.⁴ He encouraged art, and employed sculptors on portrait statues of himself or his wife,⁵ which were either of wood or stone, and in the latter case were

¹ Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 45.

² Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 12 b, 27, 30, 36 c, 67, 68, &c.

³ *Ibid.* pls. 57 b, 61 a, 69, 71 a, &c.

⁴ *Ibid.* pls. 50 and 98 b. In the former representation the number of the bearers would seem to be twelve, in the latter twenty-six. The primitive palanquin is of a

Judean land than that represented in vol. i. p. 535, which belongs to the time of the twelfth dynasty.

⁵ See Mariette, *Monuments Diverses* pl. 20, and compare the illustration facing p. 82. For a wooden head of this period, see Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. opp. p. vii, 1st ed.

occasionally colossal. These last were sometimes erect, sometimes sitting figures, and after completion were dragged into proper position by a number of men.¹

The condition of the lower orders was probably not very different in the primitive and in the pyramid periods, except during two reigns. While Khufu and Shafra were on the throne there must have been considerable oppression of the poor,² and suffering caused thereby, through the forced labour which they must have employed, the unhealthy concentration of vast masses of men on particular sites, and the accidents inseparable from the elevation into place of huge blocks of stone, when human rather than mechanical power was the motive force applied. But the lesser erections of the other kings may have been reckoned an advantage by the labouring class, as furnishing an occupation unattended with much danger, and raising the rate of wages by the demand which it produced upon the labour market. The increased wealth of the nobles, arising as it did chiefly from the great productiveness of the soil, and from skill in its cultivation, together with success in the breeding and treatment of cattle, must also have tended to raise the labourer's position, and place him above the fear of want or even of real poverty. There is reason to believe that up to this period of Egyptian history there was no large employment of slaves, wars were of rare occurrence, and when they took place, not many prisoners could be made, for the tribes upon the Egyptian borders were none of them numerous; slaves might occasionally be bought, but these passed commonly into domestic service;³ and the result was that both the cultivation of

¹ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. ii pls. 64 bis, b, and 104 c

² See above, p. 53

³ As Joseph did (Gen. xlii. 1-4)

the soil, and most of the other industrial pursuits, were in the hands of the native Egyptians, and furnished them with an ample variety of not disagreeable careers. We do not see the stick employed on the backs of the labourers in the early sculptures; they seem to accomplish their various tasks with alacrity and almost pleasure. They plough, and hoe, and reap; drive cattle or asses; winnow and store corn; gather grapes and tread them, singing in chorus as they tread; cluster round the wine-press or the threshing floor, on which the animals tramp out the grain; gather lotuses; save cattle from the inundation; engage in fowling or fishing, and do all with an apparent readiness and cheerfulness which seems indicative of real content. It is true that the sculptures are not photographs; they *may* give a flattering picture of things, and not represent them as they were, but we do not generally find that oppressors care to conceal their oppression, or to make out that the classes which they despise are happy under their yoke. Add to this, that the Egyptian moral code required kindness to be shown towards dependents,¹ and the conclusion would seem to be at least probable, that the general contentment and cheerfulness of the labouring classes, which we seem to see in the sculptures of the pyramid period, was a reality.

¹ Buch. *Ancient Egypt*, p. 46

CHAPTER XV.

THE SIXTH DYNASTY—CULMINATION AND DECLINE.

Marked Division between the Fifth and Sixth Dynasties Shift of Power to the South First Evidence of a united Egypt. Group of four Monarchs Teti, Pepi (Merui) Meremna, and Neferkara Probable Position of Ati Reign of Teti. Reign of Pepi First great War Reflections to which it gives rise—Pepi's Pyramid and Titles Position of Unas under him—Family of Pepi Reign of Meremna Reign of Neferkara. Traditions respecting Nitocris Sudden Decline of Egypt at the Close of the Sixth Dynasty Culmination of the early Egyptian Art, and Advance of Civilisation under it

La première civilisation de l'Égypte finit avec la sixième dynastie
LE NORMANT, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 347

Both Manetho and the author of the Turin papyrus regarded the death of Unas as constituting a marked division in Egyptian history. Manetho, who made the fifth dynasty Elephantine,¹ declared the sixth to be Thebanitic,² thus affirming a separation of locality, and probably of blood, between the two. The existing remains confirm the fact of such a separation, but exactly invert Manetho's local arrangement, connecting as they do in the strongest way the monarchs of the fifth dynasty with Memphis and its vicinity,³ while they attach those of the sixth to Middle and Upper Egypt,⁴ and exhibit them as at any rate visiting Elephantine,⁵ if not holding their court there. The Turin papyrus is

¹ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 7, D.

² Ibid. p. 58, A.

³ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 76-7.

⁴ Ibid. p. 114. Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. 1 p. 66, 1st ed.; Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 51.

⁵ *Records of the Past*, vol. 11 p. 4.

content to draw a strong line of demarcation at this point, without expressing the ground of it. On the whole, it would seem to be certain that, down to the death of Unas, Memphis was the great seat of Egyptian empire; while with the accession of the sixth dynasty there was a shift of power to the southward. Abydos, or some place in its neighbourhood, became the residence of the kings; the quarries of El Kaab and Hammamât were worked instead of those of Mokattam; the vicinity of Abydos became the great burial place of the time. There was, however, no disintegration of the empire; Memphis continued subject to the kings who ruled in Middle Egypt; and both the extreme north and the extreme south owned their power. Their monuments are found at Tanis and at Assouan, as well as at Hammamât, El-Kaab, and Saïet el Meïm;¹ and they were evidently masters of Egypt in its widest extent, from 'the tower of Syené' to the Mediterranean.

What was the extent of the Egypt ruled by the great pyramid kings and the other monarchs of the fourth and fifth dynasties is more doubtful. As these monarchs worked the mines of Wady Magharah, we must suppose them to have held under their sway the entire low tract east of the Nile from Memphis to the Syrian Desert; and they *may* have been masters also of the Delta, and of the Nile valley as far as the cataracts. But it is important to note that we have no proof that they were. The monarchs of what we have called 'the Pyramid period' are only proved to have possessed the tract about Memphis, and the line of country connecting that tract with the mines of Wady

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt, Denkmaler*, vol. iv. pt. ii. pls. 105
vol. i. pp. 98-101, 1st ed.; Lepsius, 117.

Magharah—there are no memorials of them in the Delta, none in Upper Egypt,¹ none even in Middle Egypt—and it is possible that those tracts were not under their rule. With the sixth dynasty we have the first evidence of a united Egypt, of monarchs who reign over the entire Nile valley from Elephantine to the marsh tract bordering upon the Mediterranean Sea.² At the same time we come upon the first evidence of a decidedly martial spirit,³ of expeditions on a large scale, of elaborate military training, of the attention of the nation being turned to arms from agriculture. It is a reasonable conjecture that the kings of the sixth dynasty, more warlike than their predecessors, may have been the first to make that united Egypt which we find existing in their day, and that their foreign conquests may have been the result of a previous internal consolidation of the Egyptian power in its own proper territory.

The sixth dynasty is mainly composed of a group of four monarchs, who bore the names of Teti, Pepi or Merira, Merenra, and Neferkara.⁴ The last three were near relations—Pepi being the father of both Merema

¹ No doubt the granite syenite, &c. used in the pyramids and other constructions of these kings, must have been obtained from Upper Egypt, and the free employment of these materials makes it probable that their authority extended to Syenê, but this probability falls considerably short of a proof. It is quite possible that they imported the granite from the dominions of other friendly kings.

² It is conceivable, however, that even at this time there may have been independent kings in the western part of the Delta, at Sais, for instance, or Xoïs, or even at

Sabe mytus (Sonnood)

³ The only indications of war furnished by the pyramid period are the tablets of Senusert, Khufu, and Sahm at Wady Magharah, and the employment of certain military hieroglyphs (De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 91, 101 &c.)

⁴ These four monarchs form a connected group in the monuments (De Rougé, pp. 148-9), and in the tale of Sacnatah. The inscription of Una closely unites three of the four Teti, Pepi, and Merema (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii pp. 3 and 6).

and Neferkara, who succeeded in due order to their father's sovereignty. Whether Teta belonged to the same family is uncertain. The Egyptian kings of the early period very rarely note their relationship one to another,¹ and it is quite an exceptional circumstance that we are able to trace the family connection of three consecutive monarchs in this dynasty.

Besides the four chief monarchs of the time, around whom the history clusters, we have three other monumental names, apparently belonging to the same period, the exact position of which in the list it is difficult to determine. These are Ati, Userkara, and Imhotep. Ati, , appears in an inscription at Hammamât, set up in his first year,² which shows him to have built a pyramid called Bai-u, or that 'of the souls.' In style the inscription so closely resembles those of other kings of this time that it is supposed to prove him a monarch of the dynasty,³ though probably one whose reign occupied but a short time and was not of any importance. What exact position should be given him is open to question. Some critics, assimilating his name to that of the Manethonian Othoës, are inclined to put him first, and to regard him as the founder of the sixth dynasty.⁴ Others would give him the second place in the dynasty, directly after Teta,⁵ in which case it would be natural to regard him as identical with Userkara, , to whom the table of Seti I at Abydos assigns

¹ Each king is so absorbed in the glories of his divine ancestry as to neglect all reference to his human progenitors. The kings generally seem ashamed of acknowledging that they had any earthly father.

² Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iv pt. ii pl. 115 f.

³ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 149.

⁴ As Leionant (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 343).

⁵ Brugse, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 97, 1st ed. De Rougé (1900) thinks Ati may have held either position.

that position. Imhotep, , might in that case be relegated to the period following Nefekara, if in deed he were really a king of Egypt, which scarcely appears from his inscription.¹

Omitting from further consideration these insignificant and doubtful monarchs, we shall regard the sixth dynasty as consisting of four chief kings—Teta, Pepi (=Merira), Merenra, his son, and Nefekara, Merenra's brother, and of a single queen, Nitocris (Net-akert), who terminated the series.

Teta, , who succeeded Unas, either directly or after a very short interval,² was not a monarch of any distinction. He built a pyramid which he called *Tut asu*,³ 'the (most) lasting of places;' and he conferred favours on an officer named Sabu, or Abeba, whom he made his companion in his voyages, and otherwise distinguished above all the rest of his courtiers.⁴ He also must be allowed the credit of having recognised the promise of more than ordinary talent in a youth of the official class named Una, whom he selected from the mass of candidates, and attached immediately to his person. Una, who became the right hand of Teta's successor, Pepi, and of Pepi's son, Merenra, received his first promotion from King Teta, who conferred upon him the dignities of 'crown-bearer,' 'superintendent of the storehouse,' and 'registrar,' or 'sacred scribe, of the docks.'⁵

Pepi, the probable successor of Teta, rejoiced in

¹ *Denkmäler*, vol. iv. pt. ii. pl. 115 h. The name has the cartouche certainly, but it is not preceded or followed by any royal title.

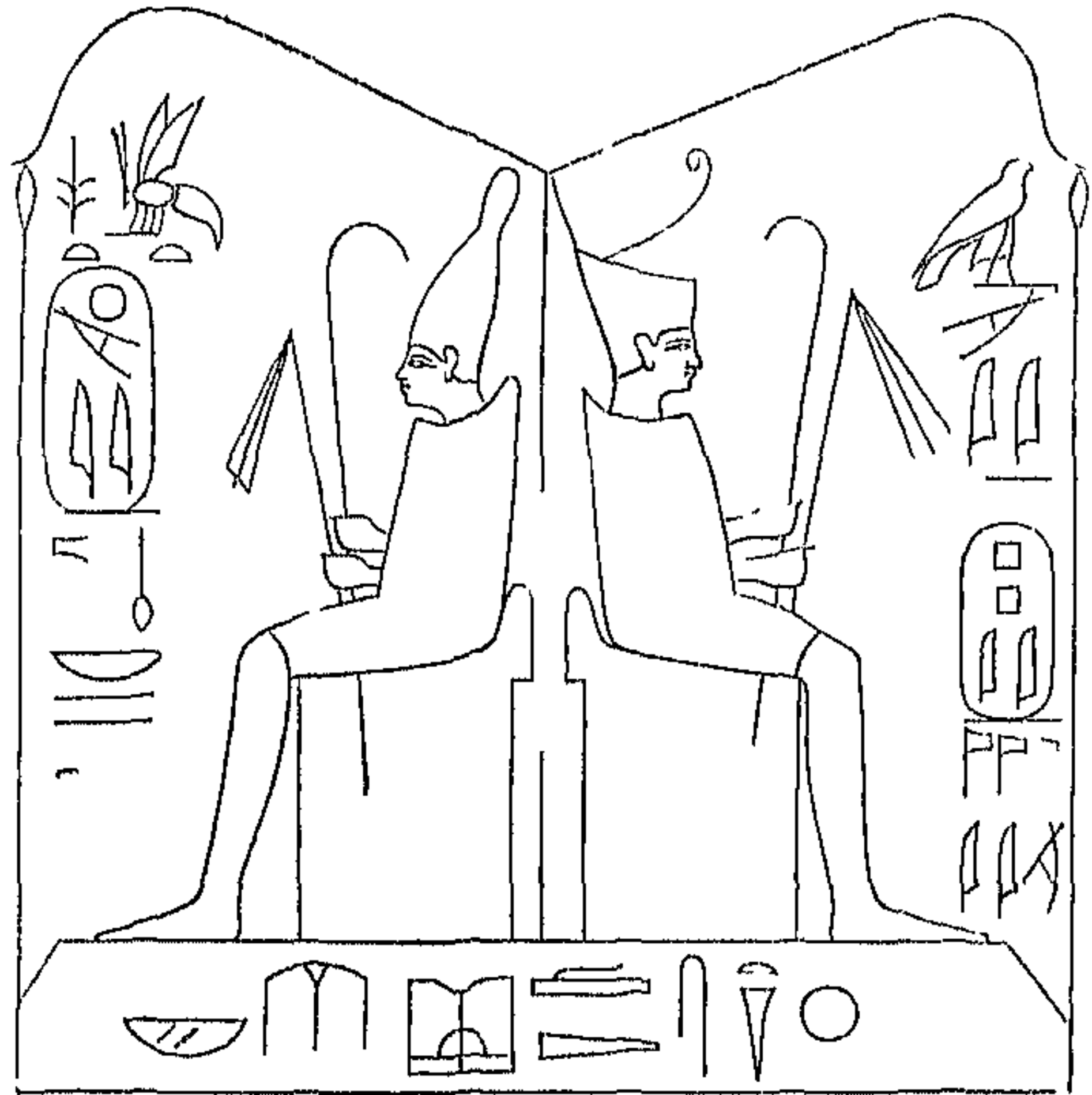
² Unas's inscription (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 3) is sufficient proof of this.

³ On 'Tut-setu,' according to Brugsch (l. s. c.) Its position is at present unknown.

⁴ De Rougé, *Recherches*, pp. 110, 111.

⁵ *Records of the Past*, l. s. c.

the two names of Pepi, , and Merira, , by which he seems to have designated himself indifferently. In one tablet¹ we see two representations of him, seated back to back, and accompanied by inscriptions equally descriptive of royalty, in one of which the name Pepi, and in the other the name Merira, is



Tablet of Pepi

attached to the image of his majesty.' Pepi had a prosperous and a long reign, though certainly not the hundred years assigned him by Manetho,² since Una,

¹ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol. iv. pt. ii. pl. 115 a. This has generally been understood to be Manetho's view, according to Africanus. Eusebius, *Ap. Syncell. Chronograph*, vol. i.

who was grown to manhood and held high office in the reign of his predecessor, outlived him by several years, and was after his death in the employment of his son and successor¹ His eighteenth year is the highest mentioned on the monuments;² but it is probable that he reigned longer. Pepi is the first king of Egypt who exhibits a marked warlike tendency. In his second year³ he made an expedition against the Mentu, who had recovered possession of the Sinaitic peninsula, and, having reduced them, set up his tablet in a somewhat unusual form⁴ on the rocks of the Wady Magharah. Not long after, he turned his arms against the Amu and the Herusha, two peoples living in the sands of the desert to the east of Lower Egypt⁵ Regarding these enemies as really formidable, Pepi exerted himself to collect and drill an army of unusual size, counted by tens of thousands⁶ His first levies were made in the north among the native Egyptians; but looking upon the forces thus raised as insufficient, he determined to obtain the strength that he deemed requisite by calling on the negro tribes of the south to furnish him with a contingent. The date at which these tribes were made subject to Egypt is uncertain, but it was clearly before the time of Pepi; and his power over them was so completely established that he

however, makes Manetho say that Pepi (Phops) ascended the throne at the age of six, and lived to be a hundred (ib 58, D).

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol ii pp 6 8

² Lepsius *Denkmaler*, vol iv pt. ii. pl 110 a

³ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 52, *Denkmaler*, 1 s c.

⁴ The tablet consists of two parts. In the left-hand compart-

ment Pepi is represented as king of Upper Egypt, slaying one of the Mentu, in the right-hand one he appears as king of Lower Egypt, bearing the flagellum and running

⁵ So Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 99, 1st ed Compare De Rougé (*Recherches*, p 122) and Buch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 52).

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol ii p 4, line 14.

had only to demand troops and they were furnished. From Arcet, from Zam,¹ from Amam, from Ua uat, from Kaau, and from Tatan, the swarthy bands gathered themselves together, and entering southern Egypt placed themselves at the disposition of the Pharaoh. They were no doubt a wild and disorderly crew; and it was of the first necessity to set officers over them, and subject them to a course of drill, in order to render their services of any value. The persons entrusted with this duty were a somewhat motley assemblage. They consisted of 'the nomarchs, the chancellors, the close friends of the palace, the superintendents, the rulers of the nomes of the North and of the South, the superintendents of the gold region, the superintendents of the priests of the South and of the North, the superintendents of the register,' and of various other 'officers of the South, and of the North, and of the cities.'² Whether the drill which took place under their auspices was effectual or not it is impossible to say. The troops, however, when regarded as sufficiently trained, were concentrated. Unu, the official above mentioned, and the historian of the campaign, prepared the commissariat, 'wearing out his sandals' in his assiduous performance of the task allotted him; after a march of some considerable length, the country of the Hierusha was reached, and the war began. 'The warriors came,' says Unu, 'and destroyed the land of the Hierusha, and returned fortunately home, and they came again, and took possession of the land of the Hierusha, and returned fortunately home; and they came and demolished the fortresses of

¹ So Brugsch reads the word (ii p 41, line 15) (*History of Egypt*, vol i p 100, 1st ed). Others give the name as 'Nam' (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii p 5). Compare *Records* vol ii, p 5. Compare De Rougé, *Recherches*, p 124.

the Herusha, and returned fortunately home; and they cut down the vines and the fig-trees, and returned fortunately home; and they set fire to the houses, and returned fortunately home; and they killed the chief men by tens of thousands, and returned fortunately home. And the warriors brought back with them a great number of living captives, which pleased the king more than all the rest. Five times did the king send me out to set things right in the land of the Herusha, and to subdue their revolt by force: each time I acted so that the king was pleased with me.¹ Even yet, however, the war was not over. The enemy collected in a tract known as Takheba, to the north of their own proper country, and took up a threatening attitude. Once more the Egyptian army was sent against them, this time conveyed in boats, and gained a complete victory; the country was subdued to the extreme frontier towards the north, and acknowledged the supremacy of Pepi.²

The locality of this campaign is somewhat doubtful. It has been regarded as either Syria or some portion of Arabia Petrea,³ and Pepi has been supposed to have sent his troops to their destination *by sea*.⁴ But the latest critic suggests a district of the Delta as the true scene of the struggle, believing that the more northern portion of this tract, the country round Lake Menzaleh, was at this time occupied by the ancestors of the Bedouin tribes who now inhabit the desert of Suez.⁵ In this case the boats employed would merely have descended the Nile, or have traversed portions of the lake just mentioned.

The circumstances of the expedition give rise to

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 125.

⁴ *Ibid* p. 126

² *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pt. 6

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,

³ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 17.

vol. i. p. 101, 1st ed.

certain reflections. In the first place, it is remarkable that we find the negro races of the south already subdued without any previous notice, in any of the Egyptian remains, of the time or circumstances of their subjugation. One writer, seeing the difficulty, boldly states that 'Pepi reduced these enemies to obedience ;'¹ but this fact, which is not mentioned by any authority, has been evolved out of his inner consciousness. We find the negroes already obedient subjects of Pepi when they are first mentioned as coming into contact with him and his enlistment of them as soldiers to fight his battles would seem to imply that their subjugation had not been very recent. It is necessary to suppose that some monarch of the fourth or fifth dynasty had made them Egyptian subjects, without leaving behind him any record of the fact, or at any rate without leaving any record that has escaped destruction.

In the next place, it may raise some surprise, that, when there is a mention of so many nations as near neighbours to Egypt upon the south, nothing is said respecting the Cushites or Ethiopians. In later times Cushite races bordered Egypt on the south, and fierce wars were waged between the Pharaohs and the Ethiopian monarchs for the mastery of the valley of the Nile. But in the time of Pepi the Cushites were evidently at a distance. The conjecture is made that they had not yet immigrated into Africa, but still remained wholly in their original Asiatic seats, and only crossed at a later date, by way of the Straits of Bab el Mandeb, into the tract upon the middle Nile which they subsequently inhabited.² But perhaps this is too violent a supposition. The negro races mentioned in the in-

¹ Lenoir mant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 344

² Ibid.

scription of Una need not have inhabited a very large tract of country; and the Cushites may have held all Abyssinia without obtaining mention in the inscription of Una or even attracting the attention of Pepi.

Thirdly, the question may be asked, Who were the Herusha? De Rouge translates the word 'lords of the sands,' and suggests that they were a Syro Arabian race,¹ but can give no geographic or other illustrations. Of course, if the word is Egyptian and descriptive, not ethnic, it is in vain to look for parallels to it among real ethnic appellatives. Later mentions of the Herusha place them towards the north, and give them a productive land,² such as can scarcely be found in this direction nearer than Palestine.

Like his predecessor, Teta, and like most monarchs of the fourth and fifth dynasties, Pepi constructed a pyramid, to receive his remains when he should pass from earth. The name which he gave to it was Men-nefer, 'the good abode'—the same designation as that of the old capital, Memphis, which had now probably ceased to be the residence of the court. The white stone sarcophagus, which he intended to occupy the sepulchral chamber of this edifice, and which no doubt ultimately received the royal mummy was conveyed by Una, at his order, from the Mokattam quarries in 'the great boat of the inner palace,'³ with its cover, a door, two jambs, and a basin or pedestal, to the site chosen for the tomb. Other works assigned to Pepi are repairs to the temple of Athor at Denderah,⁴ and one or more edifices at Taus in the Delta, which he adorned with blocks of pink syenite brought from

¹ *Recherches* p. 127 note

⁴ De Rouge, *Recherches*, p. 110,

² *Records of the Past*, vol. vi p. 10 note.

³ *Ibid.* vol. ii p. 3

the quarries of Upper Egypt¹ He also caused sculptures to be carved on the rocks of Wady Magharah² and Hammamât;³ and made use of the quarries of El Kaab,⁴ where numerous inscriptions contain his name, and record his greatness. It was probably in connection with these many works that Pepi received with such extreme satisfaction the prisoners taken by his troops in their campaigns against the Herusha; he obtained thereby a most welcome addition to the body of labourers which was engaged constantly in his buildings.

The titles assumed by Pepi possess in some cases a peculiar interest. Besides the usual epithets of 'King of Egypt' and 'lord of the double diadem,' he calls himself 'lover of the two lands,' 'lover of his race,' 'son of Athor, mistress of Denderah,' 'lord of all life,' and 'the triple conquering Horus.' The 'two lands' are no doubt Upper and Lower Egypt, and the 'race' intended may be either his own family or the nation of the Egyptians, the claim to be 'son of Athor' recalls the similar claim of Khufu, who, like Pepi, adorned the temple of that goddess at Denderah,⁵ 'lord of all life,' though not a usual title,⁶ is one to which we can quite understand an Egyptian king laying claim; the only title difficult to explain is that of 'the triple conquering Horus,' which does not occur either earlier or later. De Rougé, who notes that many of the later kings assume the title of 'double conquering Horus,'

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 115

² See above p. 104

³ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pl. 115 a, c, f, i

⁴ Ibid. pl. 117

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 98, 1st ed.

⁶ Pepi takes it again at Wady Magharah (*Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pl. 116 a), and it is assumed also by Ranuser (ib. pl. 152 a). Compué Ptah notes his acknowledgment 'I have passed 110 years of life by the gift of the king' (supra, p. 92)

in connection with their sway over the two Egypts,¹ suggests that the 'triple Horus' of Pepi contains an allusion to his having extended his rule over the negro territory south of Upper Egypt,² but it is perhaps more probable that a triple division of Egypt itself is glanced at,³ and that Pepi, who held his court in Central Egypt—the later Heptanomis—meant to indicate his sovereignty over the Delta and the Thebaid, as well as over that region.

The glories of Pepi's reign were, it is probable, due in some degree to his ministers. Una, who had owed his first elevation and promotion to Pepi's predecessor, Teta, continued in high favour during the whole of Pepi's reign, and held under him a number of most important appointments. He was 'prophet of the royal pyramid,' 'royal secretary' and 'keeper of the secrets,' 'sole companion,' 'superintendent of the dock,' and 'superintendent of the land of Khent.'⁴ After being employed in the procuring of the royal sarcophagus with its appurtenances, he was given a commission of a military character, which associated him closely with the various expeditions against the Herusha, and gave him some ground for claiming the final success as his own.⁵ Ankh Meria, buried at Saccarah, was 'governor of the quarries opposite Memphis,' and 'chief director of public works' under Pepi; Pepi-Nekht was 'chief *heb*' and 'governor of the town of the pyramid.'⁶

In his family relations Pepi was fairly fortunate

¹ *Recherches* p. 110. He omits to note that it occurs as early as the time of Khufu (See the *Denkmäler*, part ii pl. 2 b)

² *Recherches*, p. 117

³ On the recognition of this di-

vision, see above, vol. i. p. 25, note.

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii pp. 3, 4

⁵ *Ibid* p. 6, line 6

⁶ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 120

His first wife, Amtes,¹ appears indeed to have died before him; but he did not prove inconsolable. He contracted a second marriage after a time with Ankhnes Merira, a noble lady, though not of royal birth, who bore him at least two sons, Merenra and Neferkara, and outlived him by several years. Ankhnes-Merira was buried in the cemetery of Abydos; and her tomb bears an inscription, in which she is called 'royal wife of Merira, great in favour, great in grace, great in all things, companion of Horus, mother of Merenra, king of the two Egypts; and mother of Neferkara, king of the two Egypts.'² Her father, Khua, was loaded with favours by his son-in-law and his grandsons, who made him 'chief of the town of the pyramid,' 'lord of the diadem,' 'commander of the great men both of the North and of the South,' 'commandant of the chief cities of Lower Egypt,' and 'chief of every dignity in things divine.'³

On the death of Pepi, Mer-en-ra,  , the elder of his two sons, became king. Merenra's disposition seems to have been altogether peaceful. Scarcely had he mounted the throne when he gave directions to Una, whom he had made governor of Upper Egypt, to employ himself in the quarrying of blocks of stone for the pyramid, Sha-nefer, which he was bent on constructing for his own tomb, and in the obtaining of a handsome sarcophagus, together with a granite doorway and doors for the sepulchral apartment of the pyramid.⁴ This commission executed, Una was immediately ordered to procure a great slab of alabaster

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. II. p. 4

² See M. de Rougé's *Recherches*, pp. 130-1, where the inscription is given at length

³ On 'head of the entire sacerdotal order' as De Rougé explains (ibid. p. 132)

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. II. p. 7

from the quarries of Hat nub (Ombos?), to form a sepulchral table or altar,¹ such as appears commonly in the representations of the sacrificial feasts in tombs. At the same time he was required to begin the construction of docks in the country of the Ua-uat, which were no doubt connected with the Nile, and were intended to shelter the transports which it was necessary to employ in the conveyance of the granite needed for the royal pyramid. Wood was plentiful in the Ua uat country and its neighbourhood; the negroes were friendly; and the chiefs of Areret, Ua-uat, Amam, and Ma furnished timber in such abundance that four transports probably great rafts² were constructed in the course of a year. These were loaded with the granite blocks prepared for the pyramid, and, safely passing the cataracts at the height of the inundation, conveyed their burden to the site which Merenra had chosen.³ It was probably during the progress of Una's labours that the king in person visited the quarries of Assouan near Elephantiné, and set up the tablet, still to be seen in that locality, on which he distinctly states that 'the king himself both came there and returned.'⁴

It is thought that Merenra did not rule very long.⁵ He was succeeded by his younger brother Neter ka ia, , to whom the fragments of the Turin papyrus appear to assign a reign of twenty years.⁶ He too made a pyramid, to which he gave the name of Men

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 7

² Sixty cubits long, by thirty wide, according to Brugsch (*History of Egypt* vol. i p. 105, 1st ed.)

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 8. Dr. Birch is of opinion that this implies some considerable difference in the condition of the Nile waters about the site of the First Cataract

in ancient and modern times (*Ancient Egypt* p. 54)

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pl. ii pl. 116 b. Compare De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 135.

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 53.

⁶ See De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 108.

ankh, 'the abode of life,' in order to show his belief that life really, and not death, dwelt in the tomb. Neferkara maintained the Egyptian dominion in the Sinaitic peninsula, and sent a commission there in his second year, which consisted of twelve persons, who have left a memorial which is still to be seen upon the spot¹. It is remarkable that this memorial places the king and his mother almost upon a par, as if they were both reigning conjointly. Neferkara is characterised as 'King of the two Egypts, master, and conquering Horus,' his mother as 'royal wife of Merira, king of the two Egypts, and royal mother of Neferkara, king of the two Egypts.'² She appears to be figured upon the rock,³ while he is not figured at all, and altogether her position on the tablet is quite as important and prominent as his. We seem here to have evidence that female influence was making itself felt in Egypt more than formerly; and that the way was being paved for the admission, as constitutional,⁴ of exclusive female sovereignty.

The succession after the death of Neferkara is doubtful. The contemporary records fail at this point; but Manetho,⁵ Herodotus,⁶ and the *Tuin papyri*,⁷ agree in referring to about this period a queen called Nitocris, , the only Egyptian female to

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt. i. pl. 116 a (right-hand compartment)

² De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 120

³ *Denkmaler*, pt. ii. pl. 116 a (right-hand compartment). The female figure with a lotus must, I think, represent Ankhes-Merira herself.

⁴ The Manethonian statement that Bnethus of the second dynasty made a law allowing females to succeed to the throne, cannot be

regarded as of much weight, more especially as no practical result is said to have followed.

⁵ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* vol. i. p. 58, B.

⁶ Herod. ii. 100.

⁷ See the note of Wilkinson on the above passage in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 142. 2nd edit. Compare De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 108.

whom a sole reign is assigned; and modern critics are inclined to accept the reign as a fact,¹ and as belonging to this dynasty. The chief event of the reign, if it be admitted as historical, is the completion of the third pyramid, begun by Mencheres. Manetho makes Nitocris its builder;² Herodotus, who assigns it to Menaura (Mycerinus), reports a tradition, as prevalent,³ which made it the work of a woman. The peculiar construction of the pyramid lends itself to the theory that in its present shape it is the work of two distinct sovereigns.⁴ If Nitocris is to be regarded as really the finisher of the edifice, she must be considered a great queen, one of the few who have left their mark upon the world by the construction of a really great monument. The pyramid of Mencheres, as designed and erected by him, was a building of but moderate proportions, considerably less than many of those at Abousir and elsewhere,⁵ which have conferred no fame on their constructors. It was the addition made to the pyramid by its enlarger which alone entitled it to the rank among 'the Three,' that, ever since the time of Herodotus, have been separated off from all other edifices of the kind, and placed in a category of their own. It was, moreover, the casing of the enlarged pyramid, which was of a beautiful red granite up to half the height,⁶ that caused this pyramid to be especially admired; and the casing was necessarily the work of the later builder.

¹ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire d'Égypte*, vol i p 345, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i pp 107-9, 1st ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 54.
² Ap. Syncell *Chronograph* lsc.
³ Herod ii 134.
⁴ See above, vol i p 194, and VOL. II.

compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 108, 1st ed.

⁵ As those of Sakhra and Ranusei (supra, pp 71 and 73-4).

⁶ Herod lsc. Compare Vyse, *Pyramids of Gizeh*, vol ii p 120.

The other traditions attaching to the name of Nitocris, resting as they do on the sole authority of Herodotus, can scarcely be regarded as historical. She is said to have succeeded a brother, who had been murdered by his subjects, and to have avenged his death in the following extraordinary fashion:—‘ Having constructed a spacious underground chamber, under pretence of inaugurating it, she invited to a banquet there those of the Egyptians whom she knew to have had the chief share in her brother’s murder, and, when they were feasting suddenly let the river in upon them by means of a secret duct of large size.’ Having so done, she smothered herself in a chamber filled with ashes, to escape the vengeance which she regarded as awaiting her. It is difficult to imagine that any sovereign would, under any circumstances, have pursued so roundabout a method of avenging a predecessor; it is certain that the Egyptians were wholly averse to suicide; such a suicide as that related has no parallel in mundane history, and is about as unlikely a death for any one to select as could be imagined.

Still, it is thought that, however incredible the details, they may yet mark an historic fact, viz., that about this time ‘murder and violence prevailed in the Egyptian kingdom’—there were many ‘competitors for the throne,’ and their rivalry produced convulsions, amid which ‘the vessel of the State continually approached nearer’ and nearer ‘to destruction’¹—the monarchy was disintegrated; several small kingdoms were formed; civil war raged, and monuments wholly ceased, it was only after a considerable interval—an interval which there are no means of measuring²—that once more a

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp 107, 108, 1st ed

² Manetho’s numbers furnish the sole basis for any measurement at

flourishing community arose in Egypt, located in a new place, which has left undying traces of itself in tablets, brick pyramids, rock sculptures and *stelae* or tombstones, and is the not unworthy successor of the earlier kingdom, which can be traced, almost without a break, from Senoferu to Nitocris.

Before, however, the decline set in, the early civilisation reached its culminating point under the kings of Manetho's sixth dynasty. Some of the best Egyptian statues, as one on which the gallery of the Louvre especially prides itself, are of this period.¹ The subjects of the bas-reliefs, the modes of representation, and the general drawing of the figures are much the same as during the previous dynasties; but the treatment is in some respects better. True relief occasionally takes the place of the peculiarly Egyptian *cavo rilievo* of the earlier time,² where the whole outline is deeply incised, with a hardness of effect that is displeasing. Something more of freedom is also observable in the animal forms, and something more of life and action in the human figures.³ Architecture, however, does not advance; the best pyramid of the period—that completed by Nitocris upon the nucleus afforded by the small construction of Mencheres—is very inferior, both in size

- all but these are at this point in a deplorable condition. Eusebius and Africanus differed with respect to them to the extent of 355 years.
- ¹ Lenoir says of these: 'L'art primitif avait atteint son apogée sous la sixième dynastie. C'est dans les tombes exécutées alors que l'on trouve ces belles statues élancées, au visage rond, à la bouche souriante, au nez fin, aux épaules larges, aux jambes musculeuses, dont le Musée du Louvre possède un des plus remarquables échantillons dans la figure d'un scribe accroupi que l'on a placée au centre d'une des salles du premier étage (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1, p. 316). Such remarks 'Sculpture is admirably shown in the statues of the period' (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 55).
- As, for instance, in the sepulchral tablet numbered 832, in the Egyptian Gallery of the British Museum.
- ² See particularly the *Deskmaler*, pl. 105 and 111 b.

and constructive skill, to the great monuments of Khufu and Shafia. There are no temples now remaining which can be referred to the time;¹ nor is there any novelty in the plan or ornamentation of the tombs. The forms of the gods are still absent from the 'eternal houses,' though they appear on the sculptured tablets of the kings.

In the arts of life we observe two or three small advances. Stools are for the most part superseded by chairs with a low back.² The use of sandals spreads from the grandees to their upper servants.³ The somewhat dangerous sport of spearing the crocodile from a light boat is indulged in;⁴ and the domestication of dogs has produced a new type.⁵ In another direction



Second type of Egyptian Dog.

we observe a change that is scarcely a mark of progress. War has become an element in the life of the people, and the manufacture of arms has grown into a trade. We see the fashioning of spears and bows in the sculptures,⁶ and meet with occasional instances of figures where a dagger is worn in the belt.⁷ Armourers are noticed as a distinct class,⁸ and drove no doubt a brisk trade. The division of labour continued to ex-

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 55.
'No temples of the period remain.'

² See the *Denkmalen*, pt. ii. pls. 105-111.

³ Ibid. pls. 100, 107.

⁴ See the representation in vol. i. of this work (p. 545), which is from a tomb of this period.

⁵ *Denkmalen*, pt. ii. pl. 108. In

the pyramid period we find one dog only which stands high on its legs and has a stiffly curled tail (supra, p. 80, note ^o).

⁶ *Denkmalen*, l. s. c.

⁷ As in a statue of the period, now in the British Museum, No. 55.

⁸ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 151.

tend itself, and we have mention, or representation, of at least thirty different employments.¹ Literature grew in repute, as a profession; and the skilful scribe might hope for advancement to posts of high importance. If the 'Praise of Learning' is rightly ascribed to the sixth dynasty,² we may note as an advance the increased length of literary compositions, and the employment of a form of poetry which did not consist merely in the balance of sentences. We have also to note as belonging to this period the birth of history in the shape of a biographical memoir of some length, composed by an official of high rank, and inscribed upon his tomb.³

A further advance of the religion in the way of expansion and the multiplication of gods is also discernible. An altar dedicated by King Pepi, which is now in the Turin Museum,⁴ seems to contain something like a full account of the gods recognised at this period, and something approaching to an account of the estimate which was commonly made of their relative importance. The altar is dedicated to Phthah under the form of Sokari;⁵ and this god, with his wife Sekhët, occupies naturally the foremost position on the monument. It would be unsafe, however, to conclude from this, that Phthah was recognised as the chief god, since

¹ The writer of the 'Praise of Learning' mentions besides scribes or men of letters, the employments of the blacksmith, the carpenter, the stone cutter, the barber, the boatman, the agricultural labourer, the builder, the gardener, the farmer, the weaver, the armourer, the courier, the dyer, the sandal maker, the washerman, the fowler, and the fisherman. Representations occur in the tombs of goldsmiths, glass-blowers, potters, tailors, upholsterers, boat-builders, sculptors,

musicians, professional dancers, brick makers, domestic servants, &c. Embalmers also were, we know, a separate class.

² See Dr Birch's 'Introduction' (*Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 146).

³ *Ibid* vol. ii pp. 3-8.

⁴ For a copy of the inscription, and a sketch of the altar itself, see the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. iii pls. 1-3, opp. p. 112.

⁵ See above, vol. i. p. 335.

the divinity to whom an object was dedicated could not but hold the first place on that object. Next to Phthah is placed Thoth, and next to Thoth a rare deity, called Petmutf, who is said to 'dwell in the houses of the Ocean.'¹ These three gods are figured, and not merely named, on the monument: they occupy the first column of the inscription, which may be called 'the column of the dedication,' and thus stand quite separate from the remaining deities, with whom they do not enter into comparison. Thoth, however, has his place among these, appearing not in the first column only, but also in several of the remaining ones; and thus his place among the gods can be determined.

The gods generally appear to be divided into two classes, the universal and the local. The universal, or those worshipped in common by all the Egyptians, are, besides Satem, 'Hearing' (who seems to be placed first because through her the gods *hear* prayers), Tum, Khepra, and Shu, the Sun-Gods,² Shu being accompanied by his wife, Tafnut or Tefnut;³ then, the deities of the Osirid legend, Seb, Netpé, Osiris himself, Isis, Set, Nephthys, and Horus,⁴ next, Ra, with whom are joined three abstractions, Renpa, 'the Year,' Het, 'an Age,' and Jeta, 'Eternity,' after these, three other abstractions—Ank, 'Life,' Tat, 'Stability,' and Aut, 'Triumph;' then, Thoth under two forms;⁵ and finally, an unnamed god, called 'the Great One of the five in Api-Sekhet.' These deities seem to admit of the following arrangement:—

¹ *Transactions of Bibl Arch Society*, vol iii p 114

² *Supra*, vol i pp 316 353

³ *Ibid* pp 387 8

⁴ *Ibid* pp 357 8

⁵ The earthly and the infernal—
'Thoth in the house of selection,'
and 'Thoth at the balance' (*supra*,
vol i p 372)

PERSONS	ABSTRACTIONS
	Satemí.
1 Tum	
2 Khepíá	
3 Shu	
4 Tafínó.	
5. Seb	
6 Netpé.	
7. Osiris.	
8 Isis	
9 Set	
10. Nephthys	
11 Horus.	
12 Ra	{ Year Ago Eternity. Life. Stability Triumph.
13 Thoth	
14 The Great One of the Five	

Among the local gods, who are enumerated after these, many occur more than once, as being objects of worship in more than one city.¹ The most important of them are Phthah, worshipped in Memphis; Num or Khnum, in Elephantinó, Sabak, at Leopolis and elsewhere; Athor, at Mensa and Denderah; Bast, at Bubastis; Mentu, at Uas or Hiermonthis; Neith, at Tena or This; Anubis, at Sep; Nishem,² at Aukaf; and Kartek, a form of Taourt,³ at Patek. The gods of the first list also occur in the second, since many of them were the objects of a *special* local worship. Abstractions also occur in this list, and genii, such as 'the Four of Amenti'⁴. Altogether, including manifest abstractions, there seem to be about fifty objects of worship mentioned, of which some twenty five or thirty are proper deities.

¹ Sabak, for instance, is worshipped in five cities, Horus or Harmachis in nine, Anubis in three, Athor in three, &c.

² Supra, vol. i p 400

³ Ibid. p 393

⁴ Ibid p 397.

The list is important, as well for what it omits as for what it contains. It is very noticeable that still, though the court has moved to Abydos, and has Thebes under its sway, there is no mention of Ammon. It is also very curious that Khem is omitted, especially as Pepi is seen worshipping him in his grossest form in a tablet at Hammanât.¹ Other omissions, less surprising, but still noticeable, are those of Maut, Sati, Aten, Khonsu, Onuris, Aemhept, Anuka, Ma, Heha, and Bes. Rapid as the growth of the Pantheon has been since the date of the great pyramid kings,² it is not yet complete. Not only have numerous local worships yet to be absorbed into the general Egyptian religion, but fresh deities have still to be invented or discovered, fresh ideas to be developed. Ancient polytheism is a Proteus, always varying its form, and abhorrent of finality. The religion of Egypt had to pass through many different phases before it reached its final shape; and we shall still have to note various other important modifications of it in that portion of the Egyptian history with which we have to deal in these volumes.

¹ *Dinkmüller*, vol. iv pt. ii pl. 115 c

² Compare *ibid.*, pp. 38 and 84 b

CHAPTER XVI

THE DYNASTIES BETWEEN THE SIXTH AND THE TWELFTH.

No Monuments left by any Dynasty between the Sixth and the Eleventh, which were, however, separated by an Interval Disintegration of Egypt—Parallel Kingdoms of Memphis, Hieracleopolis, and Thebes Causes of the Disintegration and Decline, and probable Length of the Interval. Situation of Thebes Its Antiquity, Name, and primitive Position Rise of Thebes to Independence Dynasty of the Antefs and Mentuhoteps Reign of Sanhkhara Expedition to Punt Close of the Dynasty Features of the Early Theban Civilisation

'After the sixth dynasty a monumental gap, which can neither be filled up nor bridged over occurs till the eleventh dynasty' BIRCH *Ancient Egypt* p 56.

Of the five dynasties which Manetho placed between the sixth and the twelfth, one only—the eleventh—has left any monumental traces. It has been argued by some that this dynasty was contemporary with the sixth, if not even with the fourth,¹ but the latest discoveries seem to render this theory untenable. The sixth dynasty, as was shown in the preceding chapter,² bore sway over the entire Nile valley, and cannot have allowed the existence of an independent monarchy in the Thebaid, which would have cut it off from the South. There are, moreover, signs of development and advance in certain respects, under the kings of Dynasty XI, which render it almost certain that an interval of some not inconsiderable duration must have

¹ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii pp 338, and 346, 347, Stuart Poole in Dr Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. i p 508

² See above, page 90.

separated off the second Egyptian civilisation from the first.¹

It would seem that, at the death of Nitocris, the centrifugal force, which had long held the various provinces of Egypt asunder, proved stronger than the centripetal, and a disintegration of the empire took place. Memphis re-established its independence, and dynasties ruled there, to which Manetho assigned in his list the seventh and eighth places. Another kingdom sprang up in the Delta, having its capital at Heracleopolis Parva, in the Sethroite nome.² Here again were two successive dynasties, Manetho's ninth and tenth. In central Egypt a new power developed itself at Thebes, which rapidly acquired a superiority over the rival kingdoms, and ended by absorbing them. The eleventh dynasty has left considerable traces of itself; but of the other four there are no contemporary records, and, beyond some names of kings in the Turin papyrus, and in the lists of Karnak, Saccarah, and Abydos, which may be guessed to belong to them, we are entirely without details with respect to this period of Egyptian history.³

The causes of the sudden decline which accompanied the close of the sixth dynasty, and of the suspension of animation during a term variously estimated

¹ M. Mariette says: 'Quand, avec la onzième dynastie, on voit l'Égypte se réveiller de son long sommeil, les anciennes traditions sont oubliées. Les noms propres usités dans les anciennes familles, les titres donnés aux fonctionnaires, l'écriture elle-même et jusqu'à la religion, tout en elle semble nouveau.' (See Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 349.)

² Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. 11

p. 219.

³ Eighteen names of kings are given by Dr. Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. 1 p. 110, 1st ed.) as belonging to those dynasties. They are taken from the 'New Table of Abydos,' set up by Seti I. The general character of the names accords with those of the fourth, fifth, and sixth dynasties. The most frequent is that of Nefertika.

at from 166 to 740 years¹ are obscure, and can only be conjectured. M. Lenormant suggests² an invasion and conquest of Egypt by some foreign people, which held the real dominion of the country during the interval, whatever it was, but allowed native subject monarchs to maintain a precarious and inglorious sway at Memphis and in the Eastern Delta; but Dr. Birch observes³ with reason, that it is 'difficult to believe' in a conquest, of which there is no historical record, no 'race upon the monuments. The assertion that the skulls of mummies belonging to the eleventh and later dynasties are sensibly different from those of the period terminating with Dynasty VI., and indicate a decided modification of *physique*, such as would naturally follow on the introduction into the population of a new element, with which M. Lenormant supports his theory,⁴ lacks corroboration by other writers, and is certainly not the statement of a fact generally admitted by Egyptologists. M. Lenormant himself allows the dubiousness of his theory, and winds up his remarks upon the subject with an alternative view: 'It would be rash,' he says,⁵ 'to assert that the sudden eclipse which shows itself in the civilisation of Egypt immediately after the sixth dynasty had not solely for its

¹ According to Africanus Manetho assigned to the seventh dynasty 70 days, to the eighth 146 years, to the ninth 400 years, to the tenth 185 years—total, 740 years and 70 days. According to Eusebius, his numbers were: for the seventh dynasty, 75 days for the eighth and ninth, 100 years each, for the tenth 185 years total, 385 years, 75 days. By an arbitrary correction and combination of these two accounts, M. Lenormant produces for the period

a total of 496 years (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 321), which Dr. Birch adopts (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 67). Bunson, following Thucydides and Herodotus, reckons the actual length of the interval at 166 years (*Egypt's Place*, vol. ii pp. 217-246).

² *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 346.

³ *Ancient Egypt*, l. c.

⁴ *Manuel*, vol. i. p. 317.

⁵ *Ibid*.

cause one of those almost inexplicable crises of weakness, wherewith the life of nations, like that of individuals, is sometimes crossed' It would seem to be best to acquiesce, for the present at any rate, in this view; and to suppose that the great burst of vigour and energy, which commencing with Seneferu terminated, perhaps seven centuries later,¹ with Nitocris, was followed by a period of exhaustion and enfeeblement, during which no works of any magnitude were constructed, no wars of any importance carried on, no inscriptions of any sort or kind set up. Such a pause in the life of an ingenious and active people like the Egyptians cannot be supposed to have been long, and we should incline, therefore, to the lowest estimate which has been hitherto made of the probable duration of the interval.

When Egypt, after this period of torpor, once more aroused herself and began to show new signs of life, the nascent civilisation developed itself from a new centre. In the long and rich valley of the lower Nile, which extends above five hundred miles from Syêné to Memphis, almost any situation might furnish a site for a great city, since, except at Silsili and at the Gebeleïn, the valley is never less than two miles wide, the soil is always fertile, good quarries are always at hand, and lavish Nature is so bounteous with her gifts that abundant sustenance can at any point be obtained for a large population. But, in this wealth of eligible sites, there are still degrees of eligibility—spots which

¹ Manetho's numbers, as reported by Africanus, are

	Years
For the fourth dynasty	27
, fifth	218
, sixth	203
Total	726

But the items of the reigns in the fifth dynasty produce the number 218 instead of 248. The substitution of this number would bring the sum total within the period of seven centuries

Nature has distinguished by special favour, and as it were marked out for greatness and celebrity. Such a position is that which the traveller reaches, when, passing through the gorge of the Gebelen, he emerges upon the magnificent plain, at least ten miles in width, through which the river flows with a course from south west to north east for a distance of some forty miles between Elment and Qobt. Here, for the first time since quitting the Nubian desert, does the Nile enter upon a wide and ample space.¹ On either side the hills recede, and a broad green plain, an alluvium of the richest description, spreads itself out on both banks of the stream, dotted with *dom* and date palms, sometimes growing single, sometimes collected into clumps or groves. Here, too, there open out on either side, to the east and to the west, lines of route offering great advantages for trade, on the one hand with the Lesser Oasis and so with the tribes of the African interior, on the other with the western coast of the Red Sea, and the spice region of the opposite shore.² In the valley of Hammamât, down which passed the ancient route to the coast, are abundant supplies of *breccia verde* and of other valuable and rare kinds of stone,³ while at no great distance to the right and left of the route lie mines of gold, silver, and lead,⁴ anciently prolific, though exhausted now for many ages. Somewhat more remote, yet readily accessible by a frequented route, was the emerald region of Gebel Zabara, where the mines are still worked,⁵ though not at present very productive

¹ See above, vol 1 p 16

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1. pp. 112-15, 1st ed

³ Wilkinson, *Topography of Thebes*, pp 415-421.

⁴ Ibid pp. 415-16; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1 p 112, 1st ed

⁵ Wilkinson, p 420

In this favoured position, partly on the left but principally on the right bank of the stream, had grown up, probably from a remote antiquity, a flourishing provincial town, to which its inhabitants gave the name of Apet,¹ Apé, or, with the feminine article, Tapé, which form the Greeks represented by Thebai,² whence our 'Thebes.' The city had for ages been only one out of the many populous towns which the early Pharaohs had held under their sway; it had been, no doubt, as it always continued to be, the head of a nome;³ it had its own local peculiarities of religion, manners, speech, nomenclature, even perhaps its own modification of the generally received hieroglyphical system of writing.⁴ But hitherto it had drawn no special attention, it had attained no notoriety. One among some scores of considerable Egyptian towns,⁵ it had been content with a subject position, had refrained from asserting itself, and had consequently remained undistinguished.

When, however, at the close of the sixth dynasty, Egypt became disintegrated, and monarchies of no great strength were established in the Delta and at Memphis, it occurred to the authorities of Apé that the city over which they presided had as much right to exercise sovereignty as Hieracopol's Parva, and that a bold assertion of independence would probably be successful, might even be undisputed. The Memphitic

¹ Birch gives the hieroglyphic form as  (Dictionary of Hieroglyphics, in Bunsen's Egypt, vol v p 58.) The phonetic part of this group would be properly rendered by Apé or Apet.

² So Wilkins in the author's *Herodotus*, vol ii p 3 note ⁵.

³ Herod ii 100, Plin II N

v 9, Ptol *Geograph* iv 5 &c.

⁴ So the passage from Manetho, quoted p 22 note.

⁵ In the time of Amasis, it was said that the number of inhabited towns in Egypt was 20,000 (Herod ii 177). It is, no doubt, an exaggerated number, but if only to sixty well-known cities might be enumerated.

kings of the seventh and eighth dynasties were too weak, the Heracleopolitans of the ninth and tenth too remote, to attempt interference; and Thebes became a free city, the capital of an independent monarchy, apparently without a struggle

Who the individual was by whom this feat was accomplished, and the foundations laid of that second and more brilliant Egyptian civilisation which eclipsed the glories of the first, it is impossible even to conjecture. According to the Turin papyrus the eleventh or 'first Theban' dynasty comprised six, according to Manetho¹ it consisted of sixteen, Pharaohs. The monumental traces of the dynasty, discovered hitherto, appear to show a series of either six or eight monarchs² who bear alternately the names of Enantef or Antef,  or , and Ment-hept or Mentu-hotep,  or . But it is quite possible that the series is incomplete, and far from certain that the alternation of name was scrupulously maintained from the beginning to the end of the dynasty. A king named Sankh ka ra seems to have belonged to it,³ who is not proved to have borne, besides, either of the usual appellations

The first king of the dynasty who is known to us was an Antef, whose coffin was discovered by some Arabs in the year 1827 near Quinah to the west of Thebes⁴. He called himself 'king of the two Egypts;'

¹ All the epitomes agree in this statement (vol. 1 pp. 110-18, 1st ed.)

² Lenoirant (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 318) reckons to this dynasty six kings only. Buch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 58) makes the number eight. Dr. Brugsch avoids a definite statement, but distinctly mentions only five (*History of Egypt*, vol. 1 pp. 115-117, 1st ed.). Sankh-ka-ra is not acknowledged by either Dr. Buch or M. Lenoirant, but M. Chabas seems to have established positively both his existence and his place in the eleventh dynasty.

⁴ Leemans, *Lettres à Salvem,*

and his mummy, which was found inside the coffin, bore the royal diadem on its head.¹ It was enveloped in the pasteboard covering which has been called a 'cartonnage,' and the coffin was of a primitive character, being scooped out of the trunk of a tree.² He is supposed to have been succeeded by a Mentu hotep, whose name occurs in the 'Table of Karnak,' but of whom we have no contemporary monument. This first Mentu hotep was followed by Antefaa, or 'Antef the Great,' who reigned at least fifty years,³ and was buried in a simple pyramid of brickwork at the foot of the western or Libyan mountains, in the valley known as El Assasif, near the ruins of Thebes. The tomb of Antefaa,  —, ornamented by a sculptured tablet, of which the upper portion is lost, was recently discovered by M. Mariette. The tablet⁴ shows him standing among his dogs, and waited on by his chief huntsman; from which we may conclude that, like more than one of the ancient Assyrian monarchs,⁵ he delighted in the chase, and regarded with affection and pride the faithful animals who were the companions of his amusement. Each has his name engraved above him, accompanied by a brief explanation, which shows that the dogs were valued for their hunting qualities, and used in the pursuit of the antelope and other

pp 28 et seqq., Bunson, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 232.

¹ The diadem was of gold, and its royal character was marked by the uræus. It is now in the Leyden Museum.

² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 68. The coffin is in the British Museum.

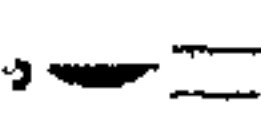
³ See the inscription upon his tomb, which is given by M. Mari-

ette in his *Monuments Divers*, pl. 40.

⁴ See the *Monuments Divers*, pl. 40. A copy of this plate appeared in the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. iv. opp. p. 172, accompanied by a very instructive commentary, the work of Dr. Birch.

⁵ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. pp. 74, 90, and 211, 2nd ed.

quadrupeds. They are four in number, and each is of a different kind.

A second Mentu hopep, the fourth king of the dynasty (according to Dr. Birch),¹ who bore also the names of Neb kher-ra, , and Ra neb tan, , is thought to have succeeded Antefaa. By an inscription which he set up on the rocks of Konosso, quite close to Philæ, it is shown that his dominion was not confined to the Thebaid, but extended over the whole of Upper Egypt; and at the same time it appears, by the relief chiselled upon the stone, that he claimed to be the conqueror of thirteen foreign nations,² probably negro tribes of the country bordering Egypt to the south. He is exhibited in the act of worshipping Khem, the special god of Kebtu, or Coptos, which appears by another tablet to have been, at any rate, his occasional residence.³ This place commanded the entrance to the valley of Hammamât, the importance of which as a line of traffic was now for the first time fully recognised. Mentu hopep II. sank wells in the valley, to provide water for the caravans which passed to and fro between Coptos and the Red Sea;⁴ and carved a tablet on the rocks above to commemorate his operations. He also procured from a quarry in this quarter a huge sarcophagus, destined to serve as his tomb; its length was eight cubits, or twelve feet, its breadth four cubits, and its height two. The services of 3,000 men were required to transport the enormous monolith from the spot where it was quarried to the nearest wharf upon the great stream.⁵ Mentu hopep Neb kher ra was also a patron of glyptic art. A statu

¹ *Ancient Egypt*, p. 58.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 111, 1st ed., Birch, 1st ed.

VOL. II.

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 59.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 113, 1st ed.

⁵ *Ibid.*

ery, named Intisen, who lived under him, has left it on record in the inscription upon his tomb, that he 'occupied the inmost recess of the king's heart, and made his delight all the day long' ¹ This artist worked not merely in stone and marble, but 'in gold, and silver, and ivory, and ebony,' ² and was thus able to provide



Tablet of Mentuhotep II

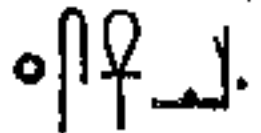
his royal master not only with statues, but 'with a vast variety of *objets de luxe*.

Mentuhotep II. is thought to have been followed by an Antef who has left no record of his reign, but who appears in the 'Table of Karnak' at this point ³

¹ See the *Records of the Past*,
vol. x p. 3
² Ibid p. 4

³ See Lepsius *Königsbuch*, Taf. v
No. 150

His successor, Mentu hotep III., continued to work the quarries of the Hammamât valley ; and commissioners of his appointment set up several engraved tablets and inscriptions in that ' beautiful ' district ¹ These show that this monarch claimed to be the son of the god Khem, whose worship he, in common with the other kings of the dynasty, specially affected. No wars are recorded at this time, though soldiers were employed to protect the sculptors and quarrymen employed in the Hammamât district, which would seem to imply the vicinity of some enemy.

The last monarch of the dynasty appears to have borne the name of Sankh ka ra, . He occupies the fifty eighth place in the ' New Table of Abydos ' ² An important inscription belonging to this reign has been recently discovered, and has received interpretation from M Chabas Sankh-ka ra, it appears, not content with the land trade, which had now for some time enriched the Theban monarchs and brought them in abundance the treasures of the African interior, resolved to open a new traffic by way of the Red Sea with the fertile and productive region known to the Egyptians as Punt,  This tract has generally been regarded as a portion of ' Happy Arabia ; ' ³ but the geographical researches of Dr. Brugsch have convinced him that Punt is to be sought, not on the Arabian but on the African side of the gulf, that in fact it is identical with the modern territory of the

¹ Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, pp 50
60 One of the commissioners says :
' His holiness ordered me to go to
this beautiful mountain, with the
soldiers and principal persons of the
whole country

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol
i p. 110, 1st ed

³ *Records of the Past*, vol x pp
11 19, Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, p
83, Lenoir, *Manuel d'Histoire
Ancienne*, vol 1 p 378, &c

Somaui.¹ 'Punt,' he observes,² 'was a distant land, washed by the ocean, full of valleys and hills, abounding in ebony and other rich woods, in incense, balsam, precious metals, and costly stones; rich also in beasts, as camelopards, hunting leopards, panthers, dog-headed apes, and long tailed monkeys. Birds with strange plumage rocked themselves on the branches of wonderful trees, especially the incense tree and the cocoa palm.' Other authorities speak of it as producing benzoin, cassia, *kohl* or *stibium*, emeralds, ivory, and dogs of a good breed.³ Sankh-ka-ra entrusted the expedition, which he sent to bring from Punt its precious wares, to a certain Hammu (Hamo?), who gives the following account of his proceedings. 'I was sent,' he says,⁴ 'to conduct ships to Punt, in order to bring back to his majesty the odorous gums which the princes of the red land had collected under the influence of the fear inspired by him in all countries. Behold, I left Coptos. . . . His majesty ordained that the troops which were to accompany me should be drawn from the southern parts of the Thebaid. . . . I set forth with an army of 3,000 men. I passed through the red hamlet and a cultivated territory. I prepared the skins and the poles needed for the transport of the water jars to the number of twenty. Half my men each day carried loads; the other half placed the loads upon them. I dug a reservoir of twelve perches in a wood, and two reservoirs at a place called Atabet, one measuring a perch and twenty cubits, and the other a perch and thirty cubits. I made another

¹ *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 111, 1st ed.

² *Ibid*

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. x. p. 14, Bue 1, *Ancient Egypt*, l. 8 c

⁴ Breugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp 116-18, 1st ed. A transcript of the original will be found in the *Denkmdler*, pt ii pl 150 a.

at Ateb, measuring ten cubits each way, to contain water a cubit in depth. Then I arrived at Seba and constructed transports for the conveyance of all kinds of productions. I made a great offering there of oxen, cows, and goats. When I returned from Seba, I executed the orders of his majesty; I brought him back every sort of product that I met with in the havens of the holy land. I came back by way of Uak and Rohan, and brought with me from those places precious stones for statues in temples. Never was such a thing done since there were kings. Never was anything of the kind accomplished by any member of the royal family since the reign of the Sun God, Ra. I acted thus for the king on account of the great affection which he entertained for me.' The route pursued by Hannu as far as Seba appears to have been that which leads from Qobt or Qoft, by way of La Guitla, to Cosser.¹ From Seba, where he built his transports, he must have proceeded southward along the African coast until he reached the fertile region with which it was his master's object to establish communications. He there probably found an *entrepôt* at which he was able to procure not only the products of the Somaui country itself, but also those which nations of the far East brought from Arabia, Persia, and perhaps even India, to be exchanged for the commodities of the regions watered by the Nile. Yemen and Hadramaut, Ophir,² Bahrein,² Babylon, perhaps even Taprobané and Malacca here found a mart for their valuable wares, and purchased with them the manufactures of Egypt, the hard woods

¹ Wilkinson, *Topography of Thebes*, p 421, Belzoni, *Researches*, map opp p 485

² On the early commerce of Bahrein, see Sir H. Rawlinson's 'Notes on Captain Durand's Report,' in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* for 1879, pp 13 30

of the African forests, and the swart and stalwart slaves of Nubia and Dongola. The line of traffic thus established continued in use during the whole of the Egyptian period, and even into Greek and Roman times. 'It was the highway which, leading to the harbour of Leucosimen (now Cossein), on the Red Sea, brought the wonders of India and Arabia to Europe; it was the road of the merchants of all countries in the ancient world—the nations' bridge between Asia and Europe.'¹

A special incident is added to Sankh ka ra's establishment of communications with the land of Punt by the circumstance that, according to Egyptian tradition, Punt was the country from which they had derived some, at any rate, of their principal gods. Athor especially, 'the mother,' the 'mistress of heaven,' was 'Queen of the Holy Land,' 'Mistress and Ruler of Punt.'² Ammon was sometimes called the 'Hak' or 'King' of Punt, and Horus was honoured as 'the holy morning-star which rose to the west of the land of Punt.'³ According to Brugsch, the hideous dwarf, Bes, 'misshapen, and with apish countenance,' was also originally a denizen of Punt, the 'oldest form of the godhead' there, imported into Egypt at an early date from this distant region, and thenceforward a favourite object of domestic worship, recognised as 'the god of joy, of music, and of pleasure, the divinity who chases away evil,' and therefore as suited to preside over the toilet tables of great dames, and the arts by which beauty is preserved and enhanced.⁴

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 117, 1st ed.

² See *Records of the Past*, vol. x. pp. 13, 10.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 116, 1st ed.

⁴ Ibid., and compare for a fuller account the French version published by Brugsch himself in the year 1875, p. 82, where Bes is called 'la divinité de la joie, de la musique et des plaisirs celui qui chasse le

The eleventh, or first Theban dynasty seems to have ended in bloodshed and confusion. The first king of the twelfth dynasty tells us that, before he established himself upon the throne, Egypt had forgotten all her old traditions¹ had 'become like a bull which had lost all memory of the past'²—that during a long term of civil war and disturbance the people of the land had suffered 'affliction,' and 'there had been stability of fortune neither for the ignorant nor for the learned man.'³ The details of the troubles are wanting, but we can scarcely be mistaken in regarding private ambition as the disturbing force at work, and rival pretenders to the crown as responsible for the calamities of the period. The Antefs had not the prestige of long hereditary royalty; and their establishment of themselves in the kingly position might naturally create hopes and arouse jealousies, which some favourable occasion stimulated into action. Perhaps the Antef family died out; perhaps Saukh kara had no male issue, and the husbands of his daughters disputed the succession among them. Opportunity would then arise for other claimants to come forward; the quarrel would become more complicated, and civil war rage throughout the length and breadth of the land. It is certain that the Amenemhats and Usurtasens claim no connection with the Antefs and Mentuhoteps, and all but certain that they were a new race, unconnected with their predecessors.

mal,' and where his connection with the toilet tables of *grandes dames* is noticed. It is certainly remarkable how often cases for stibium, mirror handles, and other toilet articles are shaped into the image of this hideous god. (Bueh, *Guide to Museum*,

pp 28, 34, &c.)

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol ii p 12, note ^b

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. p 122, 1st ed

³ *Records of the Past*, vol ii p 12, § 5, ad fin.

The 'second Egyptian civilisation,' as it has been called,¹ differed in many respects from the first. The first was egoist, self-seeking, stately, cold, cruel. The second was utilitarian, beneficent, appealing less to the eye than to the mind, but judicious, far-sighted in its aims, and most successful in the results which it effected. The encouragement of trade and commerce, the establishment and improvement of commercial routes, the digging of wells, the formation of reservoirs, the protection of the roads by troops, the building of ships, the exploration of hitherto unknown seas—such were the special objects which the monarchs of the eleventh dynasty set before them, such the lines of activity into which they threw their own energies and the practical ability of their people. No longer aiming, like the old Memphitic kings, at leaving undying memorials of themselves in the shape of monuments that reached to heaven, but content with rude coffins and humble sepulchres, often not even of stone,² they were enabled to employ the labour of their subjects in productive pursuits, and to increase largely the general prosperity of the country by adding to the agricultural wealth of Egypt the luxuries and conveniences which an extensive commerce is sure to introduce. The full development of the new ideal was reserved for the dynasty which succeeded them, and is especially to be traced in the great works of utility connected with the Lake Moeris and the control of the Nile waters by means of sluices and reservoirs; but the eleventh dynasty set the example of seeking the welfare of their subjects rather than their own glorification; and when Amenemhat I., the founder of the twelfth, boasts that

¹ Denonmant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 348

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 111, 1st ed.

all the commands which he had ever issued had but increased the love which his people had for him,¹ he does but show that he had carried out the principles of governmental administration introduced by the Antefs and Mentu hoteps.

It was natural that art, when such principles were in vogue, should be turned into new channels. No longer did king vie with king in the piling up of a monumental mountain; no longer was it the first aim of a monarch to 'leave a memorial of himself'² Architecture consequently declined. The eleventh dynasty is scarcely commemorated by a single Egyptian building; and even the twelfth only left one of any great size.³ Artistic energy was directed to statuary, to works in relief, to amulets, furniture, and ornaments of various kinds.⁴ In these branches considerable progress was made. The statues of the time have no small merit;⁵ the reliefs are drawn with delicacy, though wanting in variety and force. Animal forms, however, are depicted with some spirit. The four dogs of Antefaa offer a marked contrast the one with the other, and express with precision distinct canine types.⁶ Two antelopes on another tomb of the same period are vigorous,⁷ while the tracings of the hieroglyphs on the stelé of Irtisen, which comprise numerous figures of birds and beasts, are said to be of quite first rate

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. II p 14 § 11

² Herodotus says that he omits the names of certain kings, since 'they left no memorial of themselves, and are therefore not worth mentioning (II 101-2)

³ The famous 'Labyrinth,' of which some account will be given in the next chapter

⁴ See the 'Stelé of Irtisen' (*Records of the Past*, vol. II pp 3, 4) and compare Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. I pp 121-2 1st ed

⁵ Bueh, *Guide to Galleries*, pp 17-19

⁶ See Mariette, *Monuments Divers*, pl. 40 and compare below, p 140

⁷ Mariette, *Monuments Divers*, pl. 50

excellency.¹ Altogether, one is more struck perhaps by the persistency of Egyptian art in the same forms than by anything else in the remains of the eleventh dynasty, since, even after an interval of some length, and in an entirely new and previously unknown locality, the artists give us almost identically the same designs, the same positions of the human figure, the same arrangement of their subjects, the same faces, the same furniture. Evidently, originality was either unthought of, or repressed; the canons of ancient times were considered binding; and novelty was only allowed within very narrow limits.

A greater variation from the usages of primitive times, a more distinct trace of local colouring, is to be seen in the religion of the period. From a deep and thick obscurity, the god Ammon at last begins to emerge, not yet with any distinctness, much less with that transcendent glory which made him, in the best times of Thebes, most decidedly the leading god of the entire Egyptian Pantheon, but just making himself apparent as a god to whom parents think it worth while to dedicate a child.² Perhaps he was now for the first time introduced from Punt, which was always regarded as the locality whereto he specially belonged, and from which he made excursions from time to time,³ like those of the Greek Zeus from Olympus. Another peculiarity of the period is the prominence given to Mentu.⁴

¹ See the preface of Professor Maspero, in the *Records of the Past*, vol. x. p. 1, 2.

² There is an *Amen-em-hat* who was employed under Mentu to carry his sarcophagus from the valley of Hammurât to the capital (supra, p. 130). There is also an *Amen-sat*, the wife of a sculptor of

this time in one of the sepulchral tablets of the British Museum (Borchardt to *Palmerus* p. 33). The *Amen-em-hat* who became king must have received his name under the eleventh dynasty.

³ See Brugsch, *Histoire d'Égypte*, p. 125.

⁴ Mentu, Khem, and Neith are

and Khem, who have hitherto been very subordinate and insignificant deities. Mentu, the god of Hermonthis, a sort of suburb of Thebes, may be called the tutelary divinity of the whole dynasty, half the kings placing their sons under his protection, and the other half bearing his name. Khem, hitherto kept for the most part in obscurity, though the special god of Coptos, takes suddenly a leading position, rears his figure upon the rocks in various quarters,¹ and shows himself in the gross and coarse form which no author of the present day could reproduce without incurring general reprobation. Other deities worshipped at the time, but with ordinary and not peculiar honours, were Osiris, Anubis, Kneph, Horus, Phthah Sokari, Thoth, and Neith. The Sothiac festival is now also for the first time noted as in use; and feasts are also held, at stated periods, to Khem, Phthah Sokari, and Thoth.²

The monuments distinctly referable to the eleventh dynasty are not sufficiently numerous to furnish us with much information as to the progress of civilisation and the arts of life. There is some indication that shoes³ now began to take the place of sandals,⁴ that glass and pottery increased in elegance,⁴ and that the façades of houses were ornamented with patterns.⁵ Special atten-

represented together on a tablet set up by Mentuhotep II at the island of Konosso. (*Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 150 c.) The sepulchral tablets of the British Museum show a *Mentu-na*, a *Mentu-sa*, and a *Mentu-em-hat* among the names of the period (Buch, *Guide to Galleries*, p. 19, 26, 28.)

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt ii pls 149 c, 150 b c, and d.

² *Records of the Past*, vol. vi. p. 3.
³ Buch, *Guide to Galleries*, p. 20 No 402.

⁴ See the *Denkmaler*, pt ii pls 145 c, 147 b and 148 d. Dr Birch holds that 'shoes were unknown in ancient Egypt (*Ancient Egypt* 'Introduction, p. xv). But they have been found at Thebes (Wilkinson, *A E* vol ii p 337, ed of 1878), and certainly the representation in the *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 149 c, is of shoes and not sandals.

⁵ *Denkmaler*, pt ii pls 145 d, and 148 a.

⁶ *Ibid* pls 147 a, and 148 c, d.

tion seems to have been paid to the breeding of dogs, which occur of at least four different kinds, corresponding to our greyhound, mastiff, wolf-dog, and ordinary hound¹. The first named was used in the chase of the gazelle or antelope; the second is a house dog, and sits at the foot of his master. He is of a black colour, and is called *Mahats*, which is explained as meaning 'blacky.' The other two are employed to hunt game of various kinds. A special domestic is appointed to attend to the kennel, who seems to be regarded as an upper servant, since he wears an elegant collar.

¹ Compare De Bich's article in *Bibl. Archéologique*, vol. iv. pp. 172 the *Transactions of the Society of Egyptologists*.

CHAPTER XVII.

THE TWELFTH DYNASTY

Period of Disturbance Accession of Amen-em-hat I His Military Expeditions His great Works His Addiction to Field Sports He associates his Son Usurtasen and leaves him written Instructions' Reign of Usurtasen I His Obelisks His Temples His Cushite War—His Chief Officers Amen and Mentu-hotep His Association of Amenemhat II Reign of Amen-em-hat II Reigns of Usurtasen II and Usurtasen III Conquest of Ethiopia, and Construction of Forts at Semneh and Koon-meh Usurtasen III. the Original of the mystic Sesostris Estimate of his Character Reign of Amen-em-hat III—His Throne Name His great Irrigation Scheme His Nilometer His Palace and Pyramid His other Works Reigns of Amen-em-hat IV and Sabak-nefru-ia. Civilisation of the Period Arts of Life Architecture and Glyptic Art Changes in the Religion

L'époque de la douzième dynastie fut une époque de prospérité, de paix intérieure et de grandeur au dehors. LENORMANT, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1. p. 349.

It has been observed in the last chapter, that the eleventh, or first Theban dynasty expired in bloodshed and confusion. A time of general disturbance followed upon the death of Sankh-ka-ra; and it was probably not till some years had elapsed that Thebes was once more able to establish her supremacy over Egypt and to give the afflicted land the blessing of a settled rule. We do not know the circumstances of the outbreak, or the causes which led to revolution, but there is some reason to suspect a general disaffection of the lower orders, terminating in open rebellion and civil war. Amen-em-hat, , the individual who suc

ceeded ultimately in re-establishing tranquillity, warns his son against seeking to win the affections of the landed lords and noblemen only, and bids him associate himself with the mass of his subjects and essay to obtain their goodwill.¹ It is at least probable that he had seen the evils of a contrary course, and had been induced to make himself the patron and protector of the weak and humble² by experience gained in the school of adversity, before he attained to sovereign power.

There is no indication of any relationship between the kings of the twelfth and those of the eleventh dynasty; and it is a conjecture³ not altogether improbable, that the Amen-em-hat who was the founder of the twelfth was descended from the functionary of the same name, who under Mentuhotep II. executed commissions of importance.⁴ At any rate, he makes no pretension to a royal origin, and the probability would seem to be that he attained the throne not through any claim of right, but by his own personal merits. Amid a multitude of pretenders, he fought his way to the crown, and was accepted as king, because he had triumphed over his rivals. On one occasion, he tells us, his life was in extreme danger. He had taken his evening meal, and had retired to rest—stretched upon a carpet in the inner chamber of his house, he was courting sleep—when, lo! a clash of arms resounded; foes approached, hoping to assassinate

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. i. p. 11, § 2. ² *Supra*, p. 138, note 1. ³ *Supra*, p. 138, note 2. ⁴ *Supra*, p. 138, note 3.

keep watch on its borders;'¹ to rule all Egypt 'from Abu (Elephantine) to the Athu' (the marsh region of the Delta) was enough for him,² we do not find him establishing any military posts in the countries which he invaded; on the contrary, we find that, in one quarter at any rate, he followed up his victories by building a wall, or defensive work, upon his own frontiers, for the purpose of 'keeping off the Sakti,'³ or, in other words, of checking and repelling their incursions. This post was probably a little to the east of Pelusium, near the western extremity of the Lake Serbonis.⁴

Among extant monuments none of any great importance can be assigned to Amen-em-hat, though his activity was shown in buildings no less than in warlike expeditions. There are indications that he commenced the temple of Ammon at Karnak opposite Thebes, where fragments of a granite statue have been found on which the sculptor had engraved his name.⁵ Another statue, also representing him, was erected in the Fayoum.⁶ He worked the quarries of Mokattam and Hammamât,⁷ adorned Memphis,⁸ and constructed two considerable edifices, which have perished--a palace, supposed to have been situated at Heliopolis,⁹ and a pyramid, known as Ka-ra-chor, , 'Lofty and Handsome.'¹⁰ Of the former, he tells us that it was 'adorned with gold, its roof was painted blue; the walls and

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. II. p. 14, § 0.

² *Ibid.*

³ *Ibid.* vol. VI. p. 135, ll. 23-4.

⁴ Bunsen, *History of Egypt*, vol. I. p. 125, 1st ed., and compare the map which accompanies his second volume.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 121 and compare the French edition (p. 85), which is fuller.

⁶ *Ibid.*

⁷ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 61.

⁸ Bunsen, *History of Egypt*, vol. I. p. 12, 1st ed.

⁹ Birch, *l. c.*

¹⁰ Bunsen, *l. c.*

he passages were of stones fastened together with iron
ramps; ' ¹ it was 'made for eternity,' he says, and not
for time; but unluckily it has not fulfilled the intention
of its constructor. The other, notwithstanding its proud
title, was probably of moderate dimensions, like the
pyramids of the Mentuhoteps and Antefs; it was erected
to contain a stone sarcophagus cut in the Tummanât
quarries by Antef, son of Sabak-nekht, chief priest of
the god Khem, who has commemorated the fact on the
rocky wall of the Wady. ⁴

A third field in which the activity of this energetic
king found employment was that of the chase. He
hunted the lion,' he tells us, 'and brought back the
crocodile a prisoner' ⁸ Lions, which are now not found
north of Nubia, frequented in these early times the
deserts on either side of the valley of the Nile, ⁴ and
furnished a sport in which even a great king did not
feel it beneath him to indulge. Crocodiles were more
common, and had long been objects of pursuit to the
Egyptian sportsman, who generally speared them from
boat, ⁵ but sometimes fished for them with a baited
hook, ⁶ and in this way might catch them alive. Probably
Amenemhat adopted this latter method of procedure, and
on returning to his palace exhibited the victims of his
skill and prowess to the nobles and officials of his court.

As he approached old age, and felt its infirmities
creeping upon him, Amenemhat resolved to associate
his son Usurtasen in the government. This prince
had, as already remarked, exhibited from his earliest

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii pp. 14, § 12

15, § 13

Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol.
i 121, 1st ed.

² *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p.

VOL. II.

L

³ See above vol. i p. 80

⁵ Ibid. p. 515.

⁶ Herod. ii 70

youth high military capacity; and it would seem that there was a party at the Court which pressed on Amenemhat his own abdication in favour of a successor of such merit.¹ But the aged monarch was unwilling to erase himself altogether, and saw no necessity for so extreme an act of self-abasement. Association had probably been practised from ancient times by the Egyptian kings; and it seemed to Amenemhat that by having recourse to this plan of action he might reconcile the demands of the discontented with his own personal inclinations. Accordingly, without descending from the throne, he allowed Usurtasen to assume the royal dignity;² and henceforth, for the space of ten years,³ the father and son reigned conjointly.

Finally, before descending into the tomb, Amenemhat resolved to leave to his son a legacy of political wisdom in the shape of 'Instructions,'⁴ by the observance of which he might reign prosperously, and guide his life to a happy termination. Representing himself as speaking from the Lower World, he enjoined upon Usurtasen the practice of justice and virtue, the admission of all classes of his subjects to his presence and his affections, the avoidance of pride and exclusiveness, together with care in the selection of his intimate friends and counsellors. Briefly recapitulating the chief events of his own life, and the principles which had actuated him, he recommended to his successor persistence in

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 13, § 8. apparent (*Records of the Past*, vol. vi. pp. 137-142).

² This fact is glanced at, without being distinctly stated, in the 'Instructions,' §§ 4, 8. It is seen very clearly in the Story of Sancha, where the royal dignity of both father and son and their joint participation in governmental acts are

³ See Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 127, 1st ed.) Dr. Birch makes this joint reign to have been seven years only (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 60).

⁴ The 'Instructions' have been translated and published in the *Records of the Past*, vol. i. pp. 11-16.

the same course—the protection of the weak and humble, the relief of the afflicted, the punishment of the rebellious, the exercise of continual watchfulness and care against possible calamities, the defence of the frontier, the encouragement of agriculture, and the chastisement of foreign enemies; urging him to act even better than any of his predecessors, and reminding him that he too would have ere long to ‘enter the boat of Ra,’ and make the dread passage across the ‘Great Pool’ into the presence of Osiris.¹ Perhaps we may attribute in some measure to this document the satisfactory and in certain respects brilliant reign which followed, and of which we have now to give an account.

Usurtasen, , who assumed the prænomen of Khepr-ka-ra, , upon his association,² after reigning ten years conjointly with his father in perfect amity and agreement, entered upon his sole reign when Amenemhat died, and continued to exercise the royal authority from that date for thirty-five years. He is remarkable at once for his constructions and for his conquests. Thebes, Abydos, Heliopolis or On, the Fayoum, and the Delta, were equally the scenes of his constructive activity; and traces have been found at all these various sites, indicative of his religious zeal and architectural eminence. Of these various works the best known, though by no means the most interesting, is the obelisk of pink granite which still stands upon the site of Heliopolis, lifting itself above the verdure of the cornfields into the soft sleepy air, and point-

¹ The text of § 15 of the ‘Instructions’ is both mutilated and corrupt so that its meaning is obscure; but to me it seems to have had the intention expressed above.

² The name Khepr-ka-ra, is assigned to him by the author of the ‘Story of Sanel a,’ while Anon n l it is still living (*Records of the Past*, vol. vi. p. 142).

ing with silent finger to heaven. Obelisks were no previously quite unknown. We meet with the hieroglyphic form  as early as the times of the fifth dynasty;¹ and a small obelisk, erected by one of the Antefs of the eleventh, has been discovered by M. Mariette at Drab-abou-I-neggah.² But the erection of Usurtasen I. is the earliest monument of the kind, possessing any considerable grandeur,³ which is known to us; and it has the rare advantage of still remaining on the spot where it was originally set up, and where it has witnessed the events of at least thirty-seven centuries. It rises to a height of sixty-six feet⁴ above the surrounding plain, is formed of the hardest and most beautiful rose-coloured granite, and contains a deeply-cut hieroglyphical legend, exactly repeated on each of its four faces. The inscription runs as follows. 'The Horus-Sun, the life of those who are born, the king of the Upper and the Lower lands, Khepr-ka-ra; the lord of the double crown, the life of those who are born, the son of the Sun God Ra, Usurtasen; the friend of the spirits in Osiris, the ever-living golden Horus, the life of those who are born, the good god, Khepr-ka-ra, has executed this work in the beginning of the thirty years' cycle, he the dispenser of life for evermore.'⁵ Originally, it was beyond all doubt one of a pair⁶ placed in front of the great entrance to the Temple of the Sun, the 'Jachin and Boaz'⁷ of the Egyptian sanctuary.

¹ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 78.

² Mariette, *Monuments Diverss*, pl. 50 a.

³ The height of the obelisk of Antef is no more than 8½ metres or less than eleven feet.

⁴ *Description de l'Égypte*, 'Annuaire' vol. i. p. 220.

⁵ For a good representation of

the obelisk and its inscriptions, see the *Denkmäler*, pl. ii. pl. 118. The translation given in the text is taken in the main from Dr. Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 131, 1st ed.).

⁶ See above, vol. i. p. 235.

⁷ 1 Kings vii. 21.

A far more interesting memorial of Usurtasen than his Theban obelisk, with its tautological epigraph, is the work of the same kind, which now lies, broken and prostrate, on the soil of the Fayoum. Considerably inferior in size, since its complete height did not much exceed forty feet,¹ this monument excels the other alike in the variety and in the artistic value of the sculptures which are engraved upon it. Usurtasen is represented, on the upper portion of the only broad face which is visible, in the act of worshipping twenty of the principal deities. Among these the most honourable positions are assigned to Ammon and Phthah, while Mentu, Ra Harmachis, Isis, Nephthys, Sabak, Thoth, Kneph, Shu, Khem, Athor, and Sefekh are among the other objects of the monarch's adoration. The narrow sides have inscriptions, which resemble each other to a certain extent, but are far from being duplicates. In these the gods Mentu and Phthah are alone commemorated.

At Thebes, Usurtasen continued the construction of the great temple of Ammon which his father had begun, and is thought to have completed the remarkable cell,² which formed the inner sanctuary, or 'Holy of Holies,' in the temple as it existed at a later date. The original building of Usurtasen, which was probably of sandstone, appears to have been removed by Thothmes III., who, however, reproduced it in granite, and commemorated the original founder by inscribing his name upon the walls. The edifice is remarkable for the extreme simplicity of its plan, and the absence

¹ See the measurements in the *Denkmäler* pt. ii pl. 110, which, added together, amount to 12.62 mètres, or 41 ft. 4 in.

² See above, vol. i pp. 228-9, and compare Wilkinson, *Topography of Thebes*, pp. 177-8.

of all architectural embellishment. Usurtasen also built chambers for the priests attached to the edifice, and especially one for the 'chief sacer' of the temple, which continued to the time of Rameses IX., when it had to be restored, having fallen into decay.¹

At Tanis in the Delta,² at Abydos,³ and at Ellet-hyn,⁴ Usurtasen appears to have constructed temples, which were adorned with sculptures, inscriptions, and colossal statues.⁵ He also—alone or by his agents—erected memorials in the Wady Magharah,⁶ and at Wady Halfa on the Nile,⁷ a little above the Second Cataract. This last-named monument commemorated his principal conquest, and will conveniently introduce an account of his chief military expedition.

We have seen that, under the sixth dynasty, Egypt began to stretch out her arm towards the south,⁸ and that the negro tribes of Northern Nubia were already subject to her authority. But at that time the monuments made no mention of the Kishite or Ethiopian race, which in the later period of the independent monarchy played so important a part, sometimes even ruling Egypt and coming into contact with Assyria. So late as the reign preceding Usurtasen's, when Egypt wavered in this quarter, the Urit were still the principal tribe, and Amenemhat I. claimed it as his greatest military glory that he had fought with them.⁹ But under Usurtasen we find a different condition of things.

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i. p. 133—vol. ii. p. 181, 1st ed.

² *Ibid.* vol. i. p. 111.

³ *Ibid.* p. 141, 2.

⁴ Wilkenson in the author's *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 18, 1st ed.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* p. 91, Leumann *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 353.

⁶ Brugsch, *loc. cit.*, Leumann, p. 350.

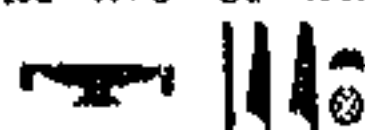
⁷ Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 6. Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i. p. 183—184. The Wady Halfa is now in the Museum of Cairo. See p. 6, 7.

⁸ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 11, § 2.

The Ua uat and their immediate neighbours have, we must suppose, been subjected, and the Egyptians, passing further south, come into contact with the veritable Cushite race -the dark skinned nation which had early peopled the whole northern shore of the Indian Ocean, from the mouth of the Indus to the vicinity of Cape Guardafui. Usur asen coveted the possession of the gold region, from which Nubia derived its name,¹ and, proceeding southward along the course of the Nile from the twenty-fourth to the twenty second parallel, came into hostile collision with the Kashi, , or Cushites, who now for the first time make their appearance in Egyptian history, and gave them a severe defeat.² The tribes who fought on the Ethiopian side were, besides the Cushites themselves, the Shemik, the Khiesca, the Sheat, and the Akherkin,³ all of whom are mentioned on the tablet which the victor set up to preserve the memory of his success. The Second Cataract was probably now made the boundary of Egypt to the south, Terminus being advanced in this direction a distance of nearly a hundred and fifty miles.

The inscription of Ameni, a general employed in this expedition, is chiefly remarkable for its statements concerning the small number of the troops under his command. They are given as 100, or at the utmost 600, ⁴ yet they seem to have been irresistible and to have carried all before them. We are reminded of modern African expeditions under a Stanley, a Baker,

¹ The sign for 'gold' in Egyptian is  or , which is read as *neb* or *nub*. Nubia is written

 = Nubi

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 130-8, 1st ed.

³ Such is the latest reading of the names (Brugsch, p. 139). For many they were read as Somit, Hiesan, Ohaat, and Arqin (see the French version, p. 91).

⁴ Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 62.

or a Gordon, where a few hundred porters and camp-followers easily disperse all the hostile forces that gather to oppose them, and by superiority of weapons and of discipline are enabled to triumph over thousands. The account given by Amen reveals an extreme weakness on the part of the tribes assailed, and leads us to suppose that the great nation of the Cushites was only very partially engaged in the war. Amen's object, moreover, seems to have been booty as much as territory; he prides himself on 'conducting the golden treasures to his master,'¹ and on capturing and carrying off a herd of 3,000 cattle.²

Another remarkable personage, who claims a part in the subjugation of the tribes of the south during the reign of Usurtisen, bore the name of Mentuhotep. This official, whose tombstone is among the treasures of the Museum of Boulaq, appears to have held a rank in the kingdom second only to that of the king. He filled at one and the same time the offices of minister of justice, home secretary, chief commissioner of public works, director of public worship, and perhaps of foreign secretary and minister of war.³ 'When he arrived at the gate of the royal residence, all the other great personages who might be present bowed down before him, and did obeisance.'⁴ He was judge, financier, general, administrator, artist. He preserved internal peace and routed foreign enemies; instructed men in their duties, and upheld the honour of the gods. No doubt his merits had endeared him greatly to his

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1, p. 136, 1st ed.

² Brugsch, *ibid.*

³ 'Mentuhotep ne se bornait à la fois les fonctions de ministre de la justice, de l'intérieur, les travaux

publics, de culte, et de guerre; il était aussi administrateur et financier.' (Brugsch, *Histoire d'Egypte*, 1^{re} éd., 12.)

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1, p. 137, 1st ed. (Complément à la 2^e éd.)

royal master; but we may question whether he does not take too favourable a view of human nature when he says that he was equally beloved by his colleagues and the other great men.

After a sole reign of thirty two years, Usutasen associated on the throne his son Amenemhat, conjointly with whom he continued to reign for either three or four years longer.¹ He must have died at a tolerably advanced age, since, from the time of his own association by his father, he had held the royal dignity for forty-five years, and it is not likely that he would be associated before the age of twenty or twenty five.

Amenemhat II., who took the official title of Nubkau ra, , was, comparatively speaking, an undistinguished prince; and but little is known of Egypt under his reign, though it extended over (at least) thirty-eight years.² He appears to have continued the war against the black races of the south,³ while at the same time he extended the sphere of the Egyptian operations in the north-east. In this quarter he not only worked the old mines of the Wady Magharah, but established a new mining station at Suabit-el-Khadim,⁴ where there is a tablet which he set up in his twenty-fourth year. He repaired the tomb of one of his predecessors, called Amenemhat,⁵ erected a statue in black basalt to his queen, Nefert, 'the virtuous,'⁶ and

¹ Brugsch says 'three' (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 120, 1st ed.), Borchardt (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 61) 'four years'.

² Borchardt speaks of 'the forty-fourth year' of Amenemhat II. (ib. p. 65), but Mallet gave him thirty-eight years only, and Brugsch (loc. cit.) obtains the same number from the monuments.

³ Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 350, Brugsch,

History of Egypt, vol. i. p. 114, 1st ed.

⁴ Borchardt, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 65.

⁵ This is not old as is known, is the first to have been erected to the disturbed time between the eleventh and twelfth dynasties, and to have been among the ancestors of the Usutases and Amenemhats (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 116, 1st ed.).

⁶ Ibid. p. 147.

executed repairs of public buildings in several cities of the Delta. The chief official of his time was Khnum-hotep, whose rock-tomb at Beni Hassan is one of the most remarkable and most richly adorned of those extensive excavations.¹ Amenemhat II. appears to have admitted the hereditary rank of this great noble, on whom he conferred a government which had been held by his maternal grandfather² under Amenemhat I. Following the example of his predecessors, Amenemhat II. elevated his son Usurtasen to the royal dignity, and reigned conjointly with him for six years, before he entered 'the eternal abodes.'

Usurtasen II., who was distinguished by the predominate of Sakhapi-ra,³ ♂ ♂, had a sole reign of thirteen years only, during which time it does not seem that there occurred any events of much importance. Egypt was flourishing, and was sought by emigrants who quitted their own less favoured countries to fix their abode in the fertile valley of the Nile. Among those whose coming is recorded was a family of Amu, Semitic by all appearance, perhaps from Media, who, to the number of thirty-seven, entered Egypt in a body, carrying their 'little ones' upon asses, and sought the protection of the reigning Pharaoh through his minister.⁴ Various circumstances of the scene illustrate the arrival in Egypt of the sons of Jacob; but it is not now supposed by any one to represent that occurrence.⁵

¹ See the *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 123-33.

² Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 81-150, 2d ed.

³ The name is given as Kha-khepi-ra in the English translation of Briggs's *Egypt* (p. 17). But it is Kha-khepi-ra in the French edition of 1875 and also in Bunsen (*Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 622), who follows

Lepsius (*Königsbuch*, Taf. vii. N. 181).

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 131-133. Compare the description of Buch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 65-7) and Briggs (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 155-7).

⁵ Compare Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 288. Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 65. Briggs, *History of Egypt*,

Khnum-hotep remained in favour under the second Usurtasen, who appointed his son Nekht to the governorship of the Cynopolitan canton.

A third Usurtasen, distinguished by the additional name of Sha-kau-ra, $\text{ⲉ} \text{ⲕ} \text{ⲁ} \text{ⲓ} \text{ⲣ} \text{ⲁ}$, now mounted the throne. We do not know his relationship to his predecessor, but it may be assumed as probable that he was either his son or his nephew. He reigned, according to Brugsch,¹ twenty six, according to Birch,² thirty eight years, and was one of the most distinguished monarchs of the twelfth dynasty. Manetho says,³ that he was regarded by the Egyptians as the greatest of their (early?) kings after Osiris and it is certain that he was in such high repute with the monarchs of the eighteenth dynasty, that they worshipped him as a god and built temples in his honour.⁴ It would seem that these exceptional distinctions were assigned to him mainly for one reason. He was regarded as the conqueror of Ethiopia. Whatever success had previously attended the efforts of his predecessors in this direction, Usurtasen III. was the king who broke the Ethiopic power, at any rate for a time, inflicted on 'the miserable Kush' a series of defeats, and permanently attached to Egypt the tract known as Northern Nubia, or the entire valley of the Nile between the first and the Second Cataract. Usurtasen began his military operations in his eighth year, and starting from Elephantine in the month Epiphi (May) moved southward with a fixed intention, which he expressed in an in-

vol. i. p. 157, 1st ed. Cook in the *Speaker's Commentary*, vol. i. p. 450.

¹ *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 120.

² *Ancient Egypt* p. 67.

³ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. p. 60, D.

⁴ De Rougé, *Revue Archéolo-*

gique Jan. 1847, vol. ix. pp. 478 et seqq. Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 211, Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 67. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 102-4, 1st ed.; Wilkinson, *Topography of Thebes* pp. 500-2.

scription set up upon the Elephantine island,¹ of reducing to subjection 'the miserable land of Kush.' His expedition was so far successful that in the same year he established two forts, just below the Second Cataract, one on either side of the Nile, and set up two pillars with inscriptions warning the black races that they were not to proceed further northward, except with the object of importing into Egypt cattle, oxen, goats, or asses.² As, however, the tribes upon the east and south were still unsubdued, further efforts were needed. Between his eighth and his sixteenth year, Usutisen III. continued the war with perseverance and ferocity in the tract between the Nile and the Red Sea, kidnapping the men, carrying off the women and the cattle, setting fire to the standing crops, and otherwise conducting the struggle in a way that 'reminds us of the most infamous razzias in the recent story of African warfare.'³ Far from being ashamed of these severities, he gloried in them, and pictured them on the stone columns of victory which in his sixteenth year he set up to commemorate his successes. Finally, in his nineteenth year, he again made an expedition southwards, chastised 'the miserable Kush' once more, and left a record of his victory at Abydos.

The forts built by Usutisen to protect his conquests are still visible on either bank of the Nile, a little below the Second Cataract, and bear the names of Koommeh and Sennem. They are massive constructions, built of numerous square blocks of granite and sandstone,⁴ and placed upon two steep rocks which

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 50.
² Ibid. p. 160. See also *Denkmalen*, pt. ii, pl. 130.

³ Brugsch, p. 161. *Denkmalen*, vol. i, pl. 130.
⁴ Ibid. *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii, pp. 200-1.

rise up perpendicularly from the river. The columns on which he commemorated his conquests are also visible,¹ and are covered with inscriptions deeply cut into the stone. One of the inscriptions tells us that the king had permitted the erection of his statue at Semneh or the neighbourhood,² but up to the present time no traces of this interesting monument have been found. Usurtasen worked the inexhaustible quarries of Hammamât, and set up memorials there, in which he professed himself a worshipper of the god Min, or Khem.³ In the island of Schel he exhibited himself as a devotee of Anka or Anuka.⁴ His name appears also at Assouan⁵ (Syene) and elsewhere.

It is not necessary to suppose that Usurtasen III., though regarded by the Egyptians themselves as one of their greatest kings, and consequently deified, was in reality a man of extraordinary ability. His actions may have contributed to form the character of that ideal Sesostris⁶ whom the Egyptians paraded before the eyes of the Greeks and Romans as their great heroic monarch; but there was nothing really astonishing in them, nothing really admirable. At the head of disciplined troops he gained repeated victories over the half-armed and untrained races, in part negro, in part Ethiopic, of the south. By a 'continued merciless persecution,'⁷

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 100, 1st ed.

² Birch says that he 'set up his statue on the spot' (*Ancient Egypt* p. 67), but the inscription, quoted by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, p. 102) merely states that he had given permission for its erection.

³ Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pl. 136 a. (compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i. p. 105, 1st ed.)

⁴ *Denkmäler* pt. ii. pl. 136 b.

⁵ *Ibid.* pl. 136 c.

⁶ Manetho substituted the name of Sesostis for that of Usurtasen, according to both Hieronymus and Africanus (ap. Syncell. *Chronograph*, vol. i. p. 59 d, and p. 60 c), and assigned him the actions which Herodotus ascribes to that monarch (ii. 102-3). He called the father of Rameses II., not Sesostis, but Sathos.

⁷ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 101, 1st ed.

he so far intimidated them, that they were induced to submit to Egyptian supremacy, and to endure the loss of freedom and independence. And he understood the value of fortresses as a means of establishing a dominion, of rivetting a detested yoke on a proud nation's neck, and of making revolt hopeless, if not impossible. He was also so ambitious, so far desirous of posthumous fame, that he took care to have his deeds recorded in words, and engraved with an iron pen in the rock for ever.¹ But in this respect he merely followed the previous tradition and practice of the Egyptian kings, while in his conquests he only a little exceeded the limits reached by more than one of his predecessors. What gave him his fame was the fact that, having finally settled Ethiopia, he was the king to whom its conquest was attributed,² and as this was the only considerable tract which the monarchs of the old empire subjugated, those of the new, bent upon conquest themselves, singled him out for approval and admiration. When temples had been built in his honour, and he had been put on a par with the gods Totem and Kneph,³ mythic details naturally clustered about his name; the Sesostis legend grew up; Usarsisen became a giant more than seven feet high,⁴ and the conqueror of Ethiopia, Europe, and Asia, his *stelæ* were said to be found in Palestine, Asia Minor, Scythia, and Thracia,⁵ he left a colony at Colchis;⁶ dug all the canals by which Egypt was in its most

¹ Joëvin 21.

² Herod. ii. 10.

Wilkinson's *Topography of Thebes*, p. 501. Bunsen's *Egypt's Place*, vol. i. p. 201, Bunsen's *Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 102-111.

³ Marcho ap. Syncell. *Chrono-*

graph 186.

Herod. ii. 103-6. Ptolemy's map of Asia Minor as it is by Herodotus. Sesostis is mentioned by Mr. Seycey in his *History of Egypt*. They are certainly not Egyptian.

⁶ Ibid. ii. 103.

flourishing period intersected; invented geometry; and set up colossi above fifty feet in height!¹

According to M. Lenormant,² Usurtasen III was buried in one of the brick pyramids at Dashoor; but this is not generally admitted by Egyptologists. The fragment of a cartouche found by Perring in the debris of the north pyramid is quite insufficient to prove the supposed interment, since the terminal element of a royal name, which was all that the cartouche contained, was one common to many monarchs.³

The successor of Usurtasen III was another Amenemhat, the third of the name. There is monumental evidence that he held the throne for forty-two years,⁴ and, as this is the exact number of years assigned to him by the Turin papyrus, we may conclude that such was the full length of his reign. The official name which he assumed on ascending the throne was Ra-n-mât, . This title is one of greater significance than usual, since it may be translated 'the sun of justice' or 'of righteousness,' and would naturally imply a special desire, on the part of the monarch who bore it, to rule justly and equitably over all his subjects. Amenemhat's reign corresponded to this taking announcement. Instead of following in his predecessor's footsteps, and directing the forces of Egypt to the occupation of new territory, he, after one war with the negroes,⁵ which was perhaps provoked by an incursion, threw the whole energy of himself and people into the accomplishment of an enterprise from which no glory was to be derived beyond that which is justly due to

¹ Herod. ii. 108-10.

² *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 351.

³ As to Men-kau-ra, Men-kau-

her, Amenemhat II, Nefert-hotep II and others.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 171, 1st ed.

⁵ Ibid.

the conception and prosecution of wise measures tending to increase greatly the prosperity of a numerous people. Egypt depends for its productiveness wholly upon the Nile, which each year at the time of the inundation spreads a fresh deposit of the richest alluvium over the entire region to which the waters extend at their highest. The uniformity of nature, even in those operations which seem most irregular, is surprising; and the inundation not only occurs without fail year after year, but begins and ends at the same time of year almost to a day, and for the most part observes a remarkable regularity in the height to which it reaches, and the limits whereto it extends.¹ Still, there are occasions when this uniformity is broken in upon. Now and then the rains in Abyssinia, which are the true cause of the annual overflow, fall less plentifully than usual, and the rise of the river is somewhat, or even considerably, below the average. The hearts of the Egyptians under these circumstances grow faint. Only the lands close to the river bank are inundated; those at a greater distance lie parched and arid throughout the entire summer, and fail to produce a blade of grass or a spike of corn. Famine stares the people in the face; and unless large supplies of grain have been laid up in store previously, or can be readily imported, the actual starvation of thousands is the necessary consequence.² On the other hand, sometimes, though rarely, the fountains of the heavens are opened, and, the Abyssinian rainfall being excessive, the river rises beyond the expected height.

¹ See above, vol. i p. 20.

² On Egyptian famines, see the *Description de l'Égypte*, vol. vii. p. 332; and compare Büsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 263-4, 1st ed., Büsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 68, Rawlinson, *Historical Illustrations of the Old Testament*, pp. 51-2.

Calamitous results at once ensue. The mounds erected to protect the cities, the villages, and the pasture lands, are surmounted or washed away; the houses, built often of mud, collapse; cattle are drowned; human life itself is imperilled and the evils suffered are almost worse than those which follow upon a deficient flood¹. To save Egypt from the two opposite dangers arising from an excessive and a defective Nile, hydraulic works are required on the largest scale; reservoirs have to be provided of vast extent, wherein the superfluous water of an overabundant inundation may be hoarded and detained, the pressure upon embankments being thus relieved; and from which again the precious fluid may be dispensed in the case of a deficient Nile, and the niggardliness of nature compensated by the providence and care of man. It is doubtful whether all has ever been done in this matter that might be done; but at any rate it is clear that Amenemhat III. made one great effort in the right direction, accomplished one most important work of the kind, and that with an engineering skill and ability that are above all praise. Taking advantage of the existence of a natural depression in the desert to the west of Egypt,² extending over an area of nearly 400 square miles, he formed in the south eastern part of this space a vast artificial basin or lake—known to the Greeks as Lake Moeris³—which extended from north to south

¹ Compare above, vol. i p. 172, and see Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 165, 1st ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 68, Lenoir, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 352. valley of the Nile the lower part of the Fayoum is 130 feet below it.
² Herod. ii. 101, 140, Diod. Sic. i. 66, Strab. xvii. 1, § 57. The old notion that the Birket-el-Khroun represents the Lake Moeris, though supported by the important authority of Jomard (*Description*), VOL. II. M

a distance of fourteen miles,¹ and from east to west a distance varying from six miles to eleven. The area of the lake is estimated at 405,479,000 square mètres,² or about 480,000,000 square yards. It occupied an elevated position between two comparatively low tracts, the valley of the Nile on the one side, and the north western portion of the Fayoum upon the other. A canal, derived from the *Bahr Yousuf*, or western branch of the Nile, cut partly in the rock,³ supplied the lake with water, when the Nile was high, and afforded a sensible relief in times of pressure from high flood. Through the same canal water could be drawn from the lake when the Nile was low, and a large tract along the base of the Libyan range could thus be irrigated, which a low inundation did not reach.⁴ At the same time, all that portion of the Fayoum which lay outside the lake, to the north and west, or about three fourths of its surface, might be kept under constant cultivation by means of the water which could be supplied to it from the great reservoir. A vast dam or dyke, forty feet high in places, partly of solid masonry, partly of earth and pebbles, formed the boundary of

de l'Egypte, 'Antiquités,' vol i pp. 79-114), is now pretty generally exploded. The investigations of M. Linant de Bellefonds, embodied in his work, *Mémoire sur le lac Mœris* (Alexandria, 1843), satisfied Wilkinson (Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol ii p. 226, note 7, 3rd edit.) and even Bunsen (*Egypt's Place*, vol ii. pp. 328-50) and his conclusions have been adopted by almost all recent critics. They are however, curiously misrepresented by Dean Blakesley (*Herodotus with a Commentary*, vol 1 pp. 303-8).

¹ See the map opposite, which follows M. Linant de Bellefonds,

and compare Herod. ii. 149, which gives the lake this direction. The Birket el-Keroun runs nearly from east to west.

² Linant de Bellefonds, *Mémoire*, p. 20.

³ Ibid. p. 13.

⁴ Herod. ii. 149; Strab. xvii. 1, § 37. The calculations of M. Linant de Bellefonds (pp. 22-24) show that the waters of the lake, besides irrigating the northern and western portions of the Fayoum, would have sufficed for the supply of the whole western bank of the Nile from Beni Souef to the embouchure at Canopus during one half of the year.

the reservoir to the north and west, while southward and eastward it extended to the range of hills which separates between the basin of the Fayoum and the Nile valley. The artificial barrier ran a little east of north, from Talut in the south to Biamo in the centre of the Fayoum, a distance of fifteen miles; at Biamo it made a right angle, and was then carried in a line a little south of east from Biamo, past El Elam and El Eclou, to the eastern range in about lat. $29^{\circ} 26'$, making a distance of about twelve miles more. Thus the entire dyke had a length of twenty-seven miles, and, if it be regarded as averaging thirty feet in height, and at least the same in width,¹ would have contained a mass of material amounting to nearly forty-eight millions of cubic yards, or three sevenths more than the cubic contents of the Great Pyramid of Ghizeh.² In connection with the canal and reservoir, a system of sluices and floodgates was set up, whereby the flow of the water was regulated as the interests of agriculture required.³

At the same time special pains were taken to ascertain beforehand what the rise of the Nile was likely to be; and for this purpose a Nilometer was established at the newly occupied station of Semneh, where from the time of Amenemhat III. the height of the inundation was duly marked upon the rocky bank of the river, with a short inscription giving the regnal year of the monarch.⁴ It is a remarkable fact that the average

¹ Towards the north the width of the embankment, according to M de Bellefonds (p. 19), was *sixty* mètres, or nearly 200 feet but this could be only at the base

² M. Lenoirant observes, with justice, that the works constructed

by Amenemhat III were as vast as those of the fourth dynasty, and considerably more useful (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 351)

³ Diod. Sic. i. 52, § 2; Strabo l. c.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 167, 1st ed.

annual rise under Amenemhat at Semneh in Nubia exceeded that of the present day by more than twenty-three feet.¹ As the rise in Egypt itself seems to be nearly the same now as under the twelfth dynasty,² we must account for the difference at Semneh by local causes; the course of the Nile must have been anciently blocked by rocks which have given way, and the water must thus have been held back in Nubia, and prevented from flowing off rapidly. No great difference would have been produced in Egypt by the removal of the obstacles, except perhaps that the inundation would have come on somewhat more rapidly, and its duration have been a little diminished.

While engaged in the completion of his great work of utility in the region of the Fayoum, Amenemhat also undertook some constructions, in its neighbourhood, of an ornamental and artistic character. At a point on the eastern side of his reservoir, projecting into it towards the west, he built what seems really to have been a palace, but what the Greeks and Romans called a 'Labyrinth,'³ and believed to be an architectural puzzle.⁴ It was constructed of white silicious limestone and red granite,⁵ and comprised, we are told,⁶ 3,000 chambers, half above ground, and half below it. Besides chambers, it possessed numerous colonnades and courts, covered with sculptures, and roofed, Herodotus says,⁷ with stone. At one corner was a pyramid, 240 feet

¹ Brugsch, *l. c.* Compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 69.

² See vol. i. p. 21, note ⁴.

³ Herod. ii. 148, Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i. pp. 59-60. Diod. Sic. i. 61, Strab. xvii. 1, § 38. &c.

⁴ See Plin. *H. N.* xxxvii. 13,

where the work of Amenemhat is compared with that ascribed to Dædalus in Crete.

⁵ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 226, note ², 3rd ed.

⁶ Herod. ii. 148.

⁷ *Ibid.*

high, according to our authority, and, according to modern measurements, 300 feet square at the base.¹

To supply the materials for his constructions, Amenemhat had recourse to the quarries of Hamma mât, where inscriptions belonging to his reign² record the instructions which he gave to his officers on various occasions, and in one instance his own personal presence in connection with ornamental work for the Fayoum, including a colossal statue of himself to be set up at the provincial capital³

He also worked the mines of the Sinaitic region, both those of Wady Magharah and the more recently established ones of the Sarabit el Khadim. At both places there are tablets executed during his reign; and at the former they are numerous, and cover the period extending from his second to his forty second year⁴. At the Sarabit el Khadim, they include a notice of the erection of a temple to Athor,⁵ the reputed 'mistress' of the country, who at once presided over the copper mines and was the 'lady of turquoise.'⁶

Amenemhat III. was succeeded by another monarch of the same name, whom Manetho calls Ammenemes,⁷ and to whom he assigns a reign of eight years. The Turin papyrus gives him nine years, three months, and seventeen days, which is probably the true duration of

his reign. His sister, Sabak nefru ra, , whom he seems to have associated, reigned conjointly with him during the last four years of this period

¹ Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii opp. p. 634.

² *Denkmäler*, pt. ii pl. 136.

³ Brugsc., *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 171, 1st ed.

⁴ *Ibid*.

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 69.

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. vii p. 50.

⁷ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i p. 60, A.

Both appear to have interested themselves in the works of the Fayoum, where their names are found,¹ and where they are thought by some to have been interred.² The two pyramids crowned with colossal statues, seen by Herodotus to rise out of the waters of the Lake Moeris,³ are identified with the stone bases now existing at Biamo,⁴ at the north-western angle of the lake, and are thought to have borne the effigies of these monarchs, whose names have been found on various blocks of stone in this region. Amenemhat IV. seems also to have worked the mines of the Wady Magharah and the Sarabit el Khadim,⁵ where the labours of the workmen were still rewarded by rich yields of copper and *mafla*.⁶ But the period is, on the whole, one upon which the monuments throw little light. As so often happens, a dynasty of unusual vigour and energy expires amid clouds and darkness; abnormal effort is succeeded by dulness and inaction, life and movement by exhaustion; nor is it until a considerable space has passed that the roll of history once more unfolds to us events of interest and personages of importance.

It has been said that Egypt under this dynasty enjoyed its apogee, and that its civilisation attained now the fullest expansion which it ever reached under the

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pl. 140. Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 174, 1st ed.; Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 73.

² Birch, p. 72; Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. p. 373.

³ Herod. i. 149. Herodotus probably beheld Lake Moeris from the site of the Labyrinth. At the horizon, between seven and eight miles off, he would see the pyramids of Biamo crowned with their

statues. (Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. pl. xx. opp. p. 373.) The lake would form his horizon on either side of the pyramids and he would not be able to see that it did not extend beyond Biamo.

⁴ Bunsen, vol. ii. p. 354.

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 73.

⁶ The *mafla* of the hieroglyphical inscriptions is regarded by Dr. Brugsch as 'the turquoise' (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 172, 1st ed.).

Pharaohs.¹ There is considerable difficulty in balancing one period against another in the history of a civilised state, and in deciding when, on the whole, the highest perfection was arrived at. In our own country the Elizabethan age has its admirers; the reign of Queen Anne is by some regarded as the true Augustan period; while there is a class which maintains that no former period equals the glories of the present day. There are various grounds on which the times of the eighteenth and nineteenth dynasties may be upheld as the culminating period of Egyptian greatness, alike in arms and in arts; but the eulogy which has been passed upon the period of the twelfth, even if it be undue, has beyond a doubt some important grounds on which it may support itself.

Civilisation, as observed in the preceding chapter,² took from the time of the eleventh dynasty, and under the presidency of Thebes, a practical and utilitarian turn. The great efforts of the principal monarchs of both the eleventh and twelfth dynasties had very markedly this character. New openings were made for trade, new routes established and provided with wells and guards, forts built to check invasion, mines worked, the Nile carefully watched and measured, and finally a huge reservoir made, and a gigantic system of irrigation established in the Fayoum and along the whole of the western bank of the river from Beni Souef to the shores of the Mediterranean. Commercial intercourse was at the same time established with the Nubians, who furnished cattle, gold, and slaves; with the East African tribes (and through them with Arabia,

¹ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 353.

² Supra, p. 136

and perhaps India) for spices, gums, rare woods, precious stones, and wonderful animals; and with the Syrians for *kohl* or stibium,¹ ladanum, and balsam.² Foreign emigrants were readily received into the country, and brought with them novelties in dress and customs, perhaps sometimes new inventions or even new arts.³ Luxury increased. Palaces were painted and adorned with gold;⁴ carpets were spread upon their floors;⁵ and the number of courts and chambers was multiplied beyond former precedent.⁶ Varieties in dress were introduced. While the simple linen tunic still contented the great mass of men, there were some



Dresses worn under the Twelfth Dynasty.

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 157, 1st ed., Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 66.

² Gen. xxxv. 25.

³ See the *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 131-3. The six-stringed lyre carried by one of the immigrants (p. 133) is of a form quite new in Egypt at the period.

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp.

14-15, § 13.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 12, § 6.

⁶ Herod. ii. 148. Allowing for a large amount of exaggeration, we must still conclude from the account given by this writer, that the number of apartments in the palace, known as 'the Labyrinth,' was prodigious.

who affected a more elaborate style of costume, and wore, besides the tunic, a cape over their shoulders, and a second tunic, of a thinner material, over the first, or even a long robe, reaching nearly to the ankles¹ Bracelets and anklets were inlaid with precious stones, and the former worn by both men and women, but the latter by women only² Men had sometimes artificial beards, which seem to have been attached to the wig³ The low-backed chair without arms was still in common use; but another is seen, which has a high back, and also arms⁴ Houses began to be adorned with colonnades, the pillars of which imitated the lotus blossom. Field sports were pursued with increased ardour. Gentlemen of the highest rank not only indulged in fowling, as formerly, but speared fish with their own hand, and hunted the lion⁵ and the antelope



Dog resembling a Turnspit

Great attention was paid to the breed of dogs, and several new types were produced, more especially one with short legs, resembling the modern turnspit⁶ In moving about their estates, the grandes had them-

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 134, b, d e

² *Ibid* pls 128 and 129.

³ *Ibid* pls 129 132.

⁴ *Ibid* pl 128, upper line

⁵ A lion is represented as wounded by two arrows in one of the scenes depicted upon the tomb of Khnum-hotep (*Denkmaler*, pt ii pl. 132) That kings hunted the lion at this

period appears from the 'Instructions of Amenemhat' (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 11).

⁶ *Ibid* in *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol iv p 177 Compare to *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 131 and for other varieties of the canine species see pls 132 and 131.

selves carried in highly ornamented litters, which were slung on two poles and borne on the shoulders of four men¹ To amuse their leisure hours in their homes, they admitted into their apartments professional tumblers,² who were generally fair haired and light-complexioned, and are thought to have been Libyans from the northern parts of Africa³

Architecture somewhat lowered its pretensions. Instead of the enormous pyramids of the early period, the kings now constructed for their tombs either pyramids of moderate size, or merely underground chambers,⁴ upon which they emplaced other buildings. The style of their temples seems to have been massive, but wanting in ornamentation. They, however, introduced certain new features into their architectural works which were striking, and employed others upon a scale which had not been previously adopted Of the latter kind was their use of the obelisk,⁵ while under the former head must be classed their erection of colossal statues upon the top of truncated pyramids.⁶ In some of their buildings they fastened the stones together with metal cramps.⁷ If the Labyrinth, as seen by Herodotus, was really the work of a king of the twelfth dynasty,⁸ we must ascribe to the period a certain

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 126. For a representation, see above, vol. i p 535

² See above, vol i p 274; and compare *Denkmaler*, pt ii pl 126, upper line

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol i pp 6 and 175, 1st ed

⁴ Herod. ii 148

⁵ On the early date at which the form of the obelisk was known to the Egyptians see above, p 57

⁶ Herod ii 149. It is clear that

a pyramid must have been truncated to allow of the superimposition of a colossal statue The combination can scarcely have been very satisfactory (See Bunsen's attempted restoration of the two pyramids of Biamo, *Egypt's Place*, vol ii pl 20)

⁷ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 15

⁸ Probably it had been greatly added to by later kings before the time of Herodotus's visit.

amount of architectural magnificence, though in any case the admiration of Herodotus for the edifice seems to have been overstrained and beyond its merits.¹

The fluted columns, which have been called 'Proto Doric,'² belong to the times whereof we are speaking,³ and were used in the façades of excavated tombs constructed for themselves and their families by the nobles. These tombs were of extraordinary dimensions, and in some instances most elaborately carved and painted with scenes from real life, similar in their general character to those of the Pyramid period.⁴ The reliefs are remarkable for harmony, elegance, and delicacy of workmanship,⁵ but have less vigour, less reality and life, than those of the first period. Conventionalism is more apparent in them; hieratic canons are in force; and each figure is designed with strict regard to an established law of proportions. Sculpture 'in the round' reaches a higher degree of excellence; and a fragment from a colossal statue of King Usurtasen I, discovered at Tanis, and now in the Berlin Museum, is viewed as 'the *chef d'œuvre* of the art of the first empire,' and as leaving little to be desired.⁶

The chief modifications of the religion worthy of remark are, first, the distinct elevation of Ammon to the headship of the Pantheon, indicated by the erection in his honour of the *great* temple at the capital, by the position which he occupies on the obelisk of Usur

¹ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. II. p. 226, note 2, 3rd ed.

² See above, vol. I. p. 213.

³ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. I. p. 184, 1st ed.; Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. I. p. 353.

⁴ See especially the tomb of Khnum-hotep, represented in the *Denkmäler*, pt. II. pls. 126-132.

Lenoirant, l. s. c.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. I. p. 178, 1st ed.

tasen I in the Fayoum,¹ and by the frequent employment of his name as an element in the appellations of kings and other great personages;² secondly, the advance of Sabak from a local and subordinate position to one of high rank among the universal divinities of the country;³ and thirdly, the more positive and general recognition of the absolute divinity of the kings. Sabak's advance is the natural consequence of the prominence given to the canton of the Fayoum by the later monarchs of the dynasty, since the crocodile-headed god had been from a very ancient date the special local deity of that district, and the crocodile itself was always viewed as sacred there. Ammon's elevation is more difficult to account for, since he does not appear to have been *anciently* of much account in Thebes,⁴ if he was even known there, which is doubtful. His position seems the result of the accident that a private individual, in whose name his was the chief element, happened to raise himself to the throne. Amenemhat I. at once began the temple, which gradually became the greatest in Egypt, his son, Usurtasen I., continued this work, and assigned to Ammon the first and highest place on his Fayoum obelisk, he also gave to his eldest son the name of Amen-i,⁵ and to another, apparently, that of Ameneinhat. Henceforth Ammon's place at the

¹ Supra, p. 149. Ammon holds the first place in the highest compartment on this monument.

² See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 135, 146, 1st ed. Birch, *Guide to Galleries*, pp. 20, 27, 32, 33, 34, &c.

³ Sabak is represented in the third line of the Fayoum obelisk, and is placed on a pair with Thoth,

and before Kneph, Sati, Shu, Athor, Khem, and Horus (*Denkmäler*, pt. ii pl. 119). His name becomes an element in royal and other appellations (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 174, 1st ed.; Birch, *Guide to Galleries*, pp. 25, 26, 27, 31, &c.).

⁴ Compare above, p. 138.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 136, 1st ed.

head of the Theban gods was well ascertained, and the predominance of Thebes in the later history gave him ultimately a pre eminence over all the other deities throughout Egypt.

The *quasi* divinity of the kings had always been asserted by themselves, and no doubt in the language of adulation familiar to courtiers it had occasionally been admitted, even from an early date. But it is not till the time of the twelfth dynasty that acknowledgments, made in the most *naïf* and innocent fashion, become common, and seem to be a matter of course. 'When I was brought to Egypt,' says Saneha, 'it was as though a god was in it—a land such as one which a beneficent god presides over—he spake to me, and I answered him, saying, "Save us!" His son comes home . . . he also is a god.'¹ And again, he addresses the Pharaoh as follows—'Thy majesty is the good god . . . the great god, the equal of the Sun God.'² And when, at the invitation of the monarch, he returns to Egypt from Edom, he remarks 'When I came near him, I fell upon my belly amazed before him. *The god* addressed me mildly.'³ Similarly, Khnum-hotep declares of Usutas in I, 'The god Tum he is himself.'⁴ How far these acknowledgments were mere flattery, how far they represented the sincere belief of the Egyptians, it is impossible to determine; but in either case they must have exerted an injurious influence upon the minds of the monarchs themselves, who were puffed up by the high titles bestowed on them, and became impressed with an undue sense of their own importance and dignity. The pride which

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol vi p 137

² *Ibid.* p 145

³ *Ibid* p 148

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p 150, ll 75, 76, 1st ed.

made the Pharaoh of the Exodus, time after time, 'harden his heart, and oppose himself to the declared will of Jehovah, was the natural consequence of a system which caused weak men to believe in the reality of their own divinity, and strong minded men to feel an extreme contempt for others

CHAPTER XVIII

THE DYNASTIES BETWEEN THE TWELFTH AND THE
SEVENTEENTH.

The Thirteenth (Theban) Dynasty in part contemporary with the Fourteenth (Xois) and the Fifteenth and Sixteenth (Shepherds) Decline of Egypt at this period Names and scanty Memorials of the Kings Permanent Semitic Pressure on the North-eastern Front (?) Invasion brought about by previous disturbance and disintegration

'Vana veisire in omnes opiniones heet' Liv. iv. 20.

THE four dynasties, wherewith Manetho filled this interval, are regarded by most Egyptologists as ruling contemporaneously in either three or four places.¹ The thirteenth dynasty bore sway in Thebes, and held possession of Middle and Upper Egypt, while the fourteenth maintained itself at Xois in the centre of the Delta,² and the fifteenth and sixteenth ruled, either consecutively or contemporaneously, over some portion of the more eastern districts. Manetho's numbers for this period are untrustworthy, and, where not false, are misleading. The thirteenth dynasty may, for instance, have included sixty royal personages;³ but we gather from the Turin Papyrus that they were

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 184, 1st edit. Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii. pp. 431-7. Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. pp. 358-60; Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. pp. 340-51, 3rd edit.

² Xois is the modern Kasit (Egypt

Klaskan) in the lower portion of the tract between the Damietta and Rosetta mouths, about lat. 31° 3'. It lay north-east of Sais and north-west of Sebennytus.

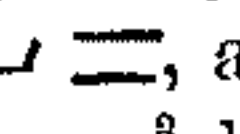
³ Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph*, vol. i. p. 61, A.

pretenders to the throne, rather than real kings, and that the average time during which each one of them bore the royal title was about three or three and a half years¹ It is not unlikely that in many instances they contended one against another; and some of them certainly, many of them possibly, reigned no more than a few months or a few days. On the other hand, there seem to have been, in the earlier part of the thirteenth dynasty, some monarchs of note; and it is thought that for a certain number of years the dynasty bore sway over the whole country, disruption not having set in until they had held the throne for two centuries or two centuries and a half.² Such calculations of time are, however, exceedingly uncertain. The kings of the period, as a general rule, left no monuments; and, until forced by the curiosity of the Greeks to make chronological conjectures, the Egyptians themselves had no estimate of the duration of any dynasty, much less of these undistinguished ones.

It is difficult to conjecture the causes which, after so glorious a dynasty as the twelfth, suddenly reduced Egypt under the thirteenth to impotence and dumbness. There is no indication of foreign invasion, at any rate for a century or two after Amenemhat IV and Sabak-nefrura set up their monuments at the edge of the Lake Moëris; but from some cause or other a gap occurs in the Egyptian records, and if it were not for a single fragile document—the papyrus of Turin—the very names of the kings would have been blotted out. Internal troubles are suggested as the most probable cause of the long silence; and the latest

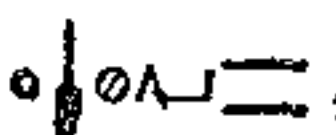
¹ See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p. 188, 1st ed
² Ibid pp 185 & Compare Le- | normant, *Manuel d'Histoire An-*
cienne, vol. 1 p 359.

writer on the subject ventures to lay it down as 'almost certain, that the history of Egypt at this epoch must have been made up of times of revolt and interior troubles, and murders and assassinations, by which the life and length of reign of the princes was not subjected to the ordinary conditions of human existence.'¹ The kings appear to have maintained the practice of ruling under two names—a real personal appellative, and a throne name, or title of honour assumed at their accession; though it is not often that both designations have come down to us. They must have maintained persistently the worship of Sabak, the crocodile headed god, affected by the preceding dynasty, since at least seven of them bore the name of Sabak-hotep, which is translated 'servant of Sabak' by Dr. Brugsch;² and they must also have been devoted adherents of Ra, the Sun God, whose name is found to have formed an element in at least two thirds of the royal appellations of the period. Ammon, on the other hand, unless identified with Ra, of which there is no evidence, must have been in comparative disfavour, since his name occurs but once in the entire list, and then nearly at the commencement, where we come upon a Ra Amen-em-hat. Nut and Nefer-Tum seem also to have received recognition from the dynasty, who, so far as the evidence of their names goes, admitted but a narrow Pantheon.

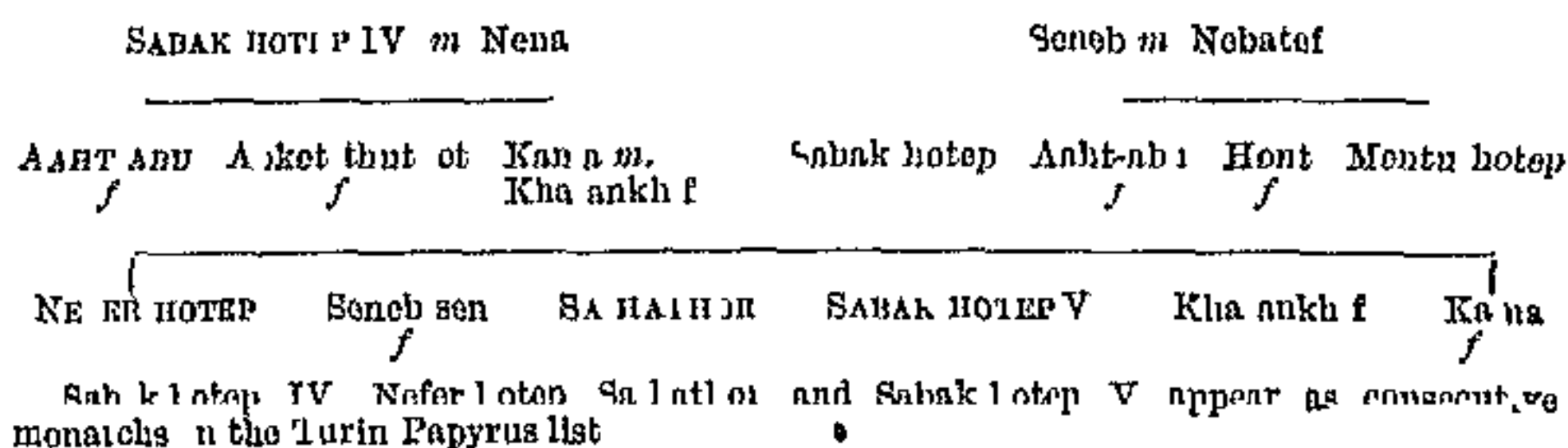
The dynasty commences with a Sabak-hotep, , or , who bears the throne name of Ra khui-tani, , and may possibly have been a son of Sabak-nefrura,³ but who has left no monument, and is only

¹ Brugsch, vol i pp 184-5, 1st ed. *Hieroglyphics in Bunson's Egypt*,

² Ibid p 180. I do not, however, find the sense of 'servant' among the meanings of *hotep* in Birch (See the *Dictionary of* *History of Egypt*, vol. 1 p 189, 1st ed.)

known to us from the Turin Papyrus. He was followed after an interval by Ra Sabak-hotep or Sabak-hotep II, whose throne name is not known. A third Sabak-hotep, distinguished as Ra sokhem-khu tau, , mounted the throne soon afterwards, and left an inscription recording the height of the Nile at Semneh, which he set up in the third year of his reign.¹ Four kings intervened between this Sabak-hotep and the next, who was known as Ra sokhem sut tau, , and left granite statues inscribed with his name at Tanis in the Delta.² This monarch appears to have been the son of a certain Mentu-hotep who was not of royal race, and to have derived his claim to sovereignty from his mother, a princess called Aah-t-abu.³ He married a wife, whose name was Nena, and had by her three children, all of whom were daughters. The eldest received the name of her royal grandmother, and this name is found surrounded with the cartouche, but the crown descended in the line of the third daughter, Kama, whose son Nefer-hotep appears in the Turin Papyrus as the immediate successor of Sabak-hotep IV. The genealogical tree of this family may be drawn out as follows.⁴—

Mentu-hotep m Aah-t-abu (princess)



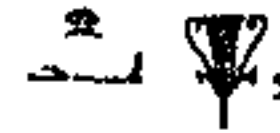
¹ *Denkmäler* pt. II pl. 151 c

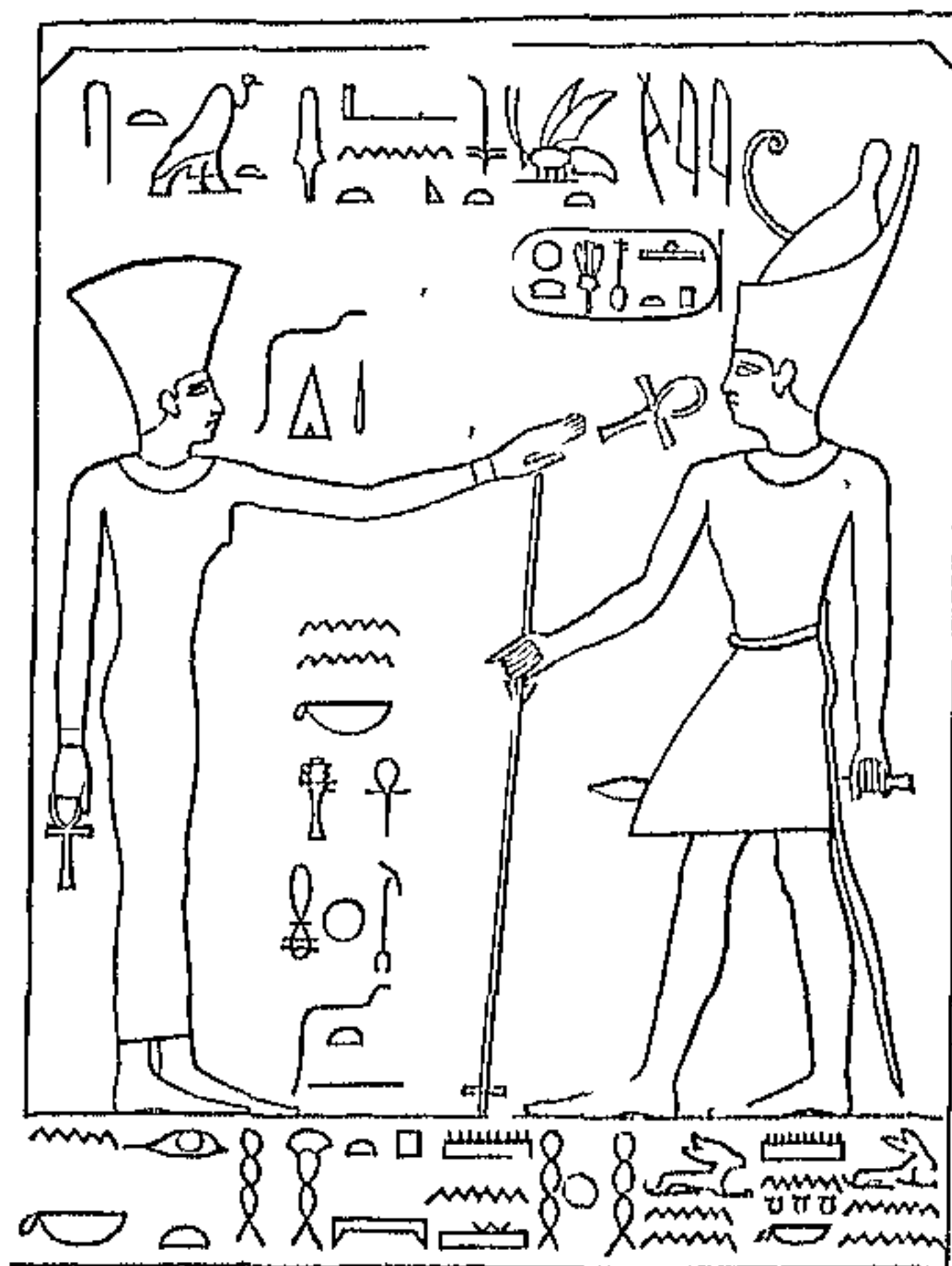
² Brugsch, p. 192; Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 74

³ Brugsch, *Histoire d'Égypte*, pp.

120-1

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 132

More than a common interest attaches to Nefer-hotep, . He bore the throne name of Shesepesra, , and has left various monuments, principally in Upper Egypt. One of these is a tablet to Khem and Kneph, bearing the figures of those gods, which is set up in the island of Konosso.¹ Another, from the same locality, represents Khem, Mentu, and Sati,² while, third, in the island of Sehel near Philæ, represents the



Nefer-hotep receives life from Anuka.

monarch himself receiving 'life' as a gift from the goddess Anka or Anuka.³ He also set up an inscription at

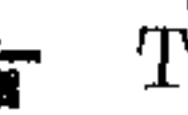
¹ *Denkmalen*, pt II pl 151 f

² *Ibid* pl 151 h.

³ *Ibid.* pl 151 g

Assouan,¹ on which he commemorated the members of his family.

Sabak-hotep V, who succeeded his brother Sahathor, and took the throne name of Sha-nefer-ra, , left an inscription in the island of Argo near Dongola, and set up his statue at Bubastis in the Delta,² thus showing that he held possession of the whole valley of the Nile from the borders of Ethiopia to the Mediterranean. He was followed after a short interval by Sabak-hotep VI, who reigned as Sha-ankh-ra, and dedicated a memorial to the god Khem at Abydos, which is now in the Museum of Leyden.³

The immediate successor of Sabak-hotep VI was another king of the same name, distinguished by the additional designation of Sha-hotep-ra, . This is the last monarch of the dynasty who bore the favourite designation. He reigned, according to the Turin papyrus, somewhat less than five years, and after his decease the crown seems to have passed to a different family.

It may have been about this time, when the dynasty had held the throne for one or two centuries, that pressure began upon the eastern frontier. A nomadic race, whose proper habitat was Syria or North Western Arabia, increased rapidly in power and population on this side of Egypt, and, assuming an aggressive attitude, threatened to effect a lodgment in the more eastern portion of the Delta. Already, for a considerable period, there had been on this side an influx of Asiatic immigrants chiefly of Semitic origin, Egypt offering a ready asylum to discontented or needy

¹ Buch *Ancient Egypt*, p. 74, | ² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol
Denkmäler, pl. 151 a | i p. 192, 1st ed. ³ Ibid.

fugitives, who saw in the great monarchy of the South a sort of 'fairyland of wealth, culture, and wisdom.'¹ The immigration of Jacob's sons with their extensive households² is but a single instance of what was perpetually occurring in this quarter. We have already noticed³ another example in the arrival of the thirty-seven Amu welcomed by Khnum-hotep in the sixth year of Usurtasen II. So numerous were the incomers that Semitic names obtained a place in the geographic nomenclature of this part of the country,⁴ and a certain number of Semitic words even crept into the Egyptian language.⁵ The Semite deities also secured a certain amount of recognition from the Egyptian hierarchy,⁶ who were never averse to an increase in the number of objects of worship, and gave as hospitable a reception to Baal, Ashtoreth, Anatis, Reseph, and Kium, when they knocked at the doors of the Pantheon, as the civil rulers did to the kinsmen of Joseph or to the Amu under Abusha.⁷

The state of things thus existing was well calculated to facilitate a hostile occupation of the more eastern portion of the Delta. Already the population was half-Asiatic, and prepared to submit itself readily to Asiatic rule. So long, however as peace reigned at Thebes, and monarchs, acknowledged as such by the whole of Egypt, had it in their power to direct the entire force of the country against an invader, invasion was not likely to take place. The Amu of the East, whether

¹ Kurtz, *History of the Old Covenant*, vol. ii. p. 2.

² Ex. i. 1, Kurtz, *History of the Old Covenant*, vol. ii. p. 149, Dean Payne Smith *Bampton Lectures* for 1869, pp. 79 et seqq.

³ *Supra*, p. 154.

⁴ As Migdol ('a tower'), whence the Greek Magdolon, Succoth ('tents'), Elham ('a fort'), &c.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 210-11, 1st ed.

⁶ *Ibid.* pp. 212-13.

⁷ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 66.

Mentu, Kharu, Khita, or Shasu, would have been powerless against a united Egypt, and their undisciplined forces would have dashed themselves in vain against the serried phalanx of the trained Egyptian troops. But when at Thebes pretender rose up against pretender, when disturbance followed disturbance, and scarcely any prince succeeded in maintaining even the semblance of authority for more than two or three years,¹ then the failure of vital power at the heart of the nation was not slow in communicating itself to the extremities. Whether the first result was the revolt of the Western Delta, and the second the conquest by foreigners of the more eastern tracts, or whether the order of these two movements was inverted, and foreign invasion produced a domestic revolt, there are no sufficient data to determine; but it would seem that, long before the feeble and multitudinous princes of the thirteenth dynasty had ceased to reign in Thebes, the Western Delta had become independent under a line of native princes who held their court at Xoïs,² and the Eastern Delta had been occupied by invaders of nomadic habits and probably of Semitic race. At Xoïs we are told that there were seventy six kings in a hundred and eighty four years,³ which would imply a state of continual disturbance in that locality. Towards the East two Shepherd dynasties bore rule, Manetho's fifteenth and sixteenth, either contemporaneously in two adjacent kingdoms, or consecutively over the whole Eastern Delta. But the main seat of empire was still

¹ See the list of kings in Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1 p. 188, 1st ed. After Menneter-ia Aï (the twenty-ninth king of the dynasty) no monarch is said to have reigned more

than three years and a month or two

² Lenoir mant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1. p. 359

³ Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* vol. 1 p. 61, A

supposed to be Thebes. It was not till a fresh movement took place among the tribes upon the eastern frontier, and a fresh invasion was made in force, that the Old Empire was regarded as destroyed, and a foreign people as established in possession of the entire country.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE MIDDLE EMPIRE CONQUEST OF EGYPT BY THE
HYKSOS

Certainly of the Hyksos Conquest. Growing Power of the Tribes to the East of the Delta the Salta the Kharu the Shasu Temptations offered by Egypt to Invaders First Lodgments effected in her Territory Consequent Excitement among the Eastern Tribes Question of the Nationality of the Hyksos Circumstances of the Conquest Character of the Hyksos Rule Advantages which it conferred on Egypt Reigns of the Hyksos Kings Apepi's Quarrel with Ra Sakenen War ensues and ends in the Expulsion of the Hyksos Supposed Syncretism of Joseph with Apepi

Ἔενοι βασιλεῖς, οἱ καὶ Μέμφιν εἶλον, καὶ ἐν τῷ Σεβραῖτῃ νομῶ πόλιν ἐκτίσαν, ἀφ' ἧς ὁρμώμενοι Αἰγυπτίους ἐχεράσαντο MANETHO ap SYNCPELL *Chronograph* vol. i p. 61, n.

THE conquest of Egypt by an alien people, who continued to be the dominant power in the country for above two centuries, was asserted by Manetho in the most positive terms,¹ and, though long misdoubted by modern critics,² has become through recent discovery an acknowledged fact. The Middle Empire of Manetho a time of humiliation for the Egyptians, a time of stagnation, barren of art, barren of literature, barren of monuments is at the present day admitted on all hands,³ and controversy is shifted to the questions of

¹ Ap Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 61, n., Joseph *Contr. Apion* i 11
² See Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii pp 416 18
³ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 74-77, Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i pp 359 65; Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii pp 424 96 Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii pp 350 2 Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp 227

the nationality of the conquerors, the true character of their domination, and the real length of the time that it lasted. Two native documents, one on stone, the other on papyrus,¹ have proved beyond a question the fact of the foreign rule; two names of the alien rulers have been recovered from the inscriptions of the country; and though a deep obscurity still rests upon the period, upon the persons of the conquerors and the circumstances of the conquest—an obscurity which we can scarcely hope to see dispelled—yet 'the Middle Empire' has at any rate now taken its place in history as a definite reality requiring consideration, inquiry, and, so far as is possible, description.

It would seem that a dark cloud had long lain along the north eastern frontier of Egypt, in that tolerably broad tract which joins Africa to Asia, where alone the land of Mizraim was readily assailable,² and which it was impossible to block against a determined enemy. On this side Egypt had had her first wars. To gain and hold the mineral treasures of the Sinaitic peninsula, it had been necessary to reduce to subjection its existing occupants; and so far back as the time of Seneferu,³ the natives of these parts, called by the Egyptians sometimes Anu, sometimes Pet, sometimes Mentu, had been attacked by the arms of the Pharaohs,

60, 1st ed., Stuart Poole in *Contemporary Review* for February 1870, pp. 576-81, &c.

¹ The one on stone is the inscription of Aahmes which exists in a rock tomb at El Kaab (Elilethya), and which has been published *in extenso* by Lepsius (*Denkmäler*, pt. iii, pl. 11) and translated by M. Le Page Renouf and others. (See *Records of the Past*, vol. vi, pp. 7-10; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, pp. 248-51, 1st ed., De

Roag6, in the *Mémoires de l'Institut*, *Prem. Série*, vol. iii, &c.) The document on papyrus forms the first fragment of what is called the 'First Sallier Papyrus.' It is given in the fifth volume of Bunsen's *Egypt*, p. 730-1, and has been translated by Dr. Lushington in the *Records of the Past*, vol. viii, pp. 3-4.

² See above, vol. i, p. 39.

³ See above, p. 48.

despoiled of territory, and forced to make acknowledgment of subjection. At this early date the Asiatics were few and weak, and the Egyptians experienced no difficulty in maintaining their authority over the Sinaitic region and the line of road which led to it. But by the time of the twelfth dynasty population had greatly increased in these parts, and we have found ¹ Amenemhat I compelled to build a 'wall' or fortress upon his north eastern frontier, for the purpose of 'keeping off the Sakti,' who had, previously to his reign, occupied the tract directly to the east of the Delta. Subsequently two other races are noticed as making their appearance in the same quarter. These are the Kharu or Khalu, a maritime and commercial people, who seem to have made their way along the coast from Philistia, or perhaps from even further north, and the Shasu, a nation of nomads, whose main habitat was the tract directly south and south east of the Dead Sea. The word Kharu, , is perhaps connected with the Hebrew 'Cherethite,' but the ethnographic application is wider, and the Kharu may be best regarded as the Syrians generally,² or the inhabitants of the maritime tract extending from the mouth of the Orontes to Lake Serbonis. The Shasu, , were most likely Arabs, and corresponded to the modern Bedouins of this region;³ they are especially connected with Atuma or Edom,⁴ and appear to have roamed over the whole of the desert region between Palestine on the one hand and Egypt upon the other,

¹ Supra, p. 144

² So Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 221, 1st ed. Birch in *Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 46

³ See above, vol. i p. 111

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 215-16, 1st ed.

which at this time was far more productive than at present, and could support a considerable population

Between the Kharu and the Egyptians there had long been commercial dealings;¹ and this Asiatic people had come to be well acquainted with the productiveness of Egypt and the accumulated wealth of the Egyptians, which was such as naturally to provoke the cupidity of their less fortunate neighbours. The Shasu, and the other Asiatic tribes, who were in close contact with the Kharu, and probably allied to them in blood, though differing in manner of life, would learn from these last what a variety of tempting treasures was stored up in the Egyptian palaces and temples, what countless flocks and herds cropped the rich pastures of the Delta and of the valley of the Nile, what delicate fare constituted the ordinary diet of the inhabitants, what magnificence of apparel and furniture was to be seen in their dwellings. Egypt had for centuries exercised a fascination upon the Asiatic mind, and, as we have seen,² had attracted to herself a continual flow of immigrants, who hoped, by adopting the Egyptian mode of life, to participate in the wealth and the luxury of the old inhabitants. The feeling which led individuals and households to quit their homes, renounce their countries, and throw in their lot with the sons of Mizraim, must have been shared in some degree by whole tribes and nations, who could not expect to be welcomed if they presented themselves *en masse* at the frontier towns or to obtain a lodgment within Egyptian territory otherwise than by force of arms. Two such lodgments, as observed in the last chapter,³ seem to have been effected while the thir

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 221-2, 1st ed.

² Supra, pp. 180-1.
³ Supra, p. 182.

teenth dynasty still occupied the Theban throne—at least this appears to us the most probable account that can be given of Manetho's first and second Shepherd dynasties but the great invasion did not arrive till later. The great invasion, which resulted in a conquest of the entire country, is connected with a certain Saïtes, or Set, who belongs to a dynasty the last king of which was Apophis, a monarch whose reign almost immediately preceded that of Aahmes, the first king of the New Empire. It is impossible that two dynasties of shepherds can have followed after Apophis. We must therefore either place these dynasties in the troubled time which preceded the great invasion, or look upon them as wholly fictitious.

If some small nomadic tribes had succeeded in establishing themselves in independence within the limits of Egypt Proper, either in the Sethroite nome, or further to the south, in the vicinity of the Bitter Lakes or of Lake Timsah, a great encouragement would have been given to the other races of the neighbourhood, who had hitherto looked upon Egypt as invulnerable, and, however their cupidity may have urged them, had been prevented by their fears from venturing upon an attack. Desires long repressed would have had the rein given them, and would have blossomed into hope, a vague feeling of expectation would have been awakened among the tribes; a willingness to coalesce, a tendency towards union, would have shown itself, and, when any powerful tribe put itself forward and assumed the lead, there would naturally have been a wide spread inclination to support the bold adventurer, and rally to a standard which was regarded as about to conduct to victory, plunder, and happiness. Something like a confederacy would have been readily

formed, and a force would thus have been gathered which no single nation of those parts could have raised, and with which the full power of Egypt might have found a difficulty in contending, if the circumstances had been such as to allow of her full power being put forth to meet the danger.

But, as we have already seen, this was not the case Egypt had suffered disintegration. Two native dynasties were maintaining themselves in different parts of the territory, one at Thebes, the other in the Delta. One foreign kingdom, if not two, had been set up within her borders. These kingdoms were hostile to each other, and, it is probable, were continually at war. Moreover, at Thebes certainly, and most likely at Xoïs also,¹ the state of affairs was unsettled—tumult, disturbance, civil war, open murder, secret assassination prevailed. A prey to internal disorders, Egypt invited attack from without, seeming to offer herself as a ready prey to the first comer, if only he had at his command a military force of fair quality and tolerably numerous.

That an attack came, and a conquest was made, from the tract which joins Africa to Asia, is certain, but it is not easy to determine who were the real invaders. Manetho appears to have made two conflicting statements upon the subject: he represented the invaders as Phœnicians,² and he represented them as Arabs.³ The Egyptians of the time of Herodotus

¹ Manetho says that at Xoïs there were seventy six kings in either 484 or 184 years. Even if we take the larger of these numbers it gives little more than six years as the average of the kings reigns. And there is more authority for 184 than 484, which would reduce the average to two years and a half.

² Ἦσαν δὲ Φοίνικες ξένοι βασιλεῖς &c. (Man ap Syncoll *Chronograph* vol i p 61, n)

³ Manetho ap Joseph. *Con't. Apion* i 14. It must be admitted that this statement is qualified by the clause *τινες δὲ λέγουσι*. But it is the only suggestion of nationality reported by Josephus.

seem to have considered that they were Philistines.¹ Moderns have regarded them as Canaanites, Syrians, Hittites.² It is an avoidance, rather than a solution, of the difficulty, to say that they were 'a collection of all the nomad hordes of Arabia and Syria,'³ since there must have been a directing hand; some one tribe must have taken the lead, and have furnished the commander. Some have thought that the word 'Hyksos,' which comes to us from Manetho, was the best clue to the puzzle, and, expounding that word as 'Shasu kings,' have settled it that the conquerors were Arabs.⁴ But Manetho himself seems to have understood by 'Hyksos,' not 'Arab kings,' but 'Shepherd kings,'⁵ so that the term did not to him contain the idea of nationality. And the term itself is not found upon the monuments. Phœnicians, in the strict sense of the word, are scarcely to be thought of, since they were at no time 'shepherds,' and it is scarcely probable that they had as yet effected their migration from the Persian Gulf to the shores of the Mediterranean.⁶ The invaders may well have been 'Syrians,' in a large sense of that word, and may have come from Palæstine, or even from the region north of it. They may have belonged to the Canaanite portion of the Syrian popu-

¹ Herod. ii. 128. The 'shepherd Philition, to whom the Egyptians ascribed the pyramids when Herodotus visited them, must have been the individualisation of a belief that Egypt had been ruled by Philistine shepherds.

² See Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii p. 421. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 235, 1st ed. Lenoir-
mant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i pp. 360-2.

³ 'C'était un ramassis de toutes les hordes nomades de l'Arabie et

de la Syrie' (Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 361.)

⁴ Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 75.

⁵ Ap. Joseph. *Contr. Apion.* (l.s.c.) τὸ ὄνομα ποιμὴν ἐστὶ καὶ ποιμένες κατὰ τὴν κοινὴν διάλεκτον. There is no evidence that Manetho knew anything of the Shasu, or in any way connected the Hyksos with them.

⁶ See the author's 'Essay on the Early Migrations of the Phœnicians,' in his *Herodotus*, vol. iv pp. 230-244, 3rd ed.

lation, and have been called 'Phœnicians' by Manetho from that confusion between the two words which naturally followed from the Phœnician power succeeding the Canaanite in the same tract of country.¹ Among the Canaanite nations the most powerful was that of the Khita or Hittites; and, on the whole, there seem to be better grounds for regarding the invaders of Egypt at this time as predominantly Hittite than for identifying them with any other special tribe or people. Set, the leader of the invasion, bore a name identical with that of the god chiefly worshipped by the Hittites;² and the exclusive worship of this god is noted in the Sallier papyrus as one of the principal results of the Shepherd rule.³ The Hittites were a really powerful people, as appears by their after struggles, both with the Egyptians and the Assyrians, and would so be more capable of measuring their strength against that of the Egyptians, and for a time obtaining the upper hand, than any other of Egypt's neighbours. A Babylonian conquest is scarcely conceivable at this early date, and is precluded alike by the names of the Shepherd kings and the peculiarities of their worship.⁴

On the whole, therefore, we lean to the belief that the so called Hyksos or 'Shepherds' were Hittites, who, pressed for room in Syria, or perhaps merely excited by a desire of conquest, moved southward, and, obtaining allies from the countries along their line of route, burst like an avalanche upon Egypt. The reduction of the country was, according to Manetho,

¹ See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv pp. 238-40.

² On the Hittite worship of Set or Sutech, see *Records of the Past*, vol. iv pp. 31-2.

³ *Ibid.* vol. viii p. 3.

⁴ The names Set (Saites), Bnon, Pachnan or Apachnas, Staan, Achilles, Apopi, have nothing Babylonian about them. Set or Sutech has no representative in the Babylonian Pantheon.

effected with the greatest ease 'Men of ignoble race,' he says, 'coming from the eastern regions unexpectedly, had the courage to invade Egypt, and conquered it easily without a battle.'¹ They took Memphis, built themselves a city in the Sethroite nome, and established a great fortified camp on the eastern frontier, which they called Auaris or Avaris, and occupied with a permanent garrison of 240,000 men.² It is not to be supposed that really no resistance was offered to the invaders by the Theban and Xoite kings of the time; but it was readily overcome; no great battle was fought; and in a comparatively short space of time the country was subjugated, and accepted the foreign yoke. Wherever the Hyksos penetrated, they spread ruin and desolation around, massacred the adult male population, reduced the women and children to slavery, burnt the cities, and demolished the temples.³ But they do not appear to have cared permanently to occupy the Nile valley much beyond Memphis. After subjecting the whole of Egypt, they allowed the Theban kings to exercise a qualified sovereignty over the upper part of the Nilotic region, establishing their own court at Memphis, and from thence ruling Middle and Lower Egypt at their discretion.

The character of their rule was at the first barbaric and cruel. Professors of a religion which was monotheistic, or nearly so, the conquerors took an extreme aversion to the Egyptian polytheism, and vented their hatred by an indiscriminate destruction of all the

¹ Παριυδόξως εκ τῶν πρὸς ἀνατολὴν μερῶν, ἄνθρωποι τὸ γένος ἄσημοι καταθαρσύναντες ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν ἐστράτευσα, καὶ ῥαδίως ἀμαχητὶ ταύτην κατὰ κράτος εἶλον. (Manetho ap. Joseph. *Cont. Apion* i 14)

² Ibid

³ Πᾶσι τοῖς ἐπιχωρίοις ἐχθροτατά πῶς ἐχρησιντο, τοὺς μὲν σφάζοντες, τῶν δὲ καὶ τὰ τέκνα καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας εἰς δουλείαν ἄγοντες. Γὰρ πόλεις ὡμῶς ἐνεπρησαν, καὶ τὰ ιερὰ τῶν θεῶν κατέσκαψαν. (Ib)

Egyptian temples, which, according to Manetho, they absolutely 'razed to the ground.'¹ Considering how closely connected were the priests with the historical literature of Egypt, which had from the first been chiefly in their hands, we must conclude that this general demolition of edifices was accompanied by an almost complete destruction of the records of the country, which, except in the inscriptions of unopened tombs, and in papyruses buried in tombs, suffered at the hands of the Hyksos something like obliteration.² Thebes, it may be, retained its monuments, but these dated only from the time of the eleventh dynasty.³ Elsewhere the flood of conquest engulfed the early literature of the country; the old civilisation was, as it were, 'annihilated,'⁴ and a blank was produced which the clever *littérateurs* of the eighteenth and nineteenth dynasties found it impossible, excepting by the free employment of conjecture and invention, to fill.

But this purely destructive time was followed by one of reaction, and to some extent of reconstruction. The 'Tartars of the South,' after a certain term of years, during which they devastated Egypt from the Mediterranean to Thebes, or perhaps to Elephantiné, suffered themselves by degrees to be subjected by the superior civilisation of those whom they had conquered,⁵

¹ See the preceding note and especially the emphatic word *karé-kavav*.

² Lenoirant says: 'Dne ce que durant ces ans l'Egypte eut à subir de bouleversements est impossible. Le seul fait qu'il soit permis de donner comme certain c'est que pas un monument de cette époque désolée n'est venu jusqu'à nous pour nous apprendre ce que devint, sous les Hyksôs, l'antique splendeur de

l'Egypte' (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 300).

³ See above, p. 127.

⁴ Lenoirant, p. 363: 'La civilisation égyptienne, d'abord comme *anéantie* par l'invasion,' &c.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 362: 'Les Pasteurs dans la Basse Egypte, comme les Tartares en Chine se laissaient conquérir par la civilisation supérieure de leurs vaincus.'

and adopted their art, their official language, their titles, and the general arrangement of their court ceremonial. In Tanis especially temples were built and sculptures set up under the Shepherd kings differing little in their general character from those of the purely Egyptian period.¹ The foreign kings erected their own effigies at this site, which were sculptured by native artists according to the customary rules of Egyptian glyptic art, and only differ from those of the earlier native monarchs in the head dress, the expression of the countenance, and a peculiar arrangement of the beard.² They built stone temples on the Egyptian model at Tanis and Avaris, wherein they worshipped Set Nubti, or 'Set the Golden, in the place of Ammon or Phthah, bringing the materials for their constructions from Assuan or Syene,³ and only slightly modifying established Egyptian forms, as by adding wings to the Sphinx. They lived on amicable terms with the contemporary Theban dynasty of subordinate kings, allowed their worship of Ammon Ra,⁴ and held intercourse with them by frequent embassies.

There are even certain respects in which the Shepherd monarchs appear to have been in advance of the people whom they conquered, so that 'the Egyptians were indebted to the stay of the foreigners' in their country, 'and to their social intercourse with them, for much useful knowledge.'⁵ The Shepherds had the conception of an era, and introduced into Egypt the practice of dating events from a certain fixed point, apparently the first regnal year of the first king, Set or

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 236-7, 1st ed.

² See Lenoir's *Tramonto di statua di uno dei Pastori di Egitto*, p. 11, and plate.

³ This appears from the remains, which are of Syenite stone. (Ibid.)

⁴ *Records of the Past* vol. viii p. 3.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 237, 1st ed.

Saïtes,¹ a practice which, had it been generally adopted, would have cleared Egyptian chronology from that uncertainty and confusion which are now its acknowledged characteristics. They 'enlarged the horizon of the Egyptian artistic views'² by the introduction of new forms and of greater realism into glyptic art; and they are even thought to have affected for good the language and literature of the country³. The language was to a considerable extent Semiticised, and an impulse was given to literature which resulted in a vastly increased activity and profligence. Again, the Shepherds seem to have possessed a power of governmental organisation not uncommonly displayed by barbaric conquerors, as by the Mongols in India and the Turks in Europe. They established throughout the territory a uniform system for military and revenue purposes, and did much to crush out that spirit of isolation and provincialism which had hitherto been the bane of Egypt,⁴ and had prevented its coalescing firmly into a settled homogeneous monarchy. The monarchs of the eighteenth dynasty inherited from them a united and centralised Egypt, accustomed to be directed by a single head from a single fixed centre⁵. Thus the blow by which the power of Egypt had seemed to be shattered and prostrated worked ultimately for its advancement, and the Hyksos domination may be said to have produced the glories of the Later Empire.

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 36, Bunsen *Egypt's Place*, vol. v. p. 734 bottom line (Compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 76 and 126.)

² Brugsch, l. s. c.

³ Stuart Poole in the *Contemporary Review* for February 1879, pp. 580 l.

⁴ See above, p. 192.

⁵ The only exception to this was the Theban kingdom, which continued a distinct, though subject, monarchy under the Hyksos. But as this was the exact power which expelled the Shepherds all authority became at once fixed in a single centre.

Of the individual monarchs belonging to the Hyksos line we know but little. According to Manetho, Set or Saites was not the original leader of the invasion, but a monarch whom the successful invaders placed at their head after they had overrun and conquered the entire territory¹. He established himself at Memphis, placed garrisons in every city of importance, and fixed the tributes to be paid to him both by the Upper and the Lower country. The bulk of his troops he stationed in a city, or rather perhaps in a great fortified camp, on the eastern frontier, at Avaris, an old Egyptian town, which he rebuilt and strongly fortified. They amounted to nearly a quarter of a million of men, and were placed in this position for the purpose of repelling any attack which might be made upon the Hyksos kingdom by the Assyrians (?)². Set visited them every summer, with the object of renewing their supplies of grain, discharging their arrears of pay, and practising them in military exercises and manœuvres, calculated to inspire a wholesome fear among the neighbouring peoples. Set took the additional title of *Aapehti*, $\overline{\text{A A}} \overline{\text{P}} \overline{\text{E}} \overline{\text{H}} \overline{\text{T}}$, 'great and glorious,' and seems also to have called himself Nubti,³ thus identifying himself with certain deities, as had been the practice of the previous Egyptian monarchs, who had called themselves Horus, Khem, or Kneph,⁴ and had been called by their wives Horus and Set⁵.

Ap Joseph *Contr. Apion* i. 14
² So the Manetho of Josephus. It is certain that Assyria Proper was not at this time in a condition to make expeditions into Syria (*Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. pp. 43-49, 2nd edit.) but the 'Assyrians' of Manetho may perhaps represent the Babylonians, who had made themselves felt in Syria and Palestine

long before this time (See Gen. xiv. 1-12, and compare the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i. pp. 440-7, 3rd edit.)

³ Rinsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. v. pp. 734-5, *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 36.

⁴ See above pp. 41, 55, 61, and 85.

⁵ De Rougé, *Recherches*, p. 45.

Set reigned, we are told, for nineteen years,¹ and was succeeded by a monarch whose name is given in the different manuscripts under the three forms of Anon, Bnon, and Beon. Bnon is the form generally preferred by scholars,² and, if accepted, may be compared with the Hebrew Benoni,³ but the monuments have not hitherto revealed the native form of the word, and, until or unless they do, speculation upon the subject is idle. Bnon is said to have reigned either forty or forty four years,⁴ and to have been succeeded by Pachnan, or Apachnas—a king of whom we are told absolutely nothing beyond the length of his reign, which is variously reported as sixty one years and as thirty six years and seven months.⁵

Josephus declares that Manetho placed Apophis, or Apepi, , immediately after Apachnas; but Africanus and the Armenian Eusebius are agreed that Apophis was in the Manethonian list the last king of the dynasty; and as this arrangement accords with the monumental mention of Apepi hereafter to be noticed,⁶ it would seem best to follow Africanus, rather than Josephus, at this point. Africanus reported Manetho

¹ Joseph *lsc*; Manetho ap Syncell *Chronograph* vol. 1 p. 61, B.

² Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. II p. 425, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1. p. 229, 1st ed. Leirionant, however prefers the reading Anon (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 362).

³ Gen. xxxv. 18.

⁴ Forty years, according to Eusebius (ap Syncell *Chronograph* vol. 1 p. 62, A), forty-four, according to Josephus (*lsc*) and Africanus (ap Syncell *Chronograph* vol. 1 p. 61, B).

⁵ The latter number, which is given by Josephus (*lsc*), seems

preferable from its exactness, but is perhaps the time of the sole reign while the other includes the period of association.

⁶ See below, p. 199. The war of liberation almost certainly grew out of the demands made by Apepi on Ra-Sekenen. It was concluded by Aahmes, the first king of the eighteenth dynasty, in his sixth year. Unless, therefore, we suppose the war to have lingered on through several reigns, we must place Apepi and the Ra-Sekenen to whom he sent his messages almost immediately before Aahmes.

as placing between Apachnas and Apophis two kings, Staan and Archles, the former of whom reigned fifty, and the latter forty nine years.¹ Josephus calls these kings Jannas and Assis, and places them after Apophis. Consequently, both their names and their position are to some extent doubtful; though, on the whole, the representations of Africanus, who had no purpose to serve, must be regarded as more worthy of credit than those of the Jewish historian.

It results from Manetho's numbers, as reported by Africanus, that the dynasty occupied the Egyptian throne for 284 years,² which gives the extraordinary average of forty seven years to a reign, or, omitting the first king, the still more extraordinary one of fifty three years.³ If we regard the numbers as in any sense historical, it seems necessary to suppose that each king, soon after he came to the throne, associated a successor, and that the reigns are counted in each case from the date of the association.⁴ Supposing this to have been the case, the real average of the *sole* reigns need not have been more than about twenty seven years; nor need the real duration of the entire dynasty have much exceeded a hundred and sixty years.⁴

Apepi, the last monarch of the line, having (it is probable) reigned in conjunction with Archles for some thirty or thirty two years, became sole king at a

¹ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* vol. i. p. 61, v.

² Africanus himself gave this as the total length of the dynasty (Ibid.).

³ As are the reigns of the kings belonging to the twelfth dynasty in the Turin papyrus (Brugsch, *Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 119, 1st ed.).

⁴ If each king associated a successor after he had reigned two years,

the length of the *sole* reigns would be as follows.

	Years
Sot (Saites)	1
Bn n	27
Pael nan	30
Staan	17
Archles	34
Apepi (Apophis)	20
Total	161

The entire duration would thus be 161 years.

mature age. Unlike Set, who had made Memphis his capital and only visited Avaris occasionally,¹ Apepi held his court permanently at the last named city,² and there received the homage and tribute which were offered to him by all the various districts both of the Upper and the Lower country. In Upper Egypt was established, with his consent and concurrence, a dynasty of native princes, who affected the family name of Taa, and the throne name of Ra Sekenen, . Two princes thus designated, Ra Sekenen I and Ra Sekenen II, had already reigned at Thebes and been buried there in tombs which modern exploration has discovered somewhat recently.³ A third Ra Sekenen had succeeded, whether immediately or after an interval is uncertain, and now occupied the position of tributary dynast at the southern capital.⁴ Apepi seems, for some cause or other, to have taken a dislike to his princely vassal, and to have resolved to pick a quarrel with him by preferring unreasonable demands. First of all he sent an embassy from his own court to that of the southern king, requiring him to relinquish the worship of all the Egyptian gods, excepting Amen-Ra, whom he probably identified with his own sole divinity, Set, or Sutech.⁵ This proposition was declined, as one with which it was impossible to comply, but the refusal was couched in such terms that umbrage could

¹ See above p. 198.

² *Records of the Past* vol. viii p. 3.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i pp. 245-7, 1st edit.

⁴ M. Chabas has argued that the Ra Sekenen contemporary with Apepi, and mentioned in the Salhié papyrus, was the first of the name (see *Contemporary Review* for Fe-

bruary 1870, p. 570). But I agree with Dr. Brugsch that it is better to regard him as Ra-Sekenen III.

⁵ That Sutech represented the sun in the Hittite system appears from the terms of the treaty of peace concluded by the Hittites with Rameses II. (See *Records of the Past*, vol. ix p. 28, § 8.)

scarcely be taken at it. Hereupon Apepi consulted with the most experienced of his advisers, and with their help concocted a second message, the exact purport of which is not quite clear. According to one translator,¹ it had reference to a 'well for cattle;' according to another,² it was a demand for the stoppage of a canal. The messenger who carried the missive had orders to journey at his utmost speed, and boasts that he did not rest by day or by night till he had delivered it. Whatever the exact requirement was, it threw Ra Sekenen into a state of extreme perplexity. He communicated the proposal to the principal men of his court—'his mighty chiefs, his captains, and expert guides'—but they had no advice to offer. 'They were all silent at once in great dismay, and knew not how to answer him good or ill.'³ Then Apepi sent, it would seem, a third message, but of the purport of this nothing can be said; for the manuscript containing the narrative here most provokingly breaks off in the middle of a sentence, and we are left to conjecture the sequel.

The sequel seems to have been war. Ra Sekenen was not prepared to submit to whatever demands might be made upon him, and, when he proved intractable, compulsion was resorted to. The title of 'Ken,' which he assumed, signifies 'victorious,'⁴ and is thought to indicate that he maintained the struggle which Apepi had forced upon him with tolerable success. The warlike energy which had characterised the invaders

¹ Lushington in *Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 4, § 5. Clabas takes the same view (*Les Pasteurs en Egypte*, p. 18).

² Brugsch *History of Egypt* vol. i p. 241, 1st edit.

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 4 §§ 2, 3.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 245, 1st edit.; Birch, *Dictionary of Hieroglyphics* in Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. v p. 414.

at the time when they made their original inroad, a century and a half or two centuries earlier, had declined. Egypt had proved their Capua; and, now that a serious conflict had arisen between them and their subjects, it was found that they were no longer the terrible foe that common fame had represented them. It must have been during the reigns of Ra Sakenen III. and his successor, Kames, whose rule was exceedingly brief,¹ that the grasp of the Shepherds upon Egypt was shaken off, and they were forced to quit their hold and withdraw towards the east, concentrating themselves in that fortified camp on the borders of the Syrian desert, which the providence of their first king, Saïtes, had created for them. Driven out of Egypt Proper by a general uprising of the native inhabitants, at Avaris they turned to bay. They still numbered 240,000 men.² The Egyptians besieged them in Avaris with an army twice as numerous as theirs,³ and after a time their efforts were crowned with success. Avaris was assaulted both by land and water. Ships of war were launched upon the canals which conveyed the Nile water to its immediate neighbourhood,⁴ and all its gates were blockaded and watched. After numerous assaults the place fell. The captain Aahmes, who was present at the capture, tells us the part that he took in the siege—how he ‘followed the king on foot when he (the king) went out on his chariot’—how, when siege was laid to the city, he ‘had to fight in the presence of his Majesty’—how at one time he ‘fought upon the canal of Patetku of Avaris, and carried off a hand’—

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i pp 247, 253, 1st edit. 11) But the number is suspicious for many reasons.
² So Josephus, who professes to follow Manetho (*Cont. Apion* i. ³ *Ibid*
⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol vi p 7

2 *e.* killed an enemy, and cut off his hand and carried it to camp as proof of his exploit—how a second time he did the same—how, in a third engagement, he made a prisoner, and ‘brought him off through the water’—and how finally, at the actual taking of the town, he made prisoners of one man and three women, who were all given to him for slaves.¹ The narrator is so occupied with himself and his own adventures that he has no words to spare for any general account of the siege operations, or any connected narrative of the war. We gather incidentally from his autobiographical sketch that there was no capitulation, such as Manetho spoke of²—no voluntary evacuation of the city by the Hyksos army—but that the place was taken by storm; and we can perceive that the beaten enemy drew off in the direction of Palestine, whither the Egyptians pursued them, and where after a time they captured a Hyksos city called Sharhana,³ probably the Sharuhēn of the Hebrews.⁴ With this event the Hyksos war appears to have terminated, and Egypt, relieved for ever from this hated enemy, entered upon a career of progress, conquest, and glory.

It is stated by George the Syncellus, a writer whose extensive learning and entire honesty are unquestionable, that the synchronism of Joseph with Apepi, the last king of the only known Hyksos dynasty, was ‘acknowledged by all.’⁵ The best modern authorities accept this view, if not as clearly established, at any

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. vi pp 7, 8

² Ap Joseph *Conti Apion* l s c

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. vi p 8, § 14

⁴ Josh xix 6

⁵ *Chronographia*, vol. i p 62, 1.

¹ Ἐπὶ παντὶ συνεφερονται ὅτι ἐπὶ Ἀπωφεως ἤρξεν Ἰωσὴφ τῆς Αἰγύπτου Bunsen limits this to ‘all Christian chronographers (*Egypt & Place*, vol. ii p 138), but quite arbitrarily

rate as in the highest degree probable,¹ and believe that it was Apepi who made the gifted Hebrew his prime minister, who invited his father and his brethren to settle in Egypt with their households, and assigned to them the land of Goshen for their residence. The elevation of a foreigner, and a Semite, to so exalted an office is thought to be far more likely under Hyksos than under native Egyptian rule, the marriage with the daughter of the high priest of Heliopolis to be less surprising, and the Egyptian words and names connected with the history to point to this period.² If the view be allowed, a great additional interest will attach to Apepi himself, and great additional light will be thrown on the ultimate character of the Hyksos rule, which has been shown already to have been much modified and softened by contact with the old civilisation of the country.³

For the Pharaoh of Joseph is no rude and savage monarch, but a mild, civilised, and somewhat luxurious king. He holds a grand court in a city not named, has a number of cupbearers and confectioners,⁴ sits upon a throne⁵ or rides in a chariot,⁶ wears a ring on his hand, has vestures of fine linen and collars of gold to bestow on those whom he favours,⁷ uses the Egyptian language, and is in fact undistinguishable from a native Egyptian monarch. He does not oppress any of his subjects. On the contrary, he sustains them in a time of scarcity, when he becomes their landlord, takes

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 76, Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 363. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 200-70, 1st ed.

² Brugsch, p. 265.

³ See above, p. 194.

⁴ Gen. xl. 2.

⁵ Ib. xl. 40.

⁶ Ib. verse 43. This fact, and Joseph's 'chariots and horsemen' (Gen. l. 9) sufficiently prove that Joseph was not anterior to the Hyksos.

⁷ Ib. xl. 42.

a moderate rent,¹ is especially lenient to the priests,² and, when he receives the Israelites, even concedes to his subjects' prejudice against '*shepherds*'³ If he is by birth and descent one of the Hyksos, he has adopted all the ordinary habits and mode of life of the Egyptians; he is even, it would seem, tolerant of their religion. This toleration may perhaps be only within certain limits, but it extends apparently to the entire priestly order

¹ Gen xlvii 23

² Ib xlvii 22

³ Ib xlv 34

among the treasures of the museum of Boulaq¹ Aahmes took the throne name of Neb pehti-ra, , and reigned twenty five years, more gloriously than any Egyptian monarch since Usutasen III. He probably inherited the great war, which he brought to a happy conclusion mainly by his own individual energy, but in part by the courage and conduct of his generals.² It is especially to be noted of this war, that it was carried on as much by water as by land, the first step towards success being the creation of a flotilla upon the Nile, which held the command of the river, and was used in the rapid and safe transport of troops to any part of the Nile valley where they were needed.³ Aahmes, the king's namesake and favourite general, relates how he served on board one of these Nile vessels, and, descending the stream from Thebes, carried his master's arms into the Eastern Delta, and in a short time won back to his authority the entire region. As the vessels descended the river, the land force, now no more a mere infantry, but comprising certainly a body of trained chariots, and perhaps a certain amount of cavalry,⁴ occupied the river bank; and Aahmes from time to time had to quit his vessel and to march on foot beside the chariot of his sovereign. Memphis must have been captured⁵ before any attack

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 252-3, 1st ed. Lenormant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 339.

² See especially the inscription on the tomb of his officer, Aahmes, son of Abana (*Records of the Past*, vol. vi pp. 7-9).

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 78.

⁴ That the Hyksos kings introduced the horse and chariot into Egypt is generally admitted. No

wheeled vehicles appear in the monuments prior to the eighteenth dynasty. The employment of chariots in the war of liberation appears in the *Records of the Past* vol. vi p. 7. The use of cavalry at this time is uncertain.

⁵ This capture may have been the work of Ra Sekenen III. There is no allusion to it in the inscription of Aahmes.

could have been made upon the city of the Shepherds — the strong and vast fortress of Avaris, situated at the furthest point to which the Nile waters reached, well fortified both by walls and moats, and defended by a garrison of nearly a quarter of a million of men.¹ A lake protected the city on one side; canals from the Nile guarded it in other quarters, while a solid rampart of baked, or perhaps merely of sun-dried brick, surrounded the whole, and rendered the position one of first rate strength and security. However, after a siege of some considerable length, in the course of which there were several engagements,² the final assault appears to have been delivered with such success, that a panic seized the garrison, and they hastily fled from the place. The majority made then escape, and withdrew to Syria, but many were slain, and a considerable number taken prisoners. All captives appear to have been regarded as the property of the king; but it was a common practice to assign prisoners to those who captured them; and vast numbers of the ‘Shepherd’ race became in this way permanently fixed in Egypt, where they intermixed with the native inhabitants and modified to some extent their physical type.³

The war of Aahmes with the Shepherds lasted five years.⁴ It was no sooner concluded than he hastened to lead an expedition against the south, where the negro races had taken the offensive during the struggle between the Egyptians and their foreign conquerors, and apparently had re-established the independence

¹ Supra, p. 201

² *Records of the Past*, vol. vi pp. 7, 8

Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 368

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. vi.

³ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 80, f. 8

whereof they had been deprived by the monarchs of the twelfth dynasty.¹ At first the Egyptian king carried all before him, and, regarding the country as reconquered, returned down the Nile to his capital; but ere long the tide of victory turned. A Nubian chief, called Teta an, collected the dusky hordes under his banner, and retook the whole region of the south, carrying devastation along the Nile banks, destroying the temples of the Egyptian garrisons, and annihilating the Egyptian power. Aahmes was forced to retrace his steps, and measure his strength against this new enemy. He engaged Teta an twice, the Nubian being apparently each time the assailant. On the first occasion neither antagonist could claim a decisive success; but, on the second, Aahmes was more fortunate. The negro army was defeated with great loss, Teta an made prisoner, and Egyptian authority once more established over the tract between the First and the Second Cataract.²

It would appear that the struggle with Teta an must have occupied a considerable time. At any rate, it was not until his twenty second year that the Egyptian monarch, victorious on every side, and no longer apprehensive of attack, was able to turn his attention to domestic affairs, and commence the restoration of those public edifices which had suffered either from natural decay or from hostile attack during the last two or three centuries. Rock tablets in the quarries of Toora and Maasara of that year³ record the fact that Aahmes at this time 'opened anew the rock

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. vi pp. 8-9. (*Les Pasteurs en Egypte* p. 46)

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 276, 1st ed. M. Chabas considers Teta-an to be the name of a people rather than that of a chief.

³ See the *Dend méros*, vol. v pt. iii pl. 8 a. and compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 80 and Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 276-7, 1st ed.

chambers,' and employed men to 'cut out the best white stone of the hill country' for the repairs of the temple of millions of years—the ancient edifice dedicated to the god Phthah at Memphis—for that of Ammón at Thebes, and for other sacred buildings Phœnicians are thought to have been employed upon the great works thus initiated,¹ as they were some centuries later on the construction of the Temple of Solomon.²

Aahmes is said to have reigned altogether twenty five years,³ or, as Josephus expresses it more exactly, twenty five years and four months.⁴ He married a princess,⁵ who took the name of Nefertari Aahmes,



, or 'the beautiful companion of Aahmes,'⁶ and who is represented on the monuments with pleasing features, but a complexion of ebon blackness.⁷ It is certainly wrong to call her a 'negress;' she was an Ethiopian of the best physical type; and her marriage with Aahmes may have been based upon a political motive.⁸ The Egyptian Pharaohs from time to time allied themselves with the monarchs of the south, partly to obtain the aid of Ethiopian troops in their wars, partly with a view of claiming, in right of their wives, dominion over the Upper Nile region. Aahmes may have been the first to do this; or he may simply

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 277, 1st ed.

² 1 Kings vi. 18 vii. 13 45
2 Chron. 13. 16, &c.

³ Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* vol. i pp. 62, c, and 69, c.

⁴ Joseph. *Cont. Apion* i. 15. Josephus gives the name the wrong in of Tethmosis, but clearly means Amosis (Aahmes), the first king of the eighteenth dynasty.

⁵ She is called 'the daughter, sister, wife, and mother of a king.'

(Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 279 1st ed.)

⁶ Ibid p. 278.

⁷ See the *Denkmäler*, vol. v. pt. in pl. 1. Brugsch denies that this is always the case, but Wilkinson (in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 355), Birch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 81), and Canon Trevor (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 277) agree in regarding Nefertari-Aahmes as a black.

⁸ So Birch (l.c.) and Trevor (l.c.)

have 'followed the example of his predecessors, who, forced by the Hyksos to the south, had contracted marriages with the families of Ethiopian rulers.'¹ His queen was certainly regarded as a personage of im-



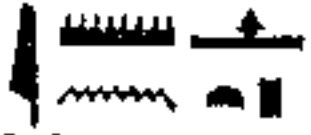
Head of Nefertiti

portance. She was called 'the wife of the god Ammon,'² and enjoyed some high post connected with the worship.

¹ Brehl's c.

² Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 279. Wilkinson renders the expression used by 'Goddess-wife of Ammon' (Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 355, 2nd ed.).

of that god at Thebes, Aahmes commemorated her upon his monuments;¹ during her son's reign she held, for a time at any rate, the reins of power; while in after ages she was venerated as 'ancestress and founder of the eighteenth dynasty.'²

The successor of Aahmes was his son by this Ethiopian princess; he bore the name of Amen-hotep, , which is the Amenôphus of Manetho.³ On his accession he took the throne name of Tser-ka-ia; but he is more commonly known as Amen-hotep the First. Either he was of immature age at the death of his father, and therefore placed at first under the guardianship of his mother,⁴ or else his attachment to her was such that he voluntarily associated her with himself in the government. Her figure appears on his monuments, drawn with the utmost care and elaboration;⁵ she is joined with him in the worship of the gods;⁶ she is 'the lady of the two lands,' as he is the 'lord' of them. Little is known of the reign of Amenôphus beyond the fact that, like his father, he led expeditions to the south, and waged both with the Cushites and the negroes, seeking still further to extend the frontier of Egypt in a southern direction.⁷ It does not appear, however, that much success attended his efforts beyond the capture of some prisoners and some cattle. Amen-hotep was served by two officers, Aahmes, son of Abana, and another Aahmes named

¹ *Denkmaler*, vol v pt iii pl 3

² Brugsch, l s c

³ Ap Syncell *Chronograph* vol i pp 70 A, 72 A

⁴ This is the view generally taken (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i. p. 280 1st ed. Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p 81) But there is no appearance of extreme youth

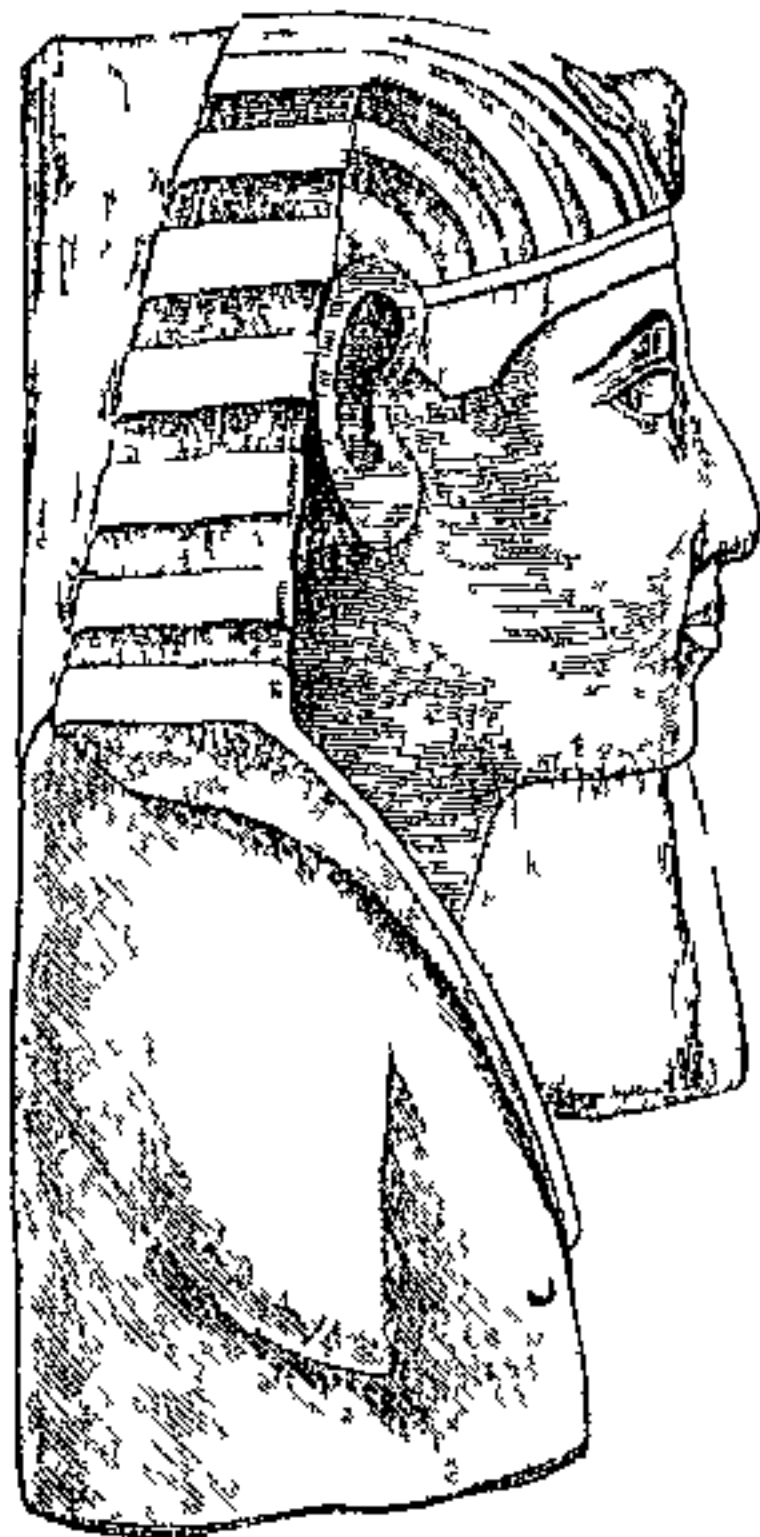
fulness in the representations of Amenôphus

Denkmaler vol v pt iii pl 1

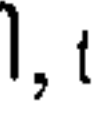
Ibid pl 4 e

⁵ *Records of the Past*, vol iv p 7 vol vi p 9 Amen-hotep also employed himself in the enlargement of the great temple at Karnak

Pennishem, whose tombs have been found at Thebes.¹ He took to wife an Egyptian lady, named Aah-hotep, , and had a son by her whom he called Thothmes,



Bust of Amenophis I

  , the first prince of that celebrated name.² According to Manetho,³ Amenophis I. reigned no more than thirteen years.

The reign of Thothmes I., who succeeded Amenophis, and took the further appellation of Aa-khepr-ka-ra, , derives its chief distinction from the fact that, at this period of their history, the Egyptians for the first time carried their arms deep into Asia, overrunning Syria, and even invading Mesopotamia, or the tract between the Tigris and the Euphrates.

Hitherto the furthest point reached in this direction had been Sharuhin in Southern Palestine, a city assigned to the tribe of Simeon by Joshua. Invaders from the lower Mesopotamian region⁴ had from time to time made their appearance in the broad Syrian valleys and plains, had drunk the waters of the Orontes and the Jordan,

¹ See the *Denkmäler* vol. v pt iii pl 12 a

² Thothmes means 'Child of Thoth' and is nearly equivalent to Aahmes 'Child of the Moon' since Thoth was a Moon god (see vol. i pp 369-71)

³ Ap Syncell *Chronographi* vol i. p 70, v. Strictly speaking, it is Chebros who is given this short reign. But Chebros, as the second

king of the eighteenth dynasty, must represent Amen-hotep I.

⁴ *E.g.* Chedor-laomer, whose two expeditions are mentioned in the fourteenth chapter of Genesis and Kudur-mabuk, who calls himself *Apdu Martu*, or 'Ravager of Syria' (about B.C. 1600). See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i pp 447, 450, 3rd ed.

ravaged the open country, and even perhaps destroyed the towns. But Syria was hitherto almost an undiscovered region to the powerful people which, nurturing its strength in the Nile valley, had remained content with its own natural limits and scarcely grasped at any conquests. A time was now come when this comparative quietude and absence of ambition were about to cease. Provoked by the attack made upon her from the side of Asia, and smarting from the wounds inflicted upon her pride and her prosperity by the Hyksos during the period of their rule, Egypt now set herself to retaliate, and for three centuries continued at intervals to pour her armies into the Eastern continent, and to carry fire and sword over the extensive and populous regions which lay between the Mediterranean and the Zagros mountain range. There is some uncertainty as to the extent of her conquests; but no reasonable doubt can be entertained that for a space of three hundred years Egypt was the most powerful and the most aggressive state that the world contained, and held a dominion that has as much right to be called an 'Empire' as the Assyrian, the Babylonian, or the Persian. While Babylon, ruled by Arab conquerors,¹ declined in strength, and Assyria proper was merely struggling into independence, Egypt put forth her arm, and grasped the fairest regions of the earth's surface. Thus commenced that struggle for predominance between north eastern Africa and south western Asia, which lasted for above a thousand years, and was scarcely terminated until Rome appeared upon the scene, and reduced both the rivals under her world-wide sway.

¹ Ibid pp 448 9.

The period of aggression upon Asia commenced with Thothmes I. ; but his Asiatic expedition was not his first



Bust of Thothmes I.

enterprise. He began his military career by an invasion of the countries upon the Upper Nile,¹ and contended in this region with the Ethiopians and Nubians, ascending the course of the river with a flotilla of ships, while his troops also, it is probable, marched along the banks, and not only directing the movements of his forces, but taking a personal part in the encounters. On one occasion, we are told, 'his majesty be-

came more furious than a panther,'² and placing an arrow on the string directed it against the Nubian chief with so sure an aim, that it struck him and remained fixed in his knee, whereupon the chief 'fell fainting down before the royal diadem.'³ He was at once seized and made a prisoner, his followers were dispersed; and he himself was carried off on board the royal ship to the Egyptian capital. This victory was the precursor of others: everywhere 'the An of Nubia were hewed in pieces, and scattered all over their lands' till 'their stench filled the valleys.'⁴ At last a general submission was made, and a large tract of territory was ceded. The Egyptian frontier was pushed on from

¹ See the *Records of the Past*, *Past* vol vi p 10
vol iv p 7, vol vi p 10

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,
vol i p 250, 1st ed *Records of the*

³ Brugsch, l.c.

⁴ Ibid p 285.

Semneh (lat. $21^{\circ} 50'$) to Tombos (lat. 19°), and a memorial was set up at this latter place,¹ to mark the existing extent of the empire southward. A new officer was appointed to govern the newly annexed country, who was called 'the ruler of Kush,' and appears to have resided at Semneh.²

The expedition against the South was followed, after no long interval, by an invasion of Asia. To exact satisfaction from the races which had attacked Egypt, and for many years oppressed her, Thothmes marched an army through Palestine and Syria into Mesopotamia, engaged the natives of those regions in a long series of battles, and defeated them more than once with great slaughter. A single captain boasts that in the course of the expedition he 'took twenty-one hands,'³ or, in other words, killed twenty one men, besides capturing a horse and a chariot. If one man could do so much, what must have been the amount of injury inflicted by the entire host! Egyptian armies, according to Manetho,⁴ were counted by hundreds of thousands; and even if for 'hundreds' we substitute 'tens,' the result must have been a carnage and a desolation sufficiently distressing. The use of the horse in war, which they had learned from their late conquerors,⁵ added greatly to their military efficiency and to their

¹ A representation of the memorial is given in the *Denkmäler*, vol. v. pt. iii. pl. 5, and a translation of the inscription upon it will be found in Brugsch's *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 285-6, 1st ed.

² See Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 284, 1st ed.

³ See *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 7, par. 9.

⁴ Ap. Joseph *Cont. Apion* i. 14, 26.

⁵ That the Hyksos introduced the horse into Egypt, though doubted by M. Chabas (*Études sur l'Antiquité Historique*, p. 415), is the general conclusion of Egyptologists. The employment of horses in war by the Egyptians as early as the reign of Aahmes appears from the inscription of Aahmes, son of Abana (*Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 7, par. 6).

power of making distant campaigns. Though unskilful riders, and therefore averse to the employment of cavalry on any extensive scale,¹ they rapidly organised a strong force of chariots, which engaged with success the similar organisations of the Eastern nations, and manifested a decided superiority over them. We must suppose that the Egyptian mechanical skill carried to perfection in a short time the art of chariot making, and that they combined lightness with strength in their vehicles to a remarkable degree. The climate of Egypt seems also to have suited the horse in these early days; and so judicious were the Egyptian breeders that the natives of Judæa and Syria—nay, even the redoubted Hittites themselves imported their horses and chariots from the valley of the Nile, and paid a price for them which implies high excellence.² It is creditable to the spirit and adaptability of the Egyptian people, that they should so immediately have surpassed their teachers, and have been able *at once* to carry to perfection a mode of warfare which was wholly new to them, while it had long been familiar to their antagonists.

When the king returned triumphant from his Asiatic campaign,³ with abundant booty and captives, he set up a tablet commemorative of his exploits,⁴ and, to show his gratitude to the divine power which had protected him and given him the victory, proceeded further to enlarge and embellish the temple of Ammon at Thebes, commenced by Amenemhat I. and

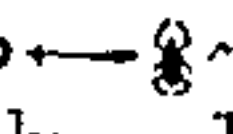
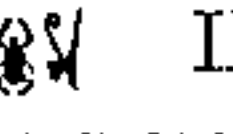
¹ On the employment of cavalry by the Egyptians to a certain extent, see M. Chabas' *Études*, pp 425-30, and compare above, vol. i pp 449-50.

² See 1 Kings x 28, 29, 2 Chr 13 17

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 295, 1st ed

⁴ Ibid p 290.

advanced by his son, Usurtasen. The temple at this time consisted merely of the central cell, and a certain number of chambers, built at the sides, for the priests' use. Aahmes constructed the cloistered court in front of the central cell,¹ a building 240 feet long by sixty-two broad, surrounding it by a colonnade, of which the supports were Osirid pillars, or square piers with a colossal figure of Osiris in front. At either side of the grand portal, which gave entrance to this building, he reared a granite obelisk, seventy five feet high, on which he commemorated his piety and his worship of the gods of heaven.²

The reign of Thothmes I appears to have been short,³ though Manetho assigned him a period of twenty-one years.⁴ He was married to a wife, Aahmes, who is thought to have been also his sister,⁵ and had by her a daughter called Hasheps⁶ or Hatasu, , and two sons, both of whom bore the same name as their father. At his death the elder of the two sons ascended the throne, and ruled as Thothmes nefer shau, taking also the additional epithet of Aa-kheper en ra, , or . He is known to moderns as Thothmes II, and had a reign which was brief and undistinguished. After one expedition against the Arabs of the more northern parts of the Sinaitic peninsula, undertaken for the purpose of striking terror into

¹ See above, vol i p 227

² For representations of these obelisks see Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pls xxx xxxiv and Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, vol v. pt. iii pl 6

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 83

⁴ Ap Syncell, *Chronograph.* vol i p 71, c

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p 206, 1st ed.

⁶ The reading Hasheps, or Hashepsu, seems generally preferred by Egyptologists. (Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 83, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i pp 301 14, 1st ed. Chabas, *Etudes*, pp 161 76, &c.) Professor Dümichen, however, still uses the form Hatasu. (See *Records of the Past*, vol x. pp 13 19.)

those incorrigible marauders,¹ he seems to have given himself up to a life of almost complete inactivity. His sister, Hatshepsut, appears to have acquired great influence over him, and to have been allowed to assume the royal title and take the leading part in the government. Conjointly, the brother and sister made various additions to the great temple of Ammon at Thebes, while at the same time they busied them-



Head of Thothmes II

selves with several other buildings of importance.² The remarkable temple at Medinet Abou, described in the first volume of the present work,³ is attributed to this period, and was the result of their combined exertions. Both the brother and the sister were devotees of Ammon, whom they identified with Khem,⁴ and worshipped as the source of life and lord of heaven. They also gave a prominent position to the lion-goddess,

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv p 8
² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,
 vol. i p 300, 1st ed.

³ See above, vol i pp 207-20
⁴ See the *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl
 17, b, c

Pasht or Sekhet, whom they conjoined with Ammon and Khonsu.¹

Hatasu is suspected of having cherished an extreme lust of power, and of having sacrificed to it affection,



Head of Queen Hatasu

and even decerency. The early death of her brother is laid at her door;² and it is certain that after his decease she strove to obliterate his memory by erasing his name from the monuments, sometimes substituting her own name, or that of her father, in its place.³

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt iii. pls 14 and 15

² Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol i. p 302, 1st ed. Birch (*Ancient Egypt*, p 83) says 'Probably one of these revolting conspiracies and

family quarrels of the palace is veiled behind the fact of the short and inglorious reign of Thothmes II' (Compare p 80)

³ See the *Denkmaler*, pt iii pls 15 and 21

She appears to have been a woman of great energy, and of a masculine mind, clever, enterprising, vindictive, and unscrupulous. On the death of the second Thothmes, she took entire possession of the throne, changed her name from Hatsu to Hatsu Khnum Ammon, took the additional throne name of Ra ma ka, , assumed male apparel and the style and title of a king, occupied the royal throne, and allowed her young brother, whom she suffered to live, no better place than a seat upon her footstool¹. She is constantly represented upon the monuments in male attire, often crowned with the tall plumes of Ammon;² she calls herself 'the son of the sun,' 'the good god,' 'the lord of the two lands,' 'beloved of Ammon Ra, the god of kings.' She is not, however, wholly consistent in this assumption of the masculine character. Sometimes her garb is that of a woman, her title 'lady;' and her epithet, 'beloved by Ammon,' has the feminine suffix³. It may perhaps have been difficult for the sculptors always to bear in mind that the sex of the sovereign from whom they received their commission was to be concealed.

As sole monarch, Hatsu pushed forward her build- ings with increased energy, and rapidly brought to completion various works of importance, which still

¹ *Denl mâle*, pt in pls 22a et d 23

² *Ibid* pls 19 b, 22 4

³ Compare Chabas, *Études* pp. 161 2. 'On remarquera que cette reine affecte continuellement de se servir des titres masculins elle est appelée *le roi* et non *la reine*, quoique les pronoms personnels et possessifs qui la représentent dans les textes soient généralement du

féminin, ces prétentions masculines donnent lieu à des formules très singulières, c'est ainsi que, dans l'expression *Sa Majesté elle-même* les termes *Sa Majesté* sont le possessif masculin, et ils sont suivis du pronom féminin *elle même*, l'anglais *His Majesty / herself* rend bien compte de cette anomalie

excite the traveller's admiration. Her edifices are said to be among 'the most tasteful, most complete and brilliant creations which ever left the hands of an Egyptian artist.'¹ She built a temple, imposed on four steps, which is quite unique among Egyptian shrines, and is known now as that of Deir el Bahiri.² She erected obelisks at Thebes in the great temple of Ammon, which equal, alike in size and in delicacy of workmanship, the constructions of any other monarch.³ She connected her temple, at once with the older erection of Usurtasen, and with the sacred stream of the Nile, by long avenues of croco sphinxes in a posture of repose.⁴ She set up statues of herself in various places,⁵ and inscribed her name upon the rocks of Assouan.⁶ Her favourite architect was an Egyptian named Semnut, the son of Kames and Hater, to whose memory she erected a monument which is now in the Berlin Museum.⁷

But the most extraordinary of all the achievements of Queen Hatasu, and the one of which she seems to have been most proud, was the establishment of a species of sovereignty over the distant land of Punt by means of a naval expedition⁸ on a scale of which we have no

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 303, 1st ed

² Ibid p 302 Compare Dumichen, *Flotte einer ägyptischen Königin*, p 17.

³ *Denkmaler* pt iii pls 22 4

⁴ Dumichen, l s c, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 301, 1st ed

⁵ *Denkmaler*, pt iii. pl. 25 d, e.

⁶ Ibid pl 25 bis, q Here she calls herself 'the beloved of Sati and Khnun' (i.e. Kneph).

⁷ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 302, 1st ed

⁸ The valuable work of Dr.

Dumichen, *Die Flotte einer ägyptischen Königin* (Leipzig, 1868), has given a celebrity to this achievement of Queen Hatasu, which it might not otherwise have obtained. This work, important though it be, is unfortunately incomplete several of the scenes connected with the expedition not being represented in it. (See Chabas, *Études sur l'Antiquité Égyptienne*, l s c) The résumé of Dr. Dumichen's work in the *Records of the Past* (vol x pp 19-20) falls very far short of the original.

trace in the earlier monuments. Five ships¹ at least, manned by thirty rowers each, and having on board besides a crew of some ten or twelve, together with a detachment of Egyptian troops,² proceeded from some port on the western coast of the Red Sea to the southern extremity of the gulf, and landed on the shores of Punt,³ the 'Ta neter' or 'Holy Land'—the original seat of Athor and perhaps of Ammon—where a most friendly reception was accorded them. The expedition was not of a hostile, but of a purely pacific, character⁴. A high official of the court accompanied the fleet as royal ambassador, and a profusion of presents for the chiefs of Punt were placed on board. The great object was to establish friendly relations, and secure both an immediate and also a continuous supply of the precious frankincense, which was consumed largely by the Egyptians in the worship of the gods, and was especially required at this time for the due honour of the great Ammon⁵. The inhabitants were quite willing to barter their highly valued product for the manufactures and for the corn of Egypt. They were simple folk, living on stages built upon piles, in small cabins, which could be entered only by means of a ladder, generally built under the shadow of a grove of cocoanut palms, and in the immediate vicinity

¹ See Dunichen's *Flotte, &c*, pl 1.

² The troops are not represented in the reliefs, but they are mentioned in the accompanying inscriptions (pl 1, col 4, &c.)

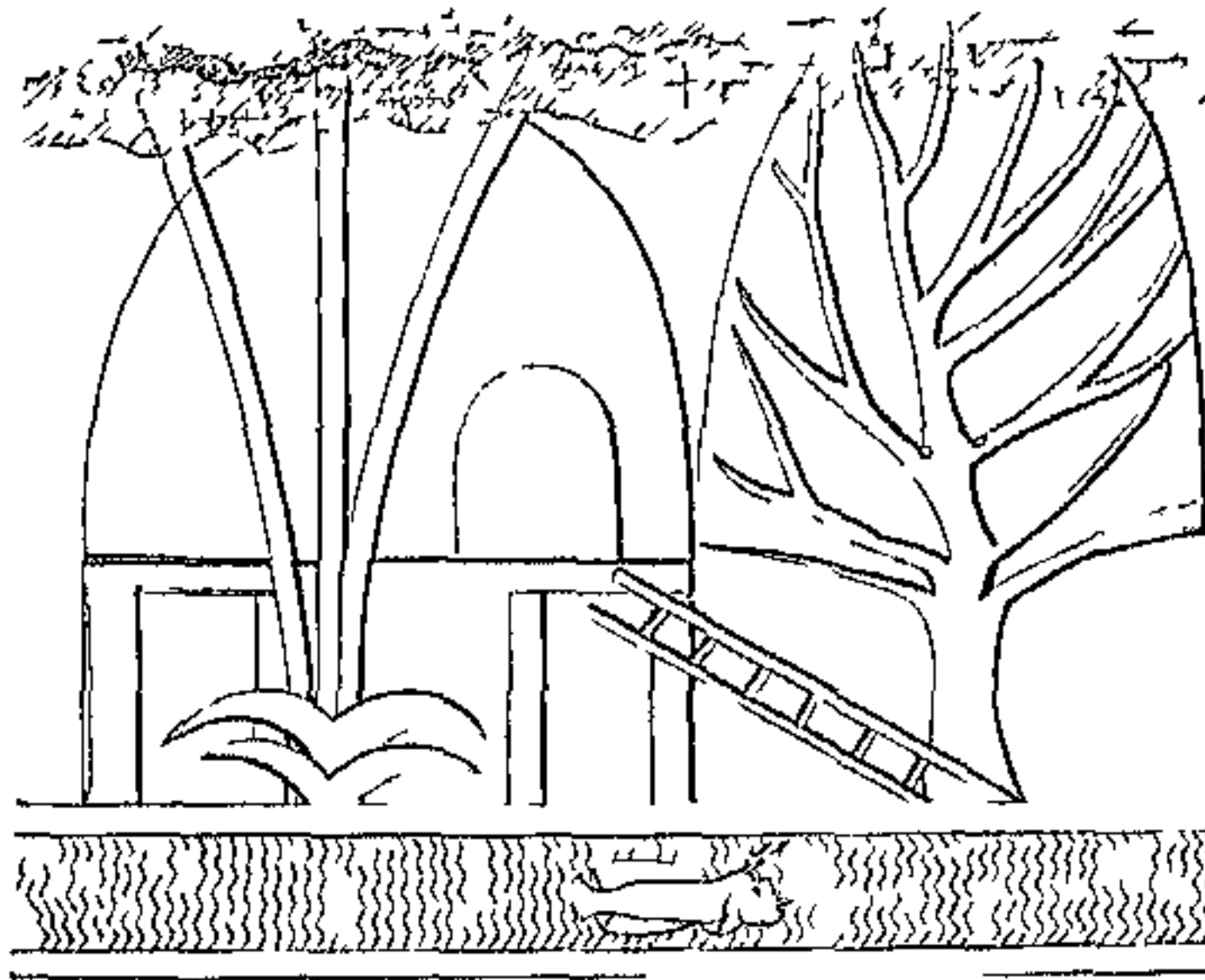
³ On the doubt as to the position of Punt, see above pp 131-2. Dr Dunichen's connection of the word with the name of the Phœnicians (Pœni, Puni) can scarcely be admitted.

⁴ It is unfortunate that the 'In

troduction' to Dr. Dunichen's translation of the legends accompanying the reliefs in the *Records of the Past* (vol x pp 11-12) should speak of 'naval engagements,' and of the 'subjugation' and 'conquest' of the land of Punt as now effected. Dunichen himself gives no ground for these expressions.

⁵ *Records of the Past* vol x. p 19; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1 p 304, 1st ed.

of the incense trees.¹ It was among the objects of the expedition to procure not only incense, but a certain number of the incense bearing trees, which the Egyptians hoped to naturalise in their own country. At their request the natives set to work, and dug up as many as thirty one of the trees, which they packed



House on Piles in the Land of Punt

with earth about their roots in baskets, and, having slung them on poles, so conveyed them to the ships, where they were placed upon the deck under an awning.² Large quantities of the incense itself were also collected, and packed in sacks tied at the mouth, which were piled on the decks in various places. At the same time other valuable products of the Holy Land were put on board, especially gold, silver, ivory, ebony, cassia, kohl or stibium, apes, baboons, dogs, slaves, and leopard-skins.³ A single tamed leopard or tigress seems to have been also embarked. Homage

¹ Dümichen *Flotte*, &c., pl. 15

² *Ibid.* pls. 2 and 3

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. x. p.

14, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1 p. 308, 1st ed.

was done to the Queen of Egypt by Parihu, the lord of the country, and his misshapen wife,¹ who thus admitted the suzerainty of the Pharaohs; but at the same time it was distinctly stipulated that the peace and freedom of the land of Punt should be respected.²

The return of the embassy with its wonderful and varied treasures was made a day of rejoicing at Thebes. Twelve Nile boats of the largest dimensions conveyed the wanderers in a grand procession to the capital.³ The whole population came out to meet them. A parade was made of the troops which had accompanied the expedition, the incense-trees, the strange animals, the many products of the distant country, were exhibited; the tame leopard, with his negro keeper, followed the soldiers; natives of the remote region, called Tamahu, who had voluntarily accompanied the expedition on its return, performed their war-dance.⁴ A bull was sacrificed to Ammon, and a new feast instituted.⁵ Finally, to perpetuate the great occasion, and prevent its fading away from human remembrance, the entire expedition was represented in an elaborate series of reliefs on the walls of Hatasu's new temple on the western side of Thebes, where they may still be seen, not very much injured by time, by the curious traveller at the present day.

After exercising the complete royal authority for the space of fifteen years, Hatasu found herself under the necessity of admitting her younger brother to a share in the kingdom, and allowed his name to appear

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 81. and 5

Chabas, *Études*, p. 158

⁴ Ibid. pls 6 and 11

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 306, 1st ed

⁵ *Records of the Past*, vol x p 17, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,

³ Dumichan, *Ilote, &c*, pls 4 vol i p 312, 1st ed

on public monuments in a secondary and subordinate position¹. He had now probably reached the age of eighteen or twenty years; and his further exaltation from the throne would have been contrary to Egyptian ideas. He was therefore accepted into partnership; but this tardy recognition of his rights appears not to have contented him, and his subsequent conduct shows that he bore a deep grudge against his too jealous guardian. Actuated by a strong and settled animosity, he erased her name from her monuments,² and it is simply from the circumstance of his age's not having cut deep enough that we are enabled to trace his sister's career without much difficulty. Whether he proceeded to greater lengths, and directed against her person the vengeance which it is clear that he wreaked upon her inscriptions, is uncertain. The joint rule of the brother and the sister appears not to have continued for above seven years;³ but whether Thothmes, after reaching manhood, drove his sister by force from the throne, or whether she slept in Osiris in the ordinary course of nature, we cannot tell, because the monuments are silent.⁴ She was probably not more than about forty years of age at her decease.

The new king, Thothmes III, crowned at length after so long a minority, took the additional title of Nefer-Khepu—'the best of beetles'⁵—to distinguish himself from his father and brother, while at the same time he gave himself the throne-name of Men-khepr-ra,

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 28.

² *Ibid.* pl. 10.

³ Thothmes III. began to reign the fifteenth year of his sister, which he counted as his own fifteenth year (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 314, 1st ed.) His sole reign appears to have commenced

seven years afterwards in what he called his twenty-second year (*Ibid.* p. 320).

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 316.

⁵ Cf. the sacred character of the scarabæus or beetle, in the symbol which connected it with the sun, see vol. i. pp. 315, 317, 411, &c.

ⲓⲙⲙⲉⲛⲓⲛⲓ, as a further distinctive appellation. Thothmes has been called 'the Alexander of Egyptian history;' ¹ and though the associations that this epithet awakens transcend the facts of the case, and make the expression, in the judgment of sober criticism, seem exaggerated, yet still it places a striking fact in a striking light—Thothmes III was beyond a doubt the greatest of Egyptian conquerors. Devoid, so far as appears, of any talent for organisation, as far as possible removed from the rank and position of an Alexander among persons gifted with rare administrative capacity, he had at any rate this in common with the great Macedonian, that he carried the arms of one continent into the very centre of another, overcame all hostile opposition, and brought one of the great kingdoms of Western Asia into at least a nominal submission. Considering the circumstances of the time, there is no doubt that his expeditions, and the success which attended them, imply high military talent; and though the general historian must decline to rank him with the really great conquerors that the world has produced—the Alexanders, the Cæsars, the Charlemagnes—yet it must be readily allowed, and asserted, that among Egyptian conquering kings he holds the first place. No later monarch ever exceeded his glories; Thothmes III. is the nearest historical approach to the ideal Sesostris, ² the only Pharaoh who really penetrated with a hostile force deep into the heart of Assyria, ³ and forced the

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 816, 1st ed.

² The name Sesostris no doubt comes from Sesortosis a G coised form of Usutasen. The ideal figure was composed by uniting in one the actions of all the chief Egyptian conquerors. As the greatest of

these, Thothmes III furnished the most traits.

³ Thothmes I. crossed the Euphrates into Mesopotamia and fought battles there, but retained no hold of the region. Thothmes III. seems to have conquered the entire tract as far as the Khabour, and

great states of Western Asia to pay him tribute, if not even to acknowledge his suzerainty.

The independent public life of Thothmes (Menkhepr-ra) appears to have commenced with the year which he reckoned as his twenty second. Up herto he had remained in a subordinate position, under the tutelage, or at any rate the influence, of his sister.¹ Now he was sole monarch, either by her decease or her deposition, and had the uncontrolled direction of his own actions. The natural bent of his disposition at once displayed itself: he engaged in an aggressive war with the Asiatic nations. Starting from an Egyptian post called Garu, or Zalu,² in the month named Pharmuthi, the eighth month of the Egyptian year, corresponding to our February, he invaded Palestine, with the object, as is distinctly stated, of 'extending the frontiers of Egypt by his victories.'³ On the fourth day of the next month, Pashons (March 21), the anniversary of his coronation and the first day of his twenty third year, he arrived at Gaza, which was a strong city even at this early time, and was regarded as the key of Syria. Here, however, he met with no resistance, the ruler being friendly to him; and having rested his troops for the night, he marched out on the fifth, and proceeded by the coast route to Jahant (Jamnia?), where he held a council of war to determine by what line the advance should continue. According to the intelligence brought in by his scouts,

to have left it to his successors, who held it down to the time of Amenôphis IV. The later Egyptian monarchs made raids into Mesopotamia but no permanent result followed from them.

¹ See above, p. 225

² Dr. Birch identifies Garu with

the later Hieropolis (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 87). But the identification is very uncertain.

³ See the inscription given by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 320, 1st ed.) and also in the *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 38.

the enemy was collected in a position near the city of Megiddo, probably in the great plain of Esdraelon, the ordinary battle field of the Palestinian nations. They consisted of 'all the people dwelling between the river of Egypt on the one hand and the land of Naharam (Mesopotamia) on the other,' the Kharu (Syrians) and the Katu being the principal.¹ At their head was the king of Kadesh, a great Hittite city on the Orontes.² The direct route to Megiddo, which passed by Aaluna and Taanach, was strongly guarded; but Thothmes insisted on proceeding by this route, instead of making a *détour* as wished by his captains. The event justified his audacity. Megiddo was reached within a week without loss or difficulty; and on the twenty second of Pashons (April 7) the Egyptian king attacked and completely defeated his adversaries in a pitched battle, driving them in headlong flight from the position which they occupied, and forcing them to take refuge within the walls of the city. The Syrian camp was taken, together with vast treasures in silver and gold; and the son of the king of Kadesh fell into Thothmes' hands. Megiddo itself soon afterwards surrendered, as did the towns of Inunam, Anaugas, and Hurankal or Herinokol. As many as 924 chariots and above 5,900 prisoners were captured; and much booty in the precious metals, as well as in flocks and herds, was carried off. Thothmes returned to Egypt in triumph, and held a prolonged festival to Ammon Ra in Thebes, which he describes at great length in one of his inscriptions.³

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 321, 1st ed.

² The exact site of this Kadesh is uncertain. Dr. Birch suggests that it occupied the position of the modern Hems, which is enclosed

between two branches of the Orontes (See his *Ancient Egypt*, p. 116)

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp. 53-5

The success of Thothmes in this, his first, campaign whetted his appetite for fresh conquests. Between his twenty-third and his twenty-ninth years, for which his own annals are lacking, he must have been engaged in three distinct expeditions, since he styles the campaign of the twenty-ninth year his fifth.¹ It appears from the tomb inscription of his captain, Amen-em-heb² that one of these was in Southern Judæa, or the Negeb, while in another Thothmes carried the Egyptian arms into Northern Syria, ravaged the country about Aleppo, threatened Carchemish, and even crossed the Euphrates into Upper Mesopotamia, whence he carried off a number of prisoners. It was probably at this time that he first came into contact with the Assyrians, who had recently made themselves independent of Babylon, and *claimed* at any rate the suzerainty over all Mesopotamia as far as the Euphrates. No actual collision between the troops of Egypt and Assyria, either at this time or at any later period of his reign, is recorded; but his advance to Carchemish and pretensions to conquests beyond the Euphrates must have provoked the jealousy of the Assyrian monarchs and caused alarm to be felt at the Assyrian capital. This was not now—as sometimes supposed—Nineveh, but Asshur (Kileh Sherghat). The Assyrian monarchs, till recently subject to Babylon, were not as yet very mighty princes, the great palaces of Nimrud, Koyunjik, and Khorsabad, which have attracted so much attention in these later times, were not built; Nineveh, if it existed, was a provincial town of small repute; the kings, engaged in constant wars with the great power of the South, found the maintenance of their

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 21, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 329, 1st ed. | ² Given by Brugsch in his *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 358-60, 1st ed.

independence a task which taxed their strength to the uttermost, and had effected as yet no very important conquests. The Egyptian monarch, in extending his attacks into the Mesopotamian region, encountered no very great danger, measured his strength against that of no very powerful kingdom. Still, in advancing beyond the Euphrates, he was carrying his arms into unknown regions, at the distance of six or seven hundred miles from his resources, and risking an encounter with the forces of an organised state such as did not exist in the long stretch of territory which lay between Egypt and the Great River.

It is advisable, before proceeding further with the warlike expeditions of Thothmes III., to glance briefly at the general condition of the countries lying intermediate between Egypt and the great Asiatic powers of the time, Assyria and Babylonia.

The strip of territory intervening between Egypt and Mounts Taurus and Amanus, bounded by the Mediterranean on the one hand, and the Euphrates and the Syro Arabian desert on the other, was in the time of Thothmes possessed by four principal nations.¹ These were, in the south, the Khalu or Kharu, identified by Dr Brugsch with the Phœnicians,² but more probably a Syrian people; in the central parts, the Ruten or Luten (Lydiuns?); above them, towards the west, the Tahai or Zahu; towards the Euphrates, the

¹ No doubt portions of the country were occupied by the very ancient races of the Rephaim, Anakim, Zamzummim, and the like, mentioned in Scripture, but these races do not appear in the inscriptions, and must have sunk into insignificance. The Amorites are sometimes mentioned as possessing

parts of the country north of Palestine and the Edomites hold the tract between the Dead Sea and the Gulf of Akabah. The name 'Canaan' also occurs, but the Hittites are the only Canaanitish nation of the Egyptian records.

² *History of Egypt*, vol. 1 pp. 221-4, 1st ed.

Khita, or Hittites. The country of the Khita extended along the coast from the boundary of Egypt to a place called Aup or Aupa, which seems to have been in Northern Palestine,¹ but which cannot be identified with any known site. It included within its borders the cities of Gazatu or Gaza, Ashkaluna or Ascalon, Aaluna (Ajalon?), Sharhana or Sharhen, Miketa or Megiddo, Taanach, and Jaham (perhaps Jamnia). Its inhabitants were addicted to mercantile pursuits, and carried on a brisk trade with the Egyptians in times of peace, being regarded by them as a respectable and civilised people. Their northern neighbours, the Ruten or Luten, held the valley of the Orontes and the coast tract as far as Aradus, among their towns were Kadesh, which seems to have been the capital, Aradus, Simyra, Argatu (Acre?), Anaugas, Inunam, and Herinokol. They are represented as of a yellowish complexion, with Jewish features and black beards and hair. It does not appear that they were a very numerous people; but they possessed a civilisation of a tolerably high type, fought in chariots that were either painted or covered with plates of gold, used iron armour, had furniture of cedar wood inlaid with ivory, and manufactured gold and silver vessels of elegant forms and delicately chased.² The country of the Tahai, which reached from a little north of Aradus to the Taurus mountain-range, furnished corn and wine in vast abundance,³ as well as incense, balsam, honey, iron, lead, and various kinds of precious stones.⁴ Compared with the Kharu, Ra'en, and Khita, the people

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 222, 1st ed. | *Egypt*, and compare the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 116 a.
² See the frontispiece to the first volume of Brugsch's *History of* | ³ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 21.
⁴ *Ibid.* pp. 21-2.

were unimportant. East of the Taurus and north-east of the Euphrates, reaching from the Antilibanus to the Euphrates, was the great nation of the Hittites, with their capital at Karkamisha, or Carchemish, on the right bank of the great river. Their country is called in the inscriptions 'the great land of the Khita.'¹ Its chief cities, besides Carchemish, were Khirabu (Aleppo), Taaranta, Parika, Khisasap, and Sarapaina.² The inhabitants were fully as civilised as their neighbours, and at the same time more warlike. They had possessed from a remote antiquity a form of picture writing, which is found not only in their own proper country, but in various parts of Western Asia,³ from Cappadocia to the shores of the Ægean. In war the arm whereto the Khita mainly trusted was the chariot-force. Their chariots carried three each—two warriors and the charioteer⁴—whereas the Egyptian chariots carried two only; and they could bring into the field as many as 2,500.⁵ Of all the Syrian nations, the Khita were the most powerful, and they maintained a separate national existence down to the time of the Sargonids.

Across the Euphrates, the rolling plain at the foot of the high mountains—the Padan Aiam of Scripture—seems to have been known as Naharain, or 'the land of the two rivers;' but the people appear to have been regarded by the Egyptians as Assyrians. There is no reason to believe that they were Assyrians in race; but it is not unlikely that, even at this early time, the Assyrian monarchs, who had thrown off the

¹ Brugsc's, *History of Egypt*, by M. A. H. Sayce, published in vol. 1 pp. 334, 342, &c., 1st ed. | the *Proceedings of the Society of*

² *Records of the Past*, vol. 1v. p. 31

Biblical Archaeology for July 1880)

³ As at Boghaz Kem, Tyluk and Karabel on the old road between Ephesus and Sardis. (See a paper

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. 11 p. 69

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 71.

yoke of Babylon, claimed a suzerainty over the upper Mesopotamian tribes, as Babylon did over those of the lower region. In reality, the tribes were Scythic,¹ and belonged chiefly to the two races of the Nahiri and Comukha, they possessed little internal organisation, and were unable to offer any serious or prolonged resistance to the forces of either Egypt or Assyria. Fluctuating between the two great powers for centuries, they were at length swallowed up by the nearer and stronger of the two, the Assyrians, who absorbed and assimilated them towards the middle of the ninth century before our era.²

In his fifth campaign, which fell into his twenty ninth year, Thothmes directed his attack against the cities of the Syrian coast, took and spoiled Tunep, ravaged the land of Zahi, cut down the fruit trees, carried off the crops, and, having laden his fleet with a variety of precious objects, sailed back to Egypt.³ The next year he turned his arms against the more northern Ruten, took and plundered Kadesh, Simyra, and Aradus, emptied the magazines of their grain, and, to secure the permanent submission of the country, carried off as hostages a number of the young princes, whom he thenceforth retained in Egypt, requiring their relations to replace any who died by some other member of their family.⁴

A place called Hiansatu on the shores of the lake Nesrana was the chief object of attack in the ensuing year.⁵ It was captured without difficulty, and yielded

¹ As may be gathered from the tribal and personal names	21 2, Brugsch <i>History of Egypt</i> , vol. 1 pp 329 30
² See the author's <i>Ancient Monarchies</i> vol ii pp 372 3	⁴ <i>Records of the Past</i> , vol. ii p 22 pp. 8
³ <i>Records of the Past</i> vol ii pp	⁵ <i>Ibid</i> pp. 9.

a booty of 494 prisoners of war and thirteen chariots¹ It is remarkable that exploits of apparently such little importance should have been placed on record by the Egyptian monarchs with such particularity and exactness; but the fact seems to be that large populations did not exist in Syria at this period,² a vast number of petty chiefs divided the land among them, each ruling in his own small town or village; if confederations existed, they were of the loosest character; and it was seldom that even a temporary league united the forces of any large number of cities. Thus the wars of the Egyptians in Syria were carried on, in the main, not by great victories over numerous bodies of troops, but by a multitude of small successes and petty engagements, insignificant separately, but in the aggregate sufficing to produce the submission of the inhabitants.

Of all the campaigns of Thothmes, his eighth, that of his thirty third year, was probably the most important. Starting from the country of the Ruten,³ he in this expedition directed his attack upon the Mesopotamian region, where he ravaged far and wide, conquering the towns, and 'reducing to a level plain the strong places of the miserable land of Naharam,'⁴ capturing thirty kings or chiefs, and erecting two tablets in the region to indicate its conquest.⁵ It is possible that he even crossed the Tigris into the Zab region, since he relates that on his return he passed through the town of Ni, or Nini, which some of

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 333, 1st ed.
vol. i p. 331, 1st ed.

¹ Ibid

² Buch says with truth 'The inscriptions do not disclose to us in any instance places with a large population in this part of Asia' (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 91.)

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,

⁴ One on the east bank of the Euphrates, at the place of passage, opposite a tablet set up by his father Thothmes I; the other near the city called Ni or Nini (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 24.)

the best modern authorities¹ identify with Nineveh. Tribute was certainly brought him about this time from the 'king of Asshur'² as well as from 'the prince of Senkara,'³ and the tribute included blue stone (lapis lazuli) from Babylon, and bitumen from Is or Hit.⁴ It is not to be supposed that either Assyria or Babylonia was conquered; but a raid was made into the heart of Western Asia which spread terror on every side. Assyria was actually deprived of a portion of her territory; some of her cities were temporarily, others perhaps permanently, occupied,⁵ the king himself, in his fastness of Asshur, was smitten with fear, and bought off the hostility of the invader by gifts which were regarded as a 'tribute,' and which were repeated year after year. Even at the distant Senkara, south of Babylon, alarm was felt, and an embassy was sent to propitiate the conqueror by a present.

A curious episode of this expedition is related by the captain, Amenemheb, in the inscription upon his tomb.⁶ It appears that in the time of Thothmes III

¹ As Wilkinson (in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 302, 2nd ed.) and Birch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 104) Brugsch combats the opinion (*Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i p. 358, 1st ed.) and even seems inclined to place Ni in the country west of the Taphnates. But was this ever Naharin?

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 329, 1st ed.

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 25. Senkara has been identified with Singar or Sinjar, the present name of the low range which crosses Mesopotamia in about the latitude of Nineveh (Wilkinson), and again with Senaar or Shinar, the Hebrew term for the lower Mesopotamian country (Brugsch), but it is quite possible that the modern Senkareh

may be intended.

⁴ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. i p. 253, vol. ii p. 302, 2nd ed. Compare *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 27 note¹, where it is admitted that bitumen is the substance spoken of as furnished by the Asi.

⁵ The Egyptian remains found at Arban on the Khabour (Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, pp. 280-2), which contain the cartouches of Thothmes III and Amenôphis III indicate most probably a prolonged occupation of that post by an Egyptian garrison.

⁶ See *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 62, and compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 355, 1st ed.

the elephant haunted the woods and jungles of the Mesopotamian region, as he does now those of the peninsula of Hindustan. In the neighbourhood of Ni or Nini, large herds of the uncouth animal were to be met with; and Thothmes found leisure, in the intervals of his military operations, to hunt and kill no fewer than 120 elephants, and obtained their tusks. On one occasion, however, he was exposed to great danger. The 'rogue' or leading elephant of a herd made a rush upon the royal sportsman, and would probably have killed him, had not Amenemheb drawn its rage upon himself by inflicting a wound upon its trunk, and so saved his master.

The Mesopotamian campaign of Thothmes' thirty third year was followed by one or two more in the same country, which riveted the Egyptian yoke upon the more western portion of the district, but do not appear to have much affected the more eastern parts of the territory. Nothing further is heard of Ni or Nini; no more elephants are hunted; no more tribute arrives from Senkara, the Naharain, over which Thothmes permanently reigned, appears to have been limited to the tract between the Euphrates and the Khabour, east of which his remains cease to be found. It was not a part of his policy to measure his strength against that of either of the great Mesopotamian kingdoms, much less to attempt the conquest of the entire territory between the Mons Masius and the Persian Gulf. He was really content a little to outdo the warlike exploits of his father, Thothmes I., and aimed simply at making the Khabour, instead of the Euphrates, the eastern limit of the empire.

The later campaigns of the great Thothmes were almost entirely in regions which he had previously

overrun, and were undertaken to subdue revolt, to compel the payment of tribute, or to chastise marauders. Expeditions of this kind occupied the monarch almost continuously until his fortieth year,¹ when he appears to have allowed himself a rest from his military labours, and to have turned his attention to inscriptions, obelisks, and buildings. With an elaboration worthy of all praise, though somewhat wearisome to the student of his times, he placed on record, at Karnak and elsewhere, all the details of his several campaigns, all the particulars of the booties which he bore away, and of the tributes which he exacted from the various nations under his rule.² It appears that, in the way of tribute or booty, he carried off from the subject countries above 11,000 captives, 1,670 chariots, 3,639 horses, 4,491 of the larger cattle, more than 35,000 goats, silver to the amount of 3,946 pounds, and gold to the amount of 9,054 pounds. He also brought into Egypt from the conquered lands enormous quantities of corn and wine, together with incense, balsam, honey, ivory, ebony, and other rare woods, lapis-lazuli and other precious stones, furniture, statues, vases, dishes, basins, tent poles, bows, habergeons, fruit-trees, live birds, and monkeys! With a curiosity that was insatiable he noted all that was strange or unusual in the lands which he visited, and sought to introduce each novelty into his own proper country. Two unknown kinds of birds, and a variety of the goose, which he found in Mesopotamia and transported thence to the valley of

¹ Distinct record is found of expeditions in the thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-eighth, and thirty-ninth years (Brugsch, pp. 335, 337, 339, 340); and others appear to have belonged to the thirty-sixth, thirty-

seventh, and fortieth (P).

² For the particulars, see *Records of the Past*, vol. II pp. 21-52, and Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. I pp. 326-44, 1st ed.

the Nile, are said to have been 'dearer to the king than anything else.'¹ His artists had orders to make careful studies of the various objects, and to represent them faithfully upon his monuments. We see on these 'water lilies as high as trees, plants of a growth like cactuses, all sorts of trees and shrubs, leaves, flowers, and fruits, including melons and pomegranates; oxen and calves also figure and among them a wonderful animal with three horns. There are likewise herons, sparrow hawks, geese, and doves. All these objects appear gaily intermixed in the pictures, as suited the simple childlike conception of the 'primitive 'artist.'² An inscription tells the intention of the monarch: 'Here are all sorts of plants and all sorts of flowers of the Holy Land, which the king discovered when he went to the land of Ruten to conquer it. Thus says the king "I swear by the sun, and I call to witness my father Ammon, that all is plain truth; there is no trace of deception in that which I relate. What the splendid soil brings forth in the way of productions, I have had portrayed in these pictures, with the intention of offering them to my father Ammon, as a memorial for all times."'

Among the numerous inscriptions of this great king, none is more remarkable than that which adorns one of the chambers added by him to the grand temple of Ammon at Thebes, whereby he set forth his supposed connection with those monarchs of the Old Empire whom he acknowledged as legitimate occupants of the Egyptian throne. To Thothmes III. belongs the credit of being the first, so far as we know, to attempt the task of arranging the old kings in some-

¹ Brugsch, *Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 334, 1st ed. ² Ibid. pp. 337-8.

thing like chronological order. What materials he possessed for the work, what amount of labour he expended upon it, how far it was an historical, how far an arbitrary arrangement, are points upon which various opinions may be held; but it is incontestable that out of the chaos of the past he educed a certain method and order, which in its main features came to be recognised by the Egyptians themselves as authentic and authoritative. Sixty kings, commencing with Seneferu, and comprising Assa, Pepi, several Antefs, Mentuhoteps, and Usurtasens, were exhibited in a consecutive series as ancestors of the reigning Pharaoh, who represented himself as making offerings to them, and thus acknowledged at once their ancestral relation to himself and their divinity¹. The 'Great Tablet of Karnak,' as it is called, must always remain among the most important of those documents upon which the arrangement of the early history of Egypt depends; and though by many its value is thought to be surpassed by later and fuller lists, there will always be some to whom, on account of its antiquity, it will approve itself as the most important and most trustworthy of all the early catalogues of kings.

Besides distinguishing himself as a warrior, as a record writer, as a natural historian, and as a genealogist, Thothmes III was one of the greatest of Egyptian builders and patrons of art. The great temple of Ammon at Thebes was the special object of his fostering care; and he began his career of builder and restorer by repairing the damages which his sister, Hatasu, had inflicted on that glorious edifice to gratify

¹ See Lenoirant, *Manuel d'His* p. 387, 1st ed; Dœrin, *No uelle*
toire Ancienne, vol. i pp 325-6 *Table d Abydos*, p 6 (Paris, 1805),
Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1 &c.

her dislike of her brother, Thothmes II., and her father, Thothmes I. Statues of Thothmes I and his father, Amenôphis, which Hatasu had thrown down, were re-erected by Thothmes III. before the southern propylæa of the temple in the first year of his independent reign¹ The central sanctuary, which Usurtasen I. had built in common stone,² was next replaced by the present granite edifice under the directions of the young prince, who then proceeded to build, in rear of the old temple, a magnificent hall, or pillared chamber, of dimensions previously unknown in Egypt. This edifice was an oblong square, 143 feet long by fifty-five feet wide, or nearly half as large again as the nave of Canterbury Cathedral.³ The whole of this apartment was roofed in with slabs of solid stone; two rows of circular pillars thirty feet in height supported the central part, dividing it into three avenues, while on each side of the pillars was a row of square piers, still further extending the width of the chamber, and breaking it up into five long vistas.⁴ In connection with this noble hall, on three sides of it, north, east, and south, Thothmes erected further chambers and corridors, one of the former, situated towards the south, containing that 'Great Table of Karnak' which was described in the last paragraph

Thothmes also added propylæa to the temple on the south,⁵ and erected in front of it two, or perhaps

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 380, 1st ed

² See above, p. 149.

³ The nave of Canterbury Cathedral is 134 feet in length and, excluding the aisles forty feet in breadth, so that its area is 5360 feet. Add one half, and the result is 8,040 square feet. The area of

the Hall of Thothmes was 7,865 square feet

⁴ See above vol. i pp. 229-30 and compare Teigussen *History of Architecture*, vol. i pp. 106-7, 1st ed

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 380, 1st ed

our, immense obelisks. According to an inscription which is still extant, two of these monoliths reached the quite unparalleled and almost incredible height of 108 cubits, or 162 feet, and must have weighed 700 or 800 tons.¹ Two, of which one stands to this day before the Church of St. John Lateran in Rome, attained certainly the height of 105 feet, and weighed 50 tons.² These last were inscribed with hieroglyphics which declared: 'The king has raised these immense obelisks to the god Ammon, in the precinct of the house of the god, on the soil of Ape, as the first beginning of the erection of immense obelisks in Thebes.'³ Finally, towards the close of his reign, he repaired and re-erected in front of the temple a second obelisk of his father, which Hatasu had thrown down, and, either at this time or at some other, he also adorned the building with statues of himself, which were colossal and full of dignity.⁴

Other erections of this distinguished monarch to the enclosure of the temple of the Sun at Thebes,⁵ and the obelisks belonging to the same building, were the irony of fate has now removed to Rome, England, and America,⁶ the temple of Ptah at Thebes, the

¹ As the Lateran obelisk, which is only 105 feet high, has been estimated to weigh 450 tons (*Description de l'Egypte*, 'Antiquités,' vol. i, p. 229, note), the weight of one more than half as high again could not be less than 375 tons, and would probably be considerably more than that, as there is always a certain proportion between the height and the size at the base.

² See above vol. i, p. 23.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 401, 1st ed.

VOL. II.

108 cubits = 80 + 10 + 8 = 98 cubits = 147 feet. The height of the obelisk at Thebes is given as 108 cubits = 162 feet. The weight of the obelisk at Thebes is given as 700 or 800 tons. The weight of the obelisk at Thebes is given as 700 or 800 tons.

⁴ Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 103.

⁵ The obelisks known as the obelisks of Thebes were removed to Rome, England, and America. The obelisks of Thebes were removed to Rome, England, and America. The obelisks of Thebes were removed to Rome, England, and America.

small temple at Medinet Abou; a temple to Kneph, adorned with obelisks, at Elephantiné;¹ and a series of temples and monuments at Ombos, Eneh, Abydos, Coptos, Denderah, Eileithyia, Hermonthis, and Memphis in Egypt, and at Amada, Corte, Talmis, Pselcis, Semneh, and Koummeh in Nubia.² Large remains still exist in the Koummeh and Semneh temples,³ where Thothmes worships Totun, the Nubian Kneph, in conjunction with Usutasen III, his own ancestor. There are also extensive ruins of his great buildings at Denderah, Ombos, and Napata. Altogether, Thothmes III is pronounced to have 'left more monuments than any other Pharaoh, excepting Ramesses II,' and, though occasionally showing himself, as a builder, somewhat capricious and whimsical, yet still, on the whole, to have worked in 'a pure style,' and proved that he was 'not deficient in good taste.'⁴

There is reason to believe that the great constructions of this mighty monarch were, in part at least, the product of forced labours. Doubtless his eleven thousand captives⁵ were for the most part held in slavery, and compelled to employ their energies in helping towards the accomplishment of those grand works which his active mind was continually engaged in devising. We find among the monuments of his time

Thames Embankment, while the other is on its way to the United States of America.

¹ The obelisk brought to England by the Duke of Northumberland, and long an ornament of St. Heloise, belonged originally to this locality.

² See Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 357, 3rd ed., Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 396-7, 1st ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 102.

³ As will be seen by consulting the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls. 47-59. On the other hand, little is left of the temple built by Thothmes at Elephantiné, which, in the time of the French expedition, was magnificent and nearly complete. (See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 395, 1st ed.)

⁴ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, l. c.

⁵ See above, page 237.

a representation ¹ of the mode in which the services of these foreign bondsmen were made to subserve the glory of the Pharaoh who had carried them away captive. Some are seen kneading and cutting up the clay; others bear them water from a neighbouring pool; others again, with the assistance of a wooden mould, shape the clay into bricks, which are then taken and placed in long rows to dry; finally, when the bricks are sufficiently hard, the highest class of labourers proceed to build them into walls. All the work is performed under the eyes of taskmasters armed with sticks, who address the labourers with the words: 'The stick is in my hand. Be not idle' Over the whole is an inscription which says: 'Here are to be seen the prisoners, which have been carried away as living captives in very great numbers, they work at the building with active fingers; their overseers are in sight; they insist with vehemence (on the others labouring), obeying the orders of the great skilled lord (i.e. the head architect), who prescribes to them the works, and gives directions to the masters, they are rewarded with wine and all kinds of good dishes; they perform then service with a mind full of love for the king; they build for Thothmes Ra men khepr a Holy of Holies for the gods. May it be rewarded to him through a range of many years.' ²

The scene is so graphic—the words are so forcible and suitable—that many have recognised in this remarkable picture an actual representation of the oppressed Hebrews ³ working under the tyrants who

¹ *Denkmäler*, vol. v. pt. iii. pl. 1. p. 376.

² A reduced drawing of the scene is given in the author's *Herodotus* vol. ii. p. 214, 3rd ed.

³ Bugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol.

³ As Rosellini *Monumenti Civili*, vol. ii. p. 210. Heigstonsing *Aegypten und Moser* p. 80 (l. 1), Kuntz, *History of the Old Covenant*, vol.

‘made their lives bitter with hard bondage in mortar and in brick,’ beating them and ill using them, so that ‘all the service, wherein they made them serve, was with rigour,’¹ but the best critics of the present day² are of opinion that, though the work is an excellent illustration of the sort of life led by the Israelites under the Pharaohs who oppressed them, yet, in point of fact, it depicts not their sufferings, but those of quite a different people. The labourers were persons whom Thothmes had carried off in his wars—the captives of his bow and of his spear—not members of a despised race, which he had inherited with his other subjects from his forefathers; their countenances have a Semitic cast, but are certainly not markedly Jewish; and the general character of their physiognomy is very different from that of the Jews. They have light hair, and in several instances blue eyes;³ they are as slight in frame as the Egyptians themselves, and in few instances do they wear a beard. While, therefore, we must look with special interest on a work which brings before us the sort of suffering that befall the Israelites in their hard bondage in Egypt, we are bound to regard it as bearing only indirectly on this subject, and as primarily illustrative only of the mode in which prisoners of war were treated by the Egyptians in the palmiest days of the Empire.

It may be asked however, with some excuse for the question, what *was* the condition of the Israelites at this time? Were they still in Egypt, or had they already gone forth? Did or did not Thothmes III

ii. p. 152, Kalsch, *Comment on Exodus* p. 9; Palmer, *Egyptian Chronicles*, vol. i Introduction, p. xix.
¹ Ex i. 14.
² See Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 98, Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i pp. 375-6, &c, 1st ed. Wilkinson took the same view (Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. xv).
³ See the representation in the *Denkmalen*, pt. iii pl. 10.

stand in any peculiar relation to them? An undying interest attaches to the Hebrew race, and Egypt herself derives from her connection with the 'peculiar people' more than half the attractiveness which she possesses for the general public. Without this, she might still, through her antiquity and her mysteriousness, draw to herself the regards of the recluse student, of the philologist, and the antiquarian, but to the masses she would be simply an empire dead and gone, a closed page of old world history, the 'shadow of a great name,' and nothing more. It is because 'Israel sojourned in Egypt,'¹ and the house of Jacob among 'a people of strange language'²—it is because the life and character of the Jewish race were indelibly impressed and coloured by their long residence in that wonderful land, and their long contact with the wonderful Egyptian nation—it is because for nearly eighteen centuries the histories of Egypt and Palestine were intermixed, and the Hebrew and Egyptian races acted and reacted one upon the other, that the world at large does not regard Egyptology with indifference, or turn a deaf ear to those who seek to instruct it upon Egyptian matters. Naturally, it is at the points of contact between Egyptian and Hebrew history that the interest of the former culminates; and the historian of Egypt, when he reaches the probable period of the servitude and the Exodus, is bound to throw as much light as he possibly can on the time and circumstances of their occurrence.

We have expressed our opinion that Joseph was probably the minister of Apepi, the last Shepherd king, and that the sons of Jacob entered Egypt from Palestine under this monarch.³ Hospitably received by a

¹ Deut. xxvi. 5.² Ps. cxi. 1.³ See above, pp. 203-5.

people of the same pastoral habits with themselves, the Israelites occupied the land of Goshen, a portion of the Tanitic nome,¹ lying between the Sebennytic and Pelusiatic branches of the Nile, where they fed their own flocks, and at the time superintended the herds belonging to the Egyptian king.² If Joseph lived, as is commonly supposed, about seventy years after this event, he must have long outlived Apepi, whose entire reign is estimated at sixty-one years.³ Probably he died under Aahmes, about B.C. 1600, having of course lost his position of 'lord over the whole land,'⁴ when the Shepherd dominion fell, but having left an undying name, which long protected his kinsmen. For many years they lived peaceably and undisturbed in the region assigned them, where they 'were fruitful, and increased abundantly and multiplied, and waxed exceeding mighty,' until the land 'was filled with them.'⁵ At length a 'new king arose up over Egypt, which knew not Joseph.'⁶ The only question which can properly be raised at this period of the history is—Who was this? Was Thothmes III., or was any one of his predecessors of the eighteenth dynasty, the 'new king,' and had the oppression of the Israelites now begun, or were they still living in the quiet and retired position which they occupied from the first, 'serving' the Egyptians,⁷ but not ill-treated by them? Chronological considerations lead to the conclusion that the severe oppression had not yet begun. It was consequent on the very great multiplication of the Israelites, which rendered them formidable to Egypt, and this

¹ See Brugsch's map accompanying the second volume of the English translation of his *History*.

² Gen. xlvii. 6.

³ Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chrono*

graph p. 61. B.

⁴ Gen. xlii. 6.

⁵ Ex. i. 7.

⁶ Ibid. verse 8.

⁷ Gen. xli. 13.

multiplication required time for its development, and cannot reasonably be thought to have attained such proportions as to call for severe measures of repression in the century, or century and a quarter, which had intervened between the reign of Apopi and that of Thothmes III.¹ The 'new king' must be looked for at a date considerably later than that of this monarch, and we must regard Thothmes and all the earlier kings of this dynasty as Pharaohs under whose sway the nascent people remained quietly in Goshen, rapidly multiplying and increasing, but not to such an extent as to draw upon them, as yet, the jealous fear of their sovereign.

Among the inscriptions of Thothmes are some which seem to ascribe to him a series of victories over the nations of the south,² as well as over those of the north and the north east; but his own annals are so nearly complete, and his own constant presence with the forces engaged in Syria and Mesopotamia is so distinctly marked, that it seems impossible to view these southern victories as gained by the monarch in person.³ They were the fruit, it is probable, of campaigns carried on by his generals in the opposite quarter to that against which his own efforts were directed—campaigns which resulted in the capture of numerous prisoners and the carrying off of much booty, but which did not add any new province to the Empire.

According to one writer, the maritime successes of

¹ The generations from Apopi to Thothmes III are five, which would probably amount in Egypt to 125 years. The traditional numbers up to the accession of Thothmes II are (61 + 25 + 13 + 21 =) 120 years. The reign of Thothmes II. was short, probably not exceeding five or six years.

² *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 34 par. 22, Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i p. 303, 1st ed.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. i p. 302 1st ed.

Thothmes were almost more remarkable than those which he gained by land. 'One perceives,' says M. Lenormant,¹ 'by the inscription upon the stèle of Thebes that the fleets of the great Pharaoh, after having first conquered Cyprus and Crete, had further subjected to his sceptre the islands of the southern Archipelago, a considerable portion of the seaboard of Greece and of Asia Minor, and even perhaps the lower extremity of Italy. It appears to me that one ought to conclude from the same monument that the war vessels of Thothmes III. penetrated pretty frequently into the waters of the Black Sea, where Herodotus pretends that the Egyptians had before this founded a colony in Colchis for the working of the mines.² I am, in fact, disposed to recognise the ancestors of the Germanic Ases—the descendants of the Ashkenaz of Genesis x.—at this time dwellers on the Palus Mæotis—in one of the tribes enumerated among the northern peoples who paid tribute to the fleet of Thothmes. In another direction the same force had made the authority of Egypt to be acknowledged along the entire seaboard of Libya. Memorials of the reign of Thothmes III. have been found at Cherchell in Algeria; and it is not at all impossible that they really mark the limit whereto the power of this prince extended on the north coast of Africa.'

Now, it is certain that Thothmes was accompanied and supported by a considerable fleet in several of his

¹ *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, } territory. According to him, the
vol. i. pp. 386-7 } colony which Sesost. s. left behind

² Herodotus says nothing about him consisted of soldiers who had
the 'working of the mines,' and accompanied him on an expedition
does not even notice the existence by land against Scythia and Thracia
of mineral treasures in the Colchian (Herod. ii. 103.)

expeditions into Syria,¹ and it is not at all improbable that he extended his dominion over the island of Cyprus, which at a much less flourishing period was conquered and held by Amasis.² But the extended maritime dominion assigned to him in this passage scarcely rests on any secure or stable foundation. It is not accepted by the more sober of modern Egyptologists,³ nor can it be said to have probability in its favour. The spirit of maritime enterprise which animated the Greeks, the Phœnicians, and the Carthaginians, was at no time rife in Egypt; and Egyptian sailors would scarcely have confronted the perils of the inhospitable Euxine, or even of the open Mediterranean, without a much stronger inducement than any which the European coasts had at this time to offer them. It is said that they may have employed the services of Tyrian mariners,⁴ but there is no evidence that Tyre was at this early date (circ. B.C. 1500) a great maritime state, or indeed that the Phœnicians proper had as yet passed from the Persian Gulf to the Mediterranean.⁵ The sole foundation on which M. Lenormant's theory rests is that of the ethnic names occurring in the hymn or song of victory inscribed by Thothmes on the wall of the temple of Ammon at Thebes, but these names are of exceedingly doubtful import, and, according to Dr Brugsch, designate none but Asiatic or African nations.

¹ See above p. 233; and compare Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 335, 336, and 338, 1st ed.

² Herod. ii. 182.

³ As Birch and Brugsch, who know of no such extensive maritime dominion. Birch supposes that Thothmes exercised authority over

some of the islands of the Archipelago (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 100).

Brugsch confines his maritime sway to Cyprus and the Phœnician coast.

⁴ Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 385.

⁵ See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. iv. p. 202, 2nd ed.

The passage on which M. Lenormant rests his theory is thus translated by his German fellow labourer : ¹—

(*Ammon l'quitur*)

I came and thou smotest the princes of Zubi
I scattered them and thy feet over all their lands
I made them regard thy Holiness as the blazing sun
Thou shiest in sight of them in my form

I came, and thou smotest those that dwell in Asia
Thou too test captive the goat herds of Ruten,
I made them behold thy Holiness in thy royal adornments,
As thou graspest thy weapons in the war chariot

I came, and thou smotest the land of the East;
Thou marchedst against the dwellers in the Holy Land,
I made them to behold thy Holiness as the star Canopus,
Which sends forth its heat and dispenses the dew

I came, and thou smotest the land of the West,
Kefa and Asebi (i.e. Phoenicia and Cyprus) hold thee in fear;
I make them look upon thy Holiness as upon a young bull,
Courageous, with sharp horns, whom none can approach

I came, and thou smotest the subjects of their lords
The land of Matien trembled for fear of thee
I made them look upon thy Holiness as upon a crocodile,
Terrible in the waters, not to be encountered

I came and thou smotest them that dwell in the Great Sea,
The inhabitants of the seas were a raid of thy warriors,
I make them behold thy Holiness as the Avenger,
Who shows himself at the back of his victim

I came, and thou smotest the land of the Fahennu
The people of Uten submitted themselves to thy power,
I made them see thy Holiness as a hero, force of eye,
Who leaves his den and stalks through the valleys

I came and thou smotest the hinder (i.e. northern) lands,
The encumbrance of the Great Sea is bound in thy grasp,
I made them behold thy Holiness as the hovering hawk,
Which seizes with his glance whatever pleases him.

¹ *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 371-2, 1st ed.

I came, and thou smotest the lands in front
 These that sat upon the sand thou carriedst away captive
 I made them behold thy Holiness like the jackal of the South,
 Which passes through the lands as a hidden wanderer

I came and thou smotest the nomadic tribes of Nubia
 Even to the land of Shat which thou didst in thy grasp;
 I made them behold thy Holiness like thy people of brothers,
 Whose hands I have united to bless thee

If this be a correct version of the Egyptian original, it is clear that the maritime dominion claimed is of the vaguest kind. Some 'dwellers in the Great Sea' are said to have been smitten, which would be sufficiently answered by the reduction of Cyprus, or even by that of the island Tyre and of Aradus; others have heard and feared the conqueror's war cry, he has smitten certain 'northern' nations, which may point merely to the Ruten and the Tahar or Zahi; and 'the circuit of the Great Sea is bound in his grasp,' which would be ordinary Oriental hyperbole for obtaining the mastery over the Eastern Mediterranean. On the whole, it would seem to be most probable that the fleets of Thothmes III. traversed only the extreme eastern portion of the Levant, and that his maritime dominion did not extend further than the coasts of Egypt, Syria, Cilicia,¹ and Cyprus.

Still, it is not without reason that the latest historian of Egypt has pronounced Thothmes III. to have been the greatest of Egyptian kings.² Ambitious,

¹ The Mathen or Maten of the fifth stanza are regarded by Dr. Birch as representing Asia Minor generally (*Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 33, note ⁹, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 100). They are perhaps the Matieni of Herodotus (i. 72), who adjoined on Cappadocia and Phrygia

but their locality cannot at this time have been so far inland. Probably they held possession of the Cilician coast.

² Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 405, 1st ed. 'We will here bid farewell to the greatest king of Egyptian history

restless, brave even to rashness,¹ equally remarkable as a warrior and as a general, successful in his naval no less than in his military operations, he spread the name and fame of Egypt through distant lands, alarmed the great empires of Western Asia, conquered and held in subjection all Syria and Western Mesopotamia as far as the Khabour river, probably reduced Cyprus, chastised the Arabs, crushed rebellion in Nubia, and left to his successor a dominion extending above eleven hundred miles from north to south, and (in places) four hundred and fifty miles from west to east. At the same time he distinguished himself as a builder. Restorer or founder of a score of temples, designer of the great 'Hall of Pillars' at Thebes, by far the largest apartment that the world had as yet seen, creator of numerous gigantic obelisks, constructor and adorning of vast propylæa, author or restorer of at least five huge colossi, he has left the impress of his presence in Egypt more widely than almost any other of her kings, while at the same time he has supplied to the great capitals of the modern world their most striking Egyptian monuments. The memorial which he erected to commemorate his conquest of the land of Niharam looks down upon the place of the Atmeidan in the city of Constantinople, one of his great Theban obelisks rears itself in the midst of the Piazza in front of the Church of St John Lateran in Rome,² while the twin spires which he set up before the temple of the Sun at Heliopolis,

¹ It appears from his annals that Thothmes insisted on his soldiers taking an oath that none of them would precede him in his attacks upon the enemy or even 'step aside before the king, so as to afford him protection. (See Brugsch, *History*

of Egypt, vol. i, p. 322, 1st ed.)

² Valéry ascribes this obelisk to Thothmes II. (*Travels in Italy*, p. 537, II. 1), but it is undoubtedly the work of his successor. (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 401, 1st ed.)

after long 'adorning Alexandria, have been conveyed respectively to London and to New York, where they may check the overweening arrogance of the two proudest nations of the modern world by showing them that the art and engineering skill of ancient Egypt were in some respects unapproachable. It may be further noted that the name of Thothmes III. is found, more frequently than any other, on scarabæi and small images,¹ which were used as amulets; whence it would seem that he was regarded after his death as a sort of deity of good luck, 'a preserver against the evil influence of wicked spirits and sorcerers.'²



Bust of Thothmes III

In person Thothmes III. does not appear to have been very remarkable. His countenance was thoroughly Egyptian, but not characterised by any

¹ Buch, *Guide to Museum*, p 70

² Bangsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1 p 400

strong individuality. The long, well shaped, but somewhat delicate nose, almost in line with the forehead, gives a slightly feminine appearance to the face, which is generally represented as beardless and moderately plump. The eye, prominent, and larger than that of the ordinary Egyptian, has a pensive but resolute expression, and is suggestive of mental force. The mouth is somewhat too full for beauty, but is resolute, like the eye, and less sensual than that of most Egyptians. There is an appearance of weakness about the chin, which is short and retreats slightly, thus helping to give the entire countenance a womanish look. Altogether, the face has less of strength and determination than we should have expected, but is not wholly without indications of those qualities.

Thothmes III died after a reign of fifty-four years,¹ according to his own reckoning,² probably at about the age of sixty,³ since he seems to have been a mere infant at the death of his father, Thothmes I. He married a wife called Hatsa Merru,⁴ by whom he had at least two children, a daughter,⁵ Nefru ra, and a son, Amen-hotep, who succeeded him.

Amenhotep, the son of Thothmes III, took on his accession the throne name of Ra aa khepu, and is known in history as Amenôphus II.⁶ He was not a king of any great force of character or ability. During

¹ See the 'Inscription of Amen-hotep' in the *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 63, line 36.

² That is to say, counting his accession to have taken place at the death of his brother, and thus including in his own reign all the years of Hatsa.

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 104.

⁴ See the *Denkmäler*, vol. v. pt.

iii pl. 38 a, b, where Hatsa Merru sits behind her husband on a throne, attired as a goddess, with whip, *ankh*, and tall plumes.

⁵ Ibid pt. iii pl. 20 b, c. Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xxvi No. 351.

⁶ Amenôphus is the name given him by Manetho (ap. Syncell *Chronograph.* vol. i p. 72, A, 1.)

his short reign of some seven or eight years,¹ he achieved but little that is deserving of remembrance. As crown prince, it would seem that he had conducted a campaign against the Bedouins of the desert between the valley of the Nile and the Red Sea, in which he had obtained certain successes.² As king, his efforts were directed solely to the maintenance of the Empire acquired by his father, and the chastisement of those who rebelled against his authority. Following the usual practice of Oriental subject nations at the death of their conqueror, the tribes of Western Asia no sooner heard of Thothmes' decease than they renounced their allegiance to Egypt, and reclaimed their independence. Amenôphis in his first or second year had to undertake an expedition against the rebels, and to re-establish the authority of Egypt over the entire region which had been conquered by his father. It appears that he was everywhere successful. He rapidly overran Syria and Mesopotamia, taking the chief cities after short sieges, and even pushed his arms as far as the town of Ni, the supposed great city of Nineveh.³ At Takhira in Northern Syria he slew, he tells us, seven kings with his own battle club, after which he suspended their bodies from the prow of his own war-vessel, and in this way conveyed them to Egypt, where he hung six out of the seven outside the walls of Thebes, and the remaining one on the wall of Napata, to serve as a warning to the negroes of the south.⁴ It

¹ The seventh year of Amenôphis II is mentioned upon his monuments. (Breh, *Ancient Egypt* p. 105.) His reign is supposed to have terminated shortly after this date, but its exact duration is uncertain.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 107, 1st ed.

³ Breh, *Ancient Egypt* p. 101. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 408, 1st ed.

⁴ Brugsch, p. 410.

is remarkable that Amenôphis II. is the first king who represents himself in the act of killing several captured monarchs at one and the same time with a club or mace;¹ and the account which he gives of his proceedings raises the suspicion that the cold blooded murder was actually accomplished by his own hand. If so, we must regard him as at once cruel and barbarous—cruel, to condemn to death so large a number, when the execution of two or three would have been equally efficacious as a warning; barbarous, to take upon himself the odious office of executioner. Modern Egyptologists have for the most part glossed over, or ignored, the crimes and cruelties, the defilements and abominations, which deformed the civilisation of Egypt. It is not the wish of the present writer to give them undue prominence, but the interests of historic truth require that, when the occasion offers, they should be noticed, lest a false estimate should be formed of the degree of refinement and of moral development to which the Egyptians of Pharaonic times attained.

The countries which Amenôphis II. claims to have chastised and reduced to obedience are eleven in number; but some of them are very vaguely indicated. A recent writer thus enunciates them.²—‘The land of the south, the inhabitants of the Oases, the land of the north, the Arabians or Shasu, the Marmaridæ (Tahennu), the Nubian nomad tribes, the Asiatic husbandmen, Naharam, Phœnicia, the Cilician coast, the upper Ruten country.’ If all these had rebelled, Amenôphis must certainly have had enough to occupy him during

¹ On the frequent occurrence of which is given in the *Denkmaler*, this kind of representation see vol. v. pl. 61, above, vol. i. p. 473, note ^a. The earliest specimen is, I believe, that of Amenôphis II. at Koummeh, which is given in the *Denkmaler*, vol. i. p. 41, 1st ed.

his short reign, and deserves some credit for having re-established the authority of Egypt on all sides, after it had been so seriously menaced.

As a builder, Amenôphis II. fell very far short, not only of his predecessor, but of most Egyptian kings of this period. The hall which he added to the great temple of Ammon at Thebes is on a mean scale, and poor in the character of its ornamentation,¹ his temple at Amada in Nubia has no particular merit; nor do the additions which he made to the temple of Ptah at Koumme² strike the traveller as having much to recommend them to his notice. The best monument of his reign is his tomb at Abd el-Qurna, where he is represented seated upon his throne, with a sceptre in his right hand, and wearing the peculiar head dress which characterises the god Merula. Below him is a frieze containing the scene of eleven captured kings, while in front of him are numerous relatives and attendants, bringing offerings of various kinds, stone sphinxes, colossal statues, furniture, arms, vases, mirrors, and the like.³ His other sculptures are chiefly religious, and exhibit him as a worshipper of Har-machis, Ammon-Ra, Thoth, Kneph, Ptah, and Usur-tasen III, the great Nubian conqueror. They are altogether of a commonplace character.

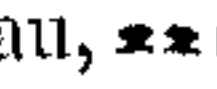
Amenôphis was the son of Hatasa-Merira, and in one place represents her as seated behind him on a throne like his own,⁴ which would seem to imply that he had associated her with him in the government. He had a son, Shaemuas or Khamus, who bore the office of chief priest of Ammon, and a grandson, Amen-hotep, or

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, in pls 66-67
vol. i p. 412, 1st ed.

² See the *Denkmaler*, vol. v pt. 1.

³ Ibid. pls 63 and 64.

⁴ Ibid. pl. 62 b.

Amenôphis, with the surname of Hapu.¹ The son, however, who succeeded him on the throne, bore his grandfather's name of Thothmes, to which he added those of Men khepru ra, , and Sha shau, , on his accession. It would seem that Thothmes was not the eldest son, or expectant heir of his predecessor, since he ascribes his accession to the special favour of Harmachis, and relates how that deity appeared to him as he slept, and raised his thoughts to the hope of sovereignty.² Naturally, when he became king, it was to the worship of Harmachis that he specially devoted himself; and identifying that god in some peculiar way with the Great Sphinx of the Pyramids,³ he set himself to clear away the vast mass of loose sand which had accumulated round the monument, and to exhibit to his contemporaries the entire figure in all its marvellous grandeur and beauty. At the same time he set up between the fore paws of the Sphinx a massive memorial tablet, twelve feet high and nearly eight feet broad, on which he recorded the circumstances of his dream, his resolve to undertake the work of removing the immense accumulation of sand, and no doubt the happy accomplishment of his enterprise.⁴ In front of his memorial tablet, and also within the paws of the monstrous animal, Thothmes constructed a small temple for the worship of the god with whom he identified it, which was recently uncovered by Dr. Lepsius, but is now again engulfed by the ever encroaching sands of the desert.⁵

As a warrior, Thothmes IV. achieved little that

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1, p. 412, 1st ed.

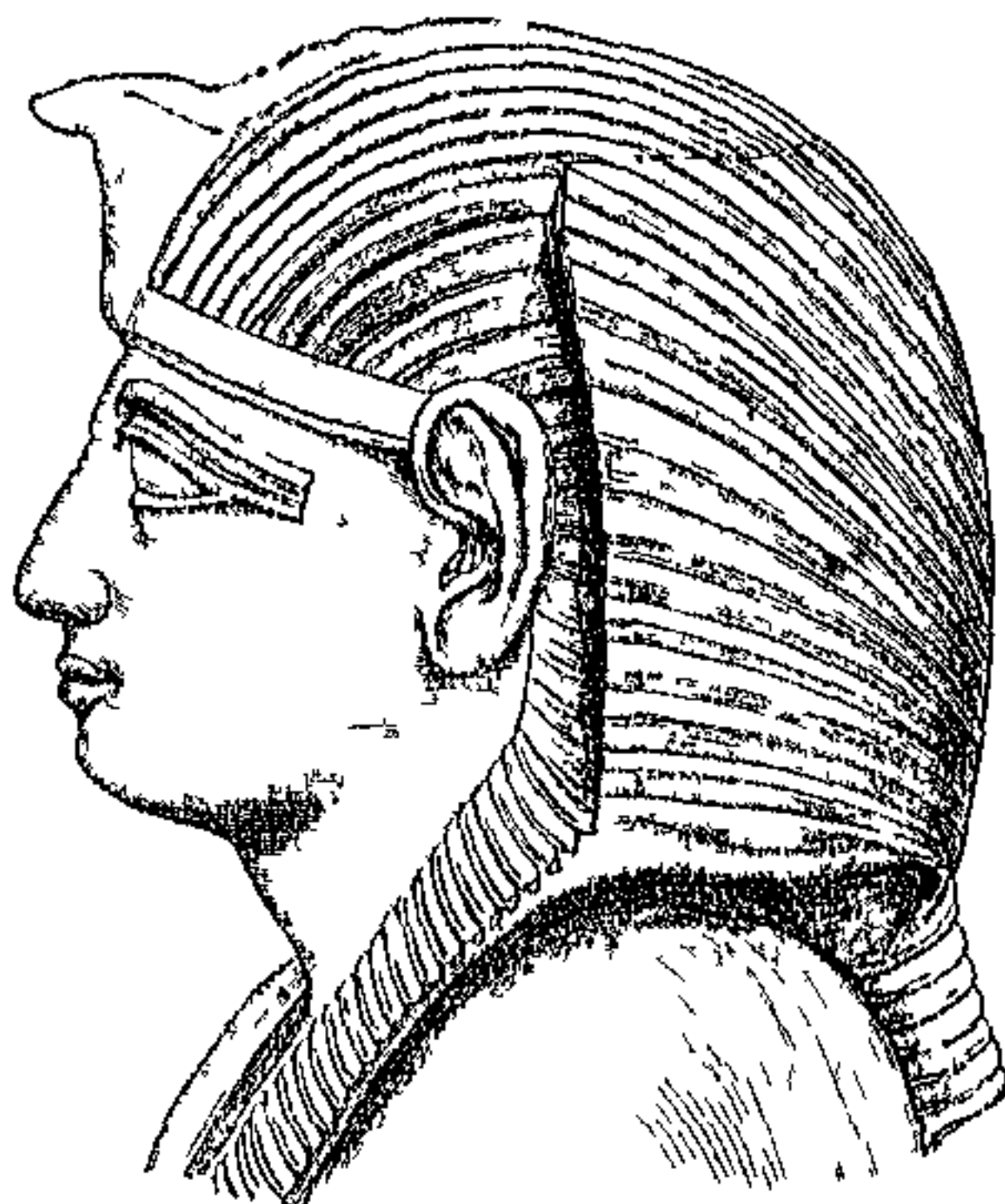
² Ibid. p. 413.

³ On this identification see above, p. 56, note ⁴.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1, pp. 415-17, 1st ed., *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 68.

⁵ Brugsch, p. 418.

was remarkable. One expedition against the Hittites of Syr'a,¹ and another against the Cushites or people of Ethiopia,² are all that can be assigned to him. The former he commemorated in the great temple of Ammon at Thebes, the latter in the Nubian temple of Amada. The captain, Amenhotep, seems to have accompanied him on both these occasions, and to have exaggerated his master's successes into a general subjection of both the South and the North.³ Thothmes, however, in a memorial tablet at Qurnah, represents himself as smiting two enemies only.⁴



Head of Thothmes IV.

In his youth, Thothmes was addicted to field sports and manly exercises. He hunted the lion in the desert region to the west of the pyramids of Ghizeh, and practised spear throwing for his pleasure with

¹ Brugsch, p. 413.

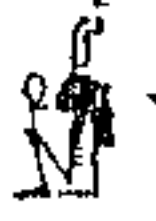
² Ibid. p. 411.

³ See the inscription of Amen-

hotep on a tablet now in the British Museum.

⁴ *Denkmaler*, pt. iii. pl. 60 a

bronze weapons, which he hurled at a target. So swift were the horses which he was accustomed to drive in his chariot, that, according to his own statement, they outstripped the wind, and when he overtook persons as he was driving, he passed them so rapidly that they could not recognise him.¹

Like his father, Thothmes IV died when he was still quite a young man, having reigned not more than about eight or nine years.² He was succeeded by a son, Amenhotep or Amenôphis, who took the throne name of Ma-neb-ra,³ , and is known as



Head of Queen Merneith

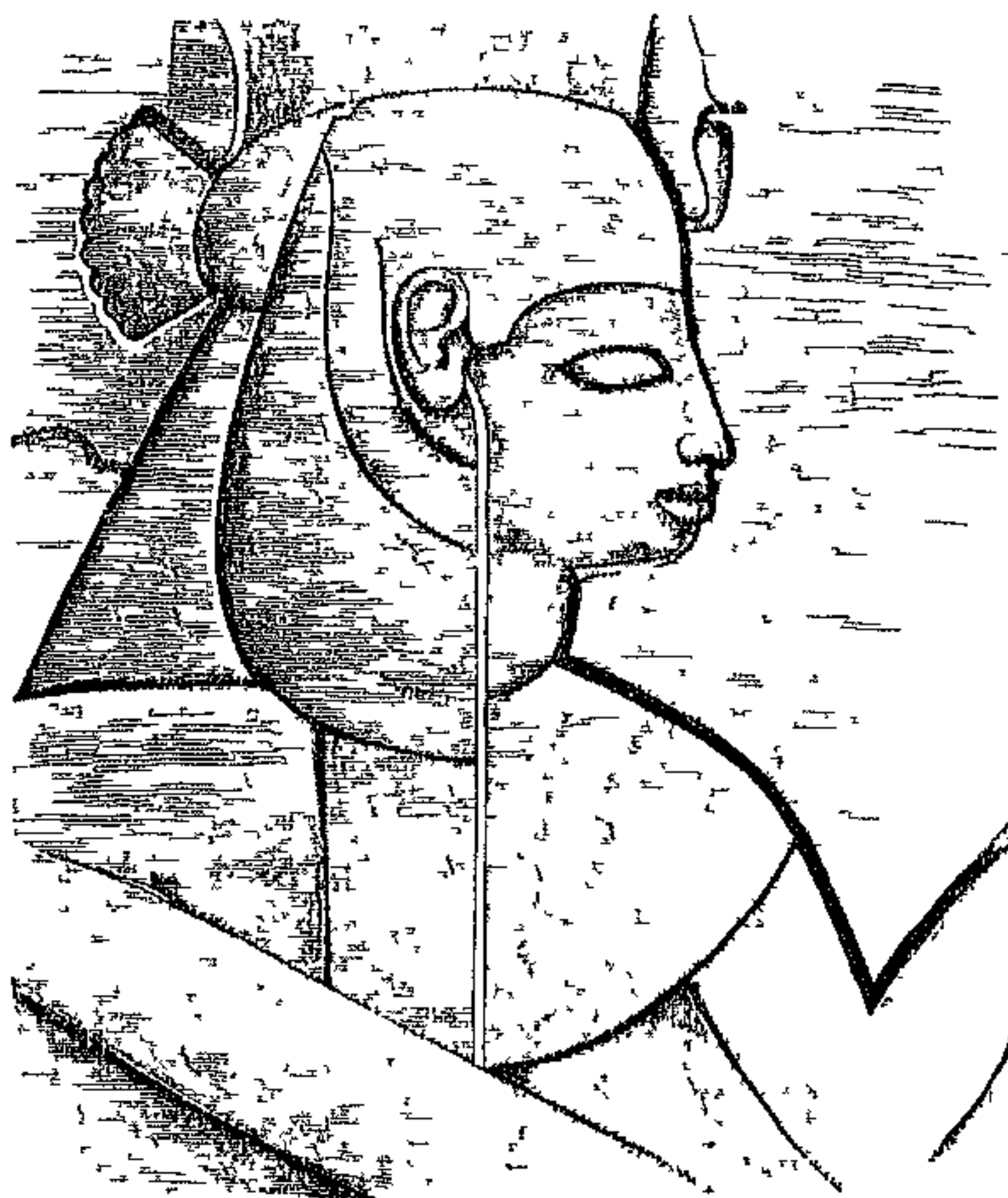
¹ Briggsel, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 415 1st ed.

² The seventh year of Thothmes IV is recorded on a tablet in the island of Konosso (Bach, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 105). No later year appears on the monuments. Ma-

netho, however, seems to have given him nine years (cp. Syncell *Chronograph* vol. i p. 72, A, D).

³ Briggsel, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 49, 1st ed., *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls. 70 bis, and 74 c.

Amenôphis III Born, as it would seem, of an Ethiopian mother, Mut em ua,¹ Amenôphis had a somewhat foreign physiognomy, and it was probably owing to his foreign connection that he favoured changes in the State religion which were looked upon as revolutionary. He married a wife named Ti or Tai,² who was certainly a foreigner,³ though of what nation is doubtful.



DISCOID OF QUEEN TI OR TAI

Her father's name was Juah her mother's 'Taa', possibly Arabian, possibly Ethiopian appellatives. Tenderly

¹ Wilkinson in the author's *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 350, 3rd ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 107.

² *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl. 72: Birch, 1st ed. Bunsen, *History of Egypt*,

vol. i p. 110, 1st ed., &c.

³ She is represented in the monuments with a pale pinkish skin, such as is never given to Egyptians.

attached to her and dominated by her influence, he leant towards that exclusive and peculiar Sun-worship which was established by his successor, and, though not the direct introducer of the change, must be viewed as having paved the way to it by accustoming the Egyptians to the idea¹. The religious history of the ancient Eastern world is a subject at once too wide and too obscure to be discussed in this place episodically; but it cannot be questioned that from a very ancient date there existed in Arabia and elsewhere a special devotion to the brilliant orb of day, which from time to time aspired to become a distinct and separate religion. In the nature worship of the Old Egyptian Empire the Sun had held no very important place. Ptah, Khem, and Kneph had been the principal deities, while Ra had occupied a quite subordinate position. With the rise of Thebes to power, a change had occurred. Ammon, early identified with Ra, and known commonly as Ammon Ra, had been recognised as the head of the Pantheon; Mentu, Shu, Tmn, Harmachis, solar gods, had risen in rank and position; the solar element in the Egyptian religion had, as it were, asserted itself and come to the front. Now a further development became manifest. The theory was broached that the lord of light, the actual material sun, was the sole proper object of worship, and that the polytheism hitherto maintained as the State religion was false, wrongful, blasphemous. All adoration was claimed for one god alone out of the fifty or sixty who had

¹ Amenophis III instituted a new festival in honour of the Solar Disk, on the sixteenth of the month Athyr (October 4) and assigned a prominent part in the procession to the Boat of the Solar Disk (*Aten-refu*)

It also placed solar disks on the heads of his chief sphinxes, and similarly adorned the statues of Ptah or Sekhet. (See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1. p. 427, 1st ed.)

hitherto divided among them the religious regards of the people. Under Amenhotep III, indeed, the doctrine still remained veiled; but its leavening influence began to be felt from this time; and the reign of Amenhotep III. is chiefly remarkable as conducing towards the religious revolution which so shortly followed.

But the reign is not remarkable for this only. From a military point of view, it is indeed uninteresting and of slight moment.¹ Amenôphus did not extend the power of Egypt either in the north or in the south. There are indications that he maintained in the north the dominion which had descended to him from Thothmes III.,² and abundant proof that he engaged personally in military operations in the south,³ but we cannot ascribe to him any extension of the Egyptian territory even in this quarter. He was content, as it would seem, to conduct razzas on a large scale against the unhappy negro tribes,⁴ and to carry off into captivity some hundreds of their members, the great majority consisting of women and children.⁵ He may possibly have obtained the submission of some tribes which were not previously subject, and it is not unlikely

¹ I cannot agree with Dr. Brugsch in placing Amenôphus III. 'on a level with the great Thothmes' (*Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 419) or with M. Lenoirant, that 'the epoch of great wars accords with him' (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 389). There is no evidence that he engaged in any military expeditions excepting towards the south; and though his negro slave-hunts were certainly not 'great wars'.

² See his inscription in the temple of Soleb in Nubia, quoted by Birch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 108), and remark the occurrence of his name on the remains found at Aiban in Cen-

tral Mesopotamia (Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 281).

³ *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 82 a 87 d, and 88; Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 420-3, 1st ed., Birch, 1 s. c.

⁴ 'Il faut avouer, says M. Lenoirant, 'que les expéditions de ses troupes n'étaient pas toujours fort chevaleresques et semblent avoir eu souvent pour but (surtout celles qu'on faisait dans le Soudan) la chasse aux esclaves' (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, 1 s. c.).

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 421, 1st ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 108.

that he once or twice defeated the Ethiopians, but it is absurd to speak of him as a conquering monarch, or to put him 'on a level with the great Thothmes' in respect of military matters.

As a builder, on the contrary, Amenôphis III. is entitled to very considerable credit, and may claim a place among the most distinguished of Egyptian monarchs.¹ Tablets existing in the quarries of Touna near Memphis show that he began to excavate stone for the repairs of temples as early as his first and second year,² and the scale and number of his works are such as to indicate unremitting attention to sculpture and building during the whole term of his long reign of thirty six years. Amenôphis erected the great temple of Ammon at Luxor, one of the most magnificent in all Egypt,³ embellished that of Karnak with a new pylon, built two new temples on the same site to Ammon and Mut, and 'united the whole quarter of the temples at Karnak with the new temple of Ammon at Luxor by an avenue of trio sphinxes with the sun's disk on their heads'⁴ He also built two temples to Kneph or Khnum at Elephantine, one to contain his own image at Soleb in Nubia, a shrine with a pylon and ram sphinxes before it at Gebel Barkal or Napata,⁵ and another shrine at Sedinga.⁶ Inscribed tablets dated in his reign are found at Semneh, in the island of Konosso, on the rocks between Philæ and Assouan, at El Kaab, at Silsilis, and at Sarabit el

¹ M. Lenoir (lsc) observes with truth: Amenhotep III., d'un règne long et glorieux, fut un prince essentiellement bâtisseur.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. I, p. 427, 1st ed.

³ See the description in Pergus-

son, *History of Architecture*, vol. I, pp. 108-9, 1st ed.

Brugsch, lsc. Compare the *Denkmäler* pt. III, pl. 90 a, b, c.

⁴ Brugsch, p. 437.

⁵ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. II, p. 360, 3rd ed.

Knaftm in the Smaitic peninsula¹ Of all his edifices, that which approved itself the most highly in his own eyes was the temple, or rather perhaps the temple palace, of Luxor. 'I built on the rocky soil,' he says, 'a court of alabaster, of rose granite, and of black stone. Also a double tower gateway did I execute, because I had undertaken to dedicate the most beautiful thing possible to my divine father (i.e. Ammon). Statues of the gods are to be seen in it everywhere. They are carved in all their parts. A great statue was made of gold and all kinds of beautiful precious stones. I gave directions to execute, O Ammon, what pleased thee well, to unite thee with thy beautiful dwelling.'²

It was in connection with another of his temples, one built upon the opposite bank of the Nile, that Amenôphis caused to be constructed the most remarkable of all his works—the two gigantic statues which are still to be seen before the ruins of his temple, on the *dromos*, or paved way, by which it was approached. These sitting figures, which represent the king himself, were carved, each of them, out of a single block of solid reddish sandstone⁴. Their present height above the pavement on which they stand is nearly sixty-one feet;⁵ and the original height, including the tall crown worn by Egyptian kings, is supposed to have been nearly seventy feet⁶. No other Egyptian colossi are known to have much exceeded fifty feet. A peculiar fame

¹ See the *Dent-male*, pt. iii. pls. 81 *q*, h, 82 *a*, 80, &c. and compare Wilkinson, lsc.; Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 100–9; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 420, 421, &c.

² Brugsch vol. i. p. 420.

³ Wilkinson, lsc.

⁴ Brugsch, p. 430.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 426, note. In the *Quarterly Review* for April 1875 (No. 276) the height is given as not more than fifty-four feet.

⁶ Brugsch lsc. The 'forty cubits' of Amenhotep's inscription (reckoning the Egyptian cubit at 1 ft. 8½ in.) would give a height of 68 ft. 4 in.

has attached to one of these statues, owing to the accident that during the space of about 220 years it emitted a musical sound soon after daybreak, and thus attracted to itself an inordinate share of the attention of travellers. A magical power was thought to be inherent in the 'vocal Memnon' as the statue was called and for above two centuries travellers flocked to it, inscribed their names upon it, and added sensible or silly remarks.¹ Eminent writers also took notice of the phenomenon, and spoke of it as one of the prodigies which made Egypt a land of wonders.² Moderns believe the sound to have been the result of the sun's rays, either upon the stone itself, or upon the air contained in its crevices.³ Musical sounds produced by change of temperature are frequently given forth both by natural rocks and by quarried masses of certain kinds of stone; and their occurrence has been placed on record by eminently scientific persons.⁴ There is no sufficient reason to doubt that the tone, 'like the breaking of a harp-string,'⁵ discharged by the colossus of Amenôphis, was a casual instance of this natural phenomenon, neither contrived nor even understood by the Egyptian priests. It is thought to have been first given forth after the shattering of the statue by an earthquake (B.C. 27), and to have ceased upon the repair of the image by Septimius Severus, circ. A.D. 196.

The impressive appearance of the twin colossi has

¹ See the work of Letronne, *La Statue Vocale de Memnon, considérée dans ses rapports avec l'Égypte et la Grèce*; and compare *Quarterly Review*, No. 276, pp. 533-5.

² Strab. vii. 1, § 48. Pausan. i. 42. Tacit. Ann. ii. 61. Plin. *II. N.* xxxvi. 7, § 11, Juv. *Sat.* xv. 5. Lucian. *Torai* 27, &c.

³ Sir David Brewster is said to

have first given this explanation in the *Quarterly Review* for Jan. 1831 (No. 88). It has been adopted by M. Letronne, Dr. Brugsch, M. Lenormant, and others.

⁴ As by Humboldt, Jomard, De Rosière, &c.

⁵ Pausan. i. 1 s. c. τὸ ἦχον μάλιστα εἰλάσει τις κιθάρας ἢ λύρας ῥαγείῃς χορδῇς.

been frequently noticed by travellers. 'There they sat,' says Miss Martineau, 'together, yet apart, in the midst of the plain, serene and vigilant, still keeping their untired watch over the lapse of ages and the eclipse of Egypt. I can never believe that anything else so majestic as this pair has been conceived of by the imagination of Art. Nothing, certainly, even in Nature, ever affected me so unspeakably; no thunder-storm in my childhood, nor any aspect of Niagara, or the Great Lakes of America, or the Alps, or the Desert, in my later years' And again: 'The pair sitting alone amid the expanse of verdure, with islands of ruin behind them, grow more striking to us every day. To day, for the first time, we looked up to them from their base. The impression of sublime tranquillity which they convey, when seen from distant points, is confirmed by a nearer approach. There they sit, keeping watch hands on knees, gazing straight forward; seeming, though so much of the faces is gone, to be looking over to the monumental piles on the other side of the river, which became gorgeous temples after these throne seats were placed here—the most immovable thrones that have ever been established on this earth!'¹

The sculptor of these wonderful colossi bore the same name as his royal master, and prided himself on their execution, conveyance, and safe emplacement as the greatest achievements of his genius. 'I immortalised the name of the king,' he says, 'and no one has done the like of me in my works. I executed two portrait statues of the king, astonishing for their breadth and height—their completed form dwarfed

¹ *Eastern Life*, vol. i. pp. 81 and 280.

the Temple tower forty cubits was their measure they were cut in the splendid sandstone mountain, on either side, the eastern and the western I caused to be built eight ships, whereon the statues were carried up the river, they were emplaced in their sublime building; they will last as long as heaven A joyful event was it when they were landed at Thebes and raised up in their place.¹

In brief, the works of Amenhotep III, architectural and sculptured, are among the most striking left by any of the kings, being equally remarkable for their number, for their vast size, and for the delicacy and finish of their execution.² A liberal patron of all kinds of ability, he evoked the genius which he required, and covered Egypt and Nubia with master pieces of art, in the grand and solid style for which the land of Mizraim is celebrated.

Amenhotep was also distinguished as a lover of field sports. During the first ten years of his reign such was his ardour in the pursuit of the noblest kind of game, that he is able to boast of having slain with his own hand either 110 or, according to another authority, 210 fierce lions.³ Later on, he presented to the priests who had the charge of the great temple at Karnak a number of live lions,⁴ which he had probably caught in traps. These ferocious beasts seem occasionally to have been tamed by the Egyptians; and it is possible that they were employed to add grandeur and dignity to some of the religious processions. The lion was an emblem both of Horus and

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i pp 425-6, 1st ed. | p 107), Brugsch, 210 (*History of Egypt*, vol i p 420, 1st ed.)
² Ibid p 430
³ Brugsch says 110 (*Ancient Egypt*, vol i p 437, 1st ed.)
⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 437, 1st ed.

of Tum; ¹ his fitness to symbolise royalty caused the employment of his image to ornament the most elaborate of the Egyptian thrones; ² and, if we may trust the sculptures, a tame lion sometimes accompanied the king to the battle field ³ Africa has always been a special nursery of lions; ⁴ and Amenhotep, like his father, Thothmes IV, ⁵ may have indulged his passion for chasing them without going beyond his own borders; or, like some of the great Assyrian kings, he may have made Mesopotamia his hunting ground, and have carried off his sporting honours in the field which at a later date supplied the noble game to Tiglath-pileser ⁶ and Sardanapalus ⁶

In personal character Amenôphis was remarkable for kindness, generosity, and submission to female influence. In the early part of his reign he was governed by his mother, Mutemua; in his middle and later life he deferred greatly to his wife Ti or Tia. The honours assigned to Ti in his sculptures ⁷ are unusual, and imply something like divided sovereignty. Amenhotep, son of Hapu, ⁸ and other functionaries, especially the vizier Khumhat, ⁹ were treated with much kindness and consideration by their generous sovereign, and received rewards at his hands for which they were duly thankful. Rewards were also lavishly showered on the priests and other subordinate func-

¹ See above, vol i. p. 412

² See the *Denkmäler*, p. m pls 2 b, c, 76 b, 77 c, 100 b, &c

³ See above, vol i. p. 454

⁴ Herod. iv. 101. Leo Africanus p. 201. It is true that lions were at no time very abundant in Egypt, but they were to be found in the districts on the Egyptian borders, and were perhaps more numerous than is generally imagined.

⁵ See above, p. 251

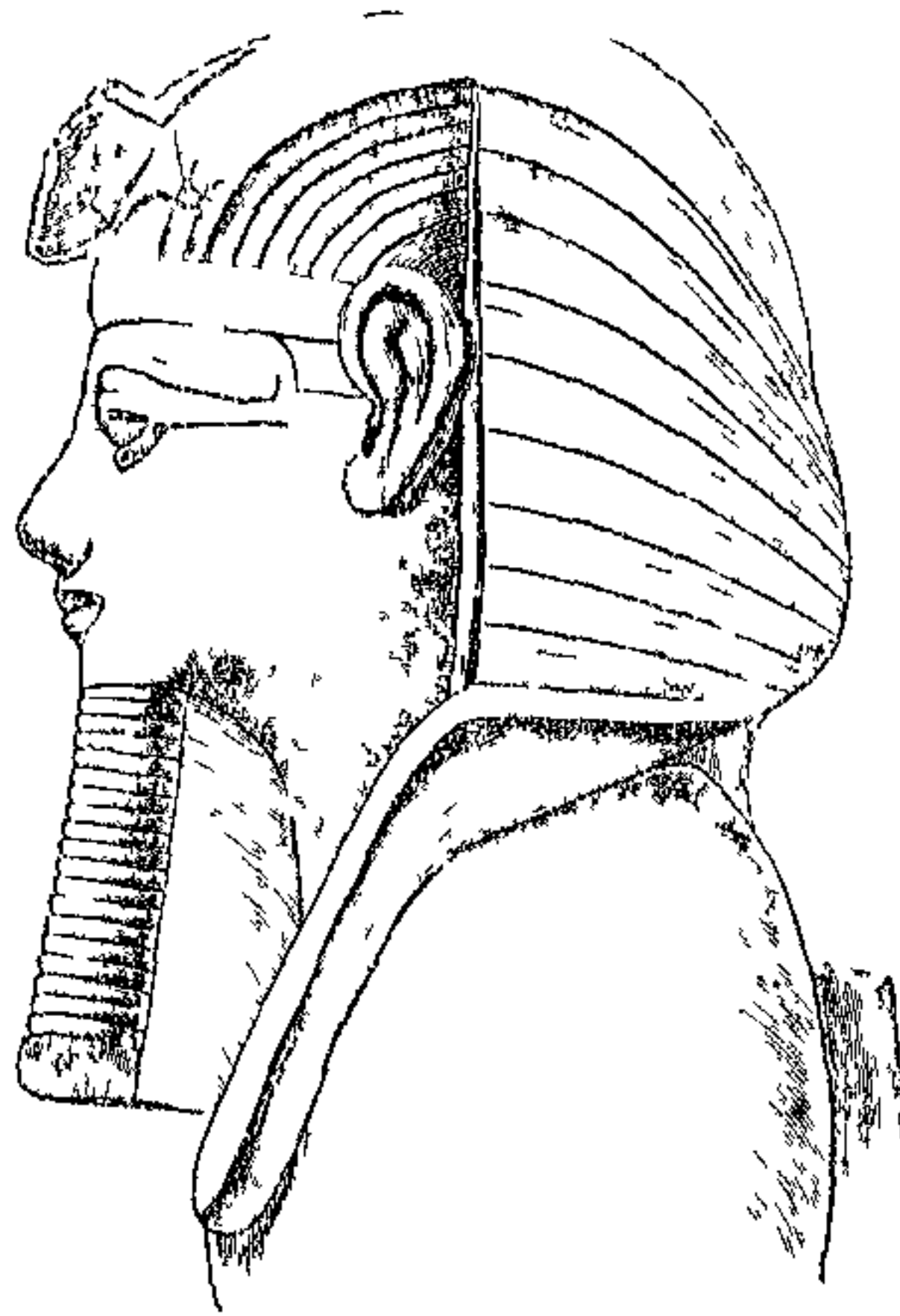
⁶ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii pp. 318-404. *Transactions of Society of Biblical Archaeology* vol. v. pp. 321-5.

⁷ See the *Denkmäler* pt. iii. pls 72, 74 a, 84 b, 85 b, and 86 a

⁸ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 432-5, 1st ed.

⁹ *Ibid.* p. 437

tionaries, who do not appear to have in any way exceeded their ordinary routine of duty. The mere payment of taxes was accepted as a token of loyalty and good will, and earned the honourable decoration of a collar or a necklace¹. At the same time justice was carefully administered, even petty thefts did not escape inquiry and detection;² and conviction was followed by adequate punishment.



Head of Amenophis III

Amenophis is represented with a face that is somewhat prognathous,³ that is, one which has the jaws

¹ Briggsel, p. 438

² Ibid. p. 439

³ Wilkinson remarks strongly on the foreign cast of his countenance (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. II

p. 350, 3rd ed.) The statues in the British Museum (especially No. 6) show the prognathous character of the face better than the above illustration.

advanced beyond the line of the forehead. He has a long nose, much rounded at the end, a short upper lip, and a projecting and somewhat pointed chin. The expression of his face is pensive but determined. He is sometimes beardless, but more often wears the usual long beard, not covering the chin, but dependent from it, and descending to the middle of the bosom.

The reign of Amenôphis lasted at least thirty-six years¹. He appears by the monuments to have had four sons, whom he represents as engaged in religious worship on more than one occasion.² He had also at least three daughters, called respectively Isis, Montmihib, and Salamon.³ His wife, Tu, survived him,⁴ and he left the crown to his eldest son, Amenhotep, or Amenôphis IV., under her direction and superintendence.

Amenhotep IV. had a physiognomy entirely different from that of any other Egyptian monarch, and indeed one altogether abnormal and extraordinary. His general appearance is rather that of a woman than of a man,⁵ he has a slanting forehead, a long aquiline nose, a flexile projecting mouth, and a strongly developed chin. His neck, which is most unusually long and thin, seems scarcely equal to the support of his head, and his spindle shanks appear ill adapted to sustain the weight of his overcorpulent body. He is supposed to have derived this strange physique from his maternal ancestors, who are thought to have been Abyssinians of the Galla family.⁶ The throne names

¹ The thirty-sixth year of Amenôphis III appears in a tablet at the Siab el-Khadim (Bach, *Ancient Egypt* p 100).

(*Denkmalen*, pt iii pls 100 c, 101, 102)

² *Denkmalen*, pt iii pl 75a and b
³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol 1 p 440 1st ed

⁴ See the woodcut overleaf, and compare the *Denkmalen*, pt iii pls. 91-110. Brugsch speaks of the 'soft womanish traits of his countenance' (*History of Egypt*, vol 1 p 442, 1st ed.)

⁵ Tu appears on the monuments of Amenôphis IV as still living

⁶ Brugsch, l s c

which he assumed upon his accession were Neferkhepr ra, and Ua en ra, but it was not long ere he discarded these appellations, which were of the usual Egyptian type, and substituted for them the strange and wholly unheard of designation of Khu en aton, 'Light of the Solar Disk,' which thenceforward he employed in his inscriptions almost exclusively. Among



Head of Amenhotep IV (Akhenaten)

his favourite epithets were Mi-Aten and Mi Harmakhu, 'friend of the solar disk,' and 'friend of Ho' or Hu machis,' whom he identified with the solar deity. He was the first king to enclose epithets of this class within his cartouche,¹ and in this way to elongate and amplify

¹ Brugsch, l. c. For illustrations, see the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls 9, 99, 100, &c.

his royal title. He was also the first openly to bring forward the disk worship as the sum and substance of the State religion, and not only to devote himself to it with all the enthusiasm of a thoroughly Oriental nature, but to press it upon his subjects, as the proper substitute of all their ancient worships. Considering the gross character of much of the Egyptian religion, we feel strongly inclined to the belief that Amenhotep's change was one in the right direction; that it would at once have simplified and have purified the old nature cult, had it prevailed; would have swept away much superstition, many pollutions; and would have replaced them by a belief and worship, comparatively speaking, pure and spiritual.¹ It would have been something to have substituted a form of monotheism for the multitudinous polytheism of the old creed; it would have been more to get rid of the debasing animal worship and the coarse Khem worship so generally prevalent. If a people is too gross to rise to the spiritual conception of an immaterial deity, and *must* attach the idea of God to something of whose existence it has sensible evidence, there would seem to be in the sun an affinity and symbolic aptness which render it fitter to represent the Deity than aught else which is material.² In the Egyptian disk worship, if we may judge by the small existing remains of it, there was a high tone of devotional feeling, and a conception of the Supreme Being not wholly unworthy of Him. 'Beautiful is thy setting, O disk of life,' says one

¹ M. Lenormant even ventures to suggest that the form of religion established by Amenhotep IV stood in a close relation to that professed at the time by the Israelite portion of his subjects, which had been, he thinks, materialised during their

sojourn in Egypt. (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1, p. 313.)

² Hence in the imagery of Scripture our Lord is called 'the sun of righteousness' (Mat. iv. 2), and His Church represented as 'a woman clothed with the sun' (Rev. xii. 1).

votary ;¹ 'beautiful is thy setting, thou lord of lords and king of the worlds. When thou unitest thyself at thy setting with the heavenly sphere, mortals rejoice before thy countenance, and give honour to him who has created them, and pray before him who has formed them, before the glance of thy son, who loves thee, the king Khu en aten. The whole land of Egypt and all the nations repeat all thy names at thy rising, to magnify thy rising, in like manner as they magnify thy setting. Thou, O God, who in truth art the living one, standest before the two eyes. 'Thou art He who createst that which previously was not, who formest everything, who art in everything. We also have come into being through the word of thy mouth.' 'Thou disk of the sun, thou living god,' says another,² 'there is none other beside thee! 'Thou givest health to the eyes through thy beams, creator of all beings. Thou goest up on the eastern horizon of the heaven, to dispense life to all which thou hast created—man, four footed beasts, birds, and creeping things of the earth—where they live. All these behold thee, and they go to sleep when thou settest.'

The religious revolution on which Amenôphis was bent, aroused, as a matter of course, the strongest hostility on the part of the priests; and the priests had it in their power to excite feelings of disaffection on the part of the people. Dr Brugsch is of opinion that when Amenôphis, not content with the introduction of the disk worship and its establishment as the religion of the court, proceeded to conduct a crusade against the old religion, and, as a first step, gave command for the obliteration of the names of Ammon and his wife,

¹ See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 146, 1st ed.

² *Ibid.* p. 450.

Maut, from the monuments, 'open rebellion broke out,'¹ and the city of Ammon ceased to be a safe residence for the heretic monarch. Accordingly he deserted it, and proceeded to build for himself a new capital on a new site. Equally averse to both Thebes and Memphis, he fixed on a situation midway between the two, and in a broad plain on the right bank of the Nile, at the site of the modern Tel el Amarna, he rapidly brought into existence a wholly new city, which he called Khu aten, and adorned with numerous monuments of considerable architectural pretensions² The quarries of Syené were laid under contribution, and large quantities of granite were cut in the 'Red Mountain' of that neighbourhood for the construction of the new metropolis³ A stately temple was erected on an entirely new plan in the vicinity of the royal palace; several extensive courts were built, in which fire altars were set up, a new style of ornamentation, free in a great measure from the old conventional restraints,⁴ was introduced, and the city of Khu aten rapidly attained to considerable size and beauty.

It would seem that the bold step taken by the innovating Pharaoh was thoroughly and completely successful. After his removal to Tel el Amarna he had no further difficulties with his subjects. He reigned for at least twelve years in unbroken peace and tranquillity, employed in beautifying the city whereof he was the founder, in setting up tablets to commemorate his own merits, together with those of his wife and daughters, and in bestowing honours and gifts on the

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 442, 1st ed.

² See the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls 91-111.

³ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 444, 1st ed.

⁴ Brugsch *Ancient Egypt*, p. 110.

frequenters of his court and the inhabitants of his capital.¹ In his domestic life he was especially and exceptionally happy. Deeply devoted to his mother, Ti, he received her gladly into his new city, made her a permanent resident at his court, and treated her with marked respect and honour.² To his wife, Queen Nefert Ti, he was most tenderly attached, and for the numerous daughters whom she bore him his affection was almost as great. 'Sweet love fills my heart,' he says in one inscription,³ 'for the queen, and for her young children. Grant a long life of many years to the Queen, Nefert Ti; may she keep the hand of Pharaoh! Grant a long life to the royal daughter, Meri Aten, and to the royal daughter, Mak Aten, and to their children! May they keep the hand of the queen, their mother, eternally and for ever! What I swear is a true avowal of what my heart says to me. Never is there falsehood in what I say.' Altogether Nefert Ti bore him seven children,⁴ who were all daughters, and who bore a strong resemblance to their father.⁵ These young princesses accompanied him when he travelled, each riding in her own two-horsed chariot.⁶

A few military expeditions of no great importance belong to the reign of Amenhotep Khuenaten; but they do not seem to have been conducted by the monarch in person.⁷ The Syrians of the North and

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii, pl. 103.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, pp. 450-1, 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* p. 452.

⁴ Brugsch calls them 'a group of seven princesses' (p. 413) and gives their names as Meri Aten, Mak Aten, Aikh-n-s-Aten, Nofu-Aten, Ta-sher-i, Nofu-na, Set-p-e-i-i, and Bek Aten. (Compare Lep-

sius *Königsbuch* 'Iaf. xxix.) In one of the tombs at Tel el Amarna all the seven are represented (*Denkmäler*, pt. iii, pl. 103 b).

⁵ See the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii, pls. 99 b and 100.

⁶ *Ibid.* pl. 93.

⁷ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 455.

the negro races of the South are represented as led before him by the general, Hor em-heb,¹ who may perhaps be presumed to have gained the victories in which they were made prisoners. The triumph celebrated by Khuenaten on account of these successes is dated in his twelfth year,² which is the latest known year of his reign.

Khuenaten's want of male offspring caused some difficulties in respect of the succession to arise at his decease. His daughters' husbands seem to have become rival candidates for the Egyptian throne, and to have reigned in rapid succession one after another. The order of the names is disputed,³ and it is perhaps enough to say that three monarchs, Sa'a nekht, Ai, and Tutankhamen, all of them more or less closely connected with Khuenaten,⁴ intervened between that king and Hor em heb, the last Pharaoh of the eighteenth dynasty. Ai and Tutankhamen have each left memorials, by which it appears that the former held the throne for at least four years,⁵ and carried on successful wars with the Asiatics,⁶ while the latter received embassies both from Ethiopia and Syria with rich and costly presents, both in the shape of rare products and articles of an artistic character.⁷ The Syrians brought gold, lapis lazuli, turquoises, and other precious stones, together with horses, chariots, and vases of silver, while

¹ Brugsch, l. c.

² Ibid.

³ Brugsch gives the three next successors of Amenôphis IV. in the order of Sa'a nekht, Tut-ankh-amen, Ai, Buch in that of Sa'aneht, Ai, Tutankhamen.

⁴ Sa'aneht was married to Mer-aten or Meri-aten, one of Khuenaten's daughters; Tutankhamen had for wife Ankh nes-amen, another of

them. Ai was the husband of Tn, the nurse of Khuenaten (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i pp. 456, 460, 1st ed.)

⁵ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 111. Compare the *Denkmaler*, pt. iii pl. 110.

⁶ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 462, 1st ed.

⁷ Ibid. pp. 457-9, *Denkmaler*, pt. iii, pls. 115-18.

from Ethiopia came gold chasings, golden vessels set with jewels, chariots, ships, weapons, and oxen whose horns were tipped with ornamental carvings. Egypt, it would seem, maintained her foreign dominion unimpaired in the south, and in the north was still recognised as mistress of Syria. We may suspect, however, that she had been forced to relinquish her Mesopotamian possessions, since we have no evidence of tribute coming in from Naharin subsequently to the reign of Amenôphis III,¹ and no trace of an Egyptian occupation of the tract east of the Euphrates at any later date.²

There is some difficulty in understanding the exact position which the three immediate successors of Khuenaten took up with respect to his religious reformation. On the one hand, it is clear that a full share of the odium which attached to the disk worship was inherited by them, since 'the averging chisel' has mutilated their names and features almost as determinedly as those of Khuenaten himself; on the other, it appears that two at least out of the three monarchs departed from his religious principles, so far at any rate as to restore the Ammon worship, and to combine it with the cult which their own inclinations may be supposed to have favoured. Tutankhamen even consented to parade his reactionary leanings by exhibiting in his name an attachment to the Ammon worship; and Akhenaten 'sacrificed to Ammon and his associated gods according to the old traditional custom.'³ Both of these

¹ M. Lenoirant says that Tutankhamen 'received an embassy from the Assyrians' (*Manuel d'histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 391); but the embassy alluded to came from the Rutan, a people of Syria.

² The Egyptian objects found by

Sen II. Layard at Arban in no case dated later than the reign of Amenôphis III.

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 111.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 461, *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 111 g.

kings, moreover, reigned at Thebes, which was restored to the honour of being the state capital, the metropolitan city of Khuenaten falling back into obscurity. On the whole, there are perhaps grounds for supposing that the successors of Amenôphis IV., finding that his reforms were odious to the priests, if not even to the great mass of the Egyptians, made an attempt at conciliating their opponents by a species of compromise. They tolerated—nay, to a certain extent patronised—the old system, but their sympathies were with the new; outwardly they returned to the ancient paths, but in their hearts they preferred the ‘way’ introduced by Khuenaten. As commonly happens when persons ‘halt between two opinions,’ they failed to please either side; and Egypt, after a brief period of religious hesitancy, shook off their influence and returned with unabated zeal to its previous form of nature worship.

The eighteenth dynasty terminated with Hor-em-heb-Menenammon, , who is identified with the Horus of Manetho,¹ and appears to have been a prince of vigour and ability. Though married to a sister-in-law of the heretic monarch,² Khuenaten or Amenôphis IV., he proved himself a staunch adherent of the ancient religion. No sooner had he mounted the throne than he set to work with a strong determination to complete the religious restoration begun under his immediate predecessors: he destroyed the edifices of such of them as he deemed tainted with

¹ Buch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 112, Lenoirant *Manuel*, l. c., Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 478, 1st ed.

² So Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 403. M. Lenoirant believes that he was Khuenaten's

youngest brother (*Manuel*, l. c.), but Dr. Brugsch regards him as merely an Egyptian of good repute whom Amenôphis III. had honoured with his confidence (*History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 402-3, 1st ed.).

heresy, obliterated in numerous cases the image of Khuenaten, re-cut the name of Ammon on the monuments from which it had been erased, and built of materials obtained by his demolitions a new gateway to the temple of Ammon at Karnak, to manifest his deep devotion to the great Theban deity.¹ At the same time he gave their due honours to the other gods. He represents himself as worshipping 'Iorus, 'Thoth, Khem, Set, Khonsu,² and as specially cherished by Athor and Anuka.³ According to an inscription which he set up at Thebes,⁴ he 'renewed the dwellings of the gods, from the shallows of the marsh land of A-hu⁵ to the confines of Nubia. He had all their images sculptured as they had been before. He set them up, each in his temple, and had a hundred images made—all of like form—for each of them, out of all manner of costly stones. He visited the cities of the gods, which lay as heaps of rubbish in the land, and had them restored just as they had stood from the beginning of all things.' He re-established for each a 'daily festival of sacrifice,' provided the temples with a due supply of 'silver and golden vessels,' of 'holy persons and singers,' presented to them 'arable land and cattle,' and gave them day by day a sufficiency of 'all kinds of provisions.' Gods and men were equally delighted with the new *régime*. 'The heaven was in festive disposition; the land was filled with ecstasy; and, as for the divinities of Egypt, their souls were full of pleasant feelings. Then the inhabitants of the land, in high delight, raised toward heaven the song of praise; great and small lifted up

¹ Birch *Ancient Egypt*, pp 112-13 vol. 1, pp 461-8, 1st ed; *Records*

² *Denkmäler*, pt iii pls 110 e, *of the Past*, vol x pp 20 et seqq

g, h, 122 a, c

³ Ibid pls 120 c, 122 b

⁴ See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, ⁵ On the meaning of this phrase, see above, p 141.

their voices; and the whole land was moved with joy!'¹

Besides accomplishing this great religious restoration, which included the rebuilding or repair of almost all the temples throughout Egypt and Nubia, Horemheb engaged in at least one important war with his neighbours upon the South. In this quarter, Ethiopia,



Bust of Horemheb

though often defeated, and sometimes despoiled of territory, as by Usurtasen III,² was still unsubdued; and, to prevent or punish predatory attacks, expeditions were from time to time necessary, which abated the pride of the 'miserable Kashi,' and secured Egypt a period of repose. Horemheb conducted one of these expeditions, invaded the land of Kush, bore

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 407, 1st ed.

² See above, p. 155

down all opposition and came back from his successful campaign laden with booty and accompanied by numerous prisoners. In the rock temple of Silsileh he represents himself as he was borne in triumph by his attendants on his return.¹ Seated in a palanquin, ornamented on its side by the figure of a lion, and upheld by twelve bearers, he presented himself to his admiring subjects, amid the loud cries of those who shouted: 'Behold the lion, who has fallen upon the land of Kush! See, the divine benefactor returns home after subduing the princes of all countries. His bow is in his hand, as though he were Mentu, the lord of Thebes. The powerful and glorious king leads captive the princes of the miserable land of Kush. He returns thence with the booty which he has taken by force, as his father Ammon ordered him.'² Cawasses with sticks cleared the road by which the procession was to pass, behind the king went his chosen warriors, leading with them the captured generals as prisoners; then followed the rest of the army, marshalled in various corps, and marching in time to the sound of the trumpet's blare. A numerous company of Egyptian officers, priests, and other officials came out to receive their monarch, and did homage to him. To complete his triumph, the unhappy prisoners were made to chant the glories of their conqueror. 'Incline thy face, O king of Egypt,' they said, 'incline thy face, O sun of the barbarians! Thy name is great in the land of Kush, where thy war cry resounded through the dwellings of men. Great is thy power, thou beneficent ruler—it

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 121.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 471, 1st ed.; Birch, *Ancient*

Egypt, p. 112; Lenoir, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 391.

puts to shame the peoples. The Pharaoh life, salvation, health to him' is truly a shining sun.'¹

It is gathered, somewhat doubtfully, from one inscription, that the reign of Horemheb lasted at least twenty one years.² Manetho assigned him a still longer space, if we may believe the epitomists, who, however, vary in their accounts between twenty eight years and thirty seven.³ His wife, Notem mut or Mut-notem,⁴ seems to have borne him no children,⁵ and thus he was unable to leave his throne to any issue of his loins. It is suspected that he reigned in right of his wife rather than by any royal rank of his own, and that she still retained the sovereignty for a while after his decease;⁶ but the monuments are obscure upon the point, and the circumstances under which the glorious eighteenth dynasty came to an end, and the nineteenth succeeded it, are unknown to us.⁷

As the art and civilisation of these two dynasties are similar and indeed almost identical, it is proposed to defer the consideration of these subjects to the close of the next chapter.

¹ Brugsch, p. 289. Bocl, l. 8 c.

² See the inscription in Brugsch's *History*, vol. i. p. 473, 1st ed.

The number is twenty-eight in the Africanus Eusebius, thirty six in the Eusebius of Syncellus, and thirty eight in the same writer's Africanus.

⁴ When an Egyptian personal name begins with the name of a god, it is uncertain whether the god's name was pronounced first or last. Hence Egyptologists vary between Neseika Sokari and Sokari-neseika, Amon iud and Rud-amen, Mut-notem and Notem mut, and the

like

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 113. M. Lenoirant, however, supposes him to have had at least one daughter, from whom he regards Rameses I. as deriving his claim to the succession (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 396).

⁶ Birch, l. 8 c.

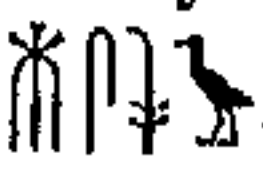
⁷ 'Il y a là' says M. Lenoirant, 'des obscurités encore impénétrables dans l'état actuel de la science, et que la découverte de nouveaux monuments pourra seule un jour dissiper.'

CHAPTER XXI

THE NINETEENTH DYNASTY (ABOUT B.C. 1180-1080).

Accession of Rameses I His Syrian War. Accession of Seti I His Wars with the Shasu, Kanu, and Khita Peace made with the Khita Timber cut in Lebanon Recovery of Mesopotamia. Wars with the Libyans and Ethiopians. Seti's great Works His Table of Kings His Personal Appearance His Association of his Son, Rameses Reign of Rameses Meriamon Over-estimate formed of him His Wars with the Negroes and Ethiopians with the Hittites with Naharin His Treaty of Peace with the Hittites Importance of it He marries a Hittite Princess His later African Wars Large number of his Captives Plan pursued in locating them their Employment Great Works of Rameses useful and ornamental His Personal Appearance, Domestic Relations, and Character — Accession of his Son, Merneptah His troubled reign Insufficiency of his Monuments. Pacific Character of his Foreign Policy Sudden Invasion of Egypt by the Libyans and their Allies Proposed Identification of these Allies with European Nations Repulse of the Libyan Attack Relations of Merneptah with the Israelites under Moses. Troubles of his later years. Struggle between his Son, Seti II, and Amonmes, or Amonmeses Brief Reigns of these Monarchs Reign of Siptah Period of Anarchy Civilisation of Egypt under the Eighteenth and Nineteenth Dynasties Architecture and its Kindred Arts Religion Manners and Customs — Literature, Drawings on the general Prosperity

We now approach the greatest period of Egypt in history the rule of the Nineteenth Dynasty and the reign of the great Rameses P. Smith's *Ancient History*, vol. 1 p. 119

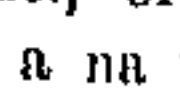
THE founder of the nineteenth dynasty was a certain Ramses, , or Ramessu, , the first prince of that celebrated name a name which afterwards became so glorious as to eclipse almost every other Egyptian royal title. His birth and parentage are in

the highest degree uncertain; and the conjectures of the latest historians of Egypt upon the subject are so various and conflicting¹ as to increase, rather than diminish, the obscurity which hangs about his origin. The newness of his name,² the strangeness of his throne-name,³ the peculiarity of the appellation which he bestowed on his son,⁴ and the fact that he was the recognised head of a new dynasty, combine to establish it as almost certain that he was a *novus homo*, unconnected by blood with the monarchs of the preceding line, the Thothmeses and Amen-hoteps, one who raised himself to power at a time of political trouble and disturbance by his own talents and energy. Manetho, according to Josephus,⁵ gave him a reign of only a year and four months, and we may thus regard him as prevented by

¹ Lenoirant supposes him to have been a grandson of Horemheb, though his mother (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 396). Brugsch lays it down (*Ancient Egypt* p. 113) that Horemheb had no family, and says 'Perhaps the wife of Horemheb survived that monarch, and Ramses may have married either the widow of his predecessor, or her daughter' (*i.e.* her daughter by a second husband). Brugsch suggests that Ramses I. was 'the son, son-in-law, or brother of Horemheb' (*Hist. of Egypt*, vol. II p. 8, 1st ed.). According to Wilkinson (in Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. II p. 308) 'he was of a different family from Horemheb, and restored the original and pure line of the Pharaohs,' tracing his descent to Amenophis I. and Queen Nefer-tari-Aah-mes.

² The name Ramses may not have been previously unknown in Egypt, but it was at any rate new as a royal name. It is analogous to the earlier forms Aah-mes and Thothmes, and means 'Child of Re,

as they mean respectively 'Child of the Moon' and 'Child of Thoth' (See Chabas *Recherches p. 101*, *à l'histoire de l'Égypte au temps de l'Érude* p. 70).

³ Ramses I. took the throne-name of Ramen-pehti, or Mer-pehti-ia, , a name modelled on the throne-name of Aah-mes, which was Ra-nob-pehti or Neb-pehti-ia. The element *pehti* had not been used in any throne-name since the time of Aah-mes.

⁴ The worship of Set had been discontinued upon the expulsion of the Hyksos. It had revived under Thothmes III. (*Denkmäler*, pt. III pls. 33 ff. 34 c, 35 b, &c.) but had remained in the condition of a minor and little esteemed cult. Ramses I. by calling his son 'Seti,' placed him under Set's protection, and gave the greatest possible stimulus to Set-worship.

⁵ *Conti Apion* i. 15. This of course, becomes a year in the epitomists (Syncell *Chronograph* p. 72, B).

an untimely end from attaining any great distinction. The circumstances which confronted him were difficult. Egypt had, it would seem, during the troublous times that followed the death of Amenôphis IV, lost almost all her Asiatic possessions, and fallen back into the position from which she was raised by the first and the third Thothmes. When Rameses came to the throne, he found the Hittites (Khita) masters of Syria, dominant over the whole region from Mount Libanus to Philistia. In alliance with the other Canaanite nations, with the Philistines, and even with the Bedouins (Shasu), they threatened a renewed invasion of the territory from which they had been driven by Aahmes. To meet this danger, Rameses seems to have marched an army into Syria, to have engaged the Khita in at least one battle,¹ and to have been so far successful that he induced the Hittite monarch, Seprur or Saplel, to conclude with him an offensive and defensive alliance.² We do not know whether he engaged in any other wars. Perhaps the prisoners whom he attached to the temple of Khem Horus near Wady Halfa, many in number and of both sexes,³ were the produce of his Syrian campaign, transported to the opposite limit of the Empire.⁴

The coronation of Rameses I is represented on the entrance gate of the great temple at Karnak,⁵ where the monarch also exhibits himself as worshipping Mentu, Nefer Tum, Shu, Tafné, Seb, Nctpé, Isis, Osiris,

¹ Briggsch *Hist. of Egypt* vol. ii p. 9, 1st ed. Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 113. Lenoir et al., *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 317.

² See the 'Treaty of Peace between Rameses II and the Hittites' published in the *Records of the Past*, vol. iv pp. 28-9.

³ Briggsch *History of Egypt*, l. c.

⁴ This was the general rule of the Assyrian, Babylonian, and even the Persian monarchs. (See *Ancient Monarchs* vol. ii p. 520, vol. iii pp. 490-7, vol. iv p. 418, Herod. iv. 201, vi. 20 and 119.)

⁵ Briggsch, l. c.

and Sabak¹. Besides these sculptures, the only important work which he undertook was his tomb in the Biban el Moluk, or 'valley of the kings' sepulchres, near Thebes, which is a rock chamber of no very large dimensions, but ornamented with a number of bas-reliefs. In one, on his descent to Amenti, he is introduced by Horus to Osiris;² in another he worships Nefer Tum, represented with a scarabæus in the place of a human head,³ in a third he takes the land of Neith⁴. The old worship is evidently established in all its fulness during his reign; the Sun Gods are especially revered; and a high and honourable place is assigned to Set. Rameses's regard for Set is especially indicated by the name that he gave to his eldest son, which was Seti, or, more fully, Seti Menptah, , i.e. 'the Set worshipper,'⁵ beloved of Phthah.

The dangers which had threatened Egypt under Rameses, and which had been checked by his prompt invasion of Western Asia, revived under his son. Seti was scarcely settled upon the throne, when he found himself menaced upon his north eastern frontier by a formidable combination of Semitic with Turanian races, which boded ill for the tranquillity of his kingdom. The redoubted Hittites, who, a century earlier, had bowed their pride before the might of Thothmes III.,⁶ having recovered themselves in the hour of Egypt's weakness, were now at the zenith of their greatness, held all Syria firmly in their grasp, and are even believed by some to have extended their dominion into

¹ *Denkmaler* pt iii pl 124.

² *Ibid* pl 123 b

³ *Ibid* pl 123 a.

⁴ *Ibid*

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 23, 1st ed
⁶ See above, p 228.

Mesopotamia and Asia Minor¹ Whatever may be thought of the fact of this enlarged dominion, or of its definite assignment to this particular period, the Hittite power *in Syria* at this time is beyond all question; and Seti's attention was, by the necessity of the case, first turned in this direction, where he felt that the state of affairs called for a great and sustained effort. The nearest danger was from the Shasu, who 'had pressed forward westward quite into the proper Egyptian territory,'² and made themselves masters of a considerable portion of the Tantic canton. Seti, in the first year of his reign,³ proceeded against these aggressors. Starting from the fortress of Khc am—the Elham of Scripture⁴ mounted himself in his war-chariot, and accompanied by a large chariot force, he marched along the coast road as far as the 'land of Zahi,' or the Philistine country, when he turned inland, overran the tract known in later times as Idumæa, took various fortresses, and ruthlessly slaughtered their garrisons, raging, as he himself tells us, 'like a fierce lion,'⁵ and wading through a sea of carnage 'The Shasu were turned into a heap of corpses in their hill country—they lay there in their blood.'⁶ The entire region between Egypt Proper and Canaan was subjected, the names of the strong holds were changed,⁷ and Egyptian troops were placed in them.

A campaign followed against the Khariu (Syrians), who had lent some assistance to the Shasu in the recent

¹ Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 396, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 3, 1st ed.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 11, 1st ed.

³ See the inscription quoted by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 13, 1st ed.)

⁴ Ex. xiii. 20, Num. xxxiii. 6, 7

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, 1st ed., *Transactions of Society of Bibl. Archaeology*, vol. vi. p. 511

⁶ Ibid. Compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 114

⁷ Birch, p. 115.

struggle¹ 'A battle was fought with this enemy at Jaham (Jamnia), in which both sides brought a large force of chariots into the field. The Khâru were defeated in the engagement, and Seti boasts that he annihilated the kings of the land of the Syrians.'²

The defeat of the Kharu laid Northern Syria open to invasion; and Seti was able now to march against his principal enemy, Maut enar, king of the Hittites, who held in subjection all the tribes from Central Palestine to the Euphrates. He proceeded first against the Rutu,³ overcame them in several pitched battles, and, assisted by a son who fought constantly by his side,⁴ slaughtered them almost to extermination.

His victorious progress brought him, after a time, to the vicinity of Kadesh—the important city on the Orontes which, a century earlier, had been besieged and taken by the great Thothmes.⁵ Kadesh seems now to have belonged to the nation of the Amorites, which occupied at different times various parts of Syria and Palestine.⁶ This nation was at present included among the subjects of the Hittites, and held Kadesh as their dependent allies. It would seem from one of Seti's bas-reliefs, that he had the skill, or the good fortune, to surprise this stronghold, and to become master of it by a *coup de main*. The arrival of the Egyptian army is represented as unexpected; the

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i, p. 11, 1st ed. Compare the *Denkmal*, pt. iii, pl. 93 b.

² Brugsch, *l. c.*, *Transactions of Society of Bibl. Archaeology*, *l. c.*

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 115.

⁴ Brugsch, *l. c.*

⁵ See above, p. 233.

⁶ See the article on the AMORITES in *Smith's Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. i, pp. 61-2, and for their occupation of Kadesh at this period, see Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 15, 1st ed.

herdsmen are pasturing their cattle under the trees which surround the city, when the Egyptian monarch appears in his war chariot. At once every one seeks to save himself, the herds fly with their keepers; there is a general panic and confusion. But the defenders of the town are no cowards; they sally forth from the gates, and engage the army of the invader, but are defeated with great slaughter by the warlike Pharaoh, who pierces scores of them with his arrows.¹ An attack is then made upon the fortress, which is but weakly defended, and city and people fall into the hands of Seti.

The proper territory of the Khita was now reached and invaded; and although 'the well ordered hosts of the beardless light red Khita, on foot, on horseback, and in chariots,'² gave battle to the invaders in the open field, and offered a gallant and stout resistance to the host of the Egyptians, yet here once more Seti was successful, and defeated the enemy with great slaughter, driving their squadrons before him in headlong flight, and killing a vast number of the leaders. A sculpture shows us 'the miserable inhabitants of the land of the Khita' receiving from Seti this 'great overthrow.'³ A song of praise was composed for the occasion, which is appended to the sculpture, and runs as follows:⁴ —
 'Pharaoh is a jackal which rushes leaping through the Hittite land; he is a grim lion which frequents the most hidden paths of all regions; he is a powerful bull with a pair of sharpened horns. He has struck down

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 127 a, Brugsch (see his *History*, vol. ii p. 15, 1st ed.) Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 16) Dr. Lushington has given a somewhat different version in the

² Brugsch l. s. c.

³ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 130 a

⁴ I follow the translation of Dr.

Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology, vol. vi. p. 516

the Asiatics, he has thrown to the ground the Khita; he has slain their princes.'

The victory thus gained was followed by a treaty of peace. Seti and his great adversary, Maut enar, entered into a solemn agreement, by which 'enmity was turned to friendship,'¹ perpetual amity and good brotherhood being proclaimed between the two nations.² Seti then set out upon his return to Egypt. Carrying with him some scores of captured chiefs,³ and with the heads of three leading rebels attached to the hinder portion of his chariot,⁴ he proceeded, in all the pomp of a triumph, through Syria and Palestine, everywhere receiving the submission and homage of the inhabitants. On his way down the broad Cœle Syrian valley, seeing the forests of Lebanon on his right hand, and noticing the vast size and especially the great height of the cedars, he ordered a halt, and called upon the headmen of the hill tribes to set to work and fell the straightest and tallest of the trees, that he might take them with him to Egypt.⁵ Assyrian monarchs at a later date acted similarly.⁶ The Lebanon timber was especially suited for the fabrication of those lofty masts which were commonly placed in front of the propylæa of temples, and the delicately-scented cedar wood was thought peculiarly fitted for the material of the 'Sacred Boat of Ammon,' which played an important part in the Theban religious processions.⁷ Seti, having seen his orders executed,⁸ in a short time

¹ Brugsch, l s c

² See the *Records of the Past*, vol iv. pp 28 ff.

³ Sixty were represented in one bas relief (*Denkmaler*, pt. iii pl 120).

⁴ Ibid pt iii pl 128 a

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol

ii p 17 Buch *Ancient Egypt*, p 114

⁶ *Ancient Monarchies* vol ii p 527 note ^o Layard, *Nimrod and Babylon*, p 314.

⁷ Brugsch, l s c

⁸ See Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl 40.

resumed his march, and, passing through the desert, returned, by way of Maktû (Migdol or Magdolon), Tan pa mau (Leontopolis), and Garu (Heroopol's?), to his own country.¹

The defeat of the Hittites appears to have involved the recovery of Mesopotamia, or, at any rate, of some portion of it. Seti, in giving an account of his expedition, declares that he 'had smitten the Anu and struck to the ground the Mentu, and had placed his boundaries at the extremity of the world, and at the utmost borders of the river-land of Naharim.'² In his list of the conquered countries, Naharim occupies a prominent place;³ and one of its chiefs is represented among the prisoners whom he presents to Ammon, Maut, and Khonsu, on the auspicious occasion of his return.⁴ As, however, no Egyptian remains of his date have been as yet discovered in Mesopotamia, it would seem to be doubtful whether he really occupied it, or did more than obtain from some of the chiefs a nominal submission.

Besides his great wars on the continent of Asia, Seti conducted important military operations both in the West and in the South. On the western borders of Egypt, in the vicinity of the Mediterranean, the blue eyed, fair skinned nation of the Tahennu,⁵ , had from time to time given trouble to the Egyptians by their raids into the Delta, and expeditions had been conducted against them by several of the more warlike

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 115

² See the inscription of Seti quoted by Brugsch (*History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 17). Compare *Transactions of Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. vi p. 518

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 14, 1st ed. The Kenta are placed first, Naharim is second

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pl. 127 b

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 5, vol. ii p. 20.

kings.¹ They were a wild and uncivilised people, dwelling in caves, and having no other arms than bows and arrows. 'For dress they wore a long cloak or tunic open in front;' ² and they are distinguished on the Egyptian monuments by having all their hair shaved excepting one large lock, which is plaited and depends from the right side of the head ³ Each warrior wore also two ostrich feathers, sloping at opposite angles, and fastened on his head at the top of the crown. Seti, accompanied by his more famous son, Rameses,⁴ invaded the country of this people with an infantry and chariot force, utterly routed them in a pitched battle, and drove them to seek shelter in their caves, where they 'remained hidden through fear of the king.'⁵ It has been supposed that these caves must have been 'in the Atlas range;' ⁶ but there were Troglodytes in many parts of Africa much nearer to Egypt,⁷ and the country about Cyrene would afford every facility for such underground abodes as are here indicated.

War was also waged under the auspices of Seti against the Cushites of the South, who had once more shown themselves troublesome; and memorials of victory were set up at Doslé and Sesebi. At the latter place Seti is made to boast that his dominion reached southward 'to the arms of the Winds,' ⁸ as if it extended as far as Africa was inhabited. The wars in

¹ As particularly by Amenôphis II. (supra, p. 256)

² Buch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 117.

³ Buch, *loc. cit.*, Bugsch, *History of Egypt*, *loc. cit.* Compare Herod. iv. 131, where a custom of this kind is assigned to the nation which he calls 'the Maxyes.'

⁴ Rosellini, *Mon. Storici*, pl. 55.

⁵ Bugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 20.

⁶ Buch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 117.

⁷ Herod. iv. 183, Strabo, vii. 4, § 7, xiv. 1, § 53.

⁸ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 119. Compare the story told by Herodotus of the Psylli, who went out to war against the South Wind (iv. 173).

this quarter were probably not conducted by the king in person, but by the high officials who bore the title of 'Royal sons of Cush,' of whom two are mentioned at this period, named respectively Ani and Amenem-
apet.¹

But the military triumphs of Seti were outdone and eclipsed by his great works. The grand 'Hall of Columns' in the temple of Karnak—the chief glory of that magnificent edifice—which is supported by a hundred and sixty-four massive stone pillars, and covers a larger area than the Cathedral of Cologne,² was designed in its entirety, and for the most part constructed, by him; and, if it had stood alone, would have sufficed to place him in the first rank of builders. It is a masterpiece of the highest class, so vast as to overwhelm the mind of the spectator, so lavishly ornamented as to excite his astonishment and admiration, so beautifully proportioned as to satisfy the requirements of the most refined taste, so entirely in harmony with its surroundings as to please even the most ignorant. Egyptian architectural power culminated in this wonderful edifice—its supreme effort—its crown and pride—its greatest and grandest achievement; and it only remained for later ages to reproduce feeble copies of the marvellous work of Seti, or to escape comparison by accomplishing works of an entirely different description. The 'Hall of Columns' at Karnak is not only the most sublime and beautiful of all the edifices there grouped together in such sort as to form one vast unrivalled temple, but it is the highest effort of Egyptian architectural genius, and is among

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 20. | ² See above, vol. i. pp. 226-7.

the eight or ten most splendid of all known architectural constructions.

One might have expected that so great a work would entirely occupy the mind, and monopolise the resources, of its erector, so as to leave him neither thought nor means for other constructive efforts. But it was not so with Seti. Besides his Karnak building, he designed and commenced the striking Temple of the Rameseum¹ at Old Qurnah, opposite Thebes, in honour of his father, Rameses I.; he built a magnificent fane, in honour of Osiris, near Abydos;² he 'erected a special temple to the goddess of the South, the heavenly Nukheb, at El Kaab,' and another similar one, in the form of a rock grotto, at the place called by the Greeks 'the Cave of Artemis,'³ near Beni el Massan, to Sekhet; he built also a temple at Redesiéh,⁴ made additions to the ancient shrines of Phthah and Tum at Memphis and Heliopolis;⁵ erected at the last-named place the (so called) Flaminian obelisk, which now adorns the Piazza del Popolo at Rome;⁶ set up stelæ at Silsilis and Assouan⁷ (Syêné); and left inscriptions upon tablets at Doshé, Sesebi, and elsewhere.⁸ Above all, he constructed for himself a most magnificent and elaborate tomb. This excavation in the solid rock, known as 'Belzoni's tomb' from the name of its discoverer, still 'forms the chief attraction to all who visit the Valley of the Tomb of the Kings at Thebes,'⁹ and is one of the most magnificent of Egyptian sepul

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p. 27

² Ibid p. 23

³ Ibid

⁴ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 118

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, l. s. c.

⁶ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 110

⁷ Ibid.

⁸ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p. 25

⁹ Ibid p. 26. Compare Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol ii p. 300, 2nd ed.

chres. The lavish profusion of the painted sculptures, and the exquisite care with which everything, down to the minutest hieroglyph, is finished,¹ excite the admiration of the beholders, while the mystic character of the scenes represented,² and the astronomical problems involved in the roof-pictures of the 'Golden Chamber,'³ add an element of deeper interest than any comprised within the range of mere art. The tomb possesses also a mythological inscription which is exceedingly curious.⁴ In the eyes of its constructor the tomb was not wholly finished, the intention of prolonging it by digging still further into the rock being apparent;⁵ but still it contained, when first discovered, the alabaster sarcophagus which the king had prepared for the reception of his mortal remains, a remarkable relic of antiquity now deposited in the British Museum of London.⁶ Altogether, Seti's tomb, if not the most extensive, is far the most interesting and most beautiful of all those wonderful rock-sea-monuments which form so important a portion of the extant Egyptian monuments.

Other important works were undertaken by this great monarch, with utility, rather than ostentation, for their object. In connection with the working of the gold mines in the desert between the Nile valley and the Red Sea, he employed engineers to discover a water source which should furnish a constant and copious supply to the miners and those employed in

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 20.

² See the *Denkmäler*, pt. ii. pls. 134-41.

³ *Ibid.* pl. 137.

⁴ See a paper by M. Edmond Naville in the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol.

iv. pp. 1-19, and compare the *Records of the Past*, vol. vi. pp. 105-112.

⁵ Wilkinson in the author's *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 30, 2nd ed., Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 32.

⁶ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 119.

the carriage of the ores¹ It has been maintained that the scientific men entrusted with the task accomplished it by boring a veritable 'artesian well ;'² but there seems to be no better foundation for this theory than the use of certain rhetorical expressions by the historiographer who placed the facts on record 'Seti,' he observed,³ 'had but to say the word, and lo. the water leaped forth from the living rock the stream flowed out in abundance.' Clearly, this result, or at any rate a result capable of being thus described by a lively writer, might follow on the discovery of an ample spring by means of ordinary digging, without recourse being had to the scientific and comparatively modern operation of boring We are certainly not justified in concluding from the expressions used that 'artesian wells' were familiar to the engineering science of Seti's day, or that he did more than 'happen upon' a copious source at a certain depth below the surface, in a district where there was no surface water in the shape of streams or springs

Seti also, it is thought, commenced that far more important work, afterwards accomplished by his still greater son, the formation of a canal between the most easterly branch of the Nile and the Red Sea This canal left the Nile a little above the town of Bibastis, and ran east, or a little south of east, as far as the Bitter Lakes, when it changed its direction, and was carried nearly due south into the Gulf of Suez. The length of the canal, not counting the passage of the Bitter Lakes, was about seventy miles. Its course may

¹ Buel, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 118, ordonna, la neuvième année de son règne, d'y creuser un puits artésien' Bueh, *Ancient Egypt* 186
Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1. p. 30

² Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1. p. 103. 'Seti' Bueh, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 117

still be traced by a series of depressions along the line of the Wady Toumilat.¹

The inscriptions of Seti are chiefly accounts of his campaigns and of the offerings which he made out of the spoils of the conquered nations to Ammon and the other national gods. But they comprise one document of more than ordinary historical interest. This is the 'Great Table of Abydos,' containing the names of seventy-five of his predecessors² upon the throne of Egypt, arranged in (supposed) chronological order, which he set up in the temple that he dedicated, in the desert near that city, to Osiris, the god of the dead. The list commences with Menes (Mena), the mythic founder of the empire, and is carried on through the monarchs mentioned in the text of the present work³ to Nefertarkara, the last known king of the sixth dynasty, after which it enumerates eighteen unknown monarchs,⁴ who are supposed to have belonged to the sixth and eleventh dynasties, returning with the fifty-seventh name to a well-known personage, Nebkheerra or Mentuhotep II,⁵ and then following with Sankhkara, the Amenemhats and Usutases of the twelfth dynasty, the nine kings of the eighteenth, and Rameses I, the founder of the nineteenth, Seti's father. The resemblances and the differences between this list and that of Thothmes III⁶ deserve careful attention, indicating, as they do, a certain settled basis of historic belief at the time, combined with a large fluctuating element of tradition or conjecture, and thereby teaching us the

¹ St. Hilaire, *Egypt and the Great Suez Canal*, p. 4. which are also represented

² I have given the number as seventy-seven (*supra*, p. 25) but this number is only reached by including the figures and cartouches of Seti himself and his son, Rameses II,

³ See pp. 29, 40, 77, and 99, 1, 1.

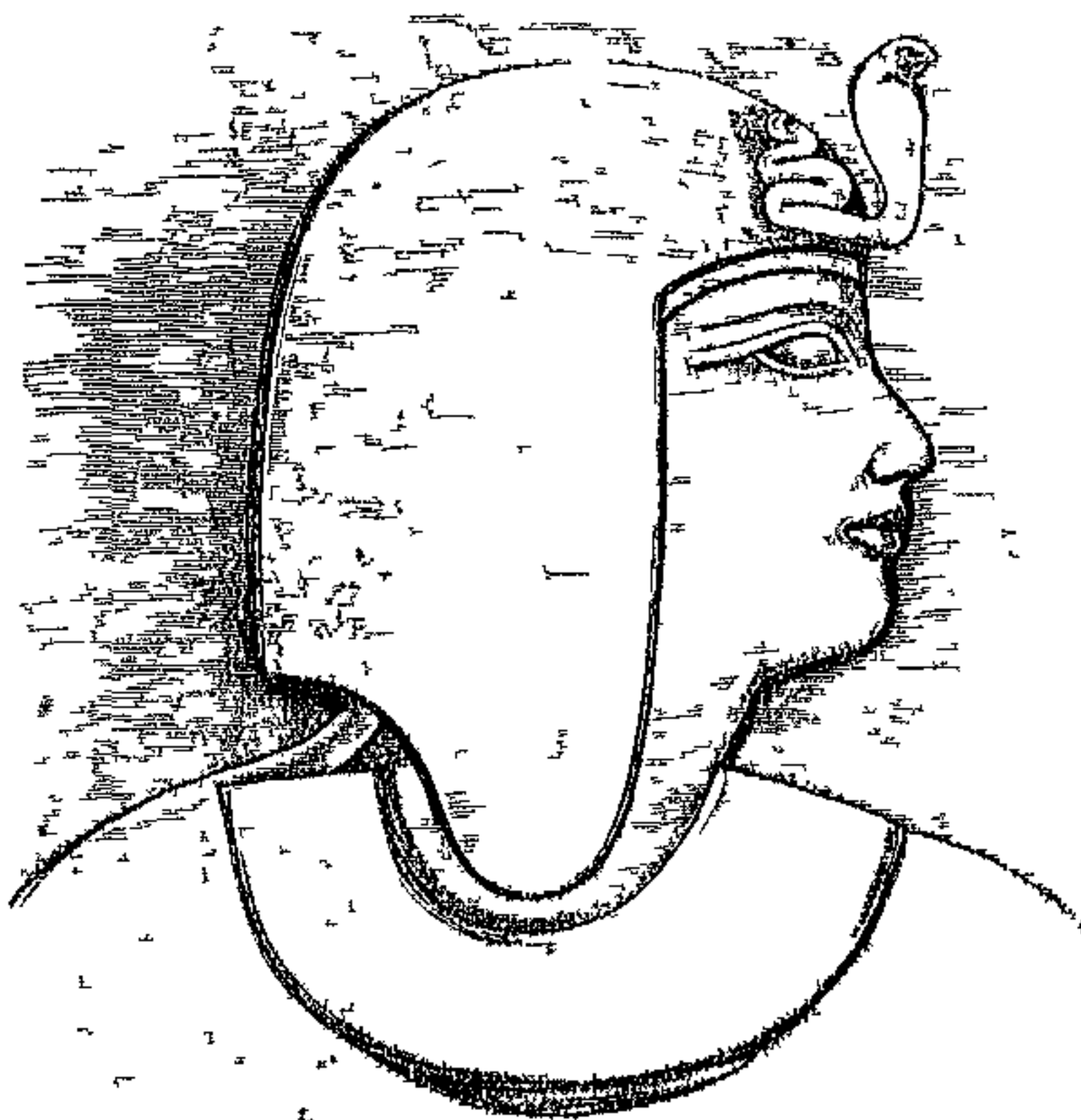
⁴ The names are given in Brugsc's *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 110, vol. ii. p. 313, last ed.

⁵ *Supra*, p. 120.

⁶ See above, p. 230.

extreme uncertainty of the mere dynastic lists where they are not checked and confirmed by contemporary fuller documents

In personal appearance Seti seems not to have been remarkable. He had a fairly good forehead, a rounded depressed nose, full projecting lips, and a heavy chin



Head of Seti I

The expression of his face was calm, open, and not unpleasing. In character he resembled the other Egyptian conquering monarchs, being vigorous, bold, unsparing of himself, indefatigable, but ruthless and cruel. It is difficult to decide whether his religious ardour was a genuine feeling or affected in order to secure him the gratitude and support of the priestly class, a support always of great importance to the early princes of a dynasty not yet fully recognised as in

rightful possession of the throne. Certainly no Pharaoh ever showed himself more anxious to uphold the entire Egyptian religion, or more bent on paying honour to all the chief personages of the Pantheon. His material favours were freely granted to all the main national shrines, and in his bas-reliefs he exhibited himself as the worshipper of almost every generally recognised deity. Nor does any divinity receive from Seti an undue share of attention. Ammon, Ra, Horus, Isis, Osiris, and Athor are, so to speak, his favourites; but Egypt at this time was tolerably unanimous in assigning to these gods a pre-eminence. After these five, he honours almost equally Set, Ra, Tum, Mentu, Shu, Seb, Netpe, Nephthys, Thoth, Sabak, Ma, Mant, Khonsu, Phthah, Khem, Knepl, Sati, and Anuka.¹

In his domestic relations he appears to have been fortunate. He married a wife, Tua or Tuaa, , who is thought to have been a grand daughter of Khuenaten or Amenôphis IV,² and to have thus brought a further strain of Semitic blood into the Egyptian royal house. Tua bore him at least three sons, of whom his successor, Rameses Meriammon, was the eldest. This prince, like our own Henry VIII, united the claims and pretensions of two great rival houses—the Amenhoteps and the Ramesides—and it was therefore of importance that he should be brought forward into political life at the earliest possible moment, since the general acceptance, of which he was assured, would add stability to the throne of his father. Accordingly,

¹ See the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls. 124-41. Ammon is represented there under one or other of his titles, Horus and Isis five times, Osiris and Athor four, Set, n. p. 23. Tum, Ma, Sabak, and Mant twice; — Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 23.

at the age of ten or twelve,¹ Seti had him crowned as king, and admitted him, at first to a nominal, and afterwards to a real, participation in the government.² The two appear to have borne each other a true affection, no jealousy clouded their relations, each speaks of the other with tenderness and real regard, and the son carries on with pious care all the great works left incomplete by the father.

The chronology of the two reigns has been confused and complicated by the fact of the association. It is uncertain in what year of his reign Seti made Rameses joint ruler,³ and still more uncertain how long the joint reign continued. Seti's thirtieth and Rameses' sixty seventh year are mentioned upon the monuments,⁴ which also tell us that Rameses was ten years old when he was associated. These are all the trustworthy data,⁵ and it results from them that the probable period occupied by the two reigns was about eighty years; Seti reigning twelve years alone, and an unknown number, not less than eighteen, in conjunction with

¹ An inscription quoted by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 24) says 'Thou wast raised to be a governor of this land when thou wast a youth, and countedst to a full years'. But Brugsch himself thinks that 'when Rameses II. ascended the throne he may have been about twelve years old, or a little more' (ibid. p. 25).

² At first, Rameses says he was 'led in the house of the women and of the royal concubines, after the manner of the damsels of the palace' (Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 21.) But it was not long ere important functions were assigned him. (See next page note ⁴.)

³ He would no doubt do so as

only is possible. If he married Tauson after his accession, and she bore him Rameses in the course of the next year, he may have associated that prince as early as his eleventh year.

⁴ Lenoirmont, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 402. Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 15, Breh, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 128.

⁵ Manetho's statements that Seti reigned fifty one or fifty five years (ap. Syncell *Chronograph* pp. 72, 173, n), and Rameses II. sixty one or sixty six years (ibid.), have but little weight. He may, however, have been rightly informed with regard to Rameses.

Rameses, while the latter reigned as sole monarch for a long term of years after his father's death.

The full title under which the son and successor of Seti I. designated himself upon his monuments was Ra user ma Sotep en ra Ramessu Meriamen,

, thus elabo-

rate and complicated had by this time become the royal designation. Succeeding to the throne, in a certain sense, at the age of ten, he became early accustomed to command, took part in the business of the state, had a body guard under his orders, and directed the construction of important buildings.² As his father grew old and infirm, the conduct of affairs passed more and more into his hands, until at last probably when he was about twenty eight years old he entered upon the full sovereignty.

The greater son of a great father, Rameses II. is of all the Egyptian kings the one whose fame has extended itself the most widely, and whose actions have received the largest amount of attention. This has arisen, in part, from the enormous number and striking character of his monuments; in part from the favour in which he was held by the Egyptian priests and the exaggerated representations which they gave of his warlike achievements.³ In reality, he does not appear to have shown any remarkable military genius, or to have effected any important conquests. One great war occupied him for

¹ See Chabas, *Recherches*, &c., vol. ii p. 24 p. 79 and compare Tassius, *Konigsbuch* Taf. xxxi No. 420. The names were spelt in a vast variety of ways, as may be seen in the last-quoted work, Tafeln xxvii and xxxiii.

² See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*,

³ In proof of this, see especially Tacit. *Ann.* ii. 60. The entire series of conquests assigned commonly to the mythic Sesostis were attributed to Rameses by the informants of Germanicus.

many years; and, though in the course of it he no doubt performed several brilliant exploits, yet the final result was one of which Egypt had no cause to boast. The empire attacked stood firm, and the war was concluded by a treaty, of which the great principle is the exact equality and perfectly correspondent obligations of the two contracting powers.¹ The other wars which occasionally occupied him were trivial, and there is no evidence that even they brought any accession of territory to Egypt. Indeed, it would almost seem that his object in making war was rather to obtain captives than to extend his dominions, his predominant desire being to distinguish himself as a builder, and the services of vast bodies of foreign labourers being necessary to carry out his numerous and gigantic projects.²

The first campaigns of Rameses II were directed against the negroes and Ethiopians.³ One writer⁴ tells us that he 'pushed his arms much further into Upper Ethiopia and the Soudân than any of his predecessors,' but proof of this superior energy is scarcely forthcoming, and on the whole it would seem that the southern expeditions of the son of Seti were rather razzias, resulting in the capture of large numbers of the unfortunate blacks, than real military operations.⁵ Besides slaves, tribute and plunder were no doubt obtained in large quantities; and Egypt was enriched by the spoils of Ethiopia, which included gold, ivory, ebony, fruits of various kinds, leopard's skins, lions, panthers, gazelles and other antelopes, giraffes, and ostriches.⁶

Soon afterwards occurred the first Syrian war of

¹ See below, p. 310.

² Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 100-1.

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 110.

⁴ Wilkinson in the author's *Hero-*

dotus, vol. ii, p. 312. 2nd ed.

⁵ Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 76.

⁶ *Ibid.* p. 77. Compare Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 120.

Rameses. The details of this campaign are wanting, but a rock-tablet at the Nahr-el-Kelb, set up in his second year,¹ indicates his personal presence on the occasion, and was erected as a token of victory. Three years later took place the second invasion—Khatasi, the son of Marasar, and grandson of Saplet, the adversary of Rameses I, was now probably at the head of the Hittites,² and had succeeded in collecting a league of the Western Asiatic nations against Egypt, which threatened serious consequences. Already had Seti, alarmed at the menacing combination, commenced a defensive work upon his eastern frontier,³ probably not long before his decease. Rameses, with the ardour and audacity of youth, preferring attack to defence, in the fifth year of his sole reign⁴ collected a vast army, and quitting Egypt marched ‘by the path of the desert along the roads of the north.’⁵ Khatasi, aware of his movements, summoned his allies to his aid—the peoples of Naharian, Khinabu, Carchemish, the Marsu, Anatu, Patasu, Kati, Leka (Lycians?), and others⁶—and took up a position near Kadesh, his capital city, which was situated on an island in the Orontes.⁷ The host was so numerous that it is said: ‘Their number was endless; nothing like it had ever been before; they covered the mountains and the valleys like grass-

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 63, 1st ed.

² See *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 28. Rameses does not give the name of his adversary in the great Hittite war, and it is possible that Khatasi had not yet ascended the throne.

³ Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 125.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 20. Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 50, 1st ed.

⁵ See the ‘Poem of Pentamer,’

is given by Dr. Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 51, 1st ed.).

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 61. The Marsu are the people of the Mars Masu, the Anatu those of Anath, the Patasu may perhaps be the Assyrian Patana, the Leka are thought by Dr. Brugsch to be the Lycians. Khinabu is probably Haleb, or Olab, the ancient name of Aleppo.

⁷ See above, p. 228.

oppers for their number.'¹ Khitasir, however, was unwilling to trust to mere numbers, and formed a scheme for deceiving Rameses as to the disposition of his troops, and so bringing him into difficulties. He sent out spies,² who pretended to be deserters from his army, and instructed them to say, if they were questioned, that he had broken up from Kadesh on hearing of the Egyptian advance, and had marched away to Khirabu (Aleppo), which lay far to the north. The spies fulfilled their mission, but on being examined by capturing they failed in fortitude, and confessed the truth—that Khitasir, instead of having withdrawn to Khirabu, was lying in wait to the north west of Kadesh, hoping to fall unexpectedly on the flank of the Egyptians, if they believed the spies' tale and hurried forward on the line of his supposed retreat. Foiled in his crafty scheme, Khitasir could do nothing but quit his ambush and march openly against the Egyptians, with his troops marshalled in exact and orderly array, the Hittite chariots in front with their lines carefully dressed, and the auxiliaries and irregulars on the flanks and rear.³ Rameses had divided his host into four portions.⁴ He himself, with the brigade of Ammon, marched down the left bank of the river, while two brigades, those of Phthah and Ra, proceeded along the right bank, the division of Phthah in the centre, that of Ra some way to the eastward.⁵ The

¹ See the 'Poem of Pentaur' (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, 1 s c.)

² The story of the spies is told in an inscription repeated several times on the walls of the temple of Abydos, and translated by Dr Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II p. 50-2, 1 s ed.

³ Ibid p. 47.

VOL. II.

⁴ *Records of the Past*, vol. II. p. 68 ll. 9-11.

⁵ Brugsch *Hist. of Egypt*, vol. II. p. 55, 1 s ed. In describing the 'battle of Kadesh,' I have throughout followed this authority. Dr Birch takes a somewhat different view of the engagement (*Ancient Egypt*, pp. 120-1).

position of the brigade of Set is not distinctly marked. It may have started for Khirabu before the falsity of the spies' tale was detected, or it may have acted as a rearguard to the whole army, and have been posted at some distance behind the other corps. At any rate, it took no part in the battle. Khitasir commenced the fight by a flank movement to the left, which enabled him to fall on the brigade of Ra as it was upon its march, alone and unsupported, his attack was unexpected and was irresistible; 'foot and horse gave way before him,'¹ the division was utterly routed, and either driven from the field or cut to pieces. Intelligence of the complete defeat of his right wing having been received by Rameses, who had now reached the position occupied at the beginning of the day by Khitasir, he set his brigade in motion, at right angles to their previous course, eastward; but before he could reach the Orontes, the enemy, who must have crossed the river, were upon him, and the two hosts charged each other at full speed with desperate courage. The chariot of Rameses, skilfully guided by his squire, Menna, seems to have broken through the front line of the Hittite chariot force; but his brethren in arms were less fortunate; and Rameses found himself separated from his army, behind the front line and confronted by the second line of the hostile chariots, in a position of the greatest possible danger.² Then began that Homeric combat, which the Egyptians were never tired of celebrating, between a single warrior on the one hand, and the host of the Hittites, reckoned at 2,500

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p 68, l 4

² This seems to me the only reasonable account of the position

in which Rameses found himself, but it must be confessed that Pontau's narrative is here very hazy.

chariots, on the other, in which Rameses, like Diomed or Achilles, carried death and destruction whithersoever he turned himself. 'I became like the god Mentu,' he is made to say; 'I hurled the dart with my right hand; I fought with my left hand; I was like Baal in his time before their sight, I had come upon 2,500 pairs of horses, I was in the midst of them, but they were dashed in pieces before my steeds. Not one of them raised his hand to fight, their courage was sunken in their breasts; then limbs gave way, they could not hurl the dart, nor had they strength to thrust with the spear. I made them fall into the waters like crocodiles; they tumbled down on their faces one after another. I killed them at my pleasure, so that not one looked back behind him, nor did any turn round. Each fell, and none raised himself up again.'¹

The temporary isolation of Rameses, which is the gist of the heroic poem of Pentaour, and which the king himself recorded over and over again upon the walls of his magnificent shrines,² must no doubt be regarded as a fact; but it is not likely to have continued for more than a few minutes. When his companions found that he was lost to their sight, they would have made the most frantic efforts to recover him, dead or alive, and if his own prowess at all resembled the description given of it, the Hittites must have been speedily thrown into such confusion that it would have been easy for the Egyptians to come to his aid. Chariot, no doubt, quickly followed chariot through the front line of the Hittite force; the second line was

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt, Ancienne* vol i p 411 Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 15, 1st ed.

² Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire* ed

engaged and defeated; soon the confusion became general. A headlong flight carried the entire host to the banks of the Orontes, into which some precipitated themselves, while others were forced into the water by their pursuers. The king of K i abu was among the latter, and was with difficulty drawn out by his friends, exhausted and half dead, when he reached the eastern shore.¹ But the great bulk of the Hittite army perished, either in the battle or in the river. Among the killed and wounded were Grab tusa, the commander of Khitasir, Tarakennas the commander of the cavalry, Rabsuna, another general, Kl rapusir, a royal secretary, and Matsurama, a brother of the Hittite king.²

On the day which followed the battle Khitasir sent a humble embassy to the camp of his adversary to implore for peace.³ His messenger was received with favour. Though it does not appear that any formal treaty was made, or any definite engagements entered into by the Hittite leader, yet Ramses consented not to press upon the vanquished monarch, but to withdraw his army and return to Egypt. It is possible that his victory had cost him dear, and that, until he had levied a new force, he was in no condition to venture further from his resources or to affront new perils.

The Syrian expeditions of Ramses II did not terminate with the battle of Kadesi, or with his fifth year. On the contrary, they continued certainly till his eighth year,⁴ and possibly till his twenty first,

¹ See the *Denkmaler*, pt. iii. 1 with text on wall at Karnak 104 b and 105. (Compare Bugss's *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 18, and ed.

² Buch *Ancient Egypt* p. 12.

³ See the Poem of Pentum in Bugss's *History* vol. ii. p. 601 1st ed. According to this

which Kaitani, at his first history and history, Bugss's *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 61, 1st ed., Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 122.

when a formal treaty of peace was concluded with the Hittites. It is difficult to determine how far during this period he carried his arms into Asia, or what extent of territory he traversed with his armies. We have no distinct evidence of any expeditions having penetrated further at this time than Northern Palestine,¹ unless it be on one occasion, when 'Tupia in the land of Naharain, was attacked and taken.² But the reputation which Rameses left behind him of a warrior king,³ the title of A nekhtu or 'Conqueror' which he bore,⁴ and the general claims to victory and success contained in his inscriptions, are thought to imply that the limits of the Egyptian power established by Thothmes III were still in a certain sense maintained and vindicated during his reign,⁵ Mesopotamia still paying tribute, and receiving Egyptian residents, if not even Egyptian garrisons, and the chiefs even of such a distant place as Singara being still content to be regarded as Egyptian subjects.⁶ But, whatever vestiges remained of the old period of glory and dominion, it cannot be seriously doubted that the real power of Egypt had now considerably declined;⁷ 'the bonds of subjection were much less strict than under Thothmes III.; prudential motives constrained the Egyptians to be content with very much less with such acknow

¹ The places attacked and taken in the eighth year are Shalama (Salem in the Jordan valley) Tappu (Dabn at the foot of Mount Tabor), Marinn, or Merinn, Bethanath, &c. Ascalon revolted, and was retaken about the same time.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp 63-4, 1st ed.

³ Tacit *Ann.* ii 60

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p 33, 1st ed.

⁵ Lenoirant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p 421

⁶ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p 65, 1st ed. The true identification of Singara is still uncertain. I have supposed it to be Senkrah, south of Babylon (supra, p 235), but it may be the modern Sinjar. I think there can be no doubt that it was in Mesopotamia.

⁷ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 120

ledgments as satisfied their vanity rather than with the exercise of a real power.' ¹

'The treaty concluded with the Hittites is a strong indication of the changed circumstances of Egypt, and her inability to maintain the dominant position which she had reached under Thothmes. It was, as already observed,² based upon the principle of an exact equality between the two high contracting powers. Khitasir was termed 'the great king of Khita, the powerful,' Rameses 'the great ruler of Egypt, the powerful.' The genealogy of each was reckoned back to his grand father. Both parties engaged reciprocally for their sons and their sons' sons. Friendship was pledged by the following formula 'He shall be my ally; he shall be my friend; I will be his ally; I will be his friend for ever.' The stipulations of the alliance were throughout mutual. The king of the Khita engaged under no circumstances to invade the land of Egypt, and the king of Egypt engaged under no circumstances to invade the land of the Khita. Each bound himself, if the other were attacked, either to come in person, or to send his forces, to the other's assistance. Each pledged himself to the extradition both of criminals fleeing from justice, and of any other subjects wishing to transfer their allegiance. Each at the same time stipulated for an amnesty of offences in case of all persons thus surrendered. The treaty was placed under the protection of the gods of the two countries, who were invoked respectively to protect observers and punish infringers of it ³

¹ Lenoirant 1 s c

² Supra, p 303

³ For a condensed account of the treaty, see *Records of the Past*, vol

iv pp 27 32 The full text is given by Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii pp 68 74 1st ed It is a mistake, however, of this writer to

It is evident that the acknowledgment of the Hittite power and the engagements to respect its territorial limits and defend it against foreign attack constituted an effectual bar to the extension of Egyptian influence in Asia, and very nearly cut Egypt off from her possessions on and beyond the Euphrates. Little more than a nominal subjection of dependencies so remote could remain, when almost the whole of the intermediate country¹ was relinquished to a rival power. The Hittite empire must at this time have presented itself to the Mesopotamian and Syrian nations as that which was in the ascendant, and which policy required them to court. Egypt's day must have appeared to be past, and the smaller states of Western Asia must have begun to gravitate to the new centre.

A conspicuous evidence of the altered condition of things, strongly indicative of the great advance of the Hittite power, was the marriage of Ramses, in the thirty-fourth year of his sole reign, to the daughter of Khitasir, and her proclamation as queen consort by the name, which she must have newly taken, of Ur maa-nefru ra. 'The prince of Khita, clad in the dress of his country, himself conducted the bride to the palace of his son in law,'² and, after receiving hospitable entertainment, returned to his own land. It would seem that the princess had captivated the heart of the susceptible monarch by her remarkable beauty on an occasion when she had come forward in her own country to plead the cause of some captives

call the treaty an 'offensive and defensive alliance, since union for offensive purposes is certainly not contemplated

¹ The geographical position of the Hittite country cut off Egypt from Mesopotamia, unless by the line of Damascus and Tadmor, which is only fitted to be a caravan route

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 75, 1st ed

whom he was inclined to treat harshly. 'She stood forward at their head, to soften the heart of King Rameses—a great inconceivable wonder not knowing the impression which her beauty made upon him.'¹ The fascination of unconscious loveliness is always great; and Rameses was apparently induced to seek the hand of the Hittite princess by the feelings which were called forth on this occasion.

Besides his great Asiatic war, to which the Hittite treaty put a happy termination, Rameses conducted a certain number of campaigns in the south and in the east. In the south he had for enemies the Cushites and the negroes, in the west the Tahennu and the Mashuash or Maxyes². In both quarters he claims successes; but they do not appear to have been very decisive. In Northern Africa the power of the Maxyes was certainly not broken, for we shall find them in the ensuing reign taking the offensive and invading Egypt in force;³ and on the Upper Nile only small and insignificant tribes—the Aunton, the Hebun, the Tenfu, the Temuu, and the Hetau⁴—were subjugated. The boundaries of Egypt received no important enlargement in either quarter, nor were her Asiatic losses compensated for by African gains.

One, and perhaps the main, result of all the military operations in which Rameses II. employed himself for so many years, was the acquisition of many thousands of captives, some Asiatic, some African—swart negroes from the Soudan, Ethiopians of equal blackness but of a higher type, blue-eyed fair haired Marmaridæ,

¹ See the inscription given by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 80, 1st ed.)

² On this people, see Herod. iv. 191; and compare Hecat. Tr. 304

and Steph. Byz. ad voc.

³ Infra, pp. 329–333.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 78, 1st ed.

light red beardless Khita, lithe Arabs, heavily framed Ruten with black beards and features of a Jewish cast,¹ Kharu, Leka, Nahin, Maxyes carried off from their homes by the grasping conqueror, whose wars were undertaken as much with the object of making prisoners as from any higher consideration. During his early years Asia furnished the bulk of these unfortunates. Later, when his Asiatic wars were terminated if we may trust M Lenormant 'man hunts were organised upon a monstrous scale throughout the whole country of the Soudan, a scale quite unknown at any former period. The aim was no longer, as under the Thothmeses and the Amenhoteps, to extend on this side the frontiers of the Egyptian empire, so as to absorb the countries which furnished ivory and gold dust. The principal or (so to speak) sole object was to obtain slaves. Nearly every year there were great razzias, which started from Ethiopia, and returned dragging after them thousands of captive blacks of all ages and both sexes, laden with chains. And the principal episodes of these negro hunts were sculptured upon the walls of temples as glorious exploits !'²

In connection with this constant introduction of large bodies of foreigners into Egypt, Rameses devised or adopted the plan,³ so familiar to Asiatic conquerors in later times, of transporting his prisoners enormous distances, and settling them in those portions of his empire which were most remote from their original abodes. Whole tribes of negroes were removed from

¹ See the frontispiece to Brugsch's *History* vol 1, 1st ed, where this cast of countenance is very noticeable

² Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol 1 pp 423-4

³ Lenormant says (l.c.) that he was the first to introduce this system; but I have already shown reason for thinking that he was anticipated in the adoption of it by his grandfather (supra, p 286)

the Soudan into Asia; Libyans and Asiatics were planted upon the Upper Nile.¹ Flight and escape became in this way impossible, and even the yearning after a lost home tended, in course of time, to die away through the well known inclination of the human mind to accept the inevitable.

It was, of course, in connection with his passion for 'great works' that Rameses desired and obtained this vast addition to the store of 'naked human strength,'² which on his accession he inherited from his progenitors. In the earlier times the kings had employed the great mass of their subjects in those vast constructions by which they had striven to immortalise their names.³ But with the growth of civilisation new ideas had sprung up. Some regard had come to be had for the feelings and the wishes of the lower orders;⁴ and if the incubus of forced labour still legally lay upon them,⁵ practically it was now wellnigh a thing of the past, and no longer an actual grievance. Slaves, captives, and subject races, not of Egyptian blood, were, at this period, the material to which kings bent upon raising great works looked for the execution of their grand projects. Of subject races there seem to have been several in Egypt under Rameses, the principal being the Sharuten or Shardana, the Apurru or Aperu, and the Hebrews. Of these, the Shardana were employed principally as auxiliary troops,⁶ while the other two if they were really distinct⁷—formed the main

¹ Briggsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p. 100, 1st ed., Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 124.

² Grote, *History of Greece*, ch xix (vol ii p. 475, edit of 1862).

³ Supra, p. 51.

⁴ See *Records of the Past*, vol ii pp. 11-12, and compare above,

pp. 146-7.

⁵ As would appear by the letter of Amenemhat to Pentaoui, quoted above (vol i p. 480).

⁶ *Transactions of Society of Bibl. Archaeology*, vol i. pp. 357, 359, and 367.

⁷ This is a point on which much

sources from which forced labour was drawn by the monarchs¹. We know that the Hebrews at the time of the Exodus numbered 600,000 adult males;² the Apurru, if a distinct race, may have been not much less numerous, and it is a not unreasonable conjecture,³ that in the time of Rameses II. the subject races and newly made captives together amounted to a full third of the population. Thus the Pharaoh had an abundant stock of raw material on which to draw, without putting any pressure on his native subjects, or even seriously affecting the general labour-market.

The great works of Rameses Meriamen may be divided under the two heads of works of utility and of ornament. To the former class belong his 'Great Wall,' his canal from the Nile to the Red Sea, and his numerous cities; to the latter, his temples, his colossal statues, his obelisks, and his tomb. The Great Wall, commenced by his father, Seti,⁴ extended from Pelusium to Heliopolis,⁵ a direct distance of ninety miles, and was strengthened at intervals by the establishment of fortresses upon its line, the 'treasure cities,' or 'store cities,' mentioned in the book of Exodus as built by the oppressed Israelites, being, as is generally thought,⁶ among their number. The construction of this work is a strong indication of the decline in her

has been written. M. Chabas regards the identity of the Apurru with the Hebrews as certain (*Mélanges Egyptologiques*, ii p. 148, *Recherches pour servir à l'histoire de la 19me Dynastie*, pp. 99-105), Dr. Brugsch (*Hist. of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 128-9 1st ed.), Dr. Eisenloeff (*Transactions of Society of Bibl. Archaeology* vol. i pp. 356-7), and M. Maspero all of the directly con-

tinuing opinion. Dr. Birch throws a doubt on the identification (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 128).

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 88, 1st ed. Ex. i. 11-14.

² Ex. xii. 37.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 100, 1st ed.

⁴ See above, p. 304.

⁵ Birch *Ancient Egypt*, p. 125.

⁶ 1st ed. Compare Ex. i. 11.

military power on which Egypt was now entering¹—a decline which, in spite of a few exceptionally brilliant periods, must be considered to have set in from this reign.

The 'Great Canal' perhaps, like the 'Wall,' commenced by Seti² is proved by the ruins upon its banks to have been in the main the work of Rameses³. It was, no doubt, provided with locks and sluices,⁴ as was the canal which led the Nile water into the Fayoum; and in this way the difficulties connected with the tidal changes at Suez and the variations in the level of the Nile at Bubastis were met and overcome. Dredging perhaps kept the western end of the canal open, and prevented it from being silted up by the Nile mud; but when troubles came, this practice was neglected, and the channel soon became unnavigable. Communication with the Bitter Lakes had from time to time to be reopened, and Neco, Darius Hystaspis,⁵ Ptolemy I, Trajan, and the Caliph Omar⁶ are especially mentioned as having applied themselves to the work of re-establishing the waterway. Various points of departure from the course of the Nile were taken at different periods, the latest being at Belbays, which is about eleven miles south of Bubastis (now Tel Basta).

Among the cities built by Rameses II., or so enlarged as to be considered his work, were Tanis—the great city of the Delta which he made his capital;⁷ Pa Ramesu, which is probably the Raamses of

¹ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire* 2nd ed

Ancienne, vol. i pp 426 8. Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 129, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p 114, 1st ed.

² See above, p 297.

³ Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 205, note 2,

⁴ Ibid p 206, note 4

⁵ Herod. ii 158

⁶ See the essay of M. Rozière in the *Description de l'Égypte*, 'Antiquités,' vol. i pp 140 4

⁷ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 43 and 93, 1st ed.

Exodus; Pa-tum (Patumus or Pithom, identified by Dr. Birch with Hieropolis), Pa phthah, at Gerf Hussein in Nubia; Pa ammon at Sebuah, in the same country; and Pa ia, near Der or Dirr, above Korosko.¹ The new Tanis was situated at some little distance from the old one, where the shepherd kings had resided, and was adorned with numerous temples and obelisks, fragments of which still strew the site. A contemporary of the son of Seti thus describes the place.² 'So I arrived at the city of Ramesu Meriamen, and found it admirable; for nothing on the Theban land and soil can compare with it. Here is the seat of the court. The place is pleasant to live in; its fields are full of good things; and life here passes in constant plenty and abundance. The canals are rich in fish, the lakes swarm with birds; the meadows are green with vegetables, there is no end of the lentils, melons with a taste like honey grow in the irrigated gardens. The barns are full of wheat and durra, and reach as high as heaven. Onions and grapes grow in the enclosures, and the apple-tree blooms among them. The vine, the almond-tree, and the fig-tree are found in the orchards. . . . The red fish is common in the lotus canal; the Bori-fish in the ponds; many varieties of the same, together with carp and pike (?), in the canal of Pu harotha; fat fish and Khipiti pennu fish are to be found in the pools of the inundation, and the Hauaz fish in the full mouth of the Nile, near the City of the Conqueror. The city canal Pshenhor produces salt, the lake region of Pahr natron. Sea

¹ Brugsch pp. 90, 98 9, &c., *Records of the Past*, vol. vi pp. 13 16, and by Dr. Brugsch in his

² See the 'Letter of Panbesa,' *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 90 8, translated by Mr. Goodwin in the 1st ed.

going ships enter the harbour; plenty and abundance are perpetual'

The most remarkable of the temples erected by Rameses are the building at Thebes, once called the Memnonium, but now commonly known as the Ramesseum (which has been already described in the first volume of this work),¹ and the extraordinary rock temple of Ipsambul or Abu Simbel, the most magnificent specimen of its class which the world contains. The façade is formed by four huge colossi, each seventy feet in height, representing Rameses himself, seated on a throne, with the double crown of Egypt upon his head.² In the centre, flanked on either side by two of these gigantic figures is a doorway of the usual Egyptian type, opening into a small vestibule, which communicates by a short passage with the main chamber. This is an oblong square, sixty feet long by forty five, divided into a nave and two aisles by two rows of square piers with Osirid statues thirty feet high in front, and ornamented with painted sculptures over its whole surface.³ The main chamber leads into an inner shrine, or adytum, supported by four piers without Osirid figures, but otherwise as richly adorned as the outer apartment. Behind the adytum are small rooms for the priests who served in the temple. It is the façade of the work which constitutes its main beauty. 'What shall we say,' observes a modern traveller,⁴ 'of the rock temple of Ipsambul, the won

¹ See above, vol. 1. pp 220-3

² For representations see the *Denkmaier*, pt iii. pl 185 b, and Roberts's *Egypt and Nubia*, vol. 1 vignette on title-page

³ *Denkmaier*, pt iii. pls 185 et seqq

⁴ Brugsch, *Hist of Egypt*, vol. II

pp 90-1, 1st ed. In his concluding remarks the writer appears to have forgotten that his own glory was, at any rate, the object mainly sought by Rameses in his erection of this edifice. Four colossi of himself form the façade; and in the interior he associates himself as a god

derful façade of which surpasses everything which our imagination can conceive of grandeur in a human work? How small, how insignificant, appear, in comparison with it, the petty erections of our day! There, in Nubia, on a solitary wall of rock, far removed from the dwellings of men, in hoary antiquity a temple was hewn to the great gods of the land of Egypt . . . hewn as if by *enchantment* -for this is the proper word- so bold, so powerful, so exceeding all human measure, as if giants had turned the bare rock into a living work of art! Standing before this work, achieved by the hands of men, the thoughtful child of our modern age first feels the greatness of antiquity in its all powerful might. It was not clever calculation, not profit, nor utility, but the most elevated feeling of gratitude to God, that caused such a work to be executed; a work worthy of and fit for the immortal, inconceivable, almighty Deity to whom the ancients dedicated it in high veneration for the Everlasting and the Incomprehensible' After this, the judgment of the learned historian of architecture may perhaps seem tame; but its sobriety gives it a weight which is scarcely accorded to the best assorted collection of rhetorical phrases by the modern reader. 'The largest of the rock-temples at Ipsambul,' says Mr. Fergusson,¹ 'is the finest of its class known to exist anywhere. Externally, the façade is about a hundred feet in height, and adorned by four of the most magnificent colossi in Egypt, each seventy feet in height, and representing the king, Rameses II., who caused the exca-

with Ammon, Phthah, and Horus. | to him any very elevated or intense
(*Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 190 c | religious feeling
Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii | ¹ *History of Architecture*, vol i
p 91, 1st ed.) We cannot ascribe | p 113, 1st ed.

vation to be made. It may be because they are more perfect than any other now found in that country, but certainly nothing can exceed their calm majesty and beauty, or be more entirely free from the vulgarity and exaggeration which is generally a characteristic of colossal works of this sort.'

Among the other great works of this great king were the completion of the 'Hall of Columns' at Karnak,¹ of the temple begun by Seti at Abydos,² and of that founded but left very imperfect by Amenôphis III. at Luxor;³ the addition of pylons and colossi to the great temple of Phthah at Memphis,⁴ and the entire construction of new temples at Memphis, Heliopolis, Tanis, Beit el Walli, Der, Gurf Hussein, and elsewhere.⁵ At Kalabshe there is also 'a small but beautiful example, belonging to the age of Ramceses II., and remarkable for the beauty of its sculptured bas-reliefs, as well as for the bold Proto-Doric columns which adorn its vestibule.'⁶ In Nubia, Rameses introduced the practice of excavating the cells of the temples in the rock, and adding in front of the cells structural buildings consisting of courts and propylons—a combination which is extremely effective, since thus 'the sanctuary has all the imperishability and mystery of a cave,' while the remainder of the temple has at the same time the ample space, free play of light, and architectural effect of a building standing in the open air.⁷

¹ Fergusson, *History of Architecture* vol. i. p. 107, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 89, 1st ed.

² See the inscription translated by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 34–42, 1st ed.)

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 127; Fergusson, *History of Architecture*,

vol. i. p. 109, 1st ed.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 87, 1st ed.

⁵ Ibid. pp. 88, 90, 93, 94, &c.

⁶ Fergusson, *History of Architecture* vol. i. p. 113, 1st ed.

⁷ Ibid. pp. 113–14.

In the ornamentation of his buildings Rameses especially affected the employment of obelisks and colossi. Obelisks, which have ceased to exist, adorned his Sun temple at Heliopolis;¹ and two magnificent ones were added under his auspices to the Luxor edifice,² one of which has long attracted the admiration of all beholders in the commanding position which it now occupies on the Place de la Concorde at Paris. This monument, as measured by the French engineers,³ had an elevation of eighty two feet, and is exquisitely carved and proportioned. It is of a beautiful pink Syenite granite, and is covered with inscriptions, which have been recently translated by M. Chabas.⁴

The most imposing of all the colossi of Rameses, and indeed of all existing colossi, are those four giant forms already described⁵ which guard the portal of the great rock temple of Ipsambul. These, however, are not, strictly speaking, statues, but figures carved in the rock. Of actual statues the largest which can be definitely ascribed to Rameses II. is that whereof the torso remains in the ruins of the Rameseum, an 'image of his majesty,' which was originally fifty four feet high, and weighed nearly nine hundred tons!⁶ Dr Brugsch believes it to have been one of a pair, carved to adorn the entrance court of that magnificent edifice.⁷ Another colossus of large dimensions was erected by Rameses in the temple of Phthah at Memphis, and is now lying, prostrate and mutilated, amid the ruins of that struc-

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i p. 93, 1st ed. with his measure of it (*Records of the Past* vol. iv p. 17).

² Ibid. p. 80.

³ See the *Description de l'Égypte*, Antiquités, vol. i p. 220. M. Reignusson makes its height 77 ft (*History of Architecture* vol. i p. 117), M. Chabas closely agrees with his measure of it (*Records of the Past* vol. iv pp. 10-21).

⁴ See p. 318.

⁵ See above, vol. i p. 223.

⁶ *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 80, 1st ed.

ture, near the modern Arab village of Mitrahenny.¹ This also represented the king himself. Colossi of Seti, his father, were erected by him at Abydos, Memphis, and Thebes;² and smaller ones of his favourite wife and some of his daughters have been found at Mitrahenny, a little below the surface of the soil.³ Colossal images of gods cut in the native rock, elaborately painted, ornament the interior of the greater Ipsambul temple,⁴ while the façade of the smaller one exhibits six rock cut figures of great size, four representing Rameses himself, and two his queen, Nefertari Mitenmut.⁵

The Semitic blood which flowed in the veins of Rameses⁶ showed itself alike in his physiognomy and in his actions. He seems to have been the handsomest of all the Egyptian kings. A good forehead, a large well formed slightly aquiline nose, a well shaped mouth with lips not too full, and a thoughtful pensive eye, constitute an *ensemble* which, if not faultless, is at any rate vastly superior to the ordinary royal type in Egypt, and would attract attention among any series of kings.⁷ Much physical vigour accompanied this beauty of face. Rameses was the father of fifty nine sons and sixty daughters,⁸ many of whom he outlived, his great natural strength enabling him, despite the strain which he put upon it by his active life and general habits, to attain almost to the full term of life

¹ Brugsch, *Hist of Egypt*, vol ii p 87, 1st ed. Compare vol i p 44

² Ibid vol ii pp 84, 88, &c

³ Ibid pp 87-8

⁴ See the *Denkmaler* pt iii pl 190 c and compare Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol ii. p 91, 1st ed

⁵ For a representation see the *Denkmaler*, pt iii pl 192 b

⁶ See above, p 300

⁷ Buch says (*Ancient Egypt* p

129) 'Rameses exhibits in his features the refined Asiatic, different from the Nigritic type of the kings of the eighteenth dynasty'. But no writer, so far as I am aware, has called attention to the nobility and beauty of the face, especially as represented in some of the statues.

⁸ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 111, 1st ed

assigned to man by the Psalmist¹ He began to reign, as we have seen,² at the age of ten or twelve, and continued on the throne, according to the express evidence of the monuments,³ sixty seven years He



Head of Rameses II

thus died at the age of seventy-seven or seventy nine—a length of life which is rarely reached by Orientals

The large number of his children makes it clear that Rameses was a polygamist. He appears to have

¹ 'Though men be so strong that they come to fourscore years (Ps xc, 10) *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1, p. 401. Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 128. Here, for once, Manetho gave the right number of years (*Fragment Hist. Gr.* vol. II p. 533)

² Supra, p. 301

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II p. 110, 1st ed. Lammant,

had two principal wives, Isi nefert and Nefertai mitenmut,¹ one of whom he may have espoused after the death of the other. He also married, in what we must suppose legitimate nuptials, Neferura Urmaa, the daughter of the king of the Khita. Three wives, however, cannot have borne him 119 children between them; and it is thus clear that, besides his wives, he must have maintained a seraglio of concubines, whose number is not likely to have fallen short of twenty.² Such an institution was Semitic, and well known in Asia; but hitherto it had not prevailed in Egypt, where monogamy, always compulsory on private persons,³ had up to this time been practised also by the monarchs.

Of all his sons the one most dear to him was Shaemuas, or Khamus⁴—the child of his favourite queen, Isi nefert—who was ‘a learned and pious prince, devoted especially to the religious service of Phthah,’ living mainly in the temple of that god at Memphis, and keeping himself aloof from state affairs ‘more than was quite pleasing to his father.’⁵ This prince was designated as his successor, and in the meantime held the office of high-priest of Phthah in Memphis, in which capacity he exerted himself to restore the worship of the holy Apis bulls—incarnations, as it was believed, of Phthah⁶ which had fallen into desuetude. The necropolis of the bulls, the so called Serapeum,⁷ was

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, Appendix Table ii.

² Ibid. p. 111. This would allow the concubines an average of five children each, which is quite as many as would be at all probable.

³ See above vol. i. p. 552; and compare Herod. ii. 92 with Wilkinson's note (Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 127, 2nd ed.).

⁴ Buch uses the former (*Ancient*

Egypt, p. 129), Brugsch the latter form (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 111, 1st ed.).

⁵ Brugsch, *l. c.*

⁶ See above, vol. i. p. 414, note 2.

⁷ For a description and plan of the Serapeum see M. Mariette's *Cherche de Monuments et de dessins découverts ou exécutés pendant le déblaiement du Sérapéum de Memphis*, Paris, 1856.

beautified and enlarged by Shaemuas, whose buildings are celebrated in various inscriptions as 'splendid works' deserving of the highest commendation. Unfortunately he died in his father's lifetime, and was thus unable to show what architectural successes he might have achieved if he had had at his disposal the revenues of a kingdom instead of the allowance of a prince apparent.

His affection for this son, and for his two principal wives, shows that the disposition of Rameses II. was in some respects amiable, although upon the whole his character is one which scarcely commends itself to our approval. Professing in his early years extreme devotion to the memory of his father,¹ he lived to show himself his father's worst enemy, and to aim at obliterating his memory by erasing his name from the monuments on which it occurred, and in many cases substituting his own.² Amid a great show of regard for the deities of his country and for the ordinances of the established worship, he contrived that the chief result of all that he did for religion should be the glorification of himself.³ Other kings had arrogated to themselves a certain qualified divinity, and after their deaths had sometimes been placed by some of their successors on a par with the real national gods,⁴ but it remained for Rameses to associate himself during his lifetime with such leading deities as Phthah,

¹ See the inscription in the temple of Abydos translated by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii, pp. 34-42, 1st ed.) where Rameses says of himself: 'His breast had a tender feeling towards his parent and his heart beat for him who brought him up' (p. 34). And again: 'The most beautiful thing to behold, the best thing to hear, is a child with a

thankful breast, whose heart beats for his father; who store my heart urges me to do what is good for Menephthah' (p. 36).

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 41, 1st ed.

³ See above, pp. 318-19.

⁴ As Usutaten III. by Thothmes III. (supra, p. 212).

Ammon, and Horus, and to claim equally with them the religious regards of his subjects.¹ He was also, as already observed, the first to introduce into Egypt the degrading custom of polygamy and the corrupting influence of a harem. Even his bravery, which cannot be denied, loses half its merit by being made the constant subject of boasting; and his magnificence ceases to appear admirable when we think at what a cost it displayed itself.² If, with most recent writers upon Egyptian history,³ we identify him with the 'king who knew not Moses,' the builder of Pithom and Raamses, the first oppressor of the Israelites, we must add some darker shades to the picture, and look upon him as a cruel and ruthless despot who did not shrink from inflicting on innocent persons the severest pain and suffering.

Rameses II was succeeded by his fourteenth⁴ and eldest surviving son, Menephthah, , the Ammenephthes of Manetho.⁵ On the death of his brother, Shaemuas, he had been appointed governor of Memphis,⁶ and had been admitted to a share in the administration of affairs, if not actually associated,⁷ by

¹ See the *Denkmaier*, pt. iii pl 190 c.

² Lenoirant says 'Ce n'est qu'avec un véritable sentiment d'honneur qu'on peut songer aux milliers de captifs qui durent mourir sous le bâton des gardes-chiourmes, ou bien victimes des fatigues excessives et des privations de toute nature, en élevant en qualité de forçats les gigantesques constructions auxquelles se plaisait l'insatiable orgueil du monarque égyptien. Dans les monuments du règne de Ramsès II il n'y a pas une pierre, pour ainsi dire, qui n'ait coûté une vie humaine. (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol i. p 423)

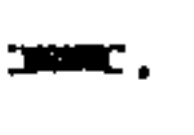
³ Bieh, *Ancient Egypt*, p 125, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii pp 98-9, 1st ed., Lenoirant, *Manuel*, 1 s c; Chabas, *Recherches pour servir à l'histoire de l'Égypte aux temps de l'Époque*, pp 147 8, &c

⁴ So Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 111, 1st ed. Bieh (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 129) says the 'fourteenth.'

⁵ Ap Syncell. *Chronograph* p 72 B and 73 B.

⁶ Bieh, 1 s c.

⁷ M Chabas thinks that he was formally associated. (*Recherches*, &c, p 83)

his father. On his accession he took the throne name of Hotep-hi ma,   'he who trusts in truth,' together with the epithets Bai en ra,¹   ,  , and Meri-amon,   . Inheriting from his father an empire which was everywhere at peace with its neighbours, he might have been expected to have had a tranquil and prosperous reign, and to have carried on the burst of architectural energy which had manifested itself under his father and his grandfather. The power, however, which directs human affairs, wholly disappointed these expectations. The unclouded prospect of his early years gave place, after a brief interval, to storm and tempest of the most fearful kind; a terrible invasion carried fire and sword into the heart of his dominions; and he had scarcely escaped this danger when internal troubles broke out—a subject race, highly valued for the services which it was forced to render, insisted on quitting the land; a great loss was incurred in an attempt to compel it to remain; rebellion broke out in the south; and the reign, which had commenced under such fair auspices, terminated in calamity and confusion. Menephthah was quite incompetent to deal with the difficult circumstances in which he found himself placed—he hesitated, temporised, made concessions, retracted them—and finally conducted Egypt to a catastrophe from which she did not recover for a generation.

During his early years Menephthah seems to have remained in peace and quietness, untroubled by discontent at home, unmolested by foreign enemies. At this time he employed himself in further enlarging the cities of New Tanis and Pa Ramessu,² which had been

¹ *I.e.* 'soul of Ra'

Bunsen, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii.

² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 132, p. 118, 1st ed.

built by his father, and in setting up rock-tablets at Silsiliis and elsewhere¹ He also carried on certain minor works in connection with the great temple of Phthah at Memphis, where he set up a statue of himself in black basalt, which is now in the Museum of Boulaq² He nowhere, however, attempted the erection of any great edifice, and it is certainly true to say that he 'does not rank with those Pharaohs who have transmitted their remembrance to posterity by grand buildings and the construction of new temples, or by the enlargement of such as already existed'³ His monuments are indeed completely insignificant, and, though widely spread and tolerably numerous, have a 'mean character'⁴ about them, which is especially surprising when we compare with them the noble examples accomplished by his father and his grand father. Menephthah evidently did not inherit their ambition. He was not, however, of so elevated a temper as to be free from the blemish of personal vanity; and this defect in his character led him to be guilty of the meanness of appropriating to himself the works of former kings by the erasure of their names and the substitution of his own⁵—a practice wholly unjustifiable. Such erasures had previously been sometimes made out of hatred and as a punishment; Menephthah made them for the mere purpose of self glorification, and was indifferent whether he wronged a friend or an enemy

¹ See the *Denkmaler*, pt iii pl 200 a

² Chabas, *Recherches pour servir à l'histoire de l'Egypte aux temps de l'Étode*, p 82

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol i p 115, 1st ed M Chabas' at

tempt to contravene this statement (*Recherches*, &c, pp 80 3) completely justifies it

⁴ Brugsch, l s c.

⁵ Ibid p 116 Compare Chabas, *Recherches*, &c, p 82.

The foreign relations of Menephthah were during this period satisfactory. He maintained the alliance with the Khita which his father had concluded after the close of his great Asiatic war, and strengthened the bonds of amity by allowing corn to be exported from Egypt for the sustentation of the Hittite people,¹ when their crops failed them. He received into Egypt as new settlers several tribes of Bedouins,² who were desirous of exchanging their nomadic habits for a more settled life, and established them in the rich lands about the city of Pithom. He retained the foreign conquests of his predecessors in Lower Syria, Philistia and Canaan, carefully supervising their administration by means of continual despatches and messengers.³ At the same time he guarded with tolerable efficiency his north western frontier, prevented any serious irruption of the Libyan tribes, and, up to his fifth year, succeeded in maintaining general tranquillity and prosperity.

But suddenly, in his fifth year,⁴ he had to meet an important attack. An African chief, Marmariu, son of Deid,⁵ collected a numerous army in the tract adjacent to Egypt upon the north-west, composed in part of native Africans, in part of auxiliaries, and, crossing the Egyptian frontier, carried fire and sword over the western and south western Delta, even threatening the great cities of Heliopolis and Memphis. The auxiliaries

¹ Chabas p. 87. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 113, 1st ed.; *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 43.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 127-8, 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* pp. 126-7. Compare Chabas, *Recherches*, &c., pp. 95-7.

⁴ On this date, see Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 123, 1st ed.; and compare his work *On the Libyan Peoples in the Twentieth and Eighteenth Centuries before Christ*.

⁵ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 42. Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 131. Chabas, *Recherches*, &c., p. 80. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 118, 1st ed. Lenoir et al., *Mémoires d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 420.

consisted of five principal nations, whose names, carefully transliterated from the hieroglyphics, would seem to have been the Aka usha, the Tursha, the Luku, the Shartana, and the Skeklusha. It has been proposed to regard these tribes as Caucasian races, who at this time had migrated into Libya, having perhaps been previously prisoners of war, whom Rameses II. had brought from Asia to Egypt in his military expeditions;¹ but the supposed migration has no historical basis. The expeditions of Rameses II. never approached the Caucasus, and the names are only with great violence brought into accord with those of Caucasian peoples.² A more plausible theory identifies the races with various tribes of Europeans occupying the northern Mediterranean, and supposes the auxiliaries of Marmanu to have come by sea to his aid, and to have designed a permanent settlement in Africa. The names certainly appear at first sight to lend themselves to this view, the resemblance being considerable between Akausha and Achaïoi, Tursha and Tyrseni or Tusci, Shartana or Shardana and Sardoni, Sheklusha and Sikeloï or Siceli; while Luku is not far from Lagyes or Ligures, a people of the western Mediterranean. The first appearance of European races upon the stage of history must have the greatest interest for the modern world, in which Europe plays the first part; and if the identifications of M. de Rouge³ are allowed, it must be granted that here Europe first steps upon the scene, exhibiting herself as

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 123-4, 1st ed.

² Dr. Brugsch identifies the Aka usha with the Achæans of the Caucasus, the Shartana with the Chantani, the Tursha with the Taurians, the Luku with the Lagyes

He also suggests that the Uashash of the time of Rameses III. are the Ossetes, and the 'Qaiqasha' the 'Caucasians' (See his *History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 124.)

³ *Revue Archéologique* for 1867, pp. 167 et seqq.

a great 'aggressive power in the fourteenth century before our era, a hundred years anterior to the earliest traditional date for the Trojan war,¹ and in the actual lifetime of Moses. So extraordinary a revelation has naturally great attractions for many minds in an age when novelty is more esteemed than sobriety of judgment, if not even than historic truth; and thus M. de Rouge's view has found many advocates among Egyptologists,² and has approved itself to some general scholars of distinguished reputation.³ But the difficulties in the way of its acceptance are great, and perhaps it is as probable that the races in question were native African tribes otherwise unknown to us as that they really consisted of the Achæans, Etruscans, Sardinians, Sicilians, and Ligians of Europe.

We have no estimate left us of the number of the invaders; but it certainly exceeded 20,000, and probably did not fall much short of 40,000 men.⁴ The Libyans, the Maxyes, and the Kahaka, who were Marman's subjects, formed the main bulk of the force, contingents of no great size being furnished by the Akausha, Tursha, Luku, Shartana, and Sheklusha, who were not his subjects, but 'foreign mercenaries.'⁵ The attack seems to have been made towards the apex

¹ The date of Menephthah is probably about B.C. 1250. The Trojan war took place about B.C. 1250, according to Herodotus, Thucydides, and the author of the Life of Homer.

² As M. Chabas *Études sur l'Antiquité historique*, pp. 187-98, and *Recherches pour servir à l'Histoire de l'Égypte*, p. 84; Lenoir, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. i, p. 420; Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 130, &c.

³ See Mr. Gladstone's *Troilus Mundi*, p. 141; and his *Homeric Synchronism*, pp. 130-43.

⁴ As the slain and the captives together exceeded 18,000, while very many escaped with Marman, the smaller estimate of the text would be the least possible, while the larger would be a highly probable number.

⁵ Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 118, § 13, 1st ed.

of the Delta, and was at first completely successful. The frontier towns were taken by assault and 'turned into heaps of rubbish ;' ¹ the Delta was entered upon, and a position taken up in the nome of Prosôpis,² from which both Memphis and Heliopolis were menaced. Menepthah hastily fortified these cities,³ or rather (we must suppose) strengthened their existing defences, and, making Memphis his own head quarters, proceeded to collect an army, partly of Egyptians, partly of mercenaries, wherewith to oppose the enemy. He did not, however, venture to take the command in person, but pretending an express command of Phthah, whom he had seen in vision, forbidding him to quit Memphis,⁴ he sent his troops under generals to encounter the enemy. A great battle was fought in the nome of Prosôpis on the third of Epphi (May 18), in which, after the struggle had lasted six hours,⁵ the Libyans and their allies were completely defeated and forced to fly. Marmai himself was among the first to quit the field, and he did so with such haste as to leave behind him not only his camp equipage, but his bow, his quiver, and his sandals.⁶ His wife and children, who had accompanied him to the fight, seem also to have escaped, together with some considerable number of his soldiers.⁷ But above eight thousand⁸ were slain

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 117, § 4, 1st ed

² The nome of Prosôpis lay between the Canopic and Sebennytic branches of the Nile, commencing at the point of their separation

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p 41, § 6

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt* vol ii p 119, § 29, 1st ed

⁵ *Ibid* p 120, § 33, *Records of the Past*, vol iv p 44

⁶ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol

ii p 120 § 35, 1st ed. M. Chabas omits the 'sandals' (*Recherches pour servir, &c*, p 88)

⁷ Chabas, p 85, Brugsch, *lsc*

⁸ There is some difficulty in making out the number of those slain, owing to omissions and repetitions. Birch estimates it at 19,535 persons (*Ancient Egypt*, p 131). But the number of the hands and members brought in is given as 8,481 only. (See Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 122, 1st ed.)

in the battle and the pursuit, and above nine thousand were made prisoners¹. The defeat was total and irremediable. Marmianu's power was shattered, and he is heard of no more. The mercenaries, of whatever race they were, learned by experience the wisdom of leaving the Libyans to fight their own battles, and of not again themselves crossing swords with the Egyptians. When the next occasion came for a Libyan invasion of Egypt, no mercenaries accompanied them, and though the Sheklusha and Tursha are still occasionally found among the enemies of Egypt, the majority of the allies of Marmianu abstained from further hostile movement. The Shartana even entered the Egyptian service, and came to hold a place among the most trusted of the Egyptian troops².

It was probably not many years³ after this great victory over the Libyans and their allies had raised Menephthah to a high pitch of glory, both in his own eyes and in those of his subjects, that a demand was made upon him by the chief of a subject race, long domiciled in Egypt, which must have seemed to him wholly preposterous. Moses, a Hebrew brought up in the court of his predecessor, but for many years self-exiled from Egypt, appeared before him and requested permission to conduct his people out into the desert, which bounded Egypt on the east, the distance of three days' journey, in order that they might hold a feast and offer sacrifice to their God, Jehovah.⁴ Menephthah,

¹ The exact number is given as 9,376 (Bursch. l. c.)

² See the *Annals of Ramesses III.* in the 'Great Harris Papyrus' (*Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 45).

³ The eighth year of Menephthah is the latest found upon the monu-

ments. He may have reigned some time longer, but the twenty years of Africanus (ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 72 B) are probably in excess.

⁴ Ex. v. 1.

not unnaturally, refused, fearing to lose¹ the services of more than half a million of bondsmen, who, if they once quitted the country and found themselves free, would not be likely to return. At the same time, to punish the nation for its temerity, and to keep down its aspirations, he increased the burden of its task-work, and exacted an amount which it was impossible for them to perform¹. Moses, however, still persisting in his demand, and alarming the king and his court by a series of 'plagues,' continually increasing in severity, and culminating in the 'destruction of the first born,' the required permission was at length obtained; and on a certain day the nation, carefully organised by its leaders, quitted Egypt and entered the desert². But Menepthah had scarcely yielded when he repented of his weakness. Gathering together all the force that he could hastily muster, horse and foot and chariots of these last more than six hundred—he followed after the Hebrews and overtook them 'encamping by the sea, at Pi hahiroth, before Baal Zephon.'³ It is scarcely the business of the general historian of ancient Egypt to enter into the difficult question of what sea is intended, and what route the Hebrews pursued upon quitting Egypt. The traditional belief of both the Egyptians and the Israelites that the sea was the Red Sea⁴ is a fact of such vast weight that, against it, geographical speculations and ingenious explanations of

¹ Ex v 6 19

² Ibid xii 37.

³ Ibid. xiv 9

⁴ The belief of the Egyptians is indicated by Polyhistor who quotes the opinion of the *men of Memphis*, that Moses watched the ebb of the *tide*, which could only be on the southern side of the isthmus (*Fr agm*

Hist Gr vol iii. p 223). The Hebrew tradition appears by the fact that the *Yam Suph* in the later Scriptures is always the Red Sea never a portion of the Mediterranean (1 Kings ix. 26, Jer xlix 21, &c) It is also sufficiently proved by the uniform rendering of the LXX.

names¹ sink into insignificance, and are, to say the least, quite insufficient to establish a theory which runs counter to the belief of, at any rate, three millennia. But, leaving this question on one side, we may be content to state in general terms the issue. Favoured by 'a strong east wind,'² the Hebrews made their way



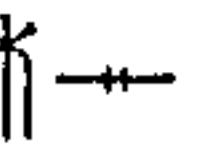
Head of Menephtah

upon dry ground across the arm of the sea that had seemed to hem them in. On attempting to follow them along the same route, the Egyptians were overwhelmed by the returning waters, the chariot wheels were entangled in the soft ooze; the horses and their riders

¹ Dr Brugsch's paper read before the International Congress of Orientalists in 1874, and published in the second volume of the English version of his *History of Egypt* (pp. 338-68, 1st ed.), is beyond doubt exceedingly ingenious but it has failed to convince more than a select few.

² Ex. xiv. 21

perished, the chosen captains were drowned 'the depths covered them; they sank to the bottom as a stone.'¹ All the troops that had entered on the dangerous path were destroyed; a great slaughter was accomplished, and a blow received which was felt throughout the empire as a terrible calamity.

But the Pharaoh himself escaped.² Menephthah, with the remnant of his host, returned to Egypt and resumed the peaceful occupations which first the invasion of Marmar, and then the Hebrew troubles, had interrupted. But now revolt seems to have shown itself in the south.³ A pretender, named Amon mes or Amon meses,  or , belonging to a city called Hakheb or Kheb,⁴ which was situated near the modern Beni souef, on the Nile opposite the Fayoum, came forward, and was perhaps accepted as monarch by the Thebans. Menephthah died, leaving his crown to his son, Seti Menephthah , or Seti II; but this monarch was not generally acknowledged,⁵ and a time of confusion and

¹ Ex. xv. 15.

² Kisch (Comment on Exodus pp. 192-3) and others argue from Ex. xiv. 28, and xv. 9-12, that the Pharaoh perished; but I agree with Wilkinson (Ancient Egyptians, vol. i. p. 54) that 'there is no authority in the writings of Moses for supposing that the Pharaoh was drowned. On the contrary, it seems to me that the omission of any reference to the Pharaoh's death is the strongest possible indication that he survived.'

³ Brugsch, History of Egypt, vol. ii. p. 130 1st ed. The monuments leave the history of this period in

much obscurity, and it must be granted to be uncertain whether Amon mes revolted against Menephthah, or against his son, Seti II. I have been induced to place Amon mes directly after Menephthah chiefly by his position in Manetho's lists (ap. Syncell. Chronograph. pp. 720 and 731).

⁴ Eusebius in the Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology, vol. i. p. 377; Lenoirant, Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne, vol. i. p. 433.

⁵ Manetho omits Seti Menephthah altogether. His name is sometimes found with marks of erasure upon his monuments. (See Birch, Ancient Egypt, p. 135.)

disorder set in, which is characterised by Rameses III as a period of complete anarchy, when Egypt was without a master, and the various pretenders to power strove with and massacred one the other¹. Amon mes (the Ammen e-mes of Manetho²) reigned for a time—perhaps five years³ at Thebes, and took the title of *hak Uas*, ꜥꜣ, ‘King of Thebes,’ which he attached to his name within his escutcheon⁴. He designed and finished his tomb in the Biban el Moluk, an excavation of moderate pretensions⁵. Upon his death, Seti Menephthah appears to have been recognised as monarch by the Egyptians generally,⁶ and to have transferred his abode to Thebes, where he built a small temple,⁷ and erected a statue of himself, which is now in the British Museum.⁸ He also carried on a war in the southern part of his dominions, and set up a tablet as a conqueror on the rocks near Abu Simbel⁹.

In countenance Seti II. was remarkably handsome. He had a long well formed nose, nearly in line with his forehead, arched eyebrows, a good eye with full eyelid, a short upper lip, a cleanly cut mouth, and a delicate rounded chin. He seems, however, to have been wanting in energy and decision. Before he had been long seated upon the throne, a high official named

¹ See the ‘Great Harris Papyrus,’ translated in the *Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 46, § 3 and compare *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. i. pp. 359–60, and Chabas, *Recherches pour servir*, &c., pp. 9–15.

² Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 73 B.

³ So Manetho, according to Africanus (Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 72 C). Eusebius gives Manetho’s number as 26 (*Chron. Can. pars i. ch. xx. § 4*).

See Chabas *Recherches*, p. 77.

⁵ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 130. *Denkmalen*, pt. iii. pl. 201 a.

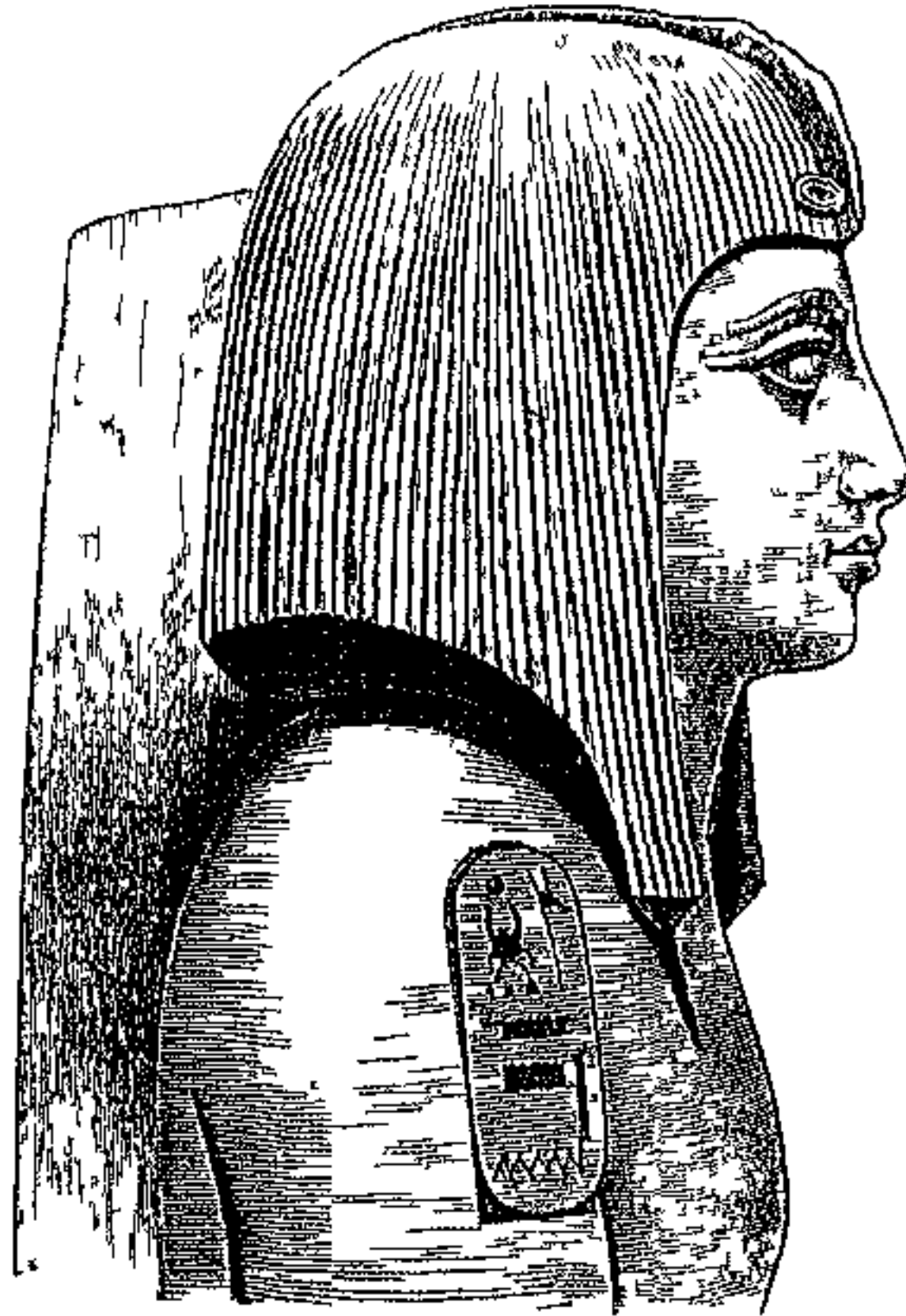
⁶ Seti II.’s monuments are found at Thebes, at Silsili and at Ipsambul in Nubia. There is also evidence of his rule being acknowledged in the extreme north-east (Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 132, 1st ed.).

⁷ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 135.

⁸ *Ibid.*

⁹ *Denkmalen*, pt. iii. pl. 201 a.

Bai brought forward, as a rival claimant of the kingly power, a certain Siphthah,¹ who is thought to have been a son of Amou mes,² and who was certainly a native of the same city.³ Seti seems to have made but little resistance to this antagonist. According to one authority,⁴ he accepted from him the title of 'Prince



Head of Seti II

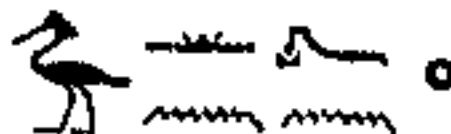
of Cush,' and consented to act as his viceroy in the southern provinces; but it is perhaps more probable that he was either killed in battle, or dethroned and murdered by his successful rival.

¹ Bai says, in an inscription that he 'put away falsehood and gave honour to the truth, inasmuch as he set the king upon his father's throne' (Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 134, 1st ed., Chabas, *Recherches*, p. 128.)

² Brugsch, *lsc*; Eissenlohn in the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. i pp. 377-8.

³ Eissenlohn, *lsc*.

⁴ Lenoirant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 431.

Siphthah, , who now became king, took the epithet of Meri-en phthah, 'beloved of Phthah,' and the throne name of Ra kht en sotep er ra,¹ .

It would seem that, to strengthen himself in his usurped position, he married a princess of the Rameside family, who may have been, but is certainly not proved to have been,² a daughter of Menephthah and a sister of Seti II. Her name appears on the monuments as Ta user or Ta usert,³ which Manetho changed into Thuôris.⁴ She seems to have shared the royal authority with her husband, and perhaps enjoyed it during the term of seven years, as Manetho (who, however, mistook her sex) recorded.⁵ But the joint reign was troubled and inglorious. Siphthah did not engage in any wars, and the only important work that he completed was his tomb in the Biban el Moluk, which was an excavation of some pretensions.⁶

A period of anarchy followed the death of Siphthah, and separated the nineteenth dynasty from the twentieth. 'For many years' we are told, 'the country was without a master; the chief authority belonged to the governors of cities, who massacred one the other. After a time a certain Arsu, a Syrian, became chief among them, the whole country offering him homage; but his companions plundered all who possessed any wealth. Moreover, the gods were treated like the men; and no one any more made offerings to

¹ Chabas, *Recherches*, p. 77

² Lenoirant says categorically: 'Siphthah pour légitimer son pouvoir, épousa une fille de Ménephthah I la princesse Taouset' (*Manuel*, vol. i pp. 433-4). But this is elevating a conjecture into an historical fact.

³ See the *Denkmaler*, pt. iii pl. 201 a

⁴ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 73 c. *Isob. Chron. Can. l. 8 c.*

⁵ Ibid.

⁶ *Denkmaler*, pt. iii pl. 201 a and b

the temples ' ¹ Once more, a dynasty of the highest distinction, one which had ruled Egypt gloriously for above a century, ² and covered the country with magnificent works, expired amid clouds and gloom. Internal rebellion and external attack combined to produce a general state of confusion and anarchy, which threatened the complete dissolution of the whole fabric of Egyptian society. For several years this state of things continued, and the sufferings of the people must have been great. Had the nation not possessed extraordinary vitality, recovery from so extreme a state of depression and exhaustion would have been impossible; but there was *that* in the Egyptian character which almost defied adverse circumstances, and enabled the monarchy to rise again and again, like the fabled giant, after being stricken to the earth, and to vindicate to itself again and again a foremost place among the leading kingdoms of the world. We shall find Egypt under the twentieth dynasty occupying almost as commanding a position as that which we have shown her to have held under the eighteenth and the nineteenth.

The civilisation of Egypt under these two most important dynasties has now, according to the general plan pursued in the present work, to be considered, and will be divided under our three customary heads—Art, Religion, and Manners.

¹ See the authorities quoted above (p 337 note) and compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II p. 137, 1st ed. Amid much diversity in details there is a general agreement that a time of anarchy and confusion is described when there was no central authority, and the gods were

treated with neglect

² Nearly two centuries, according to the Manetho of Eusebius (*Chron. Can.* I sc, ap. Syncell *Chronograph* p. 73 o) but this is certainly an over-estimate (See above, p. 14)

Whatever may be thought with respect to other departments of art, it cannot be questioned that Egyptian architecture reached its highest perfection under these two dynasties. The Ramesseum, the temples of Medinet Abou and Ipsambul, the palace temples or temple palaces of Karnak and Luxor, and the rock cut tombs of the Bihan el Moluk, belong alike to the period, and give it an architectural pre-eminence over every other period in Egyptian history, which only profound ignorance can doubt or extreme capriciousness dispute. The latest historian of architecture has given us his verdict, that the hypostylé hall of Seti I at Karnak is 'the greatest of man's architectural works,'¹ and the entire building, of which it is a part, 'the noblest effort of architectural magnificence ever produced by the hand of man.'² The same writer has declared, though familiar with the grand examples at Ellora and Elephanta, that the rock cut temple of Ipsambul is 'the finest of its class known to exist anywhere.'³ Intelligent travellers are struck by the Theban edifices—the work almost exclusively of these dynasties—far more than by all the other constructions of the Pharaohs.⁴ Most of them are disappointed by the Pyramids; there is scarcely one whose heart is not stirred by a thrill of admiration as he contemplates Karnak or Luxor.

If we inquire what exactly constituted the pre-eminence of these Pharaonic works over the remainder, the readiest answer would seem to be that they exhibited more strikingly than any others the combination

¹ Fergusson, *History of Architecture*, vol. 1, p. 108, 1st ed.

² *Ibid* p. 100

³ *Ibid* p. 113.

See W. Palmer's *Egyptian Chronicles*, vol. 1 'Introduction,' p. xv; Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, Introduction, pp. xxxv-xxxvi, &c.

of enormous mass and size with a profusion of the most elaborate ornamentation. The Pyramids are grander structures, far more massive, and—at any rate in two instances—covering a larger area; but they are at present, and probably always were,² entirely devoid of ornament, perfectly plain constructions, intended to produce their whole effect upon the spectator by mere hugeness and solid massiveness. The Theban palace temples have this quality in a less degree than the Pyramids, but still they have it largely. They cover *nearly* as much ground as the greatest of the Pyramids; they contain blocks of stone as enormous, and even their material bulk, though very inferior, impresses the mind almost as much, being more manifest and appreciable. With this quality of vast size they united a wealth of varied ornamentation to which a parallel scarcely exists anywhere else. The buildings presented a long vista of gateways, and courts, and colonnades, and pillared halls, led up to by avenues of sphinxes or of colossi and themselves adorned with colossi or with tall tapering obelisks, which shot up above the general horizontal line of the courts and halls, as the pinnacles and towers and spires of a modern cathedral raise themselves above the line of the nave and choir. Within and without, on the massive gate towers, on the walls of chambers and of

¹ The 'Great Pyramid of Gizeh covers an area of 548,696 square feet, the 'Second Pyramid' one of 499,849 square feet. The area covered by the Palace-Temple of Karnak is estimated at 430,000 square feet (Teigussen, *History of Architecture*, vol. i. pp. 85 and 106).

² Dean Stanley, quoting 'Herodotus and others' as his authorities, expresses a belief that the 'smooth

outsides of the Pyramids were covered with sculptures.' (*Sinai and Palestine*, 'Introduction,' p. lv.) But the stone casing of the Second Pyramid, which still in part exists, shows no trace of any such ornamentation, and Herodotus speaks of nothing but a short legend in the hieroglyphic character on one of the Pyramids (ii. 125).

courts, on the ceilings, on the very pillars themselves, everywhere, on every side, whithersoever the eye could turn itself, elaborate sculptures representing gods and kings, and battle scenes, and graceful forms of vegetable life, were to be seen, all glowing with warm tints, and enchanting the eye with a blaze of gorgeous yet well assorted hues. Form, colour, vastness, multiplicity, elaboration, mystery, combined to impress, astonish, and delight the spectator, who saw on every side of him stately gateways, huge colonnaded courts, long vistas of pillars, calm silent solemn colossi, slim obelisks

all bathed to some extent in the warm light of an Egyptian sky, and, even where the shade was deepest, resplendent with the hues of art¹

The combination of mass, however, with rich ornamentation is not the sole merit of the works which we are considering. There is a harmony in the forms and in the tints, a solemnity and majesty in the grand figures introduced, a skill in the employment of painting and sculpture as subsidiary to architecture, which have scarcely been surpassed as yet, and which are above all praise.² Moreover, the style is eminently

¹ On Egyptian painting as subsidiary to architecture, see above, vol. i. pp. 246-8 and pp. 288-9

² What Mr. Pungusson says of Egyptian architecture generally in summing up its characteristics is especially true of the period here spoken of: 'Taken altogether, we may perhaps safely assert that the Egyptians were the most essentially a building people of all those we are acquainted with, and the most generally successful in all they attempted in this way. The Greeks, it is true, surpassed them in refinement and beauty of detail, and in the class of sculpture with which they ornamented their buildings, while the

Gothic architects far excelled them in constructive cleverness, but with these exceptions no other styles can be put into competition with them. At the same time neither Grecian nor Gothic architects understood nor executed perfectly all the gradations of art, and the exact character that should be given to every form and every detail. Whether it was the pyramid-sided pyramid, the crowded and massive hypostyle hall, the playful pavilion, or the luxurious dwelling—in all these the Egyptian understood perfectly both how to make the general design express exactly what he wanted and to make every detail, and all the

suited to the country itself, to its climate, atmosphere, and general physical features; transport it elsewhere, and it would lose half its charm, but in Egypt, in the flat green valley of the Nile with its low wall of rock on either side, with its pellucid air, bright sun, and clear blue sky, it is as near perfection as anything human, or at least as anything within the circle of the arts. Whatever eulogy is justly bestowed on Egyptian architecture generally belongs especially to the great works of the eighteenth and nineteenth dynasties, which brought the style introduced by the monarchs of the twelfth to a pitch of excellence never exceeded, and rarely equalled, by the later Pharaohs.

In glyptic art the great glory of the period consisted in its colossi. The rock cut images of Rameses II at Ipsambul, the sitting figures of Amenôphis III near Luxor, remnants (as is thought¹) of an avenue of eighteen, and the enormous granite statue of Rameses the pride of his Rameseum at Karnak, are far more gigantic than any other human forms at present existing upon the earth, and impress the beholder with a feeling of combined awe and admiration, which with difficulty finds vent in expression. 'Nothing which now exists in the world,' says Dean Stanley of the last-named of these colossi, 'can give any notion

various materials, contribute to the general effect. They understood also better than any other nation, how to use sculpture in combination with architecture, and to make their colossi and avenues of sphinxes group themselves into parts of one great design, and at the same time to use historical paintings, fading by insensible degrees into hieroglyphics on the one hand and into sculpture on the other linking the whole together with the highest class of

phonetic utterance. With the most brilliant colouring, they thus harmonised all these arts into one great whole, unsurpassed by anything the world has seen during the thirty centuries of struggle and aspiration that have elapsed since the brilliant days of the great kingdom of the Pharaohs' (Fergusson *History of Architecture*, vol i p 126, 1st ed.)

¹ Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*, 'Introduction,' p xxxvi.

of what the effect must have been when the figure was erect. Nero towering above the Colosseum may have been something like it; but he was of bronze, and Rameses was of solid granite. Nero was standing without any object, Rameses was resting in awful majesty after the conquest of the whole of the then known world.¹ Miss Martineau's impression of the colossi of Amenôphis has been already noticed.² The Dean says of them:³ 'The sun was setting; the African range glowed red behind them; the green plain was dyed with a deeper green beneath them; and the shades of evening veiled the vast rents and fissures in their aged frames. They too sit, hands on knees, and they too are sixty feet high. As I looked back on them in the sunset, and they rose up in front of the background of the mountain, they seemed indeed as if they were part of it as if they belonged to some natural creation rather than to any work of art.' The Ipsambul figures are almost equally impressive. 'Nothing can exceed,' we are told, 'their calm majesty and beauty.'⁴ 'The wonderful façade surpasses every thing which our imagination can conceive of grandeur in a human work.'⁵ 'Standing before them, the thoughtful child of our modern age first feels the greatness of antiquity in its all powerful might.'⁶

It is the ordinary fault of colossi to be coarse and vulgar. Giants are unpleasing in actual life, and magnified representations of our fellow-men leave for the most part an unsatisfactory impression. The great colossi of the best Egyptian times are redeemed from

¹ Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*,
'Introduction,' p. xxxv.

² See above, p. 203.

³ Stanley, *Sinai and Palestine*,
'Introduction,' p. xxxvi.

⁴ Tengusson, *History of Architecture*, vol. 1 p. 113.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol.
ii p. 90, 1st ed.

⁶ Ibid p. 91.

vulgarity by their majestic pose, the stiff rigidity of their forms, and the stamp which they bear upon them of eternal changeless tranquillity. Profound repose, with something of a look of scorn, is their characteristic expression—they resemble beings above all human weaknesses, all human passions—Epicurean deities, unconcerned spectators of the lapse of ages and the follies and woes of man.

The bas reliefs of the period have two special features first, they are on a far larger scale than any previous ones; and secondly, they are more vigorous and animated. While domestic scenes continue to be represented in the tombs,¹ and religious ones both in the tombs and in the temples, the grand subject of war is for the first time introduced² all its phases receive careful treatment, the march, the encampment, the conflict, the siege, the pursuit; vast surfaces are covered with enormous pictures, into which hundreds of figures are introduced³—life, action, rapid movement, energy are portrayed, infinitely varied attitudes occur; the artists seem to have emancipated themselves from all the old conventional trammels, and represent the various circumstances of battle with equal truthfulness and spirit. Especially do they succeed in the delineation of the newly imported horse, now standing still, now trotting, now galloping at full speed; anon wounded, swerving, falling prone on the ground; or again prancing, rearing, turning round, feeding, about to lie down, extended at its ease; in every position equally well drawn and clearly studied from the life. Warfare is exhibited with all its multiform incidents.

¹ *Denkmäler*, pt iii pls 63 a, 64 a 76 b, 77 c &c

² *Ibid* pls 126 a, 130 a, 145 c, 154, 155, 158, &c

³ See above, vol i p 452 The representation given is only about one fourth of the actual scene upon the monument

Foreign races have their various costumes, physiognomies, armature, modes of fighting, war animals, style of chariot. Even the confusion and turmoil of a sea fight was regarded as within the range of the artists' powers, and adverse galleys engaged in actual combat exhibit to us the facts of naval warfare about the time of Moses¹

It is thought that the sculptures of the period which we are considering, whether in relief or 'in the round,' while they comprise the highest perfection to which Egyptian art ever attained, contain also distinct traces of the commencement of a decline.² The change occurred in the latter part of the reign of Rameses II. It consisted in a want of care and finish, an undue elongation of the figure,³ and an occasional rudeness and coarseness which are pronounced 'barbaric.'⁴ To the unprofessional eye, however, the difference is not very striking, and even the sculptures of Rameses III., the second king of the succeeding dynasty, seem to fall but little short of the great masterpieces of Seti I and Rameses II.

In the matter of religion, the most noticeable changes which occurred are connected with the disk worship, and with the alternate elevation and depression of the god Set. The cult of the disk, favoured by

¹ Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici* pl. cxvxi. The date of this scene is a little later than the time here assigned to it, since it belongs to the reign of Rameses III.

² Bich, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 129. Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 426. The latter writer says: 'Les monuments de Ramesès II nous font assister à une décadence radicale de la sculpture égyptienne, qui se précipite avec une incroyable rapidité à

mesure qu'on s'avance dans ce long règne. Il débute par des œuvres dignes de toute admiration, qui sont le *non plus ultra* de l'art égyptien; mais bientôt l'oppression universelle, qui pèse sur toute la contrée comme un joug de fer, tuit la source de la grande inspiration des arts. . . . A la fin du règne, la décadence est complète.

³ Bich, *Guido to Galleries*, p. 17.

⁴ Lenoirant. *l. c.*

Amenôphis III.,¹ and fully established by his son, Amenôphis IV., or Khuenaten, is chiefly remarkable on account of its exclusive character, the disk-worshippers opposing and disallowing all other cults and religious usages. Had Khuenaten been able to effect the religious revolution at which he aimed, the old Egyptian religion would have been destroyed, and its place would have been taken by a species of monotheism, in which the material Sun would have been recognised as the One and only Lord, and Ruler of the Universe. Ammon, Khem, Kneph, Phthah, Maut, Khonsu, Osiris, Horus, Isis, Thoth, would have disappeared, and sun worship, pure and simple, would have replaced the old complicated polytheism. But Egypt was not prepared for this change. The hieratic interest, naturally enlisted against it, was strong: the popular sentiment was opposed to change, and especially to innovations which could be traced to the influence of foreigners; disk worship never obtained any firm hold on the Egyptian people, it was a court religion, introduced and sustained by kings, for which the bulk of their subjects had neither regard nor reverence.

It was otherwise with the Set movement, which strove to elevate that god to the highest place in the Pantheon. There had been in Egypt from a remote antiquity a struggle between the devotees of Set and those of Osiris,² the esoteric meaning of which it is difficult to penetrate, for we can scarcely suppose that the followers of Set were actual devil worshippers. If the myth of Osiris was originally solar, and Set was merely night, which engulfs and destroys the sun, we can understand that there would be, in such a country

¹ Supra, p. 261.

² See above, vol. i p. 391.

as Egypt; persons to whom night might seem more admirable, more divine than day; who would therefore take the part of Set, and think that he had done well to slay his brother. And the division into the two camps, once begun, would continue long after its meaning had become lost to view. The Osiris worshippers were always saying hard things of Set and seeking to depress him below the point at which he stood in the original Pantheon. The Set worshippers resisted them. During the early monarchy, Set, on the whole, maintained a fairly high place.¹ With the success of the Shepherds (Hyksôs), however, he entered on a new position. Set was the patron deity of the first Hyksôs king of Egypt, who actually bore his name, and Set-worship thus received a new impulse and a new life under the Shepherd rule, until at last it was, in Lower Egypt at any rate, established as exclusively the state religion. When the Hyksôs were expelled, Set fell with them, not merely losing the position to which he had attained, but sinking to a comparatively subordinate place among the Egyptian deities. In this position he remained throughout the whole period of the eighteenth dynasty,² but with the accession of the nineteenth he once more came to the front. Rameses I named his eldest son Seti—a name commonly written with the figure of the god,³ and implying a dedication of his first born to that divinity. Seti, when he became king, naturally brought Set forward, not only worshipping him together with the other Osirid gods,⁴

¹ *Supra*, pp. 84 and 117.

² If there is any exception, it is in the reign of Thothmes III, who seems to have had a considerable regard for Set, and represents him

not infrequently on his monuments (*Der kmdler*, pt. iii pls. 33 g, 31 c, 35 b, 36 b).

³ See above, vol. i p. 391, note 3.

⁴ *Der kmdler*, pt. iii pl. 125 a.

but representing himself as receiving life at his hands.¹ Various princes of the Rameside house received a similar dedication with that of Seti I,² and Set's high rank among the gods was maintained beyond the period of the nineteenth dynasty into that of the twentieth.

With regard to the entire period of which we are treating, nothing is more remarkable than the absence of any strong favoritism, and the equitable division of religious regard among a large number of deities. On the whole, Ammon, now almost always viewed as Ammon-Ra, maintains his pre-eminence; but great attention is paid also to Horus, Kneph, Athor, Ra, Thoth, Phthah, Osiris, Isis, Mentu, Maut, Tum, Khonsu and Netpé. Sati also, Shu, Anuka, Seb, Tafné, and Sabak are frequently worshipped; and occasional honour is paid to Khem, Sefkh, Anubis, Nephthys, Ma, Sekhet, Neith, Taourt, Hapi, the Nile God, Heka, Seneb, and Bes. Altogether, about forty deities appear in the bas-reliefs as objects of religious adoration during the period, which is one at which the Pantheon obtains almost its full development. To give life seems to be the prerogative of (comparatively speaking) but few deities—as Ammon, Horus, Set, Kneph, Thoth, Mentu, Athor, and Netpé.³ It belongs to Set to teach the monarch to shoot.⁴ Ammon-Ra, Thoth, and Sefkh confer immortality by writing the monarch's name on the leaves of the tree of life.⁵ In battle, the king is compared commonly with Mentu, Set, or Bar (Baal),⁶ and is regarded as under the special protection of

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt. in pl. 121 d 74 a 82 c, 124 d 151 a, &c

² As Seti II Setnekht, Seti, and Set em-ua, sons of Rameses II, and others

⁴ *Ibid* pl. 86 b

⁵ *Ibid* pls. 37 a and 160

³ *Denkmaler*, pt. in pls. 30 a 33 b, 46 a, 55 b, 56 a, 58, 65 d, 72,

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii pp. 43, 71, 72, 75, 76, &c

Ammon-Ra¹ Living, he, is commonly entitled 'the Horus,' or 'the living Horus;' dead, 'the Osiris'

A further development of the doctrine, that the kings were actual gods,² also characterises the period under consideration. Hitherto the king worship had been one of language and sentiment;³ now it took a material shape. Thothmes III, at Semneh and Koummeh, associated his ancestor, Usutaten III, with Kneph and Totun on terms of complete equality,⁴ figuring him on the same scale, offering to him sacrificial feasts, and representing himself as receiving 'life' at his hands⁵ Amenhotep II, his son, followed his example.⁶ Other kings exalted Nefertari Aahmes to the rank of a goddess⁷ But it remained for Rameses II. not only to represent himself as worshipped,⁸ but actually to set up his own image for worship in a temple together with, and on a par with, images of three of the greatest gods namely, Ammon, Phthah, and Horus⁹ The deification of the reigning monarch became thus complete. It is scarcely possible that any other religious sentiment can have maintained much influence over men, when the doctrine was accepted, that in their actual monarch they had present with them a deity as great as any in earth or heaven.¹⁰

The arts of life made a rapid advance under the early kings of the eighteenth dynasty, and progressed

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp. 38, 40, 43 &c, vol. iv p. 41, &c

² See above, pp. 173-4

³ The only exception, so far as I know, was the appointment of priests, from a very early date for the cult of the kings, in connection with their burial place but this seems to have been a domestic arrangement, and to have belonged to the general worship of ancestors of which we have spoken (supra, vol. i p. 423).

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls. 47-50

⁵ *Ibid.* pls. 51a and 57a.

⁶ *Ibid.* pt. iii. pl. 67

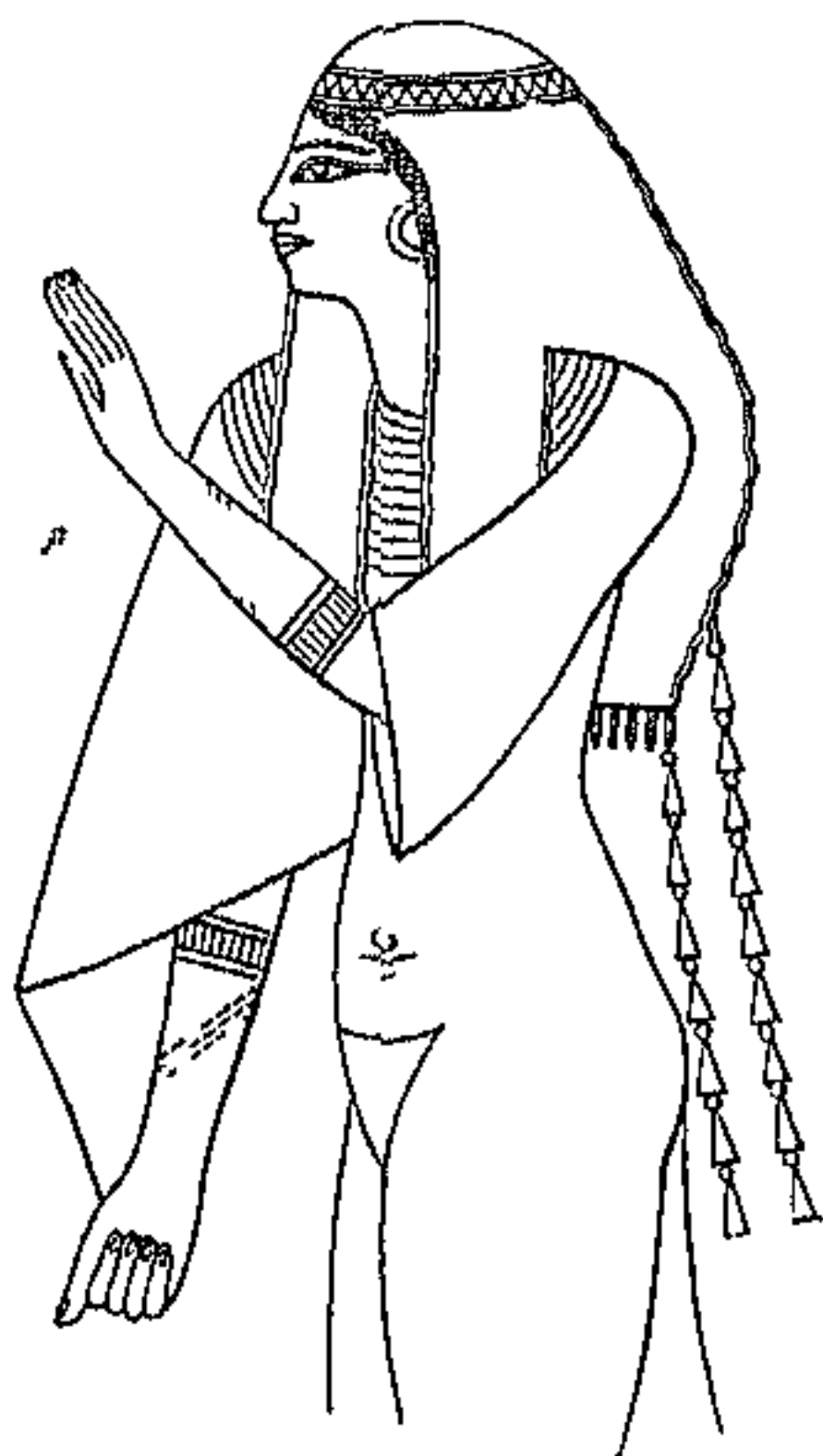
⁷ *Ibid.* pls. 147a, 151b, 199d, &c

⁸ *Ibid.* pl. 143c

⁹ See above, p. 318, note 4.

¹⁰ Dea i Stanley well says in reference to Rameses II: His image carries one back to the days when there were giants upon the earth. It shows how the king, in that first monarchy, was the visible god

steadily, though more slowly, until about the middle of the nineteenth. The costumes of kings and queens became suddenly most elaborate. King Amenhotep I. is represented¹ with three garments over his linen tunic, which itself has a complicated and brilliant ornament in front, consisting of a broad stripe in four colours, blue, red, yellow, and green, with three pendent ends of riband on either side of it. He has also a



broad belt, similarly variegated. His upper garments, which seem to be all made of a white, striped, very transparent muslin, are, first, a short petticoat beginning at the waist and descending to the calf of the leg; secondly, a long robe reaching from the shoulders to the ankles, and thirdly, a flowing cape. He wears further armlets and bracelets of gold, seemingly enamelled, a broad collar

Curious headdress of Nefertari Aahmes of many hues, white sandals, a close fitting blue cap with a *uræus* ornament in front, an artificial black beard, two ribands down his back, and the 'tail' peculiar to kings and gods. His mother Nefertari Aahmes, who is represented with him, wears the complicated vulture headdress which has been

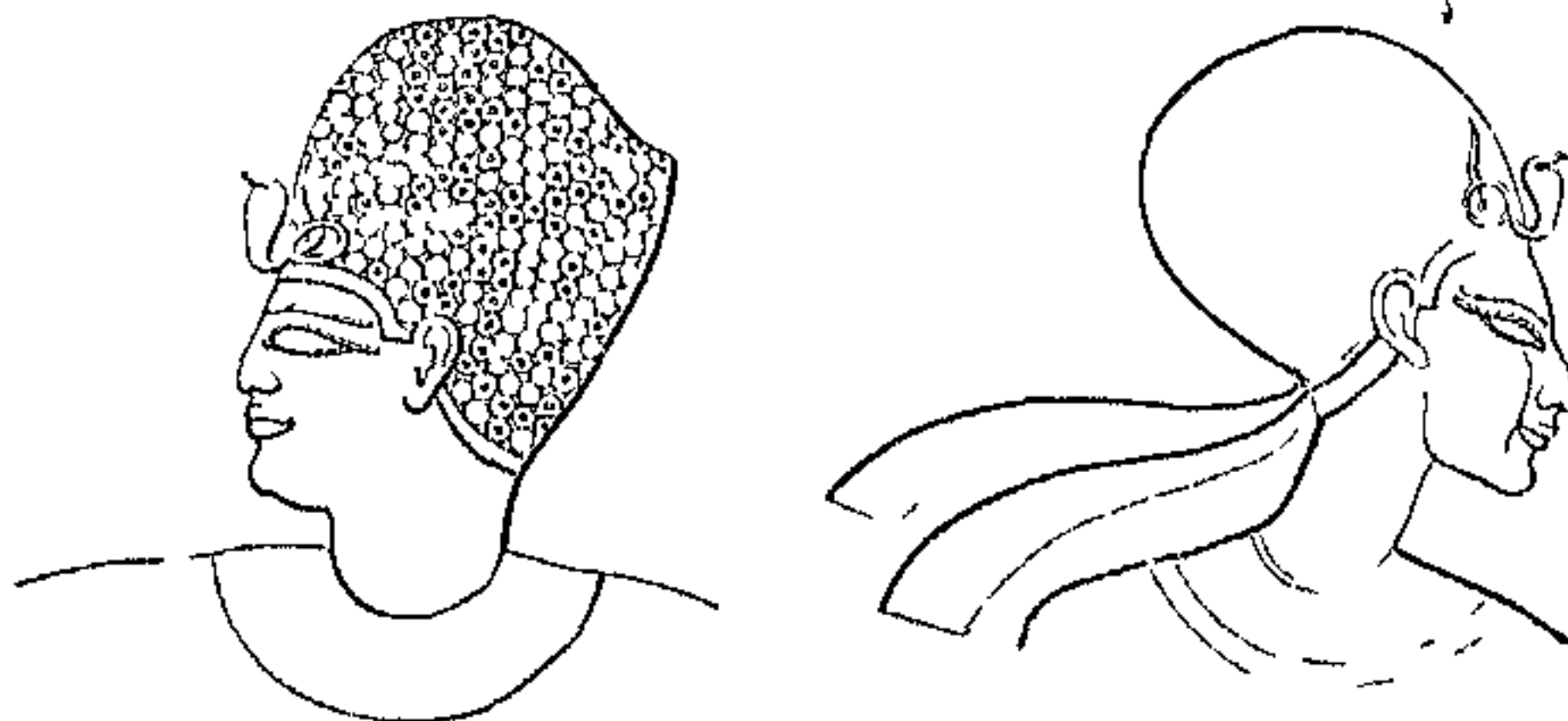
upon earth. The only thing like it that has since been seen is the decoration of the Roman emperors. No pure monotheism could for a moment have been compatible with

such a relaxation of the conquering king. (*Sinai and Palestine*, 'Introduction', p. xxxvi.)

¹ See the *Denkmaler*, pt. iii. pl. 1.

given above,¹ a *blue* wig, a long robe of white striped muslin, indecently transparent, and an elaborate flowing cape of the same. She has amulets and bracelets set with jewels, white sandals, a broad collar like her son's, and earrings. A broad sash, blue, red, and yellow, depends from her waist to the bottom of her robe. In another representation she has a wig with long pendants of a peculiar character.²

It is not often that the dresses represented are so elaborate as these; but there is, speaking generally, a marked advance in the number, complication, and variety of the garments, both of men and women. Thothmes III introduces the tall cap, round in front



Headresses of Thothmes III and Amenophis IV

and pointed at the back, which thenceforth becomes the favourite headdress of the kings, being occasionally covered with spots, which may represent pearls. Kings sometimes wear a spencer similarly spotted,³ which covers the shoulders and reaches to the waist. One king, Amenophis IV, wears at the base of his cap a riband, or diadem, terminating in two flowing ends.⁴ He has also a long flowing robe, which falls behind

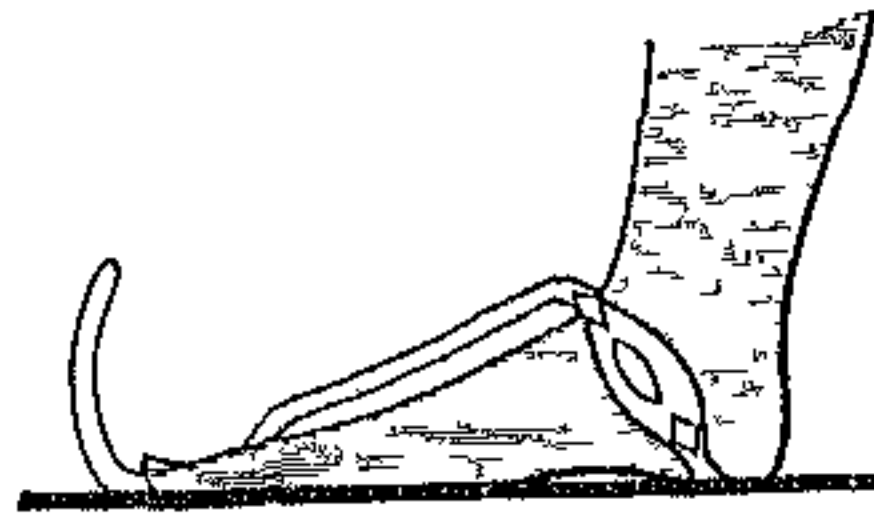
¹ Supra, p. 210.

² *Denkmal*, pt. iii. pl. 2 d.

³ *Ibid.* pl. 19 a.

Ibid. pt. iii. pl. 92.

him, and separates into two flaps, which are rounded off into points.¹ Women, no less than men, wear sandals; and both women and men wear occasionally anklets, besides armlets and bracelets.² The royal



Egyptian turned up Sandal

attendants have commonly two tunics instead of one; the inner of linen, the outer of muslin and transparent. In a few cases they wear also a muslin cape.³ Sandals are still somewhat rare;

even princes and kings are sometimes represented without them, and they are but seldom worn by persons



Character of Women's Dresses

of lower rank. The practice begins of wearing them with the toes violently turned up,⁴ but this usage does not become general until the time of the twentieth dynasty. Some of the varieties in female apparel will be better understood by representation than description.

The houses of the great, no doubt, became more luxurious as time went on; and one king shows us the arrangement of a royal palace,

or villa,⁵ from which we may obtain a tolerable notion of the general character of rich men's residences. A

¹ *Denkmaler*, pt iii pls 92 and 93

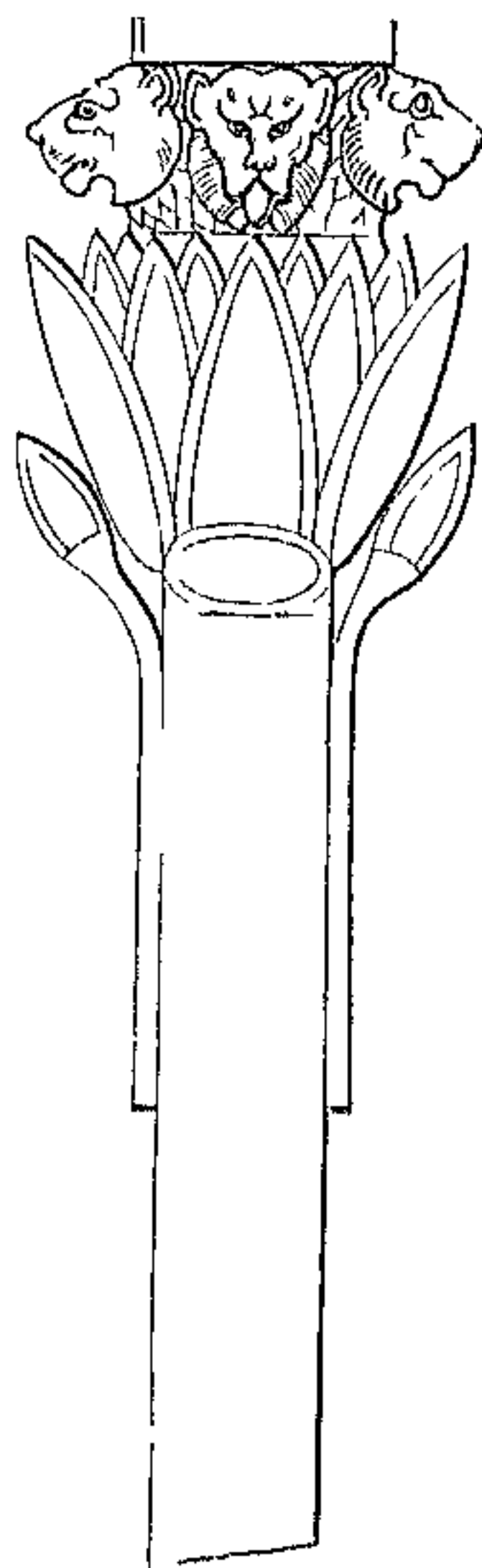
² *Ibid* pls 8 and 203 c

³ *Ibid* pl 77 c.

⁴ *Ibid* pl. 115

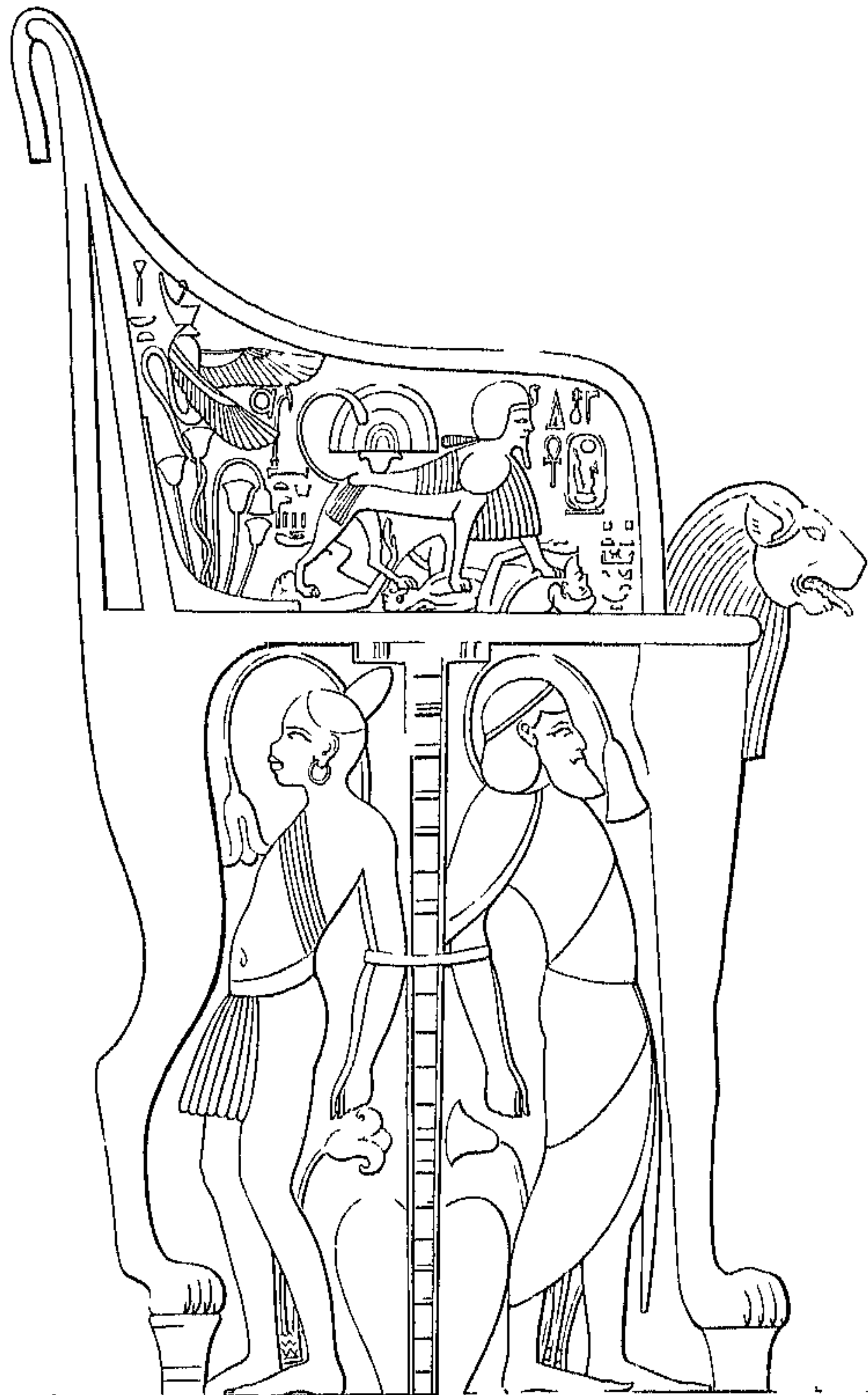
⁵ See the *Denkmaler*, pt iii pl 95. Compare Rosellini, *Monumenti Civili*, pl. lxx.

large square or parallelogram was enclosed within high walls, with pylonic entrances on two or more of the sides, like those of temples in miniature. The grounds were divided out into formal courts and alleys, planted with trees in rows, the trees being of various kinds, inclusive of palms and vines. Ponds or reservoirs, rectangular in shape, were frequent, and gave the charm of freshness in a climate where without constant irrigation vegetation languishes. The house itself consisted of numerous courts, surrounded with colonnaded cloisters, and entered through pylons, with here and there a group of apartments, into which light was but scantily admitted by small windows placed high up in the walls. Much taste was shown in the designs of pillars, and especially of their capitals, which combined animal and vegetable forms, after a manner that was at once curious and pleasing.¹ The number of apartments was not great, life being chiefly passed in the colonnaded courts, and in the grounds, where a sufficiency of immediate shade could be combined with the charm of remoter light and with the free play of the atmosphere. Furniture, though not very



Ramesseum Capital

¹ *Denkmalen*, pt iii pl 63 a.



Egyptian Throne (time of the 18th Dynasty)

abundant according to modern notions,¹ was convenient and in good taste. Animal forms were followed in the feet of chairs, fauteuils, and ottomans,² and sometimes in other portions of the carved woodwork,³ while delicate stuffs covered the cushioned portions, adding the beauty of colour to that of form.⁴ The elaboration of furniture culminated in the thrones constructed for the kings,⁵ and the footstools sometimes attached to them,⁶ which were carved in the richest and quaintest fashion, either with figures of captured monarchs, or with animal or vegetable forms, or with the two combined, and must have been most curious and extraordinary works of art.

Ornamental carvings or castings of an artistic character, realistic in style, were also received as tribute from some of the subject states, and served to adorn the palaces of the Pharaohs with strange and outlandish figures. One such offering, brought to Tutankh amen by the Ethiopians,⁷ is peculiarly graceful and pleasing. It represents the giraffe or camelopard amid the palm groves of Mid Africa, and expresses with much truthfulness and spirit the form of that remarkable animal.

Graceful ornamentation also characterises the arms and chariot of the monarch, which frequently exhibit the head, or even the full form, of the lion.⁸ Vases are of elegant shapes, and their covers are occasionally

¹ See above, vol i p 490.

² Rosellini, *Monumenti Civili* pls xlv, xc xci. Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol ii pp 190 201, *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 12, &c.

³ Rosellini *Monumenti Civili*, pl lxxiv, *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 208 a.

⁴ Rosellini, *Monumenti Civili* pls xc and xci., Wilkinson, *Ancient*

Egyptians, frontispiece to vol. ii

⁵ *Denkmäler*, pt iii pls 2 b, c, 76 b, 100 b, 121, &c.

⁶ Ibid pl 208 a.

⁷ Ibid. pl. 118 (See overleaf)

⁸ See above vol i p 455 Rosellini, *Monumenti Civili*, pl. cxvi Nos 23 and 26, *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls 165, 187 c, &c.

in the form of animals' heads.¹ Figures of animals adorn the prows of vessels; and sometimes their oars terminate in representations of the heads of men.²



Ornamental Carving (Ethiopic)

In social life, the introduction of the horse from Asia made a considerable change. The chariot superseded the palanquin as the ordinary mode of conveyance; and much attention was bestowed upon the equipage and the stud. Horses were great favourites, and received special names, as Ken Amen, 'strength of Ammon,' Anta hruta, 'Anatis pleased,' and the like.³ The young dandy prided himself on the strength and lightness of his vehicle, the perfect shape and condition

¹ *Denkmalen*, pt. iii. pls. 115 and 127 b

² *Ibid* pl. 76 a.

³ See the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. vi pp 510, 520, *Records of the*

Past, vol. ii p 75, &c. Brugsch holds that a pair of horses had sometimes one name between them (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp 13 and 16, 1st ed.).

of his carriage-horses, the beauty of their trappings, and his own skill in driving them.¹ Kings generally employed a charioteer, but even they did not disdain to take the reins occasionally into their own hands and conduct their own vehicles.² Horses bore tall plumes of ostrich feathers on their heads, had many tassels or streamers appended to them, and sometimes wore elegant housings.³ Field sports continued to occupy the leisure hours of most well-to-do Egyptians; and the monarchs, at any rate, added to their former pleasures of this kind the chase of the lion and the elephant.⁴

A burst of literary vigour distinguishes the period. Literature had always been held in esteem in Egypt, and had furnished a fairly satisfactory career to a considerable number of persons.⁵ Men of high rank, like Ptah-hotep and Saneha, had occasionally occupied themselves with it, and even one monarch had left 'Instructions' for his successor, which he had cast into a highly artificial and *quasi-poetic* form.⁶ But it is not till the reigns of Rameses II. and his son, Menephthah, that literary activity reaches its acme, and Egypt is able to boast of a whole 'galaxy' of writers.⁷ The high honour done to the 'epic poet' Pentaour, whose lay of 'Rameses victorious' was inscribed on the walls of half a dozen temples,⁸ may have acted as a stimulus to authorship, and have given to the pursuit of knowledge and of the art of composition an attraction which it had not possessed

¹ Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians*, vol. i p. 335.

² See above, vol. i p. 454.

³ Ibid. Compare the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls. 92, 128 a, 153, 166, and 187 d.

⁴ *Supra*, pp. 236 and 259.

⁵ *Supra*, pp. 91, 117, &c.

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii pp. 9, 16.

⁷ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 131, 1st ed.

⁸ Ibid. p. 15.

previously. But, whatever was the cause, at least the effect is certain. Under Rameses II and Menephthah literature flourished in all its branches—history, divinity, practical philosophy, poetry, epistolary correspondence, novels or tales, occupied the attention of numerous writers, and works in these various subjects rapidly accumulated. A public library was established at Thebes, under a director—a high official named Amen em an¹. The roll of writers included the names of Pentaour, Amen em api, Pan bas, Kakabu, Hor, Anna, Meriemap, Bek en ptah, Hora, Amen masu, Suanro, Serptah. Nor was original composition the sole occupation of these learned persons. The modern world is indebted to them for the careful copies which they made of earlier manuscripts, and owes to their indefatigable industry such works as ‘The Instructions of Amenemhat,’ ‘The Tale of the Two Brothers,’ ‘The Praise of Learning,’ and even the greater part of ‘The Book of the Dead’². Like the monks of the Middle Ages, the Egyptian hierogrammatists regarded it as a sacred duty to hand on to later ages the learning of the past, and, when the fragile papyrus of the early times was falling into decay, transcribed the perishing work upon fresh material.

Thus, in almost all respects, in arts, in arms, in literature, in the comforts and elegancies of private life, the Egypt of the fifteenth and fourteenth centuries before our era had made great advances beyond the simplicity of primitive times, and attained a point which well deserves attention and even admiration.

¹ Lenoirant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 425

² The actual ‘Book of the Dead,’ as we have it, is taken from a papyrus of the twenty sixth dynasty,

but all the oldest papyri, by means of which the ‘Book’ was conveyed on and preserved, belong to the eighteenth. (See Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. v. pp. 130-1.)

But it must not be denied or concealed that there were darker hues in the picture. The glorious achievements of the greatest of the Pharaohs in architecture and colossal statuary were not produced without much suffering among a large servile class, whose forced toil was excessive and unceasing¹ nay, sometimes intentionally aggravated for the purpose of breaking their strength² Taxation was heavy upon the lower orders of the native Egyptians, and collectors with no pity in their hearts exacted the last penny from the wretched *fellahin* by the free use of the rod³ Both men and women were stripped naked and subjected to the pain and indignity of the bastinado.⁴ In war many cruel and barbarous customs prevailed. Captives were either reduced to slavery or put to death. The slain were systematically mutilated in order to obtain sure evidence of their numbers;⁵ and conquering monarchs were not ashamed to return home from battle with the gory heads of their adversaries attached to the hinder part of their chariot⁶ Whether kings generally slew their more distinguished prisoners with their own hand is perhaps doubtful,⁷ but there is distinct evidence that such an act was considered not unbecoming, and that a king could not only commit it, but boast of it⁸ The relations between the sexes did not improve as time went on. Polygamy on a vast scale was introduced into the royal household; indecency in apparel was common; and the profligacy

¹ See above, p. 326.

² Ex. i. 11, 14, v. 6, 19.

³ See the letter of Amenemhat to Pentamer, quoted in vol. i. p. 480, which belongs to this period.

⁴ The application of the bastinado to men has been already noticed, and indeed represented in vol. i.

l. s. c. I on the application of the stick to women, see the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 153.

⁵ See the sculptures, *passim*, and compare above, vol. i. p. 474.

⁶ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 128.

⁷ See above, vol. i. p. 473.

⁸ Supra, p. 255.

of the women was such as to become a commonplace of Egyptian novels¹ Altogether, it would seem that the acme of perfection in art was coincident with a decline in morals—a decline which combined increased savagery with advancing sensualism.

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. II p. 140, vol. IV pp. 143-5, vol. VI pp. 153-6

CHAPTER XXII.

THE TWENTIETH DYNASTY (ABOUT B.C. 1180-1100)

Accession of Setneht his Birth and Parentage doubtful His brief Reign His Tomb Setneht associates his Son, Rameses Reign of Rameses III His Appellations His new Arrangement of the Official Classes. His Wars—with the Shasu with the Libyans with the great Confederacy of the Tanauna, Shantana, Sheklusha, Tishah, Uashesh, Purusata, and Tekaru with the Mashausha with the Negroes and Ethiopians with the Nations of Syria His great Works. His Planting of Trees. His Encouragement of Mining and Trade The Conspiracy against him His Domestic History His Personal Appearance and Character. His Tomb Rapid Decline of Egypt after his Death its Causes Reigns of Rameses IV, Rameses V Rameses VI and Meritum, Rameses VII and VIII Reign of Rameses IX and Commencement of Priestly Encroachment. Reigns of Rameses X and XI Rameses XII and the Princess of Bakhtan Reign of Rameses XIII General View of the Period Decline of Architecture, Art, and Literature Deterioration of Morals slight Changes in Civilisation and Habits of Life

Un prince glorieux fut jeté un jour au ciel et sur les rives de l'Égypte à la veille de leur être décadente. — LEBRON, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 436

THE anarchy which supervened upon the death of Siphthah¹ can scarcely have lasted very long. Egypt was not yet reduced to such a state of exhaustion as to tolerate for many years the complete eclipse of authority and suspension of settled government. The royal race, which had reigned with so much glory from the date of the expulsion of the Shepherds to the time of Seti II., was by no means extinct, nor had it even as

¹ See above, p. 330.

yet shown any signs of a serious loss of vigour and governmental ability. To find a new monarch of the old blood could not have been difficult, when a recent Pharaoh¹ had been the parent of fifty-nine sons and sixty daughters. Probably, the anarchy was caused rather by a superfluity than a lack of candidates for the royal power,² since the 'great men' (*ueru*) who ruled in the various towns³ were most likely of royal descent, at any rate for the most part. It may have been difficult to decide upon the claims of the various candidates; and we can even conceive the possibility of the priests and nobles being in no hurry to make a choice, since, while the royal authority was in abeyance, their own power and dignity would be augmented. Had Egypt had no warlike neighbours, they would perhaps have temporised longer; but when a Syrian took advantage of the state of things to establish himself as prince in Egypt, and his companions robbed and plundered at their pleasure, and the Egyptian gods were treated with as little respect as the Egyptian men, and the temples were denuded of their accustomed offerings,⁴ it was felt that the time had arrived for a great effort. '*the gods*,' we are told,⁵ 'restored the land to its even balance, as its condition properly required. They established their son, Set nekht, as

¹ Rameses II (See above, p. 322)

² 'Evidemment, says M. Chabas, speaking of the account of this period given in the great Harris papyrus 'il s'agit de discordes civiles qu'il est possible d'attribuer à une compétition entre des prétendants à la couronne, dont aucun ne réussit à triompher de ses adversaires. L'autorité se trouva fractionnée' (*Recherches pour servir à l'Histoire*, &c., p. 136)

³ Chabas, p. 17; Eisenlohr in *Transactions of Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. 1. p. 368.

⁴ Supra p. 339

⁵ There is a general agreement as to the meaning of this phrase not always found among the various translators of the papyrus (See Chabas, p. 21 Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 137; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II p. 137, 1st ed.)

king over the whole land.' It is probable that we have here a covert indication that the prime instigators of the movement which placed Set nekht upon the throne were the priests, who, as interpreters of the will of the gods, brought him forward, and succeeded in establishing him as king of all Egypt.

The birth and parentage of Set nekht, , are in reality unknown.¹ It has been stated as an ascertained fact,² that he was the son of Seti II.; but the sole foundation for this is the exhibition by Rameses III of the effigy of Seti II. among the kings whom he honours and acknowledges, in the place immediately before Set nekht.³ This foundation is manifestly insufficient. It gives a ground for presuming that Set nekht was of the family of Seti II.—a presumption supported by the similarity of their throne names⁴—but none for laying down any particular relationship. Had he been actual son, it is scarcely likely that his sonship would not have been mentioned, either by himself, or by Rameses III., who gives us an account of his accession in the 'Great Harris Papyrus.'

Accepted as king by the priests, Set nekht had nevertheless to establish his authority by prompt and vigorous measures. His son compares his activity with that of the god, Khepra Sutech,⁵ when he is roused to fury. 'He put in order,' says Rameses, 'the whole

¹ 'Nous ignorons absolument l'origine de Set nekht.' (Obabas, *Recherches*, p. 136.)

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 133-4, 1st ed. 'After his (Seti II's) death the sovereignty passed in regular succession to his son Set nekht.'

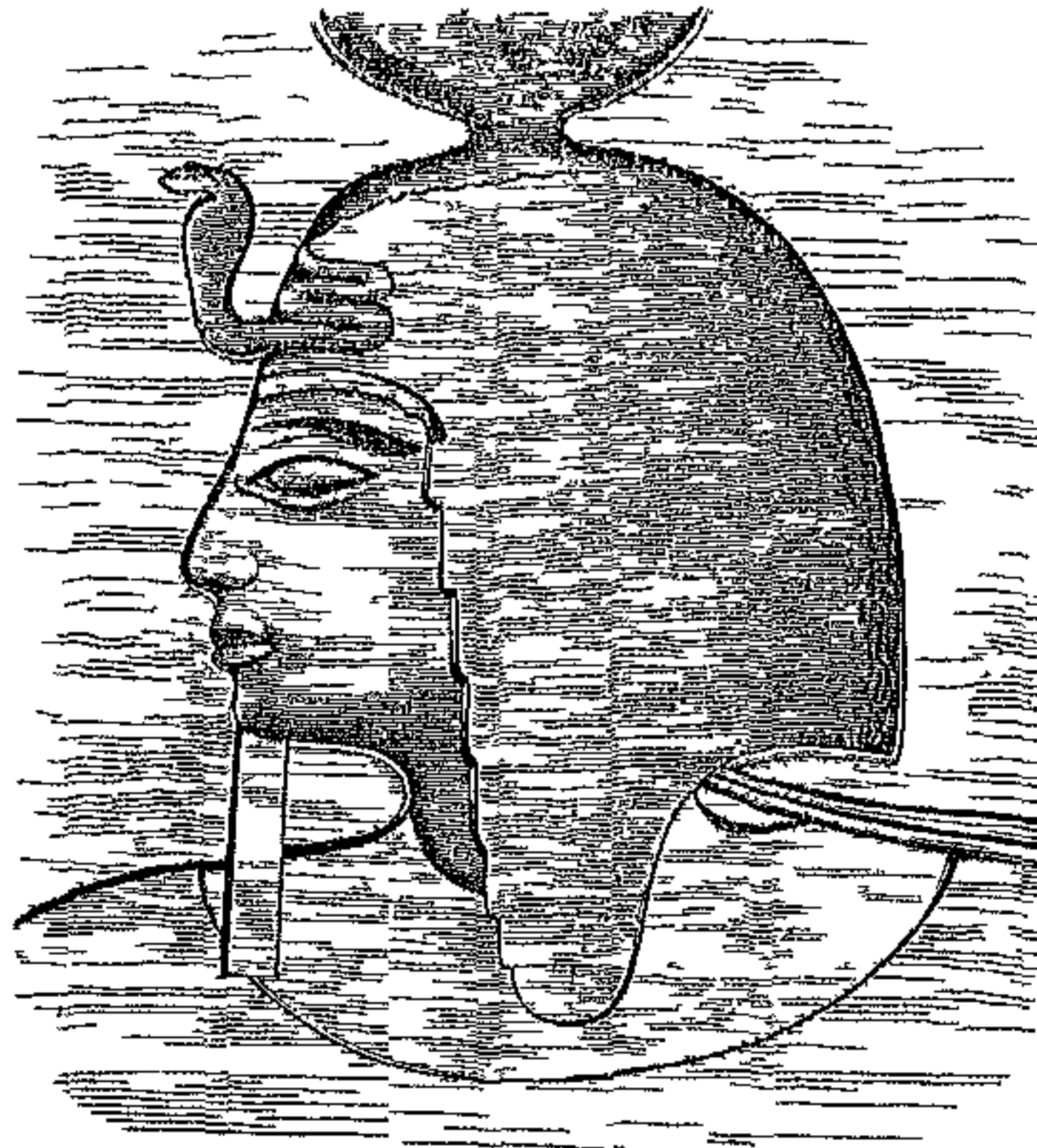
³ See the *Denkmalen*, pt. iii pls. 212 and 213 a.

⁴ Seti II's throne-name was *Ra*

use Thopu-meri-amon. Set nekht's *Ra usei shau meri-amon*, one element only being changed.

⁵ Eisenlohr (*Transactions of Soc. of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. i p. 371). Brugsch translates 'the person of Set' (*History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 137, 1st ed.). Birch, 'Khepri and Set' (*Ancient Egypt* p. 137), but the rendering of Dr. Eisenlohr seems preferable.

land which was revolted, he executed the abominables who were in Ta Mera (*i.e.* Egypt): he purified the great throne of Egypt: he was king of both the lands at the seat of Tum (Heliopolis?): he made the faces upright which were perverted. . . . He set up the temples, (and re established) the divine offerings for the service of the gods, as their statutes prescribe.¹



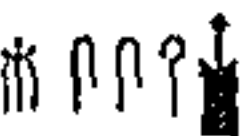
Head of Set nekht

There is reason to believe that Set nekht was advanced in years at his accession, and that he reigned but a short time. Ordinarily, the first task set himself by an Egyptian king was the construction of his tomb; and a shrewd guess may be given at the length of a reign by noting the extent and elaboration of the royal sepulchre. Set nekht seems to have felt that he had not sufficient time before him to give him reasonable

¹ Brugsch, *l.c.* Chabas and Birch agree nearly.

hope of constructing for himself a final resting place of proper dignity, and accordingly appropriated to himself the rock tomb of Siphthah and Tacmis, merely chiselling out the names of the original owners, and replacing them by his own.¹ He thus obtained, with slight trouble, a sufficiently dignified sepulchre—one 'really princelike and magnificent'² while at the same time he subjected to indignity a predecessor whom he did not acknowledge to be legitimate.

It may have been also in the prospect of an early decease that Set-nekht, almost as soon as he was settled upon the throne, associated with himself as king³ his son Rameses, the third prince of the name, a youth of much promise, of whom he seems to have felt no jealousy. The two are exhibited on the rocks behind Medinet Abou,⁴ in a fashion which seems to place them on an exact equality bearing the same royal titles and ensigns, having forms of the same size, and mentioned in the accompanying inscription exactly the same number of times. Except inscriptions of his name on the works of others, this is the sole monument which we possess of Set-nekht,⁵ who had evidently not inherited the tastes of Rameses II and Seti I.

Rameses III, known to the Egyptians as Rameses hak On, , or 'Rameses, lord of Heliopolis,' took the throne-name of Ra user-ma meri amon,

¹ See the *Denkmdler*, pt iii pl 201a, b. Compare Brugsch *History of Egypt* vol ii pp 135-6, 1st ed and Eisenlohi, in *Transactions of Soc of Biblical Archaeology*, vol i, p 376.

² Brugsch, *Hist of Egypt*, vol i p 133 1st ed.

³ *Records of the Past*, vol viii p 47. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p 138, 1st ed.

⁴ See the *Denkmdler*, pt iii pl 200 d.

⁵ It is the sole monument of his erection. There is a tomb at Abydos which was sculptured in his reign, and which has an inscription containing his name together with that of his wife Tu-men-hesi, a personage otherwise unknown. (See M Mariette's *Monuments d Abydos*, p 430.)

•  , or 'Sun, lord of Truth, beloved by Ammon.' It is conjectured¹ that among the people he bore the appellation of Rameses pa nuter, or 'Rameses the god;' and that the Greeks made out of this name the Rhampsinitus of their Egyptian histories. Rhampsinitus was celebrated for his riches,² and Rameses III. was certainly among the wealthiest of Egyptian kings; so that the identification may be allowed, though it is not one of much value. His earliest occupation after his accession seems to have been 'the restoration and demarcation of the several castes,'³ or rather classes, into which the part of the population directly connected with the court was divided⁴. During the troublous period that preceded Set nekht some confusion of the different orders had taken place, which Set nekht had not had the time or the inclination to remedy. Rameses at once addressed himself to the task, and arranged the officials in five great ranks or classes, viz.: 1. The *abu en peruo*, or 'councillors of the Royal House,' persons who enjoyed the same dignity which was given to Joseph.⁵ 2. The *ueru*, or 'great princes,' who are thought to have been 'the governors and representatives of the king in the several nomes.'⁶ 3. The native soldiery, foot and horse, the

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 139 1sted. Brugsch says that the fact is proved by the monuments, but adduces no proof. No doubt Rameses III. has for one of his titles *pafer nater*, , but this title is common to all the kings from a very early period.

² Herod. ii. 121, § 1.

³ Brugsch, p. 140. Compare Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 137, and Chabas *Recherches* pp. 28-30.

⁴ It is evident that the classifi-

cation of Rameses cannot comprise the whole of the population, since it excludes the entire agricultural and the entire mercantile class. It was, I think, a classification of those who were regarded as in some sense functionaries.

⁵ Gen. xlv. 8.

⁶ Brugsch, *l. c.* I should incline to give the word a wider meaning, and regard it as including all *high* functionaries of whatever kind.

latter either identical with, or at any rate including, the chariot force. 4. The foreign mercenaries, chiefly either *Shartana* or *Kahaka*, and 5. The subordinate officers and servants. The native troops are said to have amounted to some hundreds of thousands, but this is probably an exaggeration.

Having completed these arrangements in the manner which he thought most satisfactory, Rameses turned his attention to external affairs, and set himself the task of re-establishing, so far as might be possible, the authority of Egypt over those countries and districts which had passed under the dominion of foreigners during the period of revolution. It is difficult to arrange his wars in their proper chronological order, since Rameses clearly does not follow that order in his own annals,¹ but places the most important wars first. The best modern authorities are at variance upon the subject, and the order here followed, which is that of Dr Birch, must be regarded as to some extent uncertain.

A war with the Shasu, or Bedouins of South western Arabia, who had again become dominant in the region between Egypt and Palestine, is thought to have had priority over the others.² Rameses invaded their country, destroyed the huts or cabins (*mahar*) in which they lived, killed no doubt large numbers, and carried back into Egypt a vast booty, together with numerous prisoners, whom he made over to the priestly establishments at various temples to be employed as slaves.³ The particular tribe of Shasu attacked in this campaign

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 138.
Chabas, *Recherches* p. 31. 'Il semble que les guerres de Ramsès soient introduites non pas dans leur ordre chronologique, mais dans

celui de leurs résultats glorieux.'

² Birch, *loc. cit.*

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 48.

is called the 'Saaru,' a name in which Dr. Brugsch recognises the inhabitants of Mount Seir,¹ or the tract south and south east of the Dead Sea, once the special country of the Edomites, or descendants of Esau.²

Thus successful upon the north east, Rameses was emboldened to make a similar expedition towards the north west. Here, on the side of Libya, a serious encroachment had taken place upon Egyptian territory during the time of trouble. The Libyans, Maxyans, Asbystæ,³ Auseis,⁴ and other kindred tribes, had been so daring as to overstep the boundaries of Egypt proper, and to establish themselves along the whole of the left bank of the Nile, from Memphis to the shores of the Mediterranean. They had held possession of this tract for a number of years,⁵ and had formed permanent settlements, where they lived with their wives and children, while their numerous herds grazed the rich strip of territory overflowed annually, and fertilised, by the inundation. Rameses fell upon them suddenly with a powerful force, and completely defeated them in a single great battle,⁶ after which he drove the remnant beyond his borders making, as he advanced, numerous prisoners, and even capturing the Libyan chief. Of the prisoners taken, some were confined in fortresses; others, after being branded with a red hot iron,⁷ were pressed into the naval service and forced to act as mariners on board the Egyptian fleet. Slavery was the portion of the women and children, the cattle, which

¹ *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 140, 1st ed.

² Gen. xxxvi. 8, 9.

³ The hieroglyphic name is read by Dr. Brugsch as *Asbita*, by M. Chabas (*Recherches*, p. 52) as *Sabata*. *Asbita* would well express the *Asbystæ*, who are called by Pliny (*H. N.* v. 5) *Asbitæ*.

⁴ In the original *Asa* which is well compared with *Auseis* (Herod. iv. 180).

⁵ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 48.

⁶ Chabas, *Recherches*, p. 54.

⁷ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii. p. 49. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 141, 1st ed.

was too numerous to count, increased the wealth of the priest college attached to the great temple of Ammon at Thebes.

The first war with the African nations is fixed by an inscription to the fifth year of Rameses¹. He would, apparently, have been content with the laurels gained in these two minor campaigns, and would have tempted fortune no further, had he not been forced in self defence to meet two terrible attacks, which, in his eighth and again in his eleventh year, threatened Egypt with destruction. Few things in history are more extraordinary than the aggressive movement, which suddenly, in the eighth year of Rameses III., spread the flames of war over all the East from the skirts of Taurus to the mouths of the Nile. There is great difficulty in identifying the particular nations which took part in the expedition;² but it can scarcely be doubted that a league was formed between a number of widely separated peoples, partly dwellers in Asia Minor, partly inhabitants of the coasts and islands of Europe, and a combined attack organised, at once by land and by sea, having Syria for its immediate and Egypt for its ultimate object. The isles and shores of the Mediterranean gave forth their piratical hordes—the sea was covered with their light galleys, and swept by their strong oars. Tânauna, Sharuten, Sheklusha, Tulsha, Uashesh, combined their squadrons into a fleet, while Purusata and Tekaru advanced in countless numbers along the land. ‘No people stood before their arms’³. Bursting forth from the passes of Taurus, the hordes spread themselves over Northern Syria, wasted and

¹ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 138; Chabas, *Recherches*, p. 52.

² See Note B in the Appendix.

³ So Rameses, in the inscription translated by Brugsch (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 147–8, 1st ed.).

plundered the entire country of the Kh'ta, proceeding eastward as far as Carchemish; descended upon Palestine, and were about to press on into Egypt, when they were confronted by Rameses at the head of the Egyptian army. Calling in the aid of stratagem, the Pharaoh, who was probably outnumbered, succeeded by means of an ambush in defeating his assailants, threw their host into confusion, and after an immense slaughter drove the remnant of the broken army from the field. But the struggle was even yet not over. Though the attack by land had failed, the allied fleet gallantly persevered. Quitting their defeated friends, the Tânauna, with their confederates, made sail for the nearest mouth of the Nile, hoping to find it unguarded, and intending in that case to ascend the stream to Memphis, or to ravage far and wide the fertile region of the Delta. But Rameses had made preparations against this peril. He had established 'a defence on the water, like a strong wall, of ships of war, of merchantmen, of boats and skiffs;' ¹ in other words, he had left a fleet to guard the Pelusiac mouth of the great river, and prevent the Tânauna from entering it. He also hurried in person to the probable scene of action, and arrived in time to take part in the great battle which frustrated the last hopes of the invaders, and placed Egypt once more in safety. While his naval force contended with the enemy in the shallow waters of the Pelusiac lagoon, he himself with four of his sons and his best warriors lent their aid to complete the discomfiture of the assailants by shooting them down with arrows from the shore.² If we rightly

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 148, 1st ed.

² See the representation of the engagement in the *Description de*

l'Égypte, 'Antiquités' vol. ii pl. x. Compare Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl. cxxxi.

read the king's meaning in the vain glorious inscription which he set up to celebrate his victory, the Tânauna were so far successful as to break through the opposing vessels of the Egyptians, and to force their way to the shore. But here their progress was arrested. 'A wall of iron shut them in upon the lake' The best troops of Egypt lined the shores of the lagoon; and wherever the invaders attempted to land, they were foiled. Repulsed, dashed to the ground, hewn down at the edge of the water, they were slain 'by hundreds of heaps of corpses.' After a while resistance ceased, and large numbers were made prisoners. The empty ships, stuck fast in the Nile mud, or floating at random upon the still water, became the prize of the victors, and were found to contain a rich booty. Thus ended this remarkable struggle, in which nations widely severed and of various bloods scarcely, as one would have thought, known to each other, and separated by a diversity of interests united in an attack upon the foremost power of the whole world, traversed several hundred miles of land or sea successfully, neither quarrelling among themselves nor meeting with disaster from without, reached the country which they had hoped to conquer, but were then completely defeated and repulsed in two great engagements one by land, the other partly by land and partly by sea—so that 'their spirit was annihilated, their soul was taken from them.'¹ Henceforth no one of the nations which took part in the combined attack is found in arms against the power that had read them so severe a lesson

It might have been hoped that Egypt, raised in repute by her double victory, would now have been left

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p 149 1st ed

in peace, and have entered on a prolonged period of repose. But no—this was not to be—her trials were not yet over. Within little more than two years of the events just narrated, another furious attack was made upon her territory by a powerful enemy, seeking, like the Tekanu and Purusatu, to effect a permanent lodgment within her borders, and therefore accompanied by their wives and families, their boys, their girls, their slaves, and even their cattle.¹ This time the invaders were the Mashauasha, or Maxyes, who appear to have inhabited the region called Marmarica, or ‘the Cyrenaica,’ the only fertile tract interposed between Egypt and the Beryl of Tunis. Already, in the reign of Menephthah, they had made one great attack upon the more western portion of the Delta, and had been defeated with fearful slaughter by that monarch.² Subsequently they had adopted a system of gradual encroachment upon Egyptian territory, and had found that system tolerably successful until, in the earlier part of his reign, Rameses III drove them out. Now, in his eleventh year, probably under pressure from the west, they resolved upon a new invasion, perhaps hoping to find Egypt weakened by the recent contest. Their leaders were Kapur, and his son Mashashal, brave men who imperilled their lives in a well nigh desperate undertaking. Compared with the Tekanu and Tânauna they were an insignificant enemy; and Rameses easily defeated them in a great battle on the Canopic branch of the Nile, wherein they lost above 2,000 killed, and almost an equal number of prisoners. Kapur was captured in the course of the engagement, and after his capture

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. *Ancient Egypt*, p. 143.
 ii p. 150, 1st ed. Compare Brugsch, ² See above, p. 332.

put to death.¹ Mashashal surrendered to Rameses, with such troops as had survived the fight, unconditionally. It is to be hoped that he received more merciful treatment than his father.

Of the remaining wars of Rameses III we possess no details. From the representations upon his sculptures there is reason to believe that he conducted at least one campaign in the extreme south, and another in the remote north east, and that in both his efforts were crowned with all the success that he anticipated. Beyond his southern frontier he attacked and defeated the Ethiopians, together with the negro tribes of the Taraua and the Amar.² In Western Asia he seems to have overrun the entire territory between Egypt and the chain of Amanus, carrying off as prisoners thirty eight chiefs, among whom were those of Carchemish and Aleppo,³ and forcing the natives generally to resume that position of dependence upon Egypt which had been originally established by the great Thothmes. We are even told⁴ that he claims in some of his sculptures supremacy over Naharain or Western Mesopotamia, as well as over Punt, Kush, and Cyprus; but it is to say the least—doubtful whether his dominion really extended over any of these distant regions.

The reign of Rameses III extended over the long period of thirty-one years,⁵ and he had thus ample time, after his defensive wars were concluded, to direct

¹ Buch *Ancient Egypt*, pp 142-3

² Ibid p. 144, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i pp 150-1, 1st ed. The 'king of the miserable land of Kush' appears at the head of a series of fourteen captured princes in the sculptures of Medinet-Abou (*Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 209)

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii. p 152, 1st ed; *Records of the Past*, vol vi p 20

⁴ Wilkinson in the author's *Hieroglyphics* vol ii pp 372-3, 3rd ed

⁵ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 145, Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p. 113, 1st ed

his attention to those material works and interests on which the prosperity of a country, and the fame of its monarch, to a large extent depend. Of all his constructions the most magnificent was the 'beautiful' temple of Ammon,¹ which he built at Medinet Abou opposite Thebes, and which he adorned with painted sculptures commemorative of his great victories. Here are to be seen the series of drawings which represent the grand campaign of his eight year,² exhibiting him as haranguing his troops before setting out, as accompanying them upon the march, as conquering at their head in the great land battle, as hunting the lion by way of refreshment after his warlike toils, as taking part with his sons in the sea fight, and as returning in triumph with his numerous captives to Thebes. Here also is the 'Treasury,' celebrated by Herodotus, on the walls of which are depicted and recorded his riches.³ Here, further, is the calendar of feasts for the first five months of the Egyptian year,⁴ which shows that on the average more than one day in five was held to be sacred. Though less imposing than the vast structures at Luxor and Karnak, the temple of Rameses III at Medinet-Abou has considerable architectural merit, while its sculptures are executed in 'a lifelike and artistic style.'⁵ It is a work of which even a great monarch might be proud, and not unworthily closes the long list of magnificent temples with which the Rameside kings adorned the cities of Egypt.

Minor shrines were also erected by Rameses III at

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol i p. 155, 1st ed

² See *Description de l'Égypte*, 'Antiquités,' vol ii pls. 9, 10 Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl. cxxx1

³ Dumichen, *Historische Inschriften*, pt iv pls. 30 4 Buch, l. s c

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii, p. 156, 1st ed

⁵ *Ibid* p. 155.

Thebes itself to Khonsu, at This to Onuris or Haneh, at Abydos to Osiris, and at Raamses to Sutech¹. He likewise made an addition to the great temple of Ammon at Karnak; but this building is said to be 'a very ordinary piece of architecture, almost worthless in an artistic point of view'².

More important than these minor shrines, and far more useful to those who dwelt in its vicinity, was the great reservoir which he constructed in the country of Aina,³ by some supposed to have been at Beersheba,⁴ by others near Suez,⁵ which was sunk in the earth to a depth of fifty two feet, the sides being lined with stone, and the whole basin edged with a quay, and walled in, so that only those who were admitted by the authorities could use the water.

Another work of utility in which this beneficent monarch engaged was the planting of trees. 'Over the whole land of Egypt,' according to his own account,⁶ 'he planted trees and shrubs, to give the inhabitants rest under their cool shade'. In a climate like that of Egypt, and a country where indigenous trees are few, no labour could be more serviceable, or more grateful to the mass of his subjects, than that which is here indicated. Rarely do we find despotic monarchs so sympathetic with their people, so thoughtful on their behalf, so anxious to benefit them, as he would seem to have been. It was the crowning satisfaction of his life, that by his domestic administration and his military successes he had brought Egypt into such a condition, that 'the weakest woman could travel unmo

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol ii pp 154-5, 1st ed.

² *Ibid* p 157

³ *Records of the Past*, vol viii p 49, § 7.

⁴ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p 144.

⁵ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 141, 1st ed.

⁶ *Ibid* p. 143. Compare *Records of the Past*, vol viii p 50, § 8.

lested whithersoever she wished, the mercenary soldiers might repose at ease in their cities; no enemy invaded the land; the people ate and drank in jubilee, their wives with them, and their children at their side; they did not look behind them (suspiciously), their hearts were content' ¹

It was perhaps partly in his own interest, but it may have been also with a view to his subjects' advantage, that he encouraged mining operations and trade. The turquoise mines of the Sarabit-el Khadim were once more worked during his reign, and produced abundantly.² A commerce was established with a copper producing country not previously heard of, called Ataka, and the ore was brought to Egypt in vast quantities, partly on shipboard, partly on the backs of asses.³ A fleet was built near Suez and launched upon the Red Sea, which made voyages to the coast of Punt, and there exchanged the productions of 'the land of Ham (Khem)' for the gums and spices, more especially the frankincense, of that remote region.⁴ The caravan route from Coptos to Cosseir was re opened, and the riches of the East once more flowed freely into Egypt from the various regions that border the Indian Ocean. The general wealth of the country largely increased, and, the revenue rising with the advance in the national prosperity, Rameses was able to make those enormous offerings to the principal temples, which are recorded in the document known as 'The Great Harris Papyrus' ⁵

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol vii kings' pp. 50 1

² *Ibid.* p. 50, § 6 'There were brought to me, says the monarch, 'maivels of real turquoises in numerous bags carried before me, not to be seen again while there are

³ *Ibid.* p. 50, §§ 1 5

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 49 §§ 8 13 Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii. p. 142, 1st ed.

⁵ The catalogue of temple gifts offered by Rameses occupies fifty-

It is with a pardonable pride that Rameses exclaims, towards the close of his long reign : ' The land (of Egypt) was well satisfied under my rule. I did well to gods and men also ' ¹ Having repulsed two foreign invasions, having restored the land's ancient boundaries, having encouraged commerce, having stimulated production, having even provided for his people's comfort by giving them everywhere the pleasant shade of trees, he might well expect to be popular, and to terminate his time on earth, and ' join the circle of the gods in heaven, ' ² without suffering from that curse of despotism, conspiracy. But in a corrupt society the best have most to fear ; and there is reason to believe that the Egyptian court, since the introduction of polygamy by Rameses II, had become a hotbed of intrigue and vicious sensualism. Eunuchs had in all probability been given the charge of the royal harem, ³ and had brought with them into the palace the trickery and shamelessness for which that unhappy class is noted. Moreover, a belief in magic prevailed ; and as in the time of the early Roman Empire, ⁴ so now men really thought that they could compass the death of one who stood in their way, bewitch his mind, or paralyse his limbs, by the use of figures in wax, and of certain traditional *formulae*. ⁵ What the *exact* object of the conspirators was does not appear ; but it is certain that the reign of Rameses III. was, ere it closed, disturbed

one pages in the *Records of the Past* vols vi and viii

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol viii p 51, § 2

² *Ibid* § 5

³ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol i p 442 Compare Rosellini, *Mon. Civili*, vol ii pp 132-7

⁴ See Virg. *Æt* v. 80 Hor. *Epod* xii 70 Juv. *Sat* vi 611 ; Tacit. *Ann* ii 60 ; &c

⁵ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 164, 1st ed. Many of the *formulae* are given in the *Records of the Past*, vol vi pp 121-6, and vol x pp 137-58.

by a conspiracy in which many of the highest court officials and a certain number of the royal concubines were mixed up,¹ and which can scarcely have aimed at anything less than the death or deposition of the monarch. The chief conspirator seems to have been a certain Bakakamen, house steward, or major domo of the palace. His position giving him access to all parts of the royal residence, he succeeded in drawing over to his interests a number of councillors, scribes, and commanders of the mercenary troops, as well as certain women of the harem, and among them a lady named Ti or Taia, whom Dr. Brugsch believes to have been a wife of the king.² Among the male conspirators was one who professed a knowledge of magical arts, and who not only furnished Bakakamen with formulæ that were supposed to ward off ill luck, but supplied him also with waxen images, some of men and some of gods, the proper use of which would, it was believed, induce paralysis.³ Thus much we learn from our documents—the rest we can only conjecture. Taia had a son engaged in the conspiracy, named Pentaour. Was it the intention of the conspirators to paralyse and then kill the monarch—to proclaim Pentaour as his successor, and make Taia queen mother? Or did they merely wish to reduce the king to imbecility, and themselves exercise the royal authority in his name? It is remarkable that nothing is said of

¹ The hieratic text of the Tain papyrus which contains the account of this trial was first translated into French by M. Devéria in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1865. Since then a translation into English has been made by M. Le Page Renouf (*Records of the Past* vol. viii pp. 57-65), and one into German by

Dr. Brugsch. The latter has been done into English by the late Mr. Danby Seymour, and will be found in the translation of Dr. Brugsch's work so often quoted in these volumes (vol. ii pp. 158-63).

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 165, 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* p. 164.

any intention to seek the king's life ; but there is an Oriental reticence on the subject of death where kings are concerned, which may account for this omission.

After the conspiracy had reached a certain point, but before it had effected anything, by some means or other it was discovered. Too many persons had been taken into counsel for secrecy to be long maintainable ; and if the conspirators really trusted to their silly enchantments, they may have delayed imprudently. Anyhow, the plot was found out. Some four-and-thirty persons were immediately arrested ; and Ramses appointed a court of twelve high functionaries to try them. It is to his credit that, in giving them their commission, he warned them against unfairness towards the accused. ' Regarding the discourses which are held about these men,' he said, ' which are (to me) unknown, you shall *institute an inquiry* about them. They shall be brought to a trial, *to see if they deserve death* . . . If that which has been done was actually done by them, then let their doings be upon their own heads. I am the guardian and protector for ever, and bearer of the royal insignia of justice, in presence of the god king, Ammon Ra, and in presence of the Prince of Eternity, Osiris.' ¹

We have no account of the proceedings at the trial. The report which the judges made on concluding their investigations is a formal and dry document, giving *seriatim* the names of the prisoners, the exact degree of their participation in the conspiracy, and the sentence which was passed upon them. It appears that thirteen persons, including Bakakamen and Pentaour, were adjudged to have been principals in

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt* vol. ii pp. 158-9, 1st ed. Compare *Records of the Past*, vol. viii pp. 57-8.

the conspiracy, while twelve others were condemned as accessories, having been aware of what was going on and given no information to the authorities. No difference, however, was made in the punishment of the two classes. All equally suffered death, the sentence upon them being that they should kill themselves with their own hand. We learn by this that 'the happy despatch,' which we have been accustomed to associate especially with one somewhat barbarous kingdom, was an institution of the Egyptians.¹

Lighter punishments were inflicted on the females who had compromised themselves, and on some of those who had turned king's evidence, but had failed to make satisfactory depositions. The latter underwent mutilation, having their noses and their ears cut off.² The former seem to have been condemned to the penal servitude of keeping a beer-house,³ which was thought sufficient punishment for ladies of delicacy and refinement.

Finally, it would seem that, while the inquiry was in progress, the complicity in the conspiracy of some of the very persons appointed to conduct the investigation was detected. A brief appendix⁴ to the report of the judges states, that five persons, of whom three had been previously mentioned as members of the court, were also adjudged to have been accomplices in the crime, and were sentenced to expiate their guilt by death. With this strange transformation of the judges into the condemned the trial terminated; and

¹ No doubt it was also an institution at Athens, and may claim, so far, to be compatible with civilisation and enlightenment.

² On the employment of punishments of this kind in ancient times,

see the author's *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. iii. p. 247. 2nd ed.

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. viii p. 65, § 1 and note.

⁴ *Ibid.* §§ 2-7.

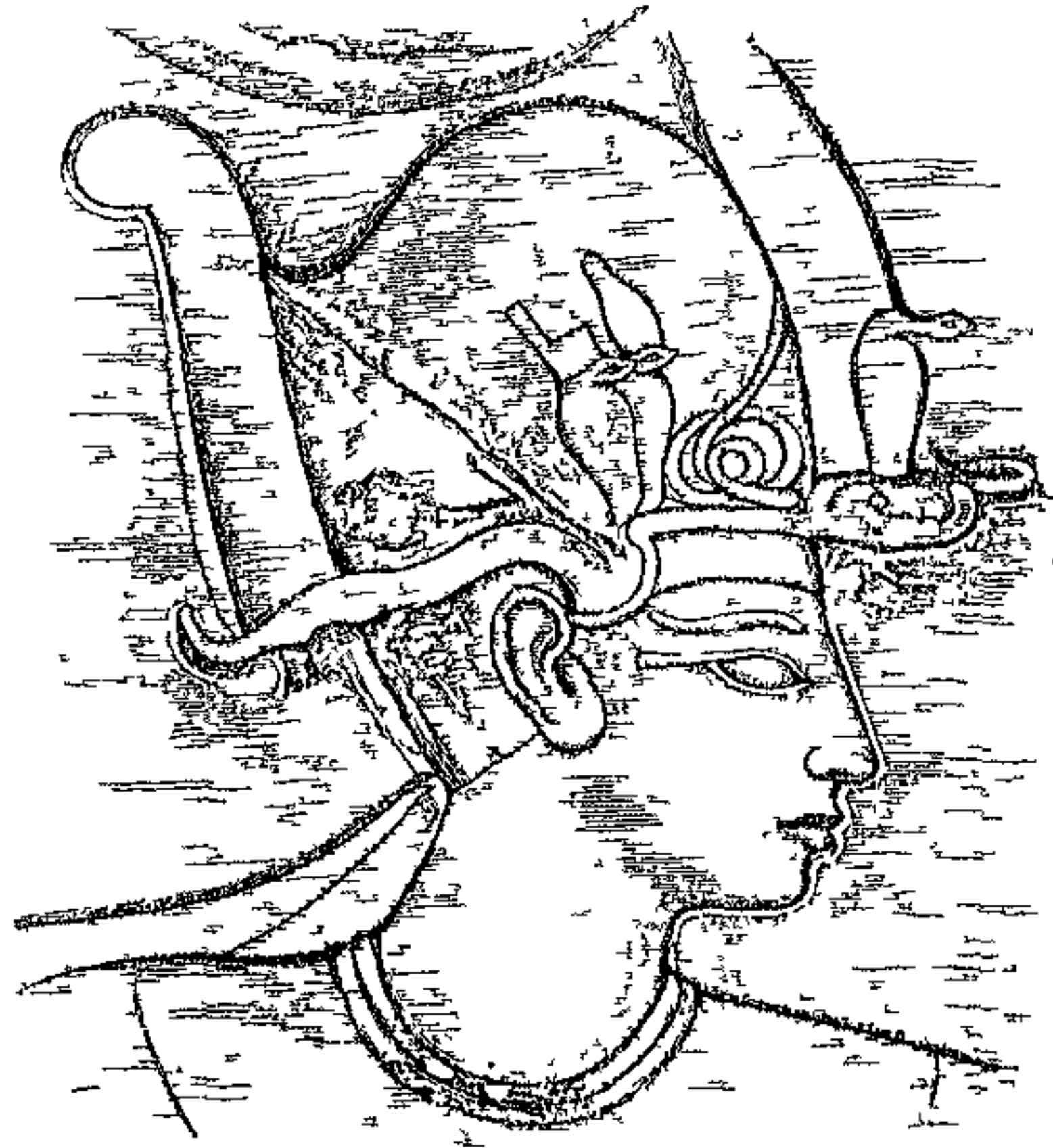
Rameses, relieved from the fears and doubts that must have harassed him during its continuance, proceeded to secure the tranquillity of the kingdom in the event of his death by making arrangements for the succession.

The legitimate wife of Rameses III. was a certain Hesi, or Isis, who bore also the foreign name of Hemarozath, and was the daughter of a certain Hebuan rozanath. It is suggested that she was a Hittite or an Assyrian princess;¹ but the latter supposition, at any rate, is improbable.² We are not accurately informed whether she was the mother of any of the king's numerous children; but it is tolerably certain that she was not the mother of all, since they consisted of eighteen sons and fourteen daughters.³ Rameses, it is clear, must have had many secondary wives, each of whom no doubt wished that one of her own children should succeed him. He appears, however, to have been swayed by no partiality or favouritism, but to have simply admitted the claims of nature, and given the preference to his first born Prince Rameses Meriammon, hitherto commander of the infantry, was selected by his father from among his numerous sons, and associated with himself upon the throne under the title of Rameses hak ma meriammon,⁴ or 'Rameses, Lord of Truth, beloved by Ammon.' His other sons were given high military or priestly dignities, and, in course of time, as many as four of them attained to the throne.

In person Rameses III. appears to have been much

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol II p 166, 1st ed. | any clear Semitic derivation
² The names are quite unlike Assyrian names, and have not even | ³ Brugsch l s c
⁴ Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf xxxviii No 504.

favoured by nature. His figure in the sculptures is noble and dignified ;¹ his features pleasing, his expression amiable. Something of the feminine look, which we observe in so many of the Egyptian monarchs,² characterises the countenance, which is more remarkable for sweetness than for any signs of strength or energy. In his actions, however, the king showed



Head of Ramesses III.

a firmness and a daring which his features belie, and proved himself a worthy descendant of Rameses the second and Sethos the first, of the third Thothmes and the third Amenôphis. Less distinguished certainly than these greatest of Egyptian monarchs, he yet

¹ *Description de l'Égypte*, 'Antiquités', vol. ii pls 10, 12, *Derkmaler*, pt iii pls. 210, 211
² See above pp 264 and 271.

inherited something of their spirit, and, in an age when degeneracy had set in, it was his lot to prolong the period of Egyptian greatness, and to revive the glories of a summer time that was gone by an autumnal burst of brilliant, if short lived, sunshine. It is perhaps true¹ that, like many an Oriental monarch, he tarnished the glory of his military career by sensual indulgence within the walls of the palace, and thus laid himself open to those attacks which we find to have been directed against him by the caricaturists of his day. But, if we remember how the great in all ages are pursued by the scurrilous abuse of the mean and the malignant, we shall hesitate to attach serious importance to the 'album of caricatures' reflecting upon this monarch,² which, after all, may be only an accidental survivor of a class of works similar to those which in modern Europe load with ridicule each sovereign, or each ministry, successively.

After a reign which exceeded thirty-one years, the third Rameses was gathered to his fathers. He had prepared for himself a tomb of no great pretensions in the rocky mountain opposite Thebes which was at this time the cemetery of the kings. It consisted of the usual long tunnel in the rock, divided into chambers, passages, and halls, and had no peculiar feature, unless it were that of 'a range of side chambers, in which, among other things, all the possessions of the king, such as weapons, household furniture, and the like, were represented in coloured pictures, just as they were once actually deposited in the rooms apportioned for them' in the palace.³ A granite sarcophagus,

¹ Brecht, *Ancient Egypt* p. 115

² See Lenormant, *Mémoires d'histoire ancienne*, vol. 1 p. 443

³ Brecht's *History of Egypt* vol. ii p. 167, 1st ed.

the lid of which is now to be seen in the Fitzwilliam Museum at Cambridge, was placed in the innermost chamber, and received the royal remains

With Rameses III. terminated the palmary period of Egyptian greatness and glory, which, commencing with Aahmes, the founder of the eighteenth dynasty, about B.C. 1600, continued for above three centuries, till the death of the son of Setnekht, about B.C. 1280¹. It is, of course, readily intelligible that a period of prosperity should be succeeded by one of decline, since the same law which governs individual life seems to have been appointed to rule also the destinies of nations; but it is difficult to understand, and account for, the suddenness and completeness of the collapse in this particular case, where all the vital powers seem at once to have failed, though the failure was not total, and a long and lingering decay preceded the final dissolution. The lack of contemporary monuments, which is one out of many signs of the decline, adds to the difficulty of tracing out the causes which led to it, and must render any attempt at their analysis to a considerable extent speculative and conjectural.

The strength of Egypt had, from the first, consisted in its isolation and its unity. A single homogeneous people was spread along the valley of the Nile from the tower of Syene to the shores of the Mediterranean. The people was almost without neighbours, since the Nile valley was shut in on either side by arid tracts very sparsely inhabited; the sea bounded

¹ The calendar set up by Rameses III. at Medinet-Abou is thought to prove that he ascended the throne in B.C. 1311 (Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. i. p. 444). If this be so, and he died in his thirty second year, his death would fall into B.C. 1279 or 1280. The astronomical date of B.C. 1240, three reigns after this (Bach, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 147), is in accordance.

it upon the north; the Nubian desert almost cut it off from the south. United by the ties of a common religion, a common language, common ideas and customs, the people was emphatically one, had a strong national sentiment, despised foreigners, and held itself infinitely superior to all the other nations of the earth. For centuries upon centuries the policy of isolation was maintained—the negroes were not allowed to descend the Nile¹ or the Greeks to ascend it²—the Soudan and the Sinaitic peninsula were the limit of the Egyptian arms—Europe and Asia were unknown regions to the sons of Ham—foreign manners, foreign ideas, foreign gods were either unheard of or studiously ignored. But with the accession of the eighteenth dynasty all this was changed. The Thothmeses and Amenôphises carried their arms deep into Asia—Natasu encouraged commerce with Punt—Seti and Rameses II. filled Egypt with foreign captives—later monarchs established large corps of foreign mercenaries—the ‘gilded youth’ of the upper circles took to indulging in foreign travel³ and, as a natural result, foreign manners crept in—the language was corrupted by a large admixture of Semitic words—the Pantheon was invaded by a host of Semitic or Scythic deities, and the old national exclusive spirit, sapped and weakened by these various influences, decayed and died away.

A second cause of the decline would seem to have been the fact that the Rameside race was exhausted, and that, the longer it continued, the weaker were the princes born of the Rameside stock and so entitled by hereditary descent to rule over Egypt. It is the fatal

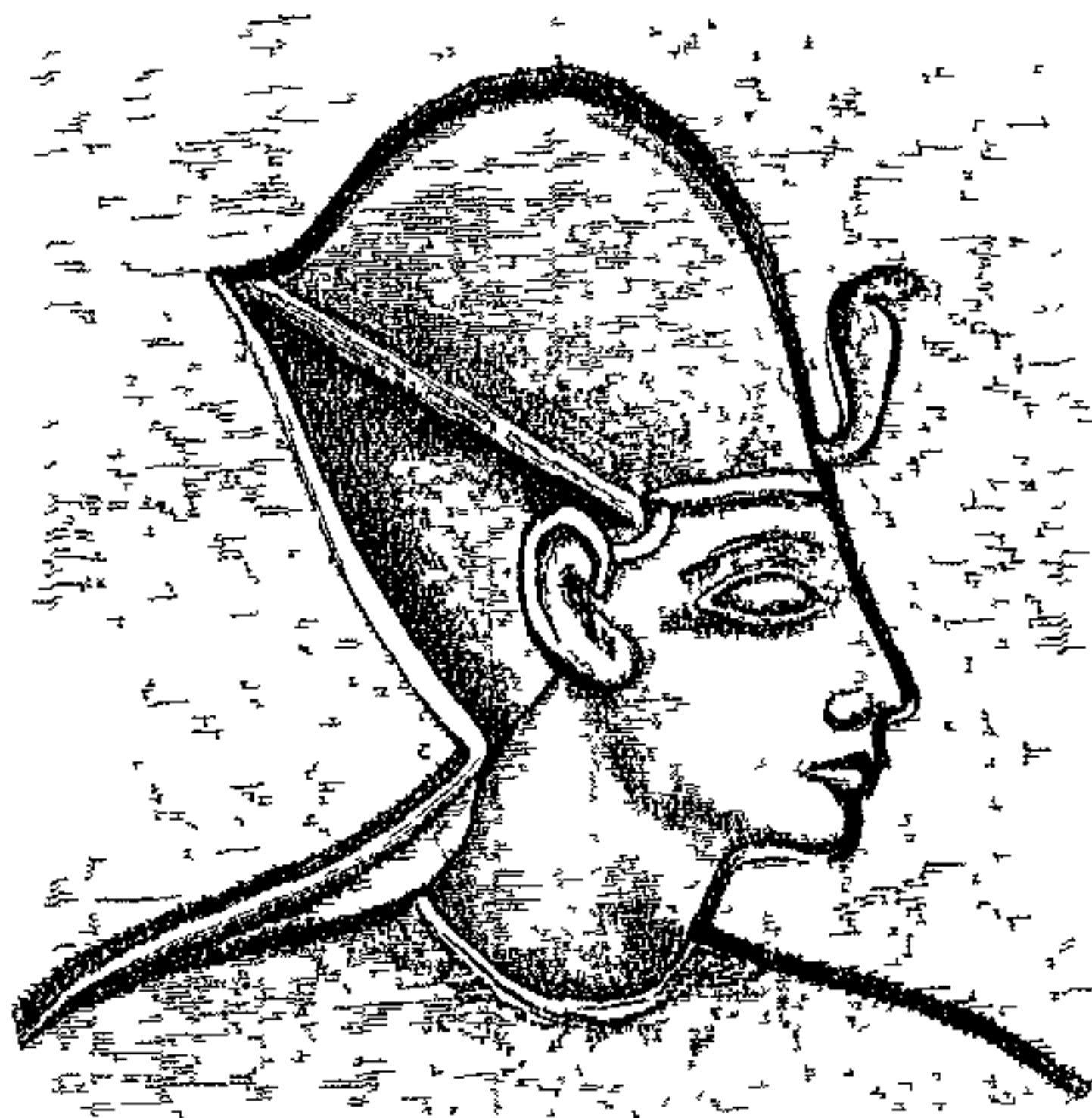
¹ See above, p. 156

² Herod. ii. 179

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. pp. 100–116. On the date of the

‘Travels,’ see Brugsc. *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 104, 1st ed.

drawback on the many advantages of 'legitimate' monarchy, that a time must arrive when the original vigour of the ruling race, whatever it was, must fail, its powers decline, and its fitness for its position come to an end. 'There is a run in families,' says Aristotle very acutely,¹ 'after a few generations, transcendent genius develops into madness, while solid parts become stupidity.' The Ramesside *physique* declines manifestly



Head of Ramesses IV.

in the monuments as time goes on, and by the date of Ramesses IV has reached a point beyond which there could scarcely be much deterioration.

One further ground of internal weakness, and therefore cause of decline, is to be found in an essential feature of the Egyptian political system, whereby a considerable but indefinite power was lodged in the

¹ Aristot. *Rhet.* ii. 15.

hands of the priests. A hieratic system may no doubt be as long lived as any other; but a system that is half hieratic, half monarchical, carries within it the seeds of its own destruction, and contains an element of weakness from which a thorough going despotism is free. A time was sure to arrive, earlier or later, in Egypt, when the *pontificale* and the *regale* would come more or less into collision, when the kings, growing jealous of the priests, would seek to curtail their powers at the risk of internal revolution, or the priests, losing respect for the kings, would stealthily creep into their places. The actual march of events in Egypt was in the latter direction. The hieratic chiefs, the high priests of the god Ammon at Thebes, gradually increased in power, usurped one after another the prerogatives of the Pharaohs, by degrees reduced their authority to a shadow, and ended with an open assumption not only of the functions, but of the very insignia of royalty.¹

A space of nearly two centuries elapsed, however, before this change was complete. Ten princes of the name of Rameses, and one called Meri-Tum, all of them connected by blood with the great Rameside house, bore the royal title and occupied the royal palace, in the space between B.C. 1280 and B.C. 1100. Egyptian history during this period is almost wholly a blank. No military expeditions are conducted—no great buildings are reared—art almost disappears—literature holds her tongue. If at any time the silence is broken, if the stones occasionally lift up their voice and speak, it is either in dry utterances of old and well worn official phrases and *formulae*, or in audacious

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i | *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i
ii pp. 178, 191, 1st ed., Lenoirant, | pp. 446-7.

plagiarisms from the compositions of an earlier age. The writers of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, aware that they are destitute of originality, contentedly reproduce, with slight changes, the masterpieces of the fourteenth and fifteenth ¹

The immediate successor of Rameses III. was his eldest son, Rameses IV., who bore the throne names of *Hak ma* and *Ma ma* ². Nothing is known of him excepting that he worked with great vigour the quarries of the valley of *Hammamât* ³ and the adjoining rocky and sterile regions, which produced many excellent varieties of hard stone. What use he made of these materials it is impossible to say, since neither any one great edifice, nor any large number of small ones, bear his name. He set up some insignificant sculptures in the great temple of Ammon at Karnak, ⁴ and made some small additions to his father's temple of Khonsu at Thebes; but beyond these, and some rock-inscriptions in the *Hammamât* region, no monuments of his reign have been identified ⁵. It appears by the *Hammamât* inscriptions that he held the throne for at least eighteen years, and we may conjecturally assign him the space between B.C. 1280 and B.C. 1260.

The successor of Rameses IV. was neither his son nor his brother, nor even perhaps a member of the Rameside family. He took the quite new throne-name of *Amonin khopeshet*, but also called himself Rameses, and is known as Rameses V ⁶. Some

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 172, 1st ed.

² *Ibid.* p. 167. Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xxviii and Taf. xxix, Nos. 504 and 504 bis.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 167-71, 1st ed.; Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 147.

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pls. 220-222.

⁵ We must except also his tomb in the *Biban el Moluk* which is a work of some importance. (See Lepsius, *Grundriss des Grabes König Ramses IV.* Berlin, 1867.)

⁶ Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xxix No. 505.

suppose him to have been a descendant of Siphthah;¹ but this is wholly uncertain. His only records are his tomb in the Biban el Moluk, afterwards appropriated by his successor, Rameses VI., and a single inscription at Silsilis, couched in inflated terms, which represents all Egypt as enraptured at his coronation, and the country as flourishing under his rule.² It is certain that no dependence can be placed on such self-laudation, and not improbable that it covers an uneasy feeling, on the part of the monarch who has recourse to it, that his rule is the reverse of popular.

On the death of the usurper the throne was regained by the Rameside family, and occupied (it is thought) by two princes, sons of Rameses III., who ruled conjointly.³ These were Rameses, his second, and Meri-Tum, his seventh son, who bore the office of high priest of Ra in Heliopolis. It is suggested that while Rameses VI. reigned in Thebes and bore sway over the Upper Country, his younger brother held his court at the City of the Sun, and ruled over the Delta. In the tomb which the elder prince appropriated from his usurping predecessor, an astronomical ceiling is thought to furnish the date of B.C. 1240 for the time of its ornamentation,⁴ so that that year may be regarded as included in the sixth Rameses's reign. No historical events can be ascribed to it, but we have evidence that the Egyptian dominion still extended over the distant South, where a 'Prince of Kush' still ruled as the

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. Table ii. at end of volume.

² Ibid. pp. 171-2. *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 223 b.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 172-3, 1st ed. Others place Meri-Tum between Rameses VIII.

and Rameses IX. (Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 147).

⁴ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 147; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 173, 1st ed. The date rests upon the calculations of the French astronomer, Biot.

Pharaoh's viceroy, with Adons of the various districts under him, and the Pharaoh's suzerainty was marked by the erection of statues in his honour, and the settlement upon them in perpetuity of landed estates¹

Conjointly with these two princes, or after their decease, two others of Rameses II. assumed the royal title, and are ranked as Pharaohs under the names of Rameses VII and Rameses VIII. The latter bore the throne name of Set hi khopshes,² which would seem to indicate that he was a votary of Sutech, whose worship was, it is clear, always held in respect by the Ramesside monarchs. Nothing is recorded of Rameses VII. and VIII. beyond their names. We may perhaps assign them, conjecturally, the space between B.C. 1230 and B.C. 1220.

With Rameses IX. we bid adieu to the immediate issue of Rameses III., and descend, at least a generation, to a grandson or great grandson of the last warlike monarch. This king took the throne name of Neferkara sotep en ra,³ and held the throne for at least nineteen years,⁴ thus bringing us nearly to the close of the thirteenth century. His reign is remarkable for two novel circumstances. One of these was the trial of a number of sacrilegious malefactors, who had invaded the sanctity of the royal burial places, plundered the royal mummies of their golden ornaments, burnt the coffins, and thrown the corpses on the ground. Kings and queens had alike suffered: Antefs of the eleventh dynasty, Sabak adorers of the thirteenth, a queen Isis, a Ra Sekenen, and even an

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. No. 512
ii pp. 174-7 1st ed.

² Ibid. Table ii at end of vol. ii.

³ Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xl.

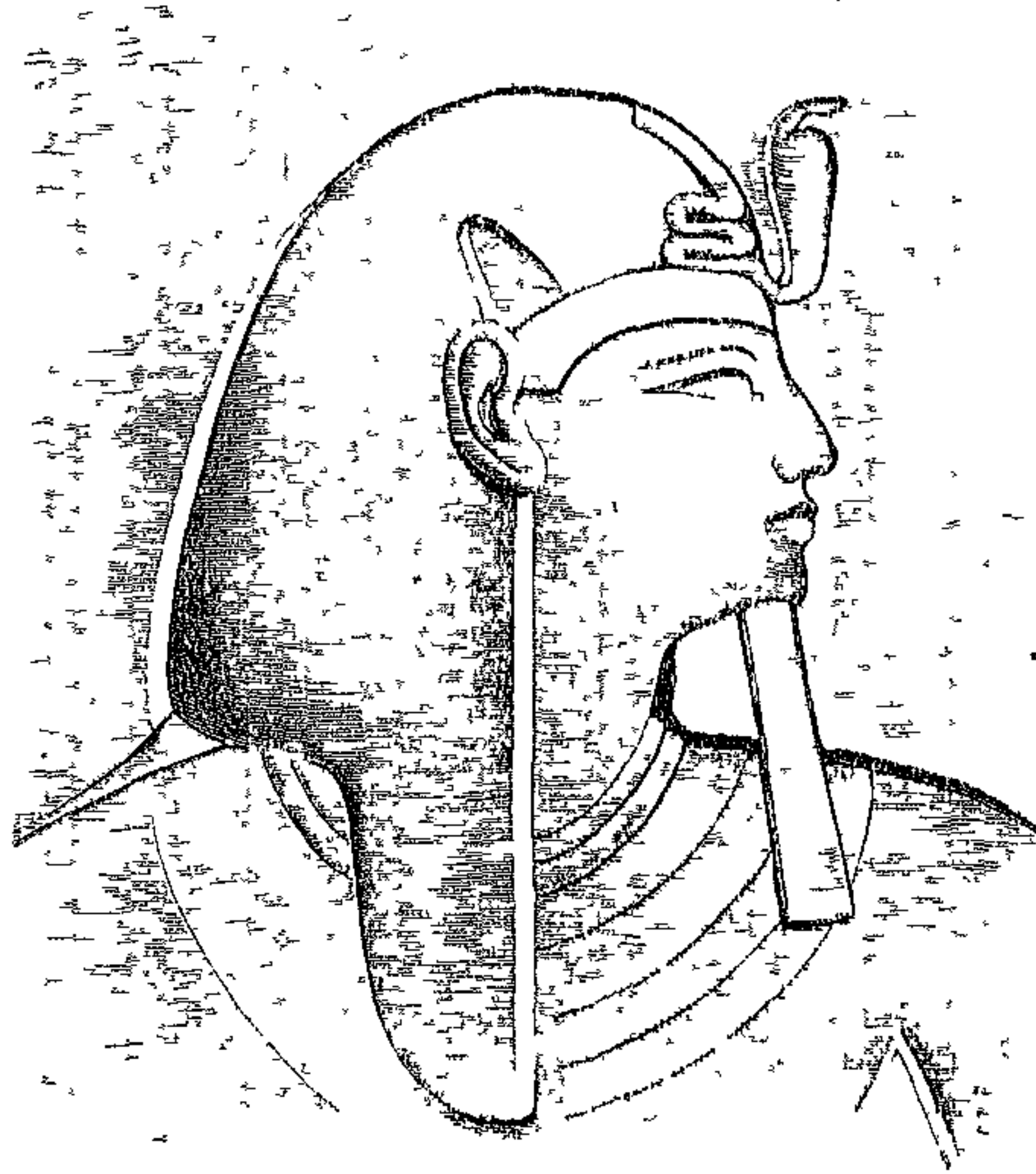
⁴ The nineteenth year of Rameses IX. is found upon the monuments.
(Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 148.)

Amenôphis, the first of the name.¹ All belief in the 'divinity that hedged a king,' according to the Egyptian religious system, must have passed away when a 'thieves' society was formed for the special purpose of secretly opening and robbing the tombs of the kings, in which even sacerdotal persons took a part.'² We may perhaps trace in the proceedings a concealed purpose of bringing royalty into contempt; we cannot be mistaken in gathering from them a weakening of the old superstition which viewed the kings as gods. As yet, however, the new ideas had the general public sentiment against them. Opinion was greatly shocked by the disclosures made, and officials of the highest rank were nominated to form a court of inquiry which should investigate the business, and inflict condign punishment upon the guilty. Amenhotep, the high-priest of the Great Temple of Ammon at Thebes, the chief of the Egyptian hierarchy, presided over the court, and, after acquitting a certain number of the accused, not perhaps the least guilty, condemned eight persons as the real culprits, who were either bastinadoed or else put to death.³

The other novelty, which documents of the time put before us, is the new position, relatively to the king, that the high priest of the Theban Ammon seems now to begin to occupy. An acute observer, familiar with all the monumental evidence, makes indeed the remark, that, '*from the time of Rameses III*, the holy fathers, who bore the exalted dignity of chief priest in the temple city of Ammon, were always coming more and more into the foreground of Egyptian history

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. pp. 80-100.
² Brugsch, vol. ii. p. 182.
³ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, l. s. c.

Their influence with the kings assumed, step by step, a growing importance' ¹ But even he does not note any tangible change until the reign of Rameses IX,



Head of RAMESSES IX

when for the first time the high priest of Ammon at Thebes steps forward as the great guardian, protector, and restorer of his shrine, and, 'whereas formerly it

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 176, Isted Compagnie Chabas, *Mélanges Egyptologiques*, 3^e série, vol ii pp 1-2, Bruch, *Ancient Egypt* p 153, Lenoir, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol i p 446 The

position of the priests of Ammon at this time has been compared to that of the Mayors of the Palace under the later Merovingian kings of France

was the priests who expressed in the name of the gods their thanks to the kings for the temple-buildings at Thebes,' now this is reversed, and 'it is the king who testifies his gratitude to the chief priest of Ammon for the care bestowed on his temple by the erection of new buildings, and the improvement and maintenance of the older ones' ¹ The office of high priest has become hereditary, and in the tenth year of Rameses-neferkara sotepenra, Amen hotep, who has recently succeeded his father, Ramessu nekht, appears on the walls of the temple as the first person in a scene where the king has simply to assign him his reward, and to see it conferred upon him by his great dignitaries ² A titular superiority still attaches to the Pharaoh, who is 'the fountain of honour, and whom Amenhotep frequently acknowledges to be 'his lord;' but practically there can be no doubt that Amenhotep plays the principal part. He is 'the teacher of the king,' he has 'found the holy house of Ammon hastening to decay, and has taken in hand its restoration,' he has 'strengthened its walls,' has 'built it anew,' has 'made its columns,' has 'inscribed in the gates the great folding doors of acacia wood' ³ The high priest is the active mover in the whole business; the king is passive, he looks on, 'sees and admires what is done;' approves it, and rewards it. But the initiative has passed into the hands of his nominal subject, and it is easy to see that ere long there will be a division of the royal authority, and the Pharaoh will possess its shadow, the high priest its substance.

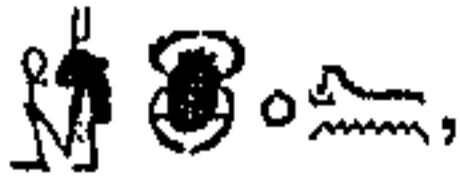
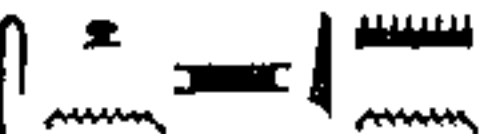
Still, the royal authority in Egypt died hard, and, as we shall find, soon revived. The reign of Rameses IX

¹ Thugsch, l. 8 c

² Ibid. p. 170

³ Ibid. pp. 180-1

brings us, as we have seen,¹ to the close of the thirteenth century. It is not until the opening of the eleventh that we find the high priests of Ammon completely established in the position of actual rulers of the country. An entire century thus passed between the first beginning of serious encroachment upon the Pharaohs' position and the transfer of their authority to the priests of Ammon. During this century four other kings, bearing the name of Rameses, and distinguished by special epithets, seem to have occupied the throne viz, Rameses X, bearing the further names of

Khepr ma ra Sotep en ra, , and Ammon-hi khopeshof,² Rameses XI, known as Sesha en ra³ Meriammon ; Rameses XII, called User ma ra⁴ Sotep en ra; and Rameses XIII⁵. The twelfth Rameses reigned at least thirty three years,⁶ and the thirteenth at least twenty six years,⁷ thus holding the throne, between them, for considerably more than half a century. Their predecessors may have been almost as long lived; and the four reigns may well have occupied the space between B.C. 1200 and B.C. 1100.

One event only can be assigned to this obscure period. An inscription set up in the temple of Khonsu, founded at Thebes by Rameses III, relates a tale which must undoubtedly have had an historical foundation, though its details may have received much amplification and embellishment. The document belongs to

¹ Supra, p. 392

² Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xl No. 517

³ Ibid. Taf. xl No. 518

⁴ Ibid. Taf. xl No. 519

⁵ Rameses XIII was known as Men ma-ra Sotep en phtha i, as Shaemuas, and as Neteri hakt-on

See Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xli No. 522.

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv p. 60, § 28. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 180, 1st ed. Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 153

⁷ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 180, 1st ed.

the time of Rameses XII. It relates ¹ that, once upon a time, when this prince was in the land of Nehar,² collecting the revenues or tributes that were willingly rendered to him annually by the territorial chiefs of those parts, one of them, called the chief of Bakhtan, placed his daughter among the tribute bearers, and thus drew the king's attention to her beauty, which was so great that he immediately made her his wife, and advanced her to the first rank in his harem. Some time after this, Rameses XII was in Thebes, performing his religious duties in the great temple of Ammon, when an extraordinary embassy from his father in law sought his presence, and requested that the Egyptian monarch would send the best-skilled man of his court to recover the queen's sister, Bentaresh, who was struck down by a sudden sickness. Rameses complied. The man supposed to be most skilful, the scribe, Thoth-em hebi, was selected, and sent back with the envoys to Bakhtan, with orders to place all the knowledge that he possessed at the disposal of the chief of the country. We are told that, on his arrival, he pronounced the case of Bentaresh to be one of possession by an evil spirit,³ but that after various attempts he was forced to acknowledge himself unable to cope with the demon. Upon this it would seem that he returned to Egypt, and the chief of Bakhtan sought assistance elsewhere. But eleven years later ⁴

¹ For the full narrative, see *Records of the Past* vol. xv pp 55-60 or Briggs' *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp 184-7 1st ed.

² So Brühl, *Ancient Egypt*, p 110. I conclude from this, that the word used is not that commonly (and rightly) rendered by Nahari, which

³  This is the earliest case of 'possession' on record. That of Saul (1 Sam. xvi 14) was above a century later.

⁴ In the twenty-sixth year of Rameses XII (about B.C. 1140),

⁵ In the twenty-sixth year of Rameses XII (about B.C. 1140),

he once more had recourse to his son-in-law. This time his envoy requested that the god Khonsu, the expeller of evil spirits, might be sent from Thebes to Bakhtan¹ for the relief of the possessed princess. Rameses hesitated, but after consulting the oracular shrine of Khonsu in the Theban temple, and receiving a favourable reply, he dispatched the image of Khonsu in a sacred ark, borne on the shoulders of ten priests,² and escorted by a troop of cavalry, from Thebes to Bakhtan, in order that a second attempt might be made to cure the princess. After a journey which lasted seventeen months,³ the ark arrived, was joyfully received by the afflicted prince, and brought into the presence of his daughter, from whom it at once expelled the demon. Great joy now prevailed in Bakhtan, for the spirit departed,⁴ and the recovery of the princess was complete. It might have been expected that the ark which had wrought the cure would have been immediately restored to its Egyptian owners with grateful thanks for the loan of it; but the power shown seemed to the prince of Bakhtan so valuable that he was loth to lose possession of so great a treasure. Accordingly he resolved to retain the ark in his own capital, and actually had it in his keeping for three years and nine months,⁵ at the end of which time he was induced to relinquish it under the following circumstances. He dreamed that he saw the god

¹ Requests for gods were not unusual in the ancient world (Heb. ex. vi 67, viii 64, &c.). The god was identified with his image, or at any rate supposed to work through it. A special power was thought to attach to some images.

² For a representation, see Dr Birch's *Ancient Egypt*, p. 151.

³ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv p. 50 § 17.

⁴ *Ibid.* § 22.

⁵ See Brugsch (*Hist. of Egypt* vol. ii p. 180, 1st ed.) Dr Birch, in the *Records of the Past* vol. iv p. 60, § 24, makes the period one of 'three years, four months, and five days.'

Khonsu, in the shape of a golden sparrowhawk, quit the ark, and fly away in the direction of Egypt. Waking up in a state of great agitation,¹ he summoned the priest attached to the ark, and, declaring to him what he had seen, announced his determination to send the holy structure back, and desired him to make the needful preparations. The return journey seems to have taken even a longer time than the journey from Egypt; for it was not until the thirty third year of Rameses² that the ark of Khonsu was once more safely replaced in its proper chapel in the temple at Thebes.

The interest of this narrative is considerable and of a varied character. If we accept the identification of 'Nehar' with Naharain, we shall have to regard it as indicating the retention to so late a date as about B.C. 1130 of Egyptian supremacy over Mesopotamia,³ and we must ask ourselves, Who is this king of Bakhtan who dwells at such a remote distance from Egypt, yet regards himself as in some sort an Egyptian tributary, and where is this Bakhtan, not elsewhere mentioned in the Egyptian records, yet apparently a place of considerable consequence? Bagistan (now Behistun) and Ecbatana (now Hamadan) have been suggested,⁴ but these seem too remote, and the latest historian thinks that a town of no great importance in Syria, called elsewhere Bakh or Bakhli, may be

¹ The phrase used *em ut neh neh* 'has one analysed' is doubtful. It has been translated 'lame' 'agitated' 'agitated and convulsed' &c. According to the general use of *neh*, no physical affection would be intended.

² *Records of the Past*, vol. iv p. 60, § 28.

³ So Lelouant (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 417).

⁴ Bagistan by M. de Rouge, Ecbatana by Dr. Brugsch, but the latter writer has retracted his conjecture (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 187, 1st ed.).

intended.¹ Some have gone so far as to suppose that the 'prince of Bakhtan' who detained the ark was Tiglath Pileser I the first great Assyrian conqueror² (about B.C. 1130-1110); but, besides the want of correspondence between the names 'Bakhtan' and 'Asshur'³ the enigmatical position of the prince of Bakhtan in relation to Egypt is one which we cannot conceive Tiglath Pileser occupying. Tiglath Pileser was an independent and warlike monarch who bore sway (about the close of the twelfth century B.C.) over the entire tract between Babylonia on the one hand and Phœnicia on the other. He perhaps on one occasion made Egypt pay him tribute,⁴ and it is incredible that he should, a little time before or a little time after, have paid tribute himself to Egypt, and sent his daughter to be a secondary wife of the Egyptian monarch. The greatness of Assyria began about B.C. 1300; and it is unlikely that Egypt maintained her Mesopotamian conquests much beyond that date. We have already noted the decline of the Egyptian power in this quarter,⁵ and the improbability that even Rameses III. possessed any real authority in the countries east of the Euphrates. Supposing that he did, his weak successors must almost certainly have lost it. Chushan Rethaim, who was independent king of Mesopotamia within a century of the Exodus,⁶ must have been long anterior to Rameses XII., and Egyptian rule, even over Syria, must have been lost before he could conquer Palestine.

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 187, 18th ed.

² Mr. D. Haigh in the *Zeitschrift für ägyptische Sprache* for 1874, p. 65.

³ The capital city of Tiglath Pileser I. was called 'Asshur', as well as his country.

Inscription of Tiglath-Pileser I. in Records of the Past, vol. v. p. 19, line 27. It is questioned however whether the Mizi or Muzi of this passage really represents Egypt.

⁴ See above, p. 374.

⁵ Judg. iii. 8.

We incline therefore to believe that 'Nehar' in the tablet of Rameses XII is not Niharam; that Bakhtan is not a country very remote from Egypt; and that the long time spent upon the road by the envoys who carried the ark was owing to the difficulty of conveying so large and unsteady a structure on the shoulders of a few priests along the rough tracks of the country.

The Rameses who closes the long list, and is reckoned the last king of the twentieth dynasty, was Rameses XIII, who, as if an exuberant amount of titles could make up for a deficiency in power, called himself Men-ma ra, Sotep en ptah, Shaemuas, Meriammon, Ramessu, Neter hak on¹ His principal monuments are found in the temple of Khonsu at Thebes, which he appears to have delighted in ornamenting² The other indications of his reign are scattered and fragmentary;³ they scarcely contain a single notice of historic interest. By one of them, however, we learn that, weak and insignificant as he was, Rameses XIII held the throne of Egypt for above twenty six years

The decline of Egypt under this dynasty was not merely a decline in power. Architecture, glyptic art, literature, morals all suffered, and suffered almost equally. After the death of Rameses III not a single great building was set on foot by any of the Egyptian kings, much less was any architectural novelty attempted. The monarchs contented themselves with making small additions to old edifices, having no pretension to originality, and inferior in every respect to the buildings whereto they were appendages. The

¹ Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Taf. xli No 522 Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii p 187, 1st ed
² *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 238
³ They occur at Karnak (ibid

pl 237), El Kaab (ib pl 236 b), Abd-el-Quina (ibid. pls 235 236) and the Biban el Mohuk (ibid pl. 234)

grand features of ancient times were not even imitated. No more hypostyle halls, like those at Luxor and Karnak—no more gigantic colossi—no more mighty obelisks. The greatest works which the kings undertook were their tombs. These were still ‘hypogees,’ or subterraneous galleries excavated in the rock, and divided into a number of halls, passages, and chambers. They still attained a considerable length, and were ornamented with interesting paintings. But neither in the size nor in the finish of their ornamentation did they rival the similar works of former days—such as the tombs of Amenôphis III., of Seti I., and Rameses II. They ceased to have any architectural features, such as columns, or piers, or chambers with arched roofs¹. Even the paintings were, on the whole, less interesting than those of an earlier age.

In glyptic art, connoisseurs detect a falling off as early as the latter part of the reign of Rameses II.;² but the decline is not palpable until the reign of Rameses III. is past. Then the ‘grand style’ disappears. The great compositions, covering entire pylons, and comprising hundreds of figures, come to an end: no new scenes are portrayed—rather, a wearisome sameness, a repetition *usque ad nauseam* of the same stereotyped religious groups, meets us and disgusts us. If there is any change, it is in the grossness of the religious representations, which increases.³ Again, the range of art is narrower. Domestic and military scenes almost drop out; but few animals are depicted; we have no

¹ Leigussou, *Handbook of Architecture*, vol. i. p. 241. The tomb of Seti I. has five piers and chambers and one large and splendid chamber with a coved or arched roof (ib. pp. 243-4).

² Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire*

Ancienne, vol. i. p. 426.

³ See the *Denkmaler* pt. iii. pls. 212 a, 219 b, 220 b, c, 221 d, f, g, 223 c, and compare Rosellini, *Monumenti Etruschi*, pl. cxxv, Nos. 4, 5, 6, which belongs to the reign of Rameses IX.

banquets, no gardens, no fishing, no fowling, no games. And the drawing certainly deteriorates; there is a feebleness and clumsiness in the outlines, a rigidity in the forms, as well as a want of variety, which are unpleasing.

Statuary also falls off. The figures become unduly elongated, and are finished with less care.¹ They have no longer the truth to nature which is possessed by the earlier statues, while they are certainly in no respect idealised. Moreover, unless we include statuettes, they become, comparatively speaking, rare, as if they had gone out of fashion, and were no longer demanded from the artists.

The decline of literature is even greater and more surprising. After the galaxy of talent which clustered about the reigns of Rameses II and Menephtha,² after the masterpieces of Pentaour, Ka'tabu, Nebseuen, Enna, and others, suddenly there comes a time when literature is almost dumb, when 'the true poetic inspiration appears to have vanished, and the dry official tone to have taken its place'³—when abstracts,⁴ lists of functionaries,⁵ tiresome enumerations in the greatest detail of gifts to the gods,⁶ together with fulsome praises of the kings, either by themselves or others,⁷ form the substance of the written compositions which survive, and which we have every reason to believe a fair sample of the literary produce of the age. Not a single name of an Egyptian writer be-

¹ Birch *Guide to Galleries*, p. 17.

² See above, p. 359.

³ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 172, 1st ed.

⁴ See *Records of the Past*, vol. vii, pp. 57-65; *Oriental Miscellanies*, *Égyptologie*, 3me série, vol. i, pp. 47-173, vol. ii, pp. 3-20 &c.

⁵ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, pp. 158-160, 17 &c., 1st ed.

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. vi, pp. 21-70, vol. vii, pp. 11-15.

⁷ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. i, pp. 17-2, 188, 1st ed.; *Records of the Past*, vol. vi, pp. 22-4, vol. vii, pp. 8-11.

longing to this dreary period remains on record; not a single work of imagination can be ascribed to it. Astronomy may ultimately owe something to the tables of the hours and of the risings of the stars which decorate the tomb of the sixth Rameses in the Biban el Moluk;¹ but literature, in the proper sense of the word, can never receive any enrichment from the curt and dry records, the legal *formulae*, the endowment deeds,² the royal orders,³ or the religious mysticism,⁴ which constitute the whole that remains to us of Egyptian literature during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

In morals, the decline had begun under Rameses II., with the introduction of polygamy. It advanced under Rameses III., when the court became a hotbed of intrigue and conspiracy, the highest officials combining with the women of the harem to seek the life of the king, or reduce him to an imbecile condition, by magical arts,⁵ enchantments, and 'all sorts of villainy.'⁶ The grossest license appears in the caricatures of the time, which assume that the king is a voluptuary, and satirise his weakness with a shameless disregard of decency.⁷ Not long afterwards sacrilege becomes fashionable, and a 'thieves' society' is formed, containing several members of the sacerdotal order, for the

¹ Brugsch calls these tables 'the most valuable contribution to astronomical science for all times (*History of Egypt*, vol. II. p. 173 1st ed.) but I am not aware that they have been of any service as yet.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II. pp. 174-5 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* pp. 180 and 189.

⁴ The 'Book of Hades' as recently set forth (*Records of the Past*, vol. X. pp. 85-134), though taken

principally from the tomb of Seti I., is in part derived from that of Rameses VI. It is wholly mystical. So also is the 'magical Papyrus,' which is pronounced to be 'a work of the nineteenth or twentieth dynasty' (ib. p. 136).

⁵ *Supra* p. 379.

⁶ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. II. p. 164, 1st ed.

⁷ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. I. p. 443.

purpose of opening and plundering the ancient tombs, without even sparing those of royal personages.¹ Inquiry on the subject is baffled for a considerable period, probably through the high position of some of those engaged in the transactions.² These transactions included the grossest ill usage of the dead bodies, which Egyptian notions made almost the extreme of wickedness. When at last punishment overtakes some of the offenders, it is inadequate, the greater number of the condemned merely suffering the bastinado.



Dress of a Noble in the time of Rameses III

Civilisation and the arts of life reached perhaps their highest development under Rameses III. It is

¹ See above, pp 391-2.

² See Chabas, *Mélanges Egyptologiques*, 3me série, pp. 17-173

then that we find the most luxurious fauteuils and ottomans,¹ the richest dresses, the most gorgeous river-boats,² the most elaborately carved musical instruments.³ After his time Egypt became, comparatively speaking, poor; and, while the general mode of life continued much the same as before, there was a falling



Dresses of an Egyptian Noble and his Wife (20th Dynasty)

off in grandeur and magnificence. Dresses became somewhat more complicated,⁴ but less splendid. Anklets were no longer worn, ear rings became rare, and

¹ Wilkinson, *Ancient Egyptians* vol. i pl. x (opp. title-page), and p. 419, No. 189.

² Rosellini, *Monumenti Civili*, pls. cv. No. 2; cvii and cviii. These vessels which belong to the time of Rameses IV, have gaily patterned sails gilded cabins ornamented with figures of men, and

steerage oars gaily painted and terminating in the head of the god Horus or of the king.

³ Wilkinson *Ancient Egyptians* (ed. Birch), vol. i. pl. xi bis (opp. p. 430) *Denkmäler* pt. iii pl. 236.

⁴ See the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls. 214, 233, 234.

bracelets ceased to be jewelled. On the other hand, the wigs of men and the hair of women (if it is indeed their own) were worn longer, and arranged more elaborately.¹ The absurd fashion still continued of turning up the toes of sandals to a height of two or three inches. Monkeys continued to be kept as pets; the lotus blossom was still the usual adornment of the head for ladies at feasts, and lotus collars were still placed round the necks of guests. Music appears in the sculptures rather as an accompaniment of sacred ceremonies than as a means of amusing and entertaining company.² The domestic scenes of the period are, however, so few, that we cannot pretend to anything like a full knowledge of Egyptian private life at the time; and, on the whole, it is perhaps most probable that (in the main) it retained under the twentieth dynasty the general character which it had acquired under the great kings of the eighteenth and nineteenth.

¹ See the wall-cut opposite

² *Ibid* pl. 236.

² See the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 210 *d*.

CHAPTER XXIII

THE TWENTY FIRST DYNASTY (ABOUT B.C. 1100-975).

Accession of Her-hor, the first Priest-King Chief Features of his Reign His Semitic Connection His Titles, Personal Appearance, and Character Doubtful Reign of Piankh. Reign of Pnemetem His Son, Men-khepr-ia, re-establishes Tranquillity at Thebes. Uneventful Reign of Men-khepr-ia Later Kings of the Dynasty General Prevalence of Peace and Prosperity Duration of the Dynasty

¹ Les grands prêtres d'Ammon à Thèbes se mettent à jouer le même rôle que plus tard les maîtres du pays sous les derniers rois néo-égyptiens
LE NORMANT *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. 1 p. 416

THE bold priest, who, biding his time, by cautious steps advanced himself into the rank and position of 'King of Upper and Lower Egypt, bore the name of Pe-hor or Her-hor, — . According to Manetho,¹ he was a native of Tanis, one of the chief cities of the Delta, the favourite residence of the Hyksos or Shepherd Kings.² How he became high priest of Ammon at Thebes is not clear, since that office seems ere this to have been hereditary,³ but having once attained that position, he speedily conciliated to himself the favour of the reigning monarch, Rameses XIII., and received from him the additional titles and offices of 'chief (uer) of Upper and Lower Egypt,' 'royal son of Kush,' 'fanbearer on the right hand of the king,' 'chief

¹ Ap. Syncell. *Chronographi*, p. 730

² See above, p. 104

³ Supra, p. 393. We should therefore have expected each successive high priest to have been a Theban.

architect,' and 'administrator of the granaries' ¹ Having thus managed to get all the most important offices of the government into his own hands, he succeeded, probably at the death of the king without issue, ² in quietly stepping into his place. No doubt, his position as head of the priestly order secured him important support in every city of the empire; but had not the Egyptians generally, and the military class in particular, been weakened and demoralised by their long abstention from war under the last ten Rameside kings, he would scarcely have settled himself upon the throne without a struggle. Of this, however, there is not the slightest trace. Her hor appears to have been troubled by no internal disturbances. He adorned Thebes with sculptures, ³ led the forces of Egypt beyond the frontier to the more distant portion of Syria, ⁴ obtained military successes and left his crown to his son or his grandson, who succeeded to his authority without difficulty.

It is thought that Her hor, in order to strengthen his power, allied himself with a foreign monarch. The names of his wife, Netem, and of his children, ⁵ are non-Egyptian, and have been pronounced Semitic, ⁶ but perhaps with scarcely sufficient evidence. The posi-

¹ See Lepsius, *Ueber die XXII ägyptische Königsdynastie*, p. 250. Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 101, 1st ed.

² So Lepsius 1 s.c. Brugsch (p. 102) suggests that he drove Rameses XIII. into banishment.

³ *Denkmaler*, pt. iii. pls. 243-248.

⁴ Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 151. Brugsch calls Her hor's veracity in question, and suggests that he conferred on himself the honorary title of conqueror of the Nuten, to which

he had no right' (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 103, 1st ed.) But I see no ground for this supposition.

⁵ Her hor seems to have had nineteen sons, and an equal number of daughters (*Denkmaler*, pt. iii. pl. 217 a, b).

⁶ So Buch, 1 s.c. Yet he gives *netem*, , as an Egyptian word signifying 'sweet' in his *Dictionary of Hieroglyphics*. (See Bunsen's *Egypt*, vol. v. p. 453.)

tive statement that 'he allied himself closely with one of the kings of Nineveh, in whose friendship he sought a support to his usurpation,'¹ is one of those bold assertions in which modern historiographers indulge because it is impossible absolutely to refute them. The assertion is simply without one atom of foundation. There were plenty of Semites within the limits of Egypt, with whom Herhor might intermarry if he so pleased, and the population of Syria was in the main Semitic, so that he had no need to go to the distant Assyria for a Semitic wife. Netem, his consort, is never said to have been of royal birth. She is the *suten hemt uer*, or 'great royal consort,' but not *suten sat*, 'king's daughter' or 'princess.' Moreover, neither the name of his wife, Netem, nor the names of any of his sons,² are definitely Assyrian. Herhor was probably married, long before he ascended the throne, to one of those Semitic Egyptians who abounded in the north-eastern provinces,³ and allowed his wife to give her children Semitic names, such as were common in those regions.

It is remarkable that, on assuming the royal title, he did not at first lay aside the designation of 'high-priest of Ammon,' but bore that descriptive epithet regularly in one of his royal scutcheons,⁴ while in the other he took the title of Si Ammon, , or 'son of Ammon,' which was subsequently claimed and borne by Alexander. Later, he called himself Si Ammon only.⁵ It would seem that when he relinquished the

¹ Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. i p. 450.

² Lepsius, *Königsbuch*, Nos. 533 to 551.

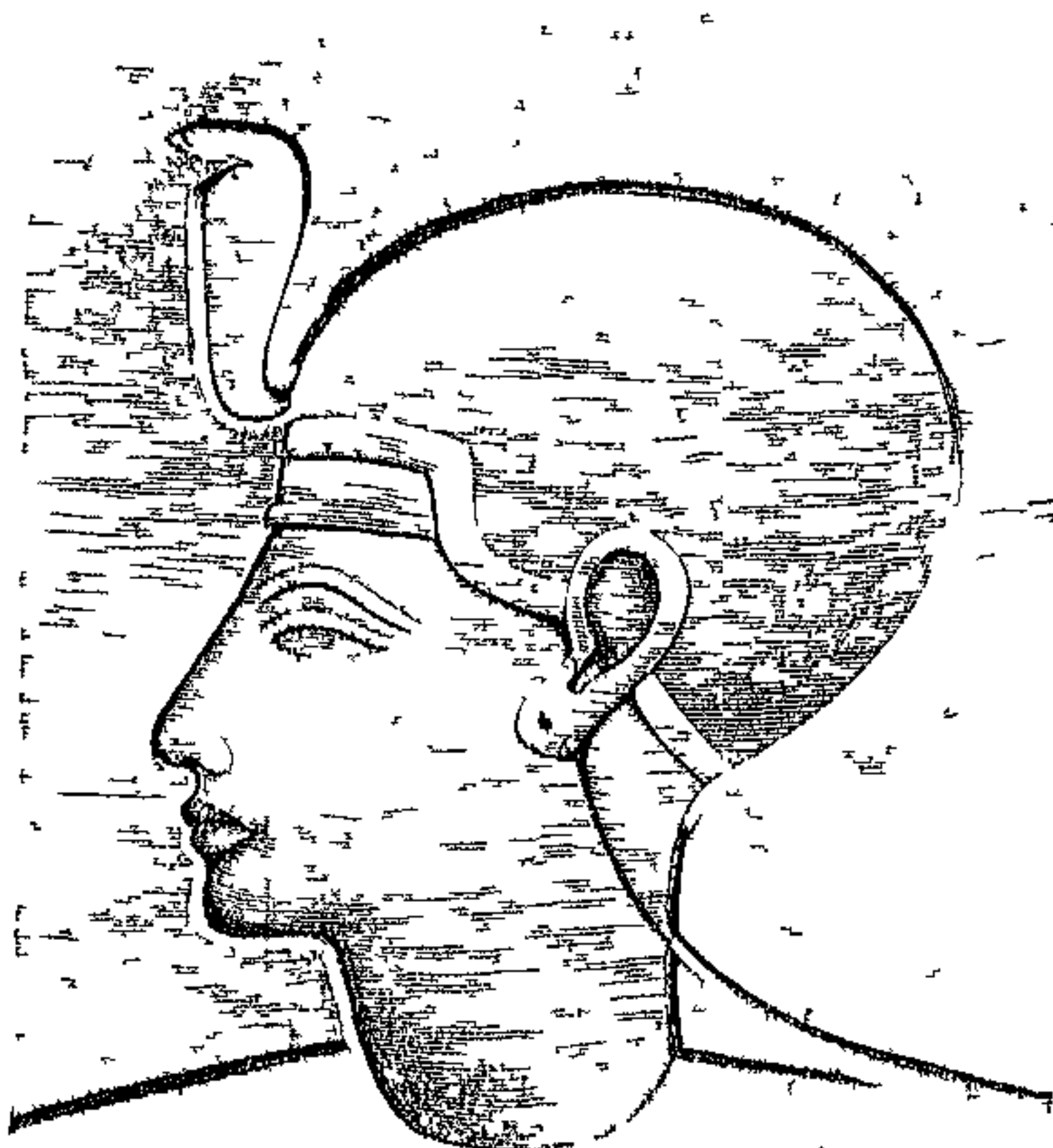
³ Lepsius, *Ueber die XXII Ko-*

nigsdynastie, p. 287. Compare above, p. 180 l.

⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls. 243, 244 a, 245 b, c, 246 a, b.

⁵ *Ibid.* pls. 244 b, 246 c.

priesthood for himself, he devolved it upon his eldest son, Piankh, , thus securing its continued connection with the crown, and stamping his dynasty with a permanent hieratic character.



Head of Her-Hor.

The personal appearance of Her-Hor was pleasing. In the sculptures his features are delicate and good, his expression mild and agreeable.¹ Though he claims to have reconquered the Ruten, we cannot suppose him to have been much of a warrior; and he certainly did

¹ See the woodcut, and compare Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl. x, No. 40.

not revive the glories of the empire to any considerable extent, or re-inspire the Egyptians with military ardour. On the whole, he would seem to have been a mild prince, not much more energetic than his Rameside predecessors; and we may suspect that he took the bold step of usurping the crown, rather at the prompting of his order than inspired by any personal ambition.

It is uncertain whether Herhor's son, Piankh, or his grandson, Pinetem, was his successor. Bunsen and Brugsch accord to Piankh the title of king;¹ but it is admitted that he has neither the cartouche surrounding his name, nor the royal title affixed to it, in any of the monuments. The monuments are so scanty,² that the negative argument is perhaps not of very much weight; and it is just possible that Piankh, the son of Herhor, succeeded his father, and held the crown for a few years before the accession of Pinetem.

Pinetem, the grandson of Herhor and son of Piankh, whose name is expressed in the hieroglyphics by , took to wife a princess of the Rameside house named Ramaka or Rakama,³ and so strengthened his title to the crown, which is thought to have been disputed by the male descendants of the old Rameside stock, who had been banished with their partisans to the lesser Oasis. Pinetem had fixed his court at Tanis in the Delta,⁴ the native place of his grandfather, and had probably thereby offended the Thebans, who, to

¹ Bunsen, *Egypt's Place*, vol. ii pp. 576-7; Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii table iv at the end. (See *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pl. 249 c, d pl. 250 a, pl. 251 a, b Rosellini, *Monumenti*, pl. cxlvii No. 3.)
² I am not aware of any monument erected by Piankh. His name is found, almost exclusively, on monuments erected by his son.
³ So Brugsch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 154. The fact is, however, disputed.
⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 194, 1st ed.

vent their spleen, took the part of the Rameside pretender. Hereupon Pinetem, in the twenty-fifth year of his reign, despatched his son Ra-men khepr, or Men khepr ra, , on whom he had devolved the office of high priest of Ammon, to the southern capital, to persuade or coerce the disaffected.¹ After punishing a certain number, he appears to have received the submission of the rest, but at the same time to have accepted their view, that clemency rather than severity was the proper course to be pursued towards the rebels, and that the first step necessary to be taken was the recall of the exiles from the Oasis. These are said, in the hyperbolical language of the East, to have amounted to a hundred thousand; and though this is no doubt an exaggeration, it is one which implies that they must have been in reality very numerous, and that the internal troubles, to which the usurpation of the high priests had led, must have become ultimately of a very serious character indeed. Men khepr ra, as Pinetem's representative, allowed the exiles to return, and pledged his word that the practice of banishment for political offences should be discontinued. After this we do not hear of any more disturbances, and we may conclude that the policy of conciliation was successful.

Men-khepr ra must, soon afterwards, have become king. His name occurs, enclosed in the royal cartouche, on bricks brought from the city of Kheb in the Heptanomis,² on which we find also the name of his wife, Hesi em kheb;³ but we cannot ascribe any events to the period during which he occupied the throne. The supposition of a great Assyrian attack

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. I, pp. 104-7, 1st ed.

² *Tent. melle*, pt. III, pl. 251, 1, 2.
³ *Ibid.* pl. 251, 1.

upon Egypt under a king, Sheshōnk, and his son Nimrud, which has the authority of one important name in its favour,¹ is not generally accepted, and seems to lack evidence.

Other eventless reigns belonging to the dynasty², are those of Pa-seb-en-sha, , Pi-ic-em II., and Hor-Pasebensha, . It is generally agreed that these kings belonged to the same family with those already enumerated, but their exact relationship one to another and even the order of their succession are uncertain. Egyptian history is a blank during this space. We only know that friendly relations were established during the course of it between Egypt and Palestine, where an important kingdom had been set up by David and inherited by Solomon; that a monarch of the Tanite line consented to give one of his daughters in marriage to the latter prince;³ and that, under these amicable relations of the two powers, a brisk trade was carried on for horses and chariots between the Egyptians on the one hand and the Syrians and Hittites on the other.⁴ Egypt was at the same time, as no doubt it was always, open as an asylum to the political fugitive, and the Hadad, prince of Edom, who fled from David, found a refuge with some monarch of the Tanite dynasty,⁵ just as Jeroboam, at a later date, found a refuge with Shishak.⁶ The country was quiet, without disturbance from within or menace from abroad, the kings were peaceful, never forgetting that they were priests as well as sovereigns; the people

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol ii pp 197-202

² Lepsius *Ueber die XXII Königsdynastie*, p 281, *Königsbuch*, Taf xliii, Buch, *Ancient Egypt*,

p 155

³ 1 Kings iii 1, vii 8.

⁴ Ibid x 20

⁵ Ibid xi 18-20

⁶ Ibid xi 40

were satisfied to apply themselves generally to useful trades and productive employments; they were no longer assailed either from the west or from the north, since the Libyans had been taught a lesson, and the ' wars of Troy ' had changed the condition of the powers of the Mediterranean, they were safe upon the side of the east, since they had a bulwark in the new empire raised up by the kings of Israel; and on the side of the south the Ethiopians as yet gave no sign. Cloud and tempest were gathering, and would burst in fury upon the land at a not very distant future, but as yet the atmosphere was serene—thunder did not even mutter in the distance—the calm prevailed which is generally thought to portend a storm.

The duration of the dynasty is calculated by Manetho¹ at 130 years; and, having regard to the synchronism between Sheshonk and Solomon, we may assign it, without much chance of serious error, the space between B.C. 1100 and B.C. 975.

¹ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 73, c.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE TWENTY-SECOND AND CONTEMPORARY DYNASTIES
(ABOUT B.C. 975-750)

The Twenty-second Dynasty not Assyrian but Bubastite—Ancestors of Sheshonk I—his Royal Descent—his Marriage with a Tanite Princess—His Reception of Jeroboam—his great Expedition into Palestine—his Arabian Conquests—His Bas-reliefs and Buildings—His two sons—Death of the elder and Accession of Osorkon I.—Peaceful Reign of Osorkon—Reigns of Takelut I and Osorkon II.—Expedition of 'Zerah the Ethiopian—Reigns of Sheshonk II, Takelut II, Sheshonk III, Pimut, and Sheshonk IV—Other Contemporary Kings—Rise of Piankhi—Disappearance of Art and Literature under the Sheshonks

'If the history of the twenty-first dynasty is obscure that of the twenty-second or Bubastite dynasty as it is here called is not less difficult'—
BIRCH, *Egypt from the Earliest Times* p. 155

WE are asked to see in the establishment of the twenty-second dynasty the effect of the absolute conquest of Egypt by the Assyrians,¹ which resulted in the establishment of a junior branch of the Assyrian royal family upon the Egyptian throne, and the subjection of the country for nearly two centuries to a foreign yoke. But a large number of important considerations oppose themselves to the reception of this novel theory, which has not, so far as we are aware, been accepted by any Egyptologist of repute, except its propounder. In the first place, the Assyrians appear to have been at the time in question exceptionally weak;² and whereas, rather more than a century earlier

¹ Briggsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 197-200 1st ed.

² See the author's *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii p. 81 2nd ed.

(B.C. 1100), they carried their victorious arms across the Euphrates into Northern Syria,¹ and a century later (B.C. 875) reduced the Phœnician towns to subjection,² in the interval from B.C. 1100 to B.C. 900 they were in a depressed and debilitated condition, quite incapable of making extensive foreign conquests. Secondly, it is certain that the Egyptians neither speak with any distinctness of any foreign attack upon their independence at this time, nor use the term 'Assyrian'—with which they were well acquainted³—in any connection with the kings of this dynasty. The term used in such connection, and supposed to designate 'Assyria,' is *Mat*,⁴ which may perhaps mean 'the peoples,' but which has no more connection with the word Assyria than with Palestine, or Babylon, or Persia. Further, the new names which now come into Egyptian history, and which are thought to support the Assyrian theory, are decidedly non-Assyrian, and, so far as is known, were never borne by any Assyrian person.⁵

¹ See the author's *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. p. 66, 2nd ed.

² *Ibid* p. 89.

³ Assyria appears as Assur,

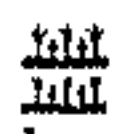
 in the inscription of Ithutmose III. (See above, p. 235.)

⁴ Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 192-3, 1st ed.

⁵ The names on which especial reliance is placed are those of Tishlakot, Ousikon and Nannut which are identified with Tiglath, Saigon, and Nimrod. Sheshonk is paralleled with the mystic name of Babylon, Sheshai (Jer. xxv. 26, li. 11) and a name, Nebesai among those of the ancestors of Sheshonk is read as Nebesai, and called Children of Babylonian. Now, these Tiglat, alone, is

never an Assyrian name, and could not be, since it is not 'Assyrian' and opens itself almost to some one, e.g. Nin, Pultani, &c. Nimrod is never found as an Assyrian name, and indeed is a word which it is difficult to find any representative either in Assyria or Babylon. Saigon, it is true, was an old Babylonian name, and came into use in Assyria about B.C. 720.

But is Ousikon Sargon or Sargon? If so, why the unnecessary prefix, Ua n O, G, which is not at all common in the Egyptian word for Egyptian? Sheshonk, as I have shown (*Ueber die XXVII. Koenigsdynastie*, p. 288), is not less the Jewish proper name Sheshonk (101 viii. 125) than the Egyptian city name Sargon (which is Babel spelt mystically by reversing the

Manetho, who, living under the Ptolemies, had no false shame leading him to conceal the subjection of Egypt by her neighbours—who called the seventeenth dynasty Phœnician or Arabian,¹ the twenty-fifth Ethiopian,² and the twenty-seventh Persian³—declared the twenty-second to be Bubastite,⁴ and therefore native Egyptian. His statement is confirmed by the fact, that two of the kings⁵ called themselves *Si-Bast*, or 'Son of Bast'—the goddess from whom Bubastis took its name, and who was especially worshipped there. It appears⁶ that a certain Sheshonk, a Bubastite contemporary with one of the later kings of the twenty-first dynasty, took to wife a princess of the Tanite house,⁷ named Meht-en-hut or Meht-en-usekh,⁸ and had by her a son, Nannut, who became the father of a second Sheshonk, . This second Sheshonk, having royal blood in his veins, was selected by a later Tanite king as a fitting husband for his daughter, Keramat, , and was thus led to raise his thoughts to the crown. Whether he usurped it, or succeeded, in right of his wife, on the failure of hers

letters of the alphabet) Nabtesha read as Nabonias has a Babylonian look but, read as Nbnas, is not even necessarily Semitic. Dr Brier who is an advocate of the Semitic origin of the Sheshonks, yet allows that they were possibly 'Libyans' and not Semites (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 155).

¹ See above, p. 180.

² Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph.* i. 74 B.

³ Ibid. p. 75 C.

⁴ Ibid. p. 73 B.

⁵ Osorkon II. and Sheshonk III. See below, pp. 420 and 421.

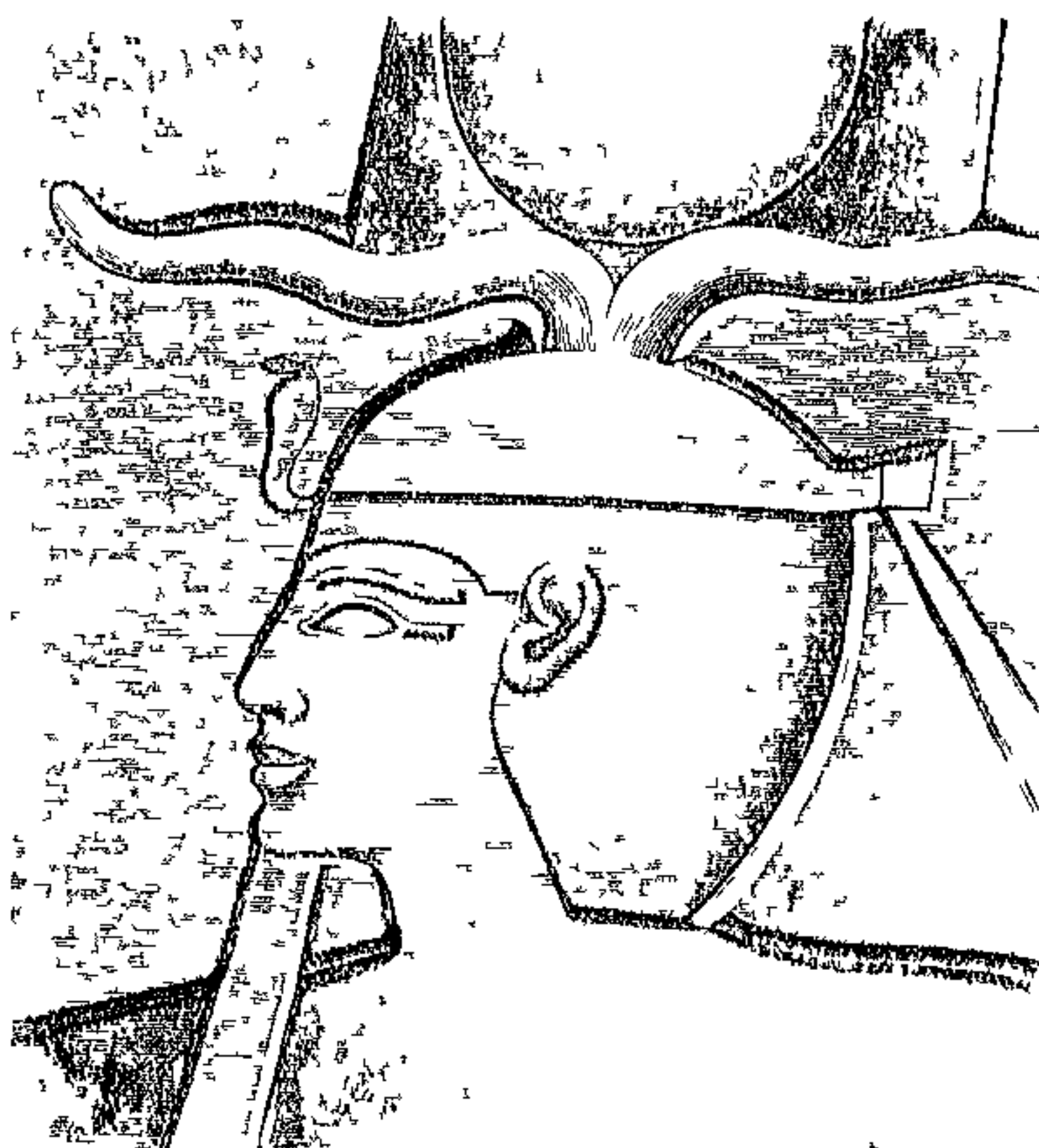
⁶ The early history of the Sheshonk family is made known to us

by one of the Apis statues discovered by M. Mariette. (See his work *Le Serapeum de Memphis* p. 22.) An excellent example of this inscription will be found in the small brochure of Lepsius, *Ueber die XXII Königsdynastie*, pp. 205 et seq.

⁷ Her name is shown by the prefix *ant-en-sat*, , which occurs before her name (Lepsius, p. 208, line 11).

⁸ Lepsius uses the first, Bagesch, the second, of these forms. Meht-en-hut was probably a daughter of Meht-khepi-ia or Pisebensi (Pausanias).

male in the Tanite line,¹ is doubtful; but perhaps it is most probable that he was regarded as the rightful heir. Shortly after his accession, he took the throne-name of Hut khepr ra setep en-ra, and bore this name in his second shield on most occasions.²



Head of Sheshonk I (Sheshonk)

It was probably not long after his accession that he received a fugitive of importance from the neighbouring country of Palestine, where Solomon still occupied the throne of his father David. This was Jeroboam, the son of Nebat, an officer who had held high employment under Solomon,³ but had become an

¹ S. Wilkinson (in the author's *Herodotus* vol. ii p. 371 3rd ed.) and L. Montanari (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. i p. 452) ² *Denkmäler*, pt. iii pls 252-4, Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl. cxlviii ³ 1 Kings xi 28.

object of suspicion because it had been prophesied that he would one day be king of ten out of the twelve tribes of Israel. To prevent the accomplishment of this prophecy, Solomon wished to put Jeroboam to death;¹ he, however, contrived to effect his escape, and became a refugee at the court of Sheshonk, where, according to tradition,² he was well treated. When Solomon died some time after, Jeroboam returned to his native land; and the prophecy of Ahijah was fulfilled under the circumstances related in the First Book of Kings.³ The Israelites elected Jeroboam to be their sovereign, but he probably felt his tenure to be insecure, and consequently made representations to Sheshonk which caused that monarch to undertake an important military expedition. The Egyptians had for several centuries known nothing of war; but a number of mercenary soldiers had been maintained as a sort of police, and there was thus a standing army of a certain amount, consisting mainly of the Libyans of the west, and the negroes and Ethiopians of the south, which preserved internal order, guarded the frontiers, and might be employed, if need were, beyond them. Sheshonk, a new king of a new dynasty, might be anxious, like Herhor when he attacked the Rutens,⁴ to impress the nation favourably by the display of energy and military daring. If he could count on the friendship of Jeroboam, he would be exposing himself to little danger, and he might gather laurels, such as had been unheard of for above a century, without any risk of a reverse. Accordingly he determined on a great

¹ 1 Kings xi. 40.

² See the apocryphal additions to the First Book of Kings wherein it is said that Jeroboam is said to have married a daughter

of Sheshonk. Compare Syncellus (*Chronograph* p. 181, A).

³ 1 Kings xii. 6-20.

⁴ See above, page 409, note 1.

expedition into Palestine. Collecting the whole body of the mercenaries, and adding to them probably some Egyptian levies, he was able to raise a force of twelve hundred chariots, sixty thousand horse,¹ and footmen 'without number,' at the head of which he entered the Holy Land 'in three columns,' as has been supposed²—and, spreading his troops far and wide over the country, 'took the fenced cities which pertained to Judah and came to Jerusalem.'³ Now for the first time since they entered the 'Land of Promise' had the Jews to contend with their great southern neighbour—now for the first time did they come in contact with huge masses of disciplined troops, armed and trained alike, and soldiers by profession. The clouds of horse, the vast body of chariots, the countless number of the footmen which swarmed over the land, seem to have overawed their minds, and prevented the very thought of an organised resistance. It was Rehoboam, immediately after Jeroboam's revolt, fortified a number of the towns of Judaea,⁴ especially those towards the south and south west,⁵ in anticipation of an Egyptian invasion. At the sight of the advancing host the cities opened their gates, or fell after brief sieges;⁶ and in an incredibly short space of time the triumphant Pharaoh appeared before the Jewish capital, which yielded at discretion. Sheshonk entered the city, stripped the temple of its most valuable treasures, and plundered the royal palace,⁷

¹ See 2 Chron x'1 3. The 'twelve hundred chariots' of this passage are a number not incredible—but it is difficult to believe that Egypt ever mustered 'sixty thousand horse'—One is inclined to suspect a corruption of 'six' into 'sixty'.

² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 156

³ 2 Chron xii 4. Compare 1 Kings xiv 25.

⁴ 2 Chron xi 5 12.

⁵ As Socco (or Socol), Adullam, Azkab, Gath, Mareshah, Zaph, Tekon, Hebron &c.

⁶ 2 Chron xii 4.

⁷ 1 Kings xiv 26, 2 Chron xii 9.

but accepted Rehoboam's submission, allowed him to remain in Jerusalem as tributary prince,¹ and marched away his troops to further conquests.

Jeroboam, it would seem, had work for his ally to do, not in Judæa only, but also in his own territory. The Levitical cities, scattered about the land, were hostile to him;² and many of the Canaanitish towns had either never been subdued, or had taken advantage of the disruption of the kingdom to reclaim their independence.³ Sheshonk is found, by the list of the conquered cities and tribes which he set up on his return home, to have carried his arms over the kingdom of Israel no less than over that of Judah, and to have captured in the former a large number of Levitical cities, such as Rehob, Gibeon, Mahanaim, Beth-horon, Kedemoth, Bileam or Ibleam, Alemoth, &c., and a certain number of Canaanite ones. He may even be traced across the Jordan valley, where he took Beth-saan, into the trans-Jordanic region, where he captured Mahanaim and Aiocr, and thence into north-western Arabia, where he reduced the Edomites, the Temanites (?), and several tribes of the Hagarenes.⁴ Thus his expedition, though not to be compared with the great campaigns of Thothmes I and III, of Seti I. or Rameses II., had a considerable success. Jeroboam, the friend and ally of Egypt, was strengthened and helped, Rehoboam was made a tributary; and the Arab tribes south and east of Palestine were reduced to dependence.

On his return to Thebes from Asia, with his

¹ This is implied in the expressions, 'they shall be *his servants*' that they may know my service, and the service of the kingdoms' (2 Chron. xii. 8)

² 2 Chron. xi. 13-14

³ See the remarks of Mr. R. Stuart Poole in Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible* vol. iii. p. 1211

⁴ Ibid. p. 1203.

prisoners and his treasures, it seemed to the victorious monarch that he might fitly seek to emulate the glories of the old Pharaohs, not only in war but in the arts of peace. Seti and Rameses had eternalised their victories by inscribing them upon imperishable stone at Thebes—why should he not follow their example, and set up his memorial in the same place? He was ‘high priest of Ammon in Apt,’¹ and the Great Temple of Karnak was thus under his special care; it was therefore at that place that he resolved to impress upon the stone the image of his own person and the record of his successes. On the external southern wall of this building, in the so called portico of the Bubastites, he caused himself to be represented twice

once holding by the hair of the r heads thirty eight captive Asiatics and threatening them with uplifted mace,² and a second time leading captive 133 cities or tribes, each specified by name, and personified in an individual form, though the form is incompletely rendered



Supplemental figure

Out of all these, the greatest interest will always attach to that which bears the inscription, ‘Yuteh Malk,’ and represents either the captive Judean kingdom, or Rehoboam himself.⁴

Besides engraving his bas-reliefs on a part of the old Temple of Ammon, Sheshonk ‘built a sort of

¹ *Denkmäler*, pl. in pls 253 b, c, 254 c &c

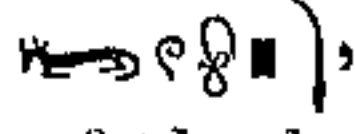
² *Ibid.* pl. 253 a.

Ibid. pl. 252 (compare Rosellini *Monumenti Storici* pl. cxxviii)

Grammatical objections may be taken to both the proposed transla-

tions of ‘Yu ch-Malk’—‘Judah a kingdom’ and ‘Judah’s king.’ But Mr. Stuart Poole has shown that the former rendering, at least, is a possible one (*Smith’s Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. iii. p. 1293).

entrance hall, which leads from the south, close by the east wall of the sanctuary of Rameses III, into the great front court of the temple.¹ A record in the quarries of Silsilis shows that he drew the stone for this edifice from that locality, and that he gave the order for the stone to be hewn in the twenty-first year of his reign.² As no higher date than this is found on his monuments, and as Manetho gave him exactly twenty-one years, we may assume as highly probable that his reign was not much further prolonged, and assign him the period from about B.C. 975 to B.C. 953.

Two sons of Sheshonk I. are known to us. The eldest, who was named Shupot or Aupot, , received during his father's lifetime the titles of 'high priest of Ammon Ra in Thebes' and 'commander in chief of the Theban soldiers'.³ He also presided over the working of the quarries at Silsilis.⁴ Apparently, however, he died before his father, and so made way for the second son Osarkon, , who took the throne name of Sokhe n khepr ra-sotep en ra,⁵ and held the throne, according to Manetho, for fifteen years,⁷ from about B.C. 953 to B.C. 938. It is thought by some⁸ that, like his father, he was ambitious of military glory, and that he followed his father's example by making a great expedition into Palestine, being, in fact, the Zerah, or Zerach, , who invaded Judæa in the reign of Aser, the grandson of

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 210, 1st ed.

² *Derkmaller*, pt. iii. pl. 254 c.

³ Ap. Syncoll. *Chronograph.* pp. 73 v. 74 d.

Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 213, 1st ed.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 212.

⁵ *Derkmaller*, pt. iii. pl. 257 b, c.

⁷ Ap. Syncoll. 1 s. c.

⁸ This was the view of Dr. Hume. M. Lenoir places the expedition in the reign of Osarkon I., but without identifying him with Zerah (*Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 453).

‘Rehobum.’¹ But the dates of the two expeditions, which fell thirty years apart, and the epithet of Zerah, ‘the Cushite,’ $\Psi\text{כח}$, are against the view. Osarkon I cannot possibly have been termed ‘the Cushite,’ since his father and mother were both native Egyptians, and as Shishak’s expedition was made tolerably late in his reign,² and Osarkon probably did not outlive him above fifteen years, the date of Zerah’s expedition would not be reached until Osarkon’s reign was over. There is every reason to believe that he was a peaceful and wholly undistinguished prince, content to add a few sculptures to the ‘Bubastite portico’ of his father,³ and to rule Egypt in quietness during such term of life as Heaven might allow him. His portrait, as given by Rosellini,⁴ is that of a mild prince, not remarkable for energy or determination.



Head of Osarkon I

Osarkon I. was followed upon the throne by his son Takerut or Takelut, $\overline{\text{𓂏}} \overline{\text{𓂏}}$, who assumed the title of Si Hesi, 𓂏 , ‘son of Isis,’ and further took the throne name of Hut-ra-sotep-en Ammon ne e-hak was. It is thought⁵ that, in the early part of his reign, he

¹ 2 Chron. xiv. 9, 13.

² Rehobum led to Shishak soon after Solomon began to build Millo (1 Kings vi. 27), which was in the twenty-fourth year of his reign (ib. vi. 1, ix. 10, 21). He must have reigned at the court of Shishak some fifteen or fifteen years. His expedition was not till more than four years afterwards (ib. xiv. 25). Thus it can scarcely have been earlier than Sheshonk’s

eighteenth year.

³ *Dendur* pt. iii. pl. 257 b, c.

⁴ *Monumenti Storici* pl. vi. No. 40.

⁵ Brugse, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 214, 1st ed. The monuments are so few and scanty for this period that historians are tempted to spin their narratives respecting the dynasty out of very unsubstantial materials. I confess I see no sufficient ground for Dr. Brugse’s ‘contest’ between the two brothers.

was engaged in a struggle with his younger brother, Sheshonk, the son of Osarkon I by a Tanite princess, Keramat, and that, although successful, he had to concede to the cadet of his house the new and high title of 'Lord of Upper and Lower Egypt,' which is found attached to his name in the inscriptions. Sheshonk was also recognised as 'high priest of the Theban Ammon,' and thus enjoyed a dignity not much inferior to that of his brother. He likewise bore the office of 'commander in chief of the troops.' Takelut had a short¹ and undistinguished reign. He has left no monuments, and is only known through the Apis stelæ, which give him a wife called Kapes, and a son Osarkon,² who succeeded him.

The second Osarkon reigned at least twenty-two years.³ He called himself Si Bast or 'son of the goddess Bast,' the queen of Bubastis, and also took the throne name of User-ma-ra-sotep-en-Ammon. Chronological considerations⁴ make it probable that the great expedition into Palestine, ascribed in the Second Book of Chronicles to 'Zerah the Ethiopian,' took place in his reign, either under his own auspices, or under those of an Ethiopian general, to whom he entrusted the command of his army. The Hebrew Zerah, זרח, may possibly represent the Egyptian Osarkon, and Osarkon II may be called an Ethiopian, because his

¹ Manetho allowed twenty-five years only for the three kings who followed after Osarkon I (ap. Syncell *Chronograph* p. 731). As one of them (Osarkon II) reigned at least twenty-two years very little time indeed is left for the two others. Of course, Manetho may have been mistaken, but the want of monuments for the reigns of

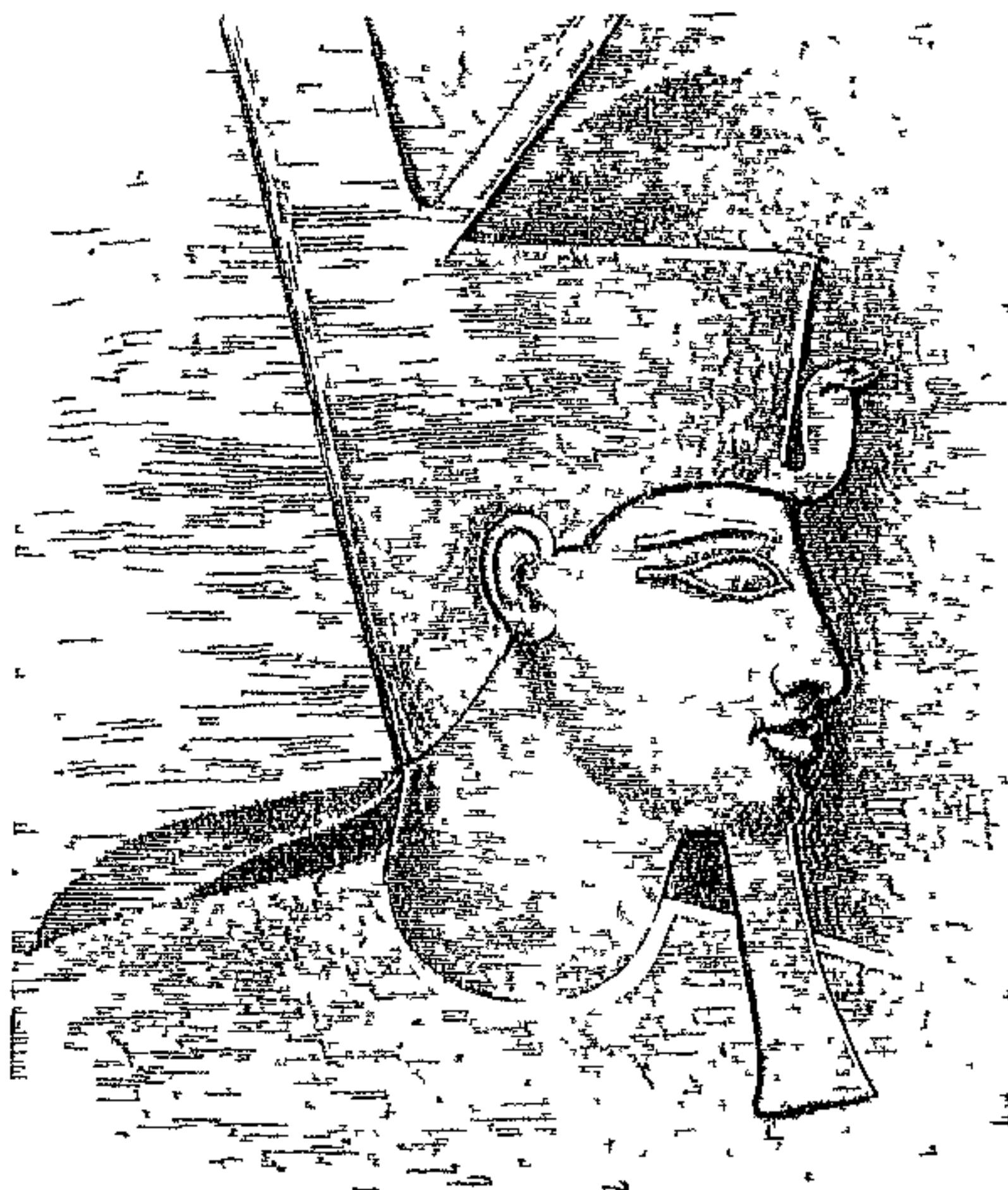
Takelut I and Sheshonk II tends to confirm him.

² Lepsius *Ueber die XXII. Dynastie*, pp. 268-9. Comp. also Mariette, *Le Sérapéum de Memphis*, p. 22.

An Apis died after he had entered on his twenty-third year (Mariette *Sérapéum*, p. 18.)

See above, p. 421, note².

mother, Kapes, was an Ethiopian princess;¹ or the Pharaoh, whose mercenary troops were largely Ethiopian, may have placed the invading army under a leader of that nation. The object of the expedition was to bring back Judæa, which had revolted,² to the



THE LATER PHARAOH

subject position which had been imposed upon her by Sheshonk (Shishak). The attack, however, completely failed. Inspired by the words of Shemaiah, which assured him of victory, the Jewish king, Asa, the

¹ There is no proof of this, and it is only thrown out as a conjecture. But the name is new and strange to us, certainly not Egyptian.

² Asa's revolt is indicated by his fortification of his strong holds (2 Chron. xiv. 7.)

grandson of Rehoboam, boldly met the invader in the open field, engaged his numerous host, which is vaguely estimated at 'a thousand thousand,' and completely defeated it in a great battle.¹

Osakon II appears to have had three wives.² The chief of these bore the same name as the queen of Sheshonk I, Kiamat, and was probably by birth a princess of the royal house. She was the mother of Sheshonk II (who, in his father's twenty third year, was old enough to exercise the functions of royalty at Memphis), and must therefore have been taken to wife by Osakon before, or soon after, he ascended the throne. Another of his wives, named Hesi em kheb, bore him the princess Thesbast per, while a third, Mut at ankhes, was the mother of prince Namut, who became 'overseer of the prophets and commander of the soldiery at Heracleopolis Magna,'³ governor of the Thebaid, and high priest of Ammon at Thebes.

The crown prince, Saeshonk, as governor of Memphis, celebrated the funeral rites of a deceased Apis bull in his father's twenty third year,⁴ and probably ascended the throne soon afterwards. He was even less distinguished than his predecessors, and apparently had but a short reign.⁵ The throne name which he assumed, and which distinguished him from the other Sheshonks, was Seses-kheperia soteper-Ammon.

The remaining monarchs of the dynasty were

¹ 2 Chron. xiv. 9-13. As Zarah's chariots were only 300, it is unlikely that his army was as numerous as that of Sisak, whose chariots were 1,200. The 'thousand thousand' of the author of Chronicles probably means only very numerous.
² Lepsius *Königsbuch*, taf. xlv.
³ Nos. 580, 591, and 597.

⁴ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 215, et seq.

⁵ *Monette Scapéum de Memphis*, 186.

⁶ See above, p. 425, note. The arguments there used apply equally to the reigns of Lakelut I and Sheshonk II.

Takelut II, called Si-Hesi, or 'son of Isis,' like the former prince of the name, and also Hut khepru-sotep-en-ra; Sheshonk III, known as Si-Bas and User-nu-ra-sotep-en-ra; Pami, , called User-ma-ra-sotep-en-ammon, and Sheshonk IV, called A-khepru. These four princes are thought to come in the regular line of succession¹ from Sheshonk II, and, together with Sheshonk I, Takelut I., and the two Osarkons, to make up the nine monarchs whom Manetho assigned to this royal house². Egypt rapidly declined under their government and once more suffered disintegration; rival dynasties established themselves at Thebes, Tanis, Memphis, and elsewhere,³ Ethiopia acquired a preponderating power in the south, and the Empire tended to dissolution. Disturbances are spoken of as occurring as early as the reign of Takelut II, both in the south and in the north;⁴ and very soon the entire attention of the rulers was diverted from public works and foreign expeditions to internal quarrels and dissensions. The descendants of the great adversary of Rehoborn still claimed the royal title, and exercised a precarious authority at Thebes, while the twenty-third dynasty of Manetho reigned at Tanis and Bubastis,⁵ and an upstart prince, called Teosakhthus or Tafnekt, held Memphis and the Western Delta. A

¹ See Lepsius, *Ueber die XXII Königsdynastie*, I. at the end of the treatise. Dr Birch, however, suggests that Takelut II was the nephew, and not the son, of Sheshonk II (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 158).

² Ap. Syncell *Chronogr.* p. 73 D.

³ Lepsius, *Manual of Egyptian Archaeology*, vol. i. pp. 461 B. Birch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 219-221, 3rd ed.

Birch, *Ancient Egypt* p. 157.

Birch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 217.

⁵ This dynasty appears to have consisted of three kings. Psamtik I. (Psamtik), who is given by Manetho forty years, Osorkon, who is given nine years, and Psamtik II. (Psamtik), who is given ten. Manetho adds a Zet (Seti?), of whom there is no trace in the monuments, and assigns him thirty-one years.

Napata, on the Upper Nile, a certain Piankhi obtained sovereign power, and by degrees established a sort of protectorate or suzerainty over the whole of Egypt. As this change marks one of the main crises in Egyptian history, and is connected closely with the period of the twenty-fourth, or Ethiopian dynasty, its consideration is deferred to the ensuing chapter.

Art under the Shes'onks did not so much decline as disappear. A certain number of porticoes and bas-reliefs¹ were indeed added to the Temple of Karnak by the earlier monarchs, but these weak efforts are wholly devoid of artistic value; and after a time they are discontinued, as though the kings were ashamed at the contrast between their own feeble performances and the great works of former sovereigns. The Apis stelæ continue, but are rude memorial stones, with no pretension to rank as works of art.² Stagnation and deadness characterise the tombs of the time, which repeat antique forms, but without any of the antique spirit. Statuary almost entirely ceases,³ a few in number of statuettes may belong to the time,⁴ but life-sized figures are almost wholly wanting.

The condition of literature under the dynasty is similar. Excepting a few official tablets without the slightest literary merit,⁵ and some magical texts and spells,⁶ nothing seems to have been written. The lite-

¹ The most important of the reliefs are given in the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii, where they occupy more than six of the plates (pls. 252-259).

² See Mariette, *Scrapéau de Memphis*, pls. 23 et seqq.

³ Two statues only belonging to the time are mentioned in the *Denkmäler* (pt. iii, pls. 250 *b* and 251 *c*). The British Museum has, I think, none.

As one of a king (No. 277) in the First Egyptian Room of the British Museum, and a statue represented by Lepsius in the *Denkmäler*, pt. iii, pl. 253 *c*.

⁴ See Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, pp. 210-13, and 220-2, 18 ed.

⁵ The 'Magical Papyrus' translated by Dr. Brühl in the *Records of the Past*, vol. vi, pp. 115, 20,

rature" of the time is reduced to the two branches of the mystic and the commonplace. On the one hand, we are gravely informed that 'when Horus weeps, the water that falls from his eyes grows into plants producing a sweet perfume. When Baba (Typhon) lets fall blood from his nose, it grows into plants changing to cedars, and produces turpentine instead of the water. When Shu and Tefnut weep much, and water falls from their eyes, it changes into plants that produce incense. When the Sun weeps a second time, and lets water fall from his eyes, it is changed into working bees; they work in the flowers of each kind, and honey and wax are produced instead of the water.'¹ On the other hand, the eternity of inscription on hard stone is bestowed on statements that 'King Sheshonk caused a new quarry to be opened to begin a building,'² or that 'in the year 2, the month Meehu, on the first day of the month, under the reign of King Pimu, the god Apis was carried to his rest in the beautiful region of the west, and was laid in the grave, and deposited in his everlasting house and his eternal abode. He was born in the year 28, in the time of the deceased king Sheshonk III. His glory was sought for in all places of Lower Egypt. He was found after some months in the city of Ha-shed-abot. He was solemnly introduced into the temple of Phthah, beside his father, the Memphian god Phthah of the south wall, by the high priest in the temple of Phthah, the great prince of the Mashuash, Petise, the son of the high priest of

¹ appears to have been written between the twenty first and the twenty-sixth centuries' (ibid. p. 11).
² The 'spells in the tomb of Bakennef' belong to the same form of literature, and approach to, or come within, the period *Records of the Past*, vol. vi p. 11.
³ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 212, 1st ed.

Memphis and great prince of the Mashuash, Tâkelu, and of the princess of royal race, Thesbastper, in the year 28, in the month Paophi, on the first day of the month. The full lifetime of this god amounted to twenty six years.'¹ Such are the highest efforts of Egyptian authorship in the two centuries and a quarter which intervene between B.C. 975 and B.C. 750.

¹ *Brugsæ, Hist. of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 22, 1st ed.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE ETHIOPIAN PHARAONS

Geography of Ethiopia, and Condition of the Ethiopians about 1075). Position and Importance of Napata—Connection of its Kings with the Egyptian Pharaohs—Sudden Rise of Piankhi to Power, and Nature of his Rule over Egypt—Revolt of Tefnekht—Great Civil War and Re-establishment of Piankhi's Authority—Revolt and Reign of Bocchoris. Invasion of Shabak (Sabaos). His Reign His Monuments. First Contest between Egypt and the Assyrian Kingdom of the Sargons—Reign of Shabkol—Accession of Taharqa—His Connection with Hezekiah—His First Assyrian War—His Monuments—His Second War with the Assyrians—His Death. Reigns of Rudamun and Manen-Nut—End of the Ethiopian Power in Egypt

The land shadowing with wings which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia
ISAIAH XLV. 1.

THE slight sketches given of Ethiopia and the Ethiopians¹ in the first volume of the present work are scarcely sufficient to enable the reader fully to comprehend the relations in which Egypt had come to stand towards her southern neighbour, or the nature of the subjection with which she was now threatened from that quarter. Ethiopia, in the ordinary and vague sense of the term, was a vast tract extending in length above a thousand miles, from the ninth to the twenty-fourth degree of north latitude, and in breadth almost nine hundred miles, from the shores of the Red Sea and Indian Ocean to the desert of the Sahara.² This

¹ See vol. i pp. 307 and 1011. *Greek and Roman Geography*, v. 1.

² See Dr. Smith's *Dictionary of* i. p. 57.

tract was inhabited for the most part by wild and barbarous tribes—herdsmen, hunters, or fishermen—who grew no corn, were unacquainted with bread, and subsisted on the milk and flesh of the cattle, or on game, turtle, and fish, salted or raw. The tribes had their own separate chiefs, and acknowledged no single head, but on the contrary were frequently at war one with the other, and sold their prisoners for slaves. Such was Ethiopia in the common or vague sense; but from this must be distinguished another narrower Ethiopia, known sometimes as ‘Ethiopia Proper’ or ‘Ethiopia above Egypt,’¹ the limits of which were, towards the south, the junction of the White and Blue Niles, and towards the north the ‘Third Cataract’². Into this tract, called sometimes ‘the kingdom of Meroë,’ Egyptian civilisation had long before the eighth century, deeply penetrated. Temples of the Egyptian type, stone pyramids, avenues of sphinxes, had been erected;³ a priesthood had been set up,⁴ which was regarded as derived from the Egyptian priesthood, monarchical institutions had been adopted, the whole tract formed ordinarily one kingdom; and the natives were not very much behind the Egyptians in arms, or very different from them in manners, customs, and mode of life. Even in race the difference was not great. The Ethiopians were darker in complexion than the Egyptians,⁵ and possessed probably a greater

¹ Herod. iii. 9, 22. Strab. x. ii. 1, § 3, Diod. Sic. i. 30, 3, iii. 32, 3; &c.

² Herod. ii. 146. Ptol. *Geograph.* vi. 7.

³ These limits must be understood as indicating *about* the extent of the kingdom of Meroë, not as its actual limits at all times, or indicated

poised up at any time.

⁴ See also articles on Meroë and Nubia in the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography*, and compare Wilkinson on the authorities *Herodotus*, vol. ii. pp. 41, 2, note⁸, 3d ed.

⁵ Diod. Sic. iii. 6.

⁶ This is very strongly marked in

infusion of Nubian blood; but there was a common stock at the root of the two races—Cush and Mizraim were brethren.¹

In the region of Ethiopia Proper a very important position was occupied in the eighth century by Napata. Napata was situated midway in the great bend of the Nile, between lat. 18° and 19° , where for a time the mighty stream ceases to flow to the north, and takes a course which is considerably south of west. It occupied the left bank of the river in the near vicinity of the modern Gebel Berkal. Here, as early as the time of Amenôphus III., a great sanctuary was raised to Ammon by that distinguished king;² and here, when the decline of Egypt enabled the Ethiopians to reclaim their ancient limits, the capital was fixed of that kingdom, which shortly became a rival of the old empire of the Pharaohs, and aspired to take its place. The city increased in size, new temples were raised to Osiris and other Egyptian gods, avenues of sphinxes adorned the approaches to the temples; sepulchral monuments were erected in the shape of pyramids; the entire city had a thoroughly Egyptian aspect; and Egyptian ideas dominated the minds of the inhabitants. ‘The Theban god, Ammon Ra, was recognised as the supreme god of the country. The king’s full name was formed exactly according to the old Egyptian pattern. The Egyptian language and writing, divisions of time, and everything else relating to manners and customs, were preserved.’³ Though an Ethiopian city, Napata had all the appearance of an Egyptian one; and nothing

the Egyptian wall-sculptures, where the Egyptians are painted dark red, the Ethiopians jet black.

¹ GEN. X. 6.

² See above, p. 261.

³ Briggs’s *History of Egypt*, vol. II. p. 227, 1st ed.

showed its foreign character but a certain coarseness and rudeness in the architecture, and an entire absence of any attempt at originality in the artistic forms or in the mode of employing them.

Napata was also a place of much wealth. The kingdom of Meroë, which of it was the capital, reached southward as far as the modern Kartoum, and eastward stretched up to the Abyssinian highlands, including the valleys of the Atbara and its tributaries, together with most of the tract between the Atbara and the Blue Nile. This was a region of great opulence, containing many mines of gold, iron, copper, and salt, abundant woods of date palm, almond trees, and ilex, some excellent pasture ground, and much rich meadow land suitable for the growth of *doona* and other sorts of grain. Fish of many kinds and the turtle² abounded in the Atbara and other streams; while the geographical position was favourable for commerce with the tribes of the interior, who were able to furnish a most inexhaustible supply of ivory, skins, and ostrich feathers. Napata continued down to Roman times a place of importance, and only sank to ruin in consequence of the campaigns of Petronius against Candace in the first century after our era.³

It is thought⁴ that, during the troubles which issued in the supersession of the last Ptolemæan dynasty by that of the Sheshonks, a branch of the family of

¹ See Mr. Bunbury's article on Egypt in *Smith's Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography*, vol. ii. p. 330.

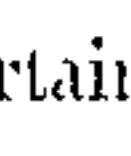
² Baker, *Nile Tributaries*, p. 25. One tale of Ethiopia was called the Chelophiz, or turtle caters.

³ Diodorus, lib. v.

⁴ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol.

i. p. 226. Strabo. Except to name Ptolemy, the name of the Ptolemæan family of Herakles, and the special mention to Ammon, the Ptolemæan line, there is little or no mention of the Nile in the text. But even the conjectures of *de ports* have a value.

Her hor transferred itself from Thebes to Napata, and, intermarrying there with the principal Cushites of the place, was accepted as a royal house, and founded the northern Ethiopian kingdom, which after a time became dangerous to the Egyptians. The 'princes of Noph'¹ at first were of no great importance; but as Egypt became more and more disorganised and decentralised, their power grew relatively greater, until at last they found themselves able to assume the protectorate of one Egyptian kingdom after another, and ultimately, about B.C. 750, to exercise a species of lordship over the whole country.

The individual who is first found occupying this novel position is a certain Piankhi, , who calls himself Mi Ammon or Meri Ammon, 'beloved of Ammon,' and is thought to have been a descendant of Her hor.² On a stèle found at Gebel Barkal, the ancient Napata, this prince, who assumes the ordinary Pharaonic titles, 'Son of the Sun' and 'King of Upper and Lower Egypt,' states that, in his twenty first year, a great revolt broke out in Egypt against his authority.³ By the account which he gives of the revolt we find that, previously to it, Egypt was divided into at least seven kingdoms, each ruled by a native Egyptian king, who however was not independent, but owed allegiance to Piankhi. Tafnekht ruled in the Western Delta, and held Sais and Memphis; Osarkon was king of the Eastern Delta, and kept his court in Bubastis; Petisis was king of Athribis, also in the Delta, and Aupot ruled in some portion of the same region; in middle

¹ Isaiah xix. 13. Ezek. xxx. 13, 16, &

² B. gsch, 18 c. Compare Table

iv. at the end of his second volume.

³ See Mariette, *Monuments Divers*, pl. 1, *Records of the Past*, vol. 1 p. 81. B. gsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 231, 1st ed.

Egypt, by B.C. 750. He may then have reigned quietly and peaceably for fifteen or sixteen years, and so have reached the twenty-first year of his sovereignty when the revolt broke out. At that date, Tafnekht, the ruler of Sais and Memphis, suddenly resolved to throw off his allegiance, trusting perhaps partly in his power, partly in his remoteness from Napata. Sailing up the Nile, 'with multitudes of warriors from the whole (western) land following him,'¹ he occupied the country on both sides of the river, including the Fayoum,² as far as Heracleopolis Magna (lat. 29° 11'), without—so far as appears—encountering any opposition. 'Every city, both of the west and of the east, opened its gates to him.'³ Heracleopolis seems to have ventured to stand a siege,⁴ but was taken. Tafnekht then advanced on Hermopolis, and so alarmed the king, Namrut, that, after razing one of his forts in order to prevent it from falling into the enemy's hands, he gave up the idea of resistance, and joined the rebellion.⁵ About the same time, several other of the subject monarchs, as Osarkon of Bousiris, Bekenchet, and Anpot,⁶ gave in their adhesion to Tafnekht, and brought their forces to swell the numbers of his army.

Meanwhile, Piankhi, having received intelligence of the revolt, sent a strong body of troops down the Nile under the command of two generals, who would, he hoped, be able to defeat and disperse the rebels.

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 82, § 3.

² Hasiotek (Chondilopolis) is mentioned as one of the first places which Tafnekht occupied (ibid. § 4). According to Brugse (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 217, st. vi.) it was one of the last to make its submission to Piankhi.

³ *Records of the Past*, loc. cit.

⁴ Brugse's *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 232, § 5. Loc. cit.

⁵ Ibid. § 7.

⁶ Called Wuaput by Clunon Cook, Uaput by Dr. Birch, but the same name with that of the eldest son of Sheshank I, which is commonly read as Anpot.

without his own intervention.¹ This expedition was at first successful. On its way down the river, below Thebes, it fell in with the advancing fleet of the enemy and completely defeated it. The rebel chiefs, abandoning Hermopolis and the middle Nile, fell back upon Suten-senen, or Heracleopolis, where they concentrated their forces and awaited a second attack. This was not long deferred. Piankhi's army, having besieged and taken Hermopolis,² descended the river to Suten-senen, gave the confederates a second naval defeat, and disembarking followed up their success with another great victory by land, completely routing the enemy, and driving them to take refuge in Lower Egypt or in the towns along the banks of the Nile below Heracleopolis. But now a strange reverse of fortune befell them. Namrut, the Hermopolitan monarch, hearing that his capital was in the enemy's power, resolved on a bold attempt to retake it, and, having collected a number of ships and troops, quitted his confederates, sailed up the Nile, besieged the Ethiopian garrison which had been left to hold the city, overpowered them, and recovered the place.³ Hereupon Piankhi made up his mind that his own personal presence was necessary in order to quell the revolt. Quitting Nupat in the first month of the year, he reached Thebes in the second, and after performing sundry religious ceremonies in honour of the great god, Ammon, advanced against Hermopolis, pitched his camp to the south west of the city, and prepared to take it by storm. Towers were raised to

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 89 § 8. Brugsch *History of Egypt* vol. ii. p. 232 1st ed.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol.

ii. p. 234, § 22, 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* p. 235.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 236 § 20. Compare *Records of the Past*, vol. ii. p. 88.

a greater height than the walls, from which the archers shot into the city, and the catapult men hurled stones into it, with such effect, that in a short time the inhabitants could not bear the stretch of the corpses¹ and insisted on a surrender. Namrut consented. Having first softened the great king's heart by sending his wife as a suppliant to Piankhi's harem, to prostrate herself before his wives, daughters, and sisters, and beseech their intercession in his favour, he himself came forth from the city, and presented himself before Piankhi in equally humble fashion, leading his horse with his left hand, and holding a sistrum in his right.



Piankhi receiving the submission of Namrut and others

the instrument wherewith it was usual for worshippers to approach a god. Piankhi had this scene engraved at a later date on the monument which he set up to record his victories;² but at the time he seems not to have been much impressed by it, and to have declined to receive Namrut into favour.

Pelaabast, king of Heracleopolis Magna, who shortly afterwards surrendered, was treated with equal coldness. Piankhi seems to have felt himself strong enough to sup-

¹ Some doubt whether this is intended literally, but both Brugsch and Borchardt understand the passage so.

² See Mariette, *Monuments Diverses*, pl. 1, from which the accompanying woodcut is taken.

press the revolt without the help of any of the subject princes, and reserved the question of punishing or condoning their offences until the struggle should be over.

Bent on putting down all opposition, Piankhi now proceeded from Hieracopolis along the course of the Nile towards Memphis, receiving the submission of the cities on either bank of the river upon his way, and in a short time appeared before Thebes, the capital, and summoned it to surrender at discretion.¹ But Taherkh had recently paid the city a visit, strengthened its defences, augmented its supplies, and reinforced its garrison with an addition of 8,000 men, thereby greatly inspiring its defenders. Resistance was therefore resolved upon, the gates were closed, the walls manned, and Piankhi challenged to do his worst. 'Then was his Majesty furious against them like a panther.'² Collecting vessels of every sort and size, and taking the command in person, he attacked the city from the water, brought his ships close to the houses, and, using the masts and yards of the vessels for ladders, succeeded in forcing an entrance, and captured the place after a great slaughter. Anpot, Petasis, and Merkaneshu, a leader of mercenaries, upon this surrendered, and armed resistance to the authority of Piankhi ceased. Two chiefs, however, had still to make their submission, Taherkh, the leader of the rebellion, and Osurkon, the prince of Bybasia. Proceeding against the latter, Piankhi had reached Hieropolis, where he was received with acclamations and

¹ *Records of the Past* vol. i p. 93, §§ 85-8. Piankhi promised indeed that 'only the rebels against the god (i.e. himself), the vile, and the worthless should be executed but no one could tell that he might

never be included in this wide category.

² Ibid. p. 95, § 92. Compare Briggs's *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 211, 18th ed.

ailed as 'indestructible Horus,' when Osuikou, seeing that resistance was hopeless, came into his camp and did homage. Nothing remained but that Tafnecht should bow to fortune. That prince after the capture of Memphis, had fled beyond the seas—to Cyprus, as one writer conjectures²—and was thus in no personal danger; but the condition of a refugee is unksome, and Piankhi had shown himself so element to the other chiefs, that even the arch-rebel felt he might perhaps be forgiven. Tafnecht, therefore, from his island refuge sent an embassy to Piankhi, with a sufficiently humble message,³ desiring pardon and proffering a new oath of allegiance. The Ethiopian monarch accepted the overture; the oath was taken, the pacification of Egypt effected; and, amid music and song,⁴ the conqueror re-ascended the Nile, and returned, laden with the good things of Egypt, Syria, and Arabia, to his own capital city. N'pata.

It would seem that Egypt now returned to its previous condition, all the rebel chiefs being allowed to resume their several governments and to exercise the same powers as before. Piankhi showed himself of a mild and merciful disposition, deposed no one, deprived no one of any portion of his territories, did not even

¹ *Records of the Past*, vol. ii p. 8, § 105.

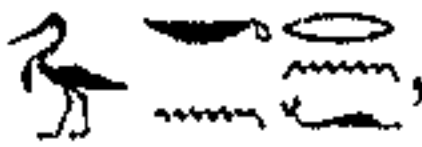
² Birch *Ancient Egypt*, p. 162. Birch himself, however, had merely fled to some of the Nile islands (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 210, § 12, 1st ed.).

Birchsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii pp. 216-7, 1st ed.

The inscription of Piankhi terminates as follows: 'When his Majesty sailed up the river, his heart was glad all its banks were sunkled with music. The minstrels of the west and east took to make melody at his Majesty's

appeal. For the notes of the minstrels sang: 'O king, thou conqueror! O Piankhi, thou conqueror! Thou hast conquered the sister Lower Egypt, thou hast taken men as women. The heart of thy mother rejoices who bore such a son, for he who begot thee dwells in the vale of den. Happy as I am to thee, O cow who has borne the bull! Thou shalt live for ever and for ages. Thy victory shall endure, O king and friend of Thebes.' (Hughes & Isaac, *De Rouge's Inscriptions Historiques du Roi Piankhi-Ménamoun*, p. 15.)

take hostages, but trusted that their experience of the futility of revolt would prevent the chiefs from making any further efforts.

It is uncertain whether or no he personally witnessed the disappointment of his expectations. Egypt revolted and threw off the Ethiopian yoke within a few years of its reimposition, but perhaps not until Piankhi himself had been gathered to his fathers. The leader of the rebellion on this occasion was a certain Bek-en-rant, , whom the Greeks called Bocchoris or Bonchoris,¹ a native of Sais, and perhaps a son of Tafnekht.² The circumstances of his revolt are wholly unknown to us, since the monuments are silent, barely mentioning his name,³ and neither Manetho nor the native Greek writers were aware of the subjection of Egypt by Piankhi. Bocchoris is regarded by the Greeks as a somewhat remarkable personage, feeble in body and avaricious, but with a certain renown for wisdom, and the author of laws which had the approval of his countrymen.⁴ According to Africanus,⁵ Manetho gave him a reign of six years only, and as this number is found also upon one of the Apis stela,⁶ we may accept it as probably marking the real duration of his reign. The Ethiopians, evidently stronger at this period than the Egyptians, are not likely to have allowed him a long respite, and when Sabaco, who had

¹ Dod. Sic. i. 70, 94. Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph*, p. 741.

² The name of Bek-en-rant is found in this text (i. 46, § 2) receives some confirmation from the stela of Piankhi, which makes Tafnekht king of Sais a little before the time of Bocchoris.

³ The name of Bocchoris (Boc-en-rant) has been found now only at the Serapeum of Memphis, where it appeared on several stela.

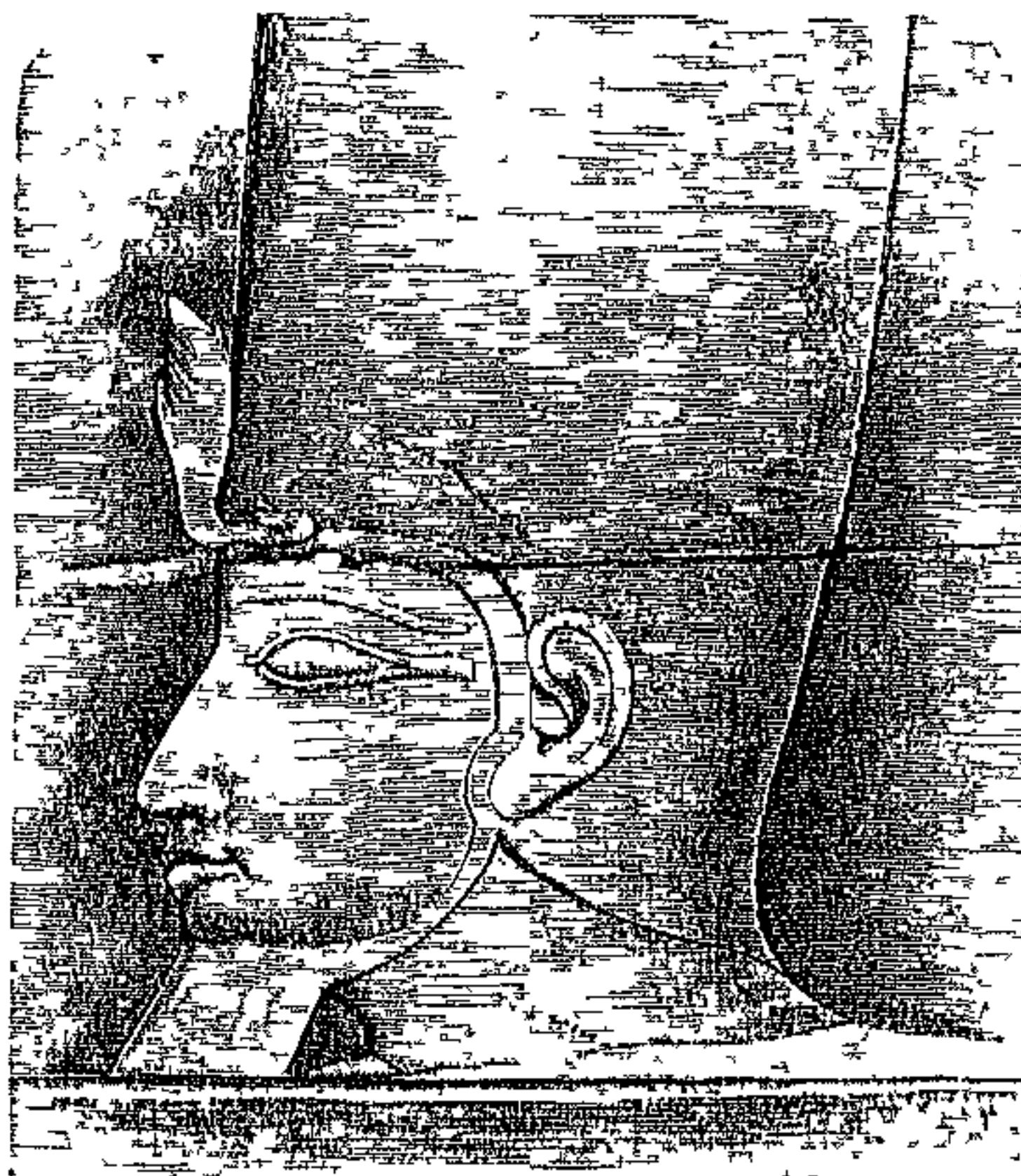
also been found on one of the stela (Africanus, *Serapeum de Memphis*, p. 21 and p. 34).

⁴ See Dod. Sic. i. 70, §§ 1-3, 94, § 5.

⁵ Ap. Syncell. *Chronograph*, p. 741.

⁶ Manetho *Serapeum de Memphis*, p. 21. The authority of Lucian is always weak in connection with that of Africanus. He is not

succeeded Piankhi at Napata, reclaimed the dominion which Piankhi had held, it is evident that Bocchoris was unable to make a prolonged resistance. Sabaco, a genuine Ethiopian,¹ not (like Piankhi) more than half an Egyptian, used his rights of conqueror to the full, employed large numbers of the inhabitants in



H. 418. 55.

forced labours,² and, by way of a warning to others, burnt Bocchoris alive for his rebellion.

¹ The (c)ry-fon) is exceptionally suspicious from its position.

² The names Shabak, Shabek, Pankhi, are given in the Egyptian text, and the Greek article. Shabak is the name of Shabak, the son of the king. Shabak is a genuine Ethiopian, not a half Egyptian, as the text, which is written with his thicker than the later Egyptians (See the woodcut).

³ He. I. ii. 137. Herodotus says he saw when the temple was destroyed, but the forced labour of the really criminal population would surely have succeeded to the use of the temple. Shabak probably began his reign with all the dis-
 of it.

⁴ M. E. H. p. 137. Syncell. *Chronograph* 1. 71 B.

advanced her limits; the Euphrates had been crossed; Upper Syria, Phœnicia, Hamath, the kingdom of Damascus, brought under subjection, and at length an attack was made upon that country which Egypt might well consider almost her last bulwark upon the north-east, which she looked upon as properly her own, and over which, so late as the time of Sheshonk I., she had actually exercised sovereignty. Shabak, as an Ethiopian, might not feel keenly the change in the relative position of the two countries; but he had enough of political sagacity to perceive the peril of the situation, and enough of boldness to resolve on meeting it halfway, and not remaining wholly upon the defensive. He encouraged Hoshea to defy the power of the Assyrians; and though, from circumstances which are unknown to us, he did not march to his aid, yet, a year or two later (B.C. 720), he met the advancing tide of Assyrian conquest on the southern limits of Palestine, and fought a great battle in defence of the country whereof he had become king¹. The battle of Raphia is one of the turning-points in the world's history. Then for the first time was the relative strength of Asia and Africa tested in open combat on a fair field. It was ominous of the future that Africa succumbed. Shabak was completely defeated by the great Sargon, the builder of Khorsabad, and founder of the last and greatest Assyrian dynasty. His army was routed, and he was forced to seek safety in flight. It was probably soon afterwards that he concluded that treaty with the Assyrians, the seal of which, containing his cartouche, was found by Layard on the site of Nineveh².

If Shabak reigned twelve years only, he must have

¹ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. pp. 112-5, 2nd ed.

² Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 156.

been succeeded by Shabatok, , about b.c. 712. Sargon was at this time still king of Assyria, and at the zenith of his power. In b.c. 715, he had conquered part of Arabia, and received tribute from Egypt;¹ in b.c. 711, he 'took Ashdod, as noticed by Isaiah.² In the same year he claims to have received

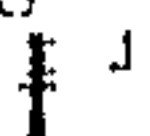


SHABATOK

the submission of Ethiopia. 'The king of Melec,' he says, 'who dwelt in the desert, and had never sent ambassadors to any of the kings, my predecessors, was led by the fear of my majesty to direct his steps towards Assyria, and humbly bow down before me.'

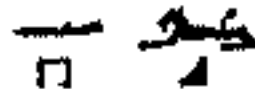
¹ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. i. pp. 145-7. ² Isaiah xx. 1. ³ *Opusculum Inscriptionum de Sargonide*, p. 27.

shabātōk is probably the manner intended, and it would seem that, through fear of the Assyrian power, he must have undertaken a journey into some part of a god's dominions¹ for the purpose of bowing down before his footstool and doing him homage.

Shabatok probably reigned about fourteen years²—from B.C. 712 to B.C. 698. He has left very few monuments of himself. In a sculpture, given by Rosellini,³ he makes an offering to Ammon Ra and Montu; in one, given by Mariette,⁴ he receives life from Neith; and a sitting statue of him, much broken, has been found on the site of Memphis.⁵ On this last he calls himself Mi Phthah, 'lover of Phthah;' but his more ordinary epithet was Meri Ammon, 'beloved by Ammon.' In personal appearance he would seem to have much resembled Shabak, who was probably his father; but his eye was larger, his nose shorter, and he represents himself as without a beard. It is remarkable that both he and his predecessor went back for their throne names to the early period of Egyptian history, Shabak calling himself Nefer ka-ra, , a form of name not borne by any king since theenth dynasty,⁶ and Shabatok Tatkama, , one not borne since the 11th.⁷

¹ It is not necessary to suppose that he actually went into Assyria. The Assyrian king, Sennacherib, is said to have taken him captive, and he may have been taken to some part of the Assyrian empire, or he may have been taken to some part of the Assyrian empire, or he may have been taken to some part of the Assyrian empire.

² 7) Chronological considerations require the number of years of his reign to be fixed at 14. *Monuments of the Kings of Egypt*, p. 115. *Monuments Diverses*, pl. 2), No. 2. ³ Rosellini, *History of Egypt*, vol. 1, p. 201, 1st ed. (compare Mariette, *Monuments Diverses*, pl. 2), No. 1. ⁴ See p. 122, note 3. ⁵ See p. 170. There is a slight indication here the king of the 11th dynasty having been named Tatkama.

The immediate successor of Shabatok appears to have been Tirhakah, whom Manetho made the third Ethiopian king. The form of his name in Egyptian is Tahark or Tahak, , which Manetho rendered by Tarakos¹ and the later Greeks by Tearehon.² His monuments are found at Memphis, at Medinet-Abou, at Thebes, and at Napata. It is not improbable that from Napata he exercised the supreme authority over Egypt even during the reign of Shabatok, and it appears to have been with him that Hezekiah negotiated,³ when the continued existence of Judæa was menaced by Sennacherib. Sennacherib had in B.C. 701 taken Ascalon and Ekron, defeated an Egyptian army which marched to the relief of the latter city,⁴ invaded Judæa, and made Hezekiah tributary,⁵ after which he had returned to Nineveh. The Jewish monarch took advantage of his absence to send an embassy to Egypt, and received such encouragement that, in the next year, Sennacherib deemed it necessary to march a second time⁶ into Palestine (B.C. 699) for the purpose of chastising both Judæa and Egypt. Regarding the Egyptians as his main enemy, and hearing that Tirhakah was on his way to oppose him, he marched past Jerusalem, by way of Libnah and Lachish towards Pelusium,⁷ and found there an Egyptian army encamped under a leader whom Herodotus calls Sethos, possibly Shabatok, but more probably⁸ another Egyptian sub-king, whom

¹ Ap. Syncell *Chronograph.* l. sc.

² Strab. i. 3, § 21.

³ See 2 Kings xviii. 21. At every rate it was Tirhakah who owed to his relief (ib. xix. 9), and who must have been lord paramount of Egypt at the time.

⁴ See the author's *Ancient Monarchies* vol. ii. p. 159-60, 2nd ed.

⁵ 2 Kings xviii. 13-16.

⁶ Ibid. verses 17 et seqq.

⁷ See Herodotus, ii. 141. Pelusium was the usual point at which Egypt was entered from the north-east.

⁸ The names, Shabatok and Sethos, are too remote to be properly regarded as identical. Moreover, Sethos is said to have been high-priest of the Memphian Phthah, a title never given to Shabatok. It must

Shabatok or Tirhakah had established at Memphis. The two hosts were encamped opposite each other, when in the night occurred that terrible calamity, explained by different writers in different ways,¹ whereby the Assyrians were utterly discomfited, their invasion brought to an end, and Egypt for the present relieved from any danger of further attack. Shabatok having soon afterwards died, Tirhakah established himself as sole ruler of Egypt (B.C. 698), and probably transferred his abode from Napata to Memphis, where so many of his memorials have been discovered.

It is chiefly in a religious character that Tirhakah appears in his sculptures and inscriptions. In a temple which he built to Osiris Phthah at Memphis, he represents himself in one tablet² as cherished by Isis, whom he calls 'the great goddess,' 'the mother of all the gods,' while in another³ he receives life from Mentu, and in a third pours a libation to Osiris Phthah.⁴ An Apis is recorded as having died in his twenty-fourth, and another as having been born in his twenty-sixth year.⁵ He is, however, exhibited at Medinet-Abou in the dress of a warrior,⁶ smiting numerous captive enemies with his mace, and celebrated in Greek tradition as a great conquering king who carried his victorious arms along the whole of North Africa as far as the Pillars of Hercules;⁷ but it is quite uncertain whether these traditions have any basis of truth. We

he remembered that Egypt at this time was full of sub-kings (Compare Is. xix. 11, 8.)

¹ As caused by the simoom by a pestilence, or by the direct visitation of God.

² Mariette, *Monuments Divers*, pl. 79.

³ Ibid. pl. 85.

⁴ Ibid. pl. 87.

⁵ Mariette, *Sérapéum de Memphis*, pp. 26 and 28.

⁶ Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, pl. cl.

⁷ Megasthenes, I. 20.

have no native accounts of the circumstances of his reign, which *seems* to have been eventless, or nearly so, from the destruction of Sennacherib's army to the great invasion of Egypt by Esarhaddon.

Esarhaddon, the son of Sennacherib, succeeded him upon the Assyrian throne in B.C. 681. He was one of the most warlike of all the Assyrian monarchs,¹ and having, during the first nine years of his reign, established the authority of Nineveh over Armenia, Babylonia, Cilicia, Phœnicia, and Arabia, he in B.C. 672 determined on wiping out the memory of his father's Pelusiæ disaster by effecting, if possible, the conquest of Egypt. Marching from Aphak in Lebanon along the coast of Palestine to Raphia, and obtaining, like Cambyzes at a later date,² supplies of water from an Arabian sheikh,³ he passed the desert in safety, and, invading Egypt, gained a great battle over the forces of Tahakah in the lower country, took Memphis and Thebes, and drove Tahakah to take refuge in Ethiopia. Having thus made himself master of the country, he broke it up into twenty governments, appointing rulers—some Assyrian, but most of them native Egyptians—in the twenty most important cities or districts.⁴ These were Thebes itself, Memphis and Sais, which were united, Tanis, Sebennytus, Athribis, Natho, Pisapi, Hieracleopolis, Mendes, Busiris, Momemphis, This, Hermopolis, Lycopolis, &c. Among the rulers were a Sheshonk, probably descended from the kings

¹ See the author's *Ancient Monarchies* vol. ii. pp. 186-90.

² Herod. iii. 7-9.

³ Béch., *Ancient Egypt*, p. 163.

⁴ *Ancient Monarchies* vol. ii. p. 193. This fact was first brought forward, and the names of the princes and then cities were first

discussed by Sir P. Rawlinson whose paper on the subject in the *Transactions of the Royal Society of Literature*, New Series vol. vii. pp. 136 et seq. has priority over all others, which were published in England or abroad.

of the twenty second dynasty, a Tafnekht, a Petubastes, and a Neco. The last named chief, who was ruler of Sais and Memphis, is no doubt the father of the first Psamatik;¹ and we may presume that, not very long after his accession, he associated that prince upon the throne, since Psamatik counts the years of his reign from B.C. 667.² Egypt remained for three years in this condition—subject to Assyria, and split up into twenty governments or states. Tirhakah's reign appeared to have come wholly to an end, and the Ethiopian dominion to have terminated.

But the Ethiopians were merely biding their time. Tirhakah had withdrawn to Napata or to Meroë, where he kept watch upon events. No sooner did Esarhaddon, in B.C. 669, show signs of physical decay, than Tirhakah 'issued from his Ethiopian fastnesses, descended the valley of the Nile, expelled the kings set up by Esarhaddon, and re-established his authority over the whole country.'³ The kings fled to Nineveh, where they found Asshur ban pal the son of Esarhaddon, established in power. Learning from them what had happened, he at once put his forces in motion, and in B.C. 668 led them through Syria and Palestine into Egypt, defeated the Egyptians and Ethiopians in a great battle near Karbant, stormed Memphis and Thebes, and forced Tirhakah once more to take refuge in his own proper country.⁴ After this he retired, having first reinstated the princes in their former

¹ Herod. ii. 152.

² The fifty-four years of the reign of Psamatik I. commence according to the view now generally taken in B.C. 667 or B.C. 666. (See Briggs, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 277, and compare Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens von Psammetich*

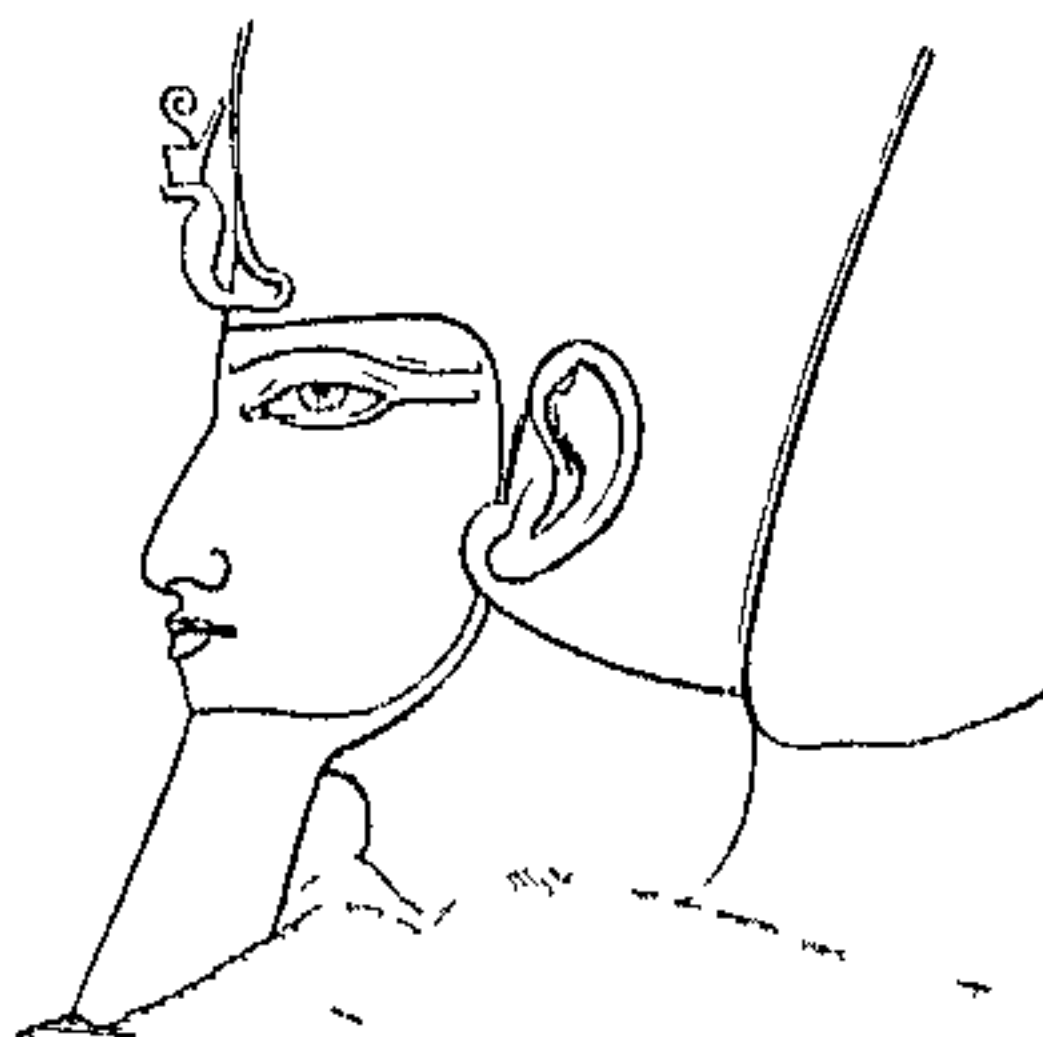
I. p. 121, who makes the date B.C. 664, and Stuart Poole in Smith's *Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. iii. p. 1514, who makes it B.C. 669.)

³ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. p. 195.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 201.

governments and strengthened the Assyrian garrisons in the various towns

But the contest was not yet over. The tributary monarchs themselves had grown weary of the Assyrian yoke, and were inclined to prefer the Ethiopians, if subjection to one power or the other was a necessity. They intrigued with Tirhakah, and though some of them were arrested and sent to Nineveh,¹ yet the rebellious spirit smouldered on; and, Lower Egypt



Head of Tirhakah.

being in a state of disturbance, Tirhakah again invaded the upper country, took Thebes, and prepared to march upon Memphis. Neco was sent from Nineveh to oppose him, and Tirhakah in alarm evacuated Thebes, and returning to Napata, there died (B.C. 667). His stepson, Psammetichus, the Urdamé of the Assyrian inscriptions,² succeeded him, and immediately applied himself to the task of maintaining the Ethiopian power. Descending the Nile, he reoccupied Thebes and Memphis, cleared Egypt of the Assyrians, and made himself

¹ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. p. 202

² Cf. Smith, *History of Assyria*, 11. 47, 52, &c.

master of the whole country. Asshurbanipal, upon this, undertook the conduct of the war in person, marched an army into Egypt, drove Rut ammon from Memphis to Thebes, and from Thebes to Kip kip, an unknown town of Nubia—thus, for the fourth time, establishing the Assyrian authority over the country. It would seem that Rut ammon shortly after this, died in Nu'na, and was succeeded by Mi-ammon Nut,¹ who was perhaps a son of Tirhaka.²

Mi ammon Nut tells us³ that in the year of his accession to the throne (about B.C. 660) he had a remarkable dream in the night. Two serpents⁴ appeared to him, the one on his right hand, the other on his left. He woke to find that they had vanished, and at once consulted the interpreters as to the meaning of the vision. It was expounded to signify that all Egypt would one day be his—the Lower country as well as the Upper, the land was given to him in its length and in its breadth; Ammon would be with him and prosper him.⁵ Mi-ammon Nut accepted the interpretation, and marched upon Egypt at the head of a hundred thousand men.⁶ In Upper Egypt it would

¹ Buch *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 170

² Compare Lencman, *Man and History of Ancient Egypt*, vol. i, pp. 135. Dr. Brugsch makes Mi-ammon Nut succeed Tirhaka (*History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 28, 1st ed.).

³ The close connection of Mi-ammon Nut with Tirhaka is strongly indicated in the sculptures and inscriptions of the Pithel Osmis temple at Memphis which Tirhaka probably began, but which must have been completed by Mi-ammon Nut. In one sculpture they are represented as if they were both reigning together. Tirhaka in Lower and Mi-ammon Nut in Upper Egypt (Munietto, *Monuments De*

Egypt, pl. 83).

⁴ See *Records of the Past*, vol. iv, p. 81. Compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 250, 1st ed.

⁵ The serpent (cobra de capell), , was the hieroglyphic for 'crown' or 'kingdom', whence the interpretation.

⁶ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv, p. 81, §§ 5, 6.

⁷ So Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii, p. 250, § 7, 1st ed. Maspero translates '1,100,000 men' (*Records of the Past*, vol. iv, p. 82, note), but this number is scarcely a possible one.

seem that he was hailed as a deliverer. Under the Assyrians, who were probably still dominant, though nothing is said of them, the temples had gone to decay, the statues of the gods were overturned, the temple revenues were confiscated, and the priests restrained from the exercise of their offices. Mi ammon Nut proclaimed himself the champion of religion. He visited the temples, led the images in procession, offered rich sacrifices, and paid every respect to the priestly colleges. Accordingly 'even those whose intention had been to fight were moved with joy.'¹ Acclamations were everywhere raised. 'Go onward in the peace of thy name,' they said, 'go onward in the peace of thy name!' Dispense life throughout all the land that the temples may be restored which are hastening to ruin; that the statues of the gods may be set up after their manner; that their revenues may be given to the gods and goddesses, and the offerings for the dead to the deceased; that the priest may be established in his place and all things be fulfilled according to the holy Ritual.² It was not until he reached Memphis that any opposition was made. There a battle was fought without the walls, and a decisive victory gained;³ after which Memphis was occupied, and the enlargement and beautification of the temple of Phthah commenced. The chapel to Phthah Sokari-Orsis, recently uncovered by M. Mariette, which is full of Mi ammon-Nut's sculptures and inscriptions,⁴ was no doubt taken in hand and highly decorated, its stones being inlaid with gold, its pan-

¹ Brugsch *History of Egypt*, vol. ii p. 252 § 16, 1st ed. { 83, § 17
² Ibid p. 251, §§ 14-15 { See Mariette, *Monuments Diverses*, pls. 70-81.
³ *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p.

elling made of acacia wood scented with frankincense, its doors of polished copper, and their frames of iron.¹ Still, the princes of the Delta, Assyrian feudatories, hesitated to come in; and Mi ammon Nut after a while proceeded against them with his troops. The princes shut themselves up in their towns, and unwilling to waste his time in sieges, the Ethiopian returned to Memphis, and probably commenced separate negotiations with the various chiefs. The result was that ere long they made up their minds to submit, and by the mouth of Paqrur, king of Pisapti,



Head of Mi ammon Nut

placed themselves, their lives and their possessions, at his disposal. The act of humiliation was accepted; then lives were spared, and after receiving hospitable entertainment they were sent back to their several towns, to govern them as Ethiopian and no longer as Assyrian vassals. Finally, Mi ammon-Nut, having (as he thought) firmly established his power, sailed up the Nile amid general rejoicing, and returned to Napata.²

But this expedition, which had seemed to rivet the Ethiopian yoke on the necks of the Egyptians, led in

¹ Thirlwall, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 252, §§ 10-2, 1st ed.

² Ibid. p. 251. *Records of the Past*, vol. iv. p. 80.

fact to their shaking it off. On the one hand, the attack showed the p^rimes the evils of divided empire, and suggested the idea of their placing themselves under aⁿ chief. On the other, the non-interference of the Assyrians in the quarrel rendered it plain that their power was on the decline, and that the Egyptians had not much to fear from them. After having been a shuttlecock between Ethiopia and Assyria for some ten or twelve years, Egypt resolved on an endeavour to detach herself wholly from both. How Miammon Nūt's authority was shaken off we do not know. Perhaps he died, and left no successor of sufficient energy to attempt the difficult task of holding in subjection a great nation, possessed of a higher civilisation than that of his own. Perhaps he made a struggle to retain his authority, but was worsted. All that is known is, that, from about the year B.C. 650, the Ethiopian domination over Egypt ceased. It had lasted, with interruptions, a little more or a little less than a century¹. Egypt had derived no advantage whatever from the connection, had improved neither in arts nor arms, and could show not a single monument of any splendour or artistic excellence for which she was indebted to her conquerors.² The influence of the great N^ort^h power was altogether depressing and debasing; and even under the new dynasty, which succeeded, the Egyptians showed any advance in civilisation or in any of the arts, it was owing, not to the close contact with their southern neighbours, but to an influence which reached them from the north.

¹ From about B.C. 750, when the great power of the Ethiopians was at its height, and they had established themselves as kings in Egypt (See above, p. 137).

² The credit added to the temple of Medinet-Abou by Imhotep is

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE TWENTY SIXTH DYNASTY. (B.C. 650-527.)

Depressed State of Egypt at the Close of the Ethiopic Rule Communications between Psammetichus I and Gyges of Lydia Battle of Memphris and Establishment of the Power of Psammetichus over the whole of Egypt Personal Appearance and supposed Libyan Origin of Psammetichus. Settlement of the Greeks at Bubastis Revolt and Secession of the 'Warriors' Other Results of the Greek Influence Psammetichus takes Ashdod He buys off the Scythians His Buildings Accession of Neco His two Fleets His Ship canal His Circumnavigation of Africa His Expedition to Carclenish Counter expedition of Nebuchadnezzar Reign of Psammetichus II His War with Ethiopia Reign of Apries His First War with Nebuchadnezzar His Placarian War His Second Babylonian War and Deposition His Old age and Inscriptions Reign of Amasis Conquest of Egypt under him He conquers Cyprus and makes alliance with Lydia His great Works His Wars Short Reign of Psammetichus III Egypt conquered by Cambyses Civilization and Art under the Twenty sixth Dynasty Novelties in Religion Changes in Manners Conclusion

The long struggle of the Ethiopians and Assyrians for the mastery over Egypt, the rapid advances and retreats executed by the armies of both powers in the course of the various campaigns—advances and retreats which generally commenced at one extremity of the Nile Valley and terminated at the other—must have inflicted an amount of injury on the country and people which can scarcely be estimated, must have half ruined the towns, and have carried desolation over the broad and fertile plains on either side of the river. The great city of Thebes—so long the admiration of the

Greeks,¹ and probably for many ages quite the most magnificent city in the world—passed into a byword for depression and decay in consequence of the long-continued troubles. ‘Art thou better than populous No,’ Nineveh was asked,² ‘that was situate among the rivers, that had the waters round about it, whose rampart was the flood? Yet she was carried away—she went into captivity.’ And the fate which befell Thebes was shared by Memphis, Heracleopolis, Hermopolis, Hasebek,³ and by the great majority of the other towns. Nor could the ruin be readily repaired. The petty princes, vassals either of Assyria or Ethiopia, were neither sufficiently assured of their position, nor sufficiently rich, to undertake works of the cost and magnitude needed in order to restore the ruined edifices and obliterate the marks of invasion. Thus Egypt, towards the middle of the seventh century B.C., was reduced to a condition of extreme wretchedness and depression, from which it could scarcely have been anticipated that a revival would ever take place—far less so rapid and complete a revival as that which was actually effected under the Saitic monarchs of the great twenty-sixth dynasty.

The signal for the movement which resulted in this revival was given in the far-off country of Babylonia. There, about B.C. 650,⁴ a brother of the great Assyrian monarch, Assurbanipal, raised the standard of revolt against his suzerain, and, in conjunction with the neighbouring country of Elam or Susiana, commenced a struggle for independence. At the same time, in

¹ See Hom. *Il.* ix. 381-4, Herod. i. 3, 113, Herat. i. 270, Diod. Sic. i. 31, 45, Strab. xvii. 1, § 40.
² Nahum iii. 8-9.

³ See above, pp. 438-441.
 (4) Smith's *History of Assurbanipal*, p. 311. The exact date given is B.C. 652-1.

order to distract the efforts of his adversary, he sent emissaries to various distant countries, and among them to Egypt,¹ with the object of exciting the subject nations to throw off the Assyrian yoke, pointing out to them that they had now an excellent opportunity of regaining their freedom. It seems to have been this invitation, rather than any quarrel with his brother princes,² that caused Psammetichus, at this time king of Sais, to form the project of reuniting Egypt into a single monarchy, and at the same time of releasing his country from any, even nominal, dependence on Assyria. Before, however, manifesting his intention by any overt act, he took the precaution of strengthening himself by a distant and powerful alliance. Having learnt that Gyges, king of Lydia, a rich and warlike monarch, was ill affected towards the Assyrian power,³ which had recently been extended over his country, he sent an embassy to Sardis, with a request for a contingent of troops. Gyges assented,⁴ and a body of soldiers, drawn chiefly from the Carians and the Ionian Greeks⁵—who were at this time in his service⁶—was despatched from Asia to Africa, to help Psammetichus against the Assyrians and the Assyrian vassal-kings. By the aid of these foreign auxiliaries, the Saitic monarch was completely successful. In a battle near Memnonis⁷—the modern Menouf—he signally

¹ Cf. Smith's *History of Assyria*, p. 155. Egypt is undoubtedly intended though the word used is *Milukhi* (Meroë or Ethiopia).

² As related by Herodotus (ii. 151) and Diodorus (i. 60).

³ Cf. Smith's *History of Assyria*, p. 160, ll. 24-7.

⁴ *Ibid.* p. 160, l. 28.

⁵ So Herodotus (ii. 152), who,

however, knows nothing of their having been sent by Gyges.

⁶ Gyges had taken the Ionian city of Colophon (Herod. i. 14), and had thus Ionian subjects whom he could force to serve. His Carians were especially mercenaries (See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 200, 2nd ed.).

⁷ Diod. Sic. i. 60.

defeated the combined forces of the vassal monarchs, and, as the result of his victory, placed on his head the double crown, and proclaimed himself 'lord of the two Egypts, the upper and the lower country.'

It is suspected¹ that Psammetichus or Psamatik, 𓂏𓂛𓂏, to give him his native name—was of Libyan



Head of Psammetichus I

descent, connected with the family of which the arch-rebel against the Persians, Inarôš, was also a member.² The names Psamatik and Neco, 𓂏𓂛𓂏 𓂏𓂛𓂏, are unknown in the Egyptian nomenclature up to this date,

¹ Lepsius *Ueber die XXII ägyptische Königsdynastie*, p. 201 | ² Inarôš was the son of a Psamatik (Hérod. vii. 7, ad fin.)

and have no Egyptian etymology. Moreover, the Western Delta was, as we have already seen,¹ peculiarly open to Libyan invasion, and Sais, the chief city of this region, would naturally contain in its population a large Libyan infusion. It is not to be supposed, however, that the Psammetichi were recent immigrants—they had no doubt been long settled in the region, and had gradually raised themselves to a high position among the nobles of Sais. But the physical type of the family was markedly non-Egyptian. Psammetichus had a more open eye than the ordinary Egyptian one, a nose the reverse of the Egyptian form, which is aquiline and depressed, lips of moderate thickness, and a large but retreating chin. His skull seems to have been of the shape called ‘dolichocephalous,’ with a very small development behind the ears.² He bore his foreign origin in his very aspect, and therefore hastened to cover this defect, and legitimate himself in the eyes of his subjects, by marrying an Egyptian princess, Shepenput,³ the daughter of a ‘king Piankhi,’ who traced his descent to the unfortunate Bekemant or Bocchoris,⁴ the earliest Saitic monarch in the dynastic lists.

Having thus strengthened his right to the throne, the prudent ruler proceeded to secure himself the still more important support of might, by permanently engaging the services of those mercenary troops to

¹ Supra, pp. 320, 361, 373, &c.

² See also what is to be printed in the preceding page, which is taken from a votive tablet in the British Museum.

(On Shepenput, as Lepsius renders the original, which is , (See the small

treatise of this writer *Ueber die XXII ägyptischen Königsdynastie*, p. 302, and Tafel II at the end of the work.)

⁴ Ibid., and compare Breh, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 173.

whose strong arms he felt that his success was owing, and, having induced them to enlist regularly under his banner, he settled them within a moderate distance of his capital in two great fortified camps on either side of the Pelusiac branch of the Nile below Bubastis.¹ This proceeding appears to have given offence to the Egyptian warrior class, which was chiefly concentrated in three localities, Daphna or 'Akhones, near Pelusium, Mareia on the Lacus Marcôtis, and Elephantine.² It was either forgotten that mercenaries had been freely employed by the Ramesdes and the Sheshonks, or there was something in the extent and character of the new arrangement which made it peculiarly unpalatable. A large secession of the 'warriors' took place³ soon after the settlement of the Greeks and Romans in their new 'camps,' and though Psammeticus pursued the deserters into Nubia and sought to arrest their march, he failed to persuade them.⁴ Above two hundred thousand of the soldier class, if we may believe Herodotus⁵ and Diodorus,⁶ having quitted Egypt, made their way up the Nile to Ethiopia, and were settled by the reigning monarch high up the course of the river, apparently upon the White Nile,⁷ about lat.

¹ Herod. ii. 151.

² Ibid. ii. 90. Mr. Grote supposed that the 'camps' of the Greeks and Romans near Bubastis superseded the Pelusiac garrison (*History of Greece* vol. ii. p. 417, ed. of 1862). But this is nowhere stated.

³ The latest writer on this period (Dr. Wiedemann) pronounces the entire story of the revolt and desertion of the warriors to be 'unhistorical' (*Geschichte Aegyptens in Ptolemäischer Zeit bis auf Alexander den Grossen*, p. 137). But this would

be an entirely excessive description of a native, intelligent, and brave people, who were joined by Winkler, Giese, Lamm, Bach, Taver, and others. I see no reason to doubt it.

⁴ Herod. ii. 10.

⁵ Ibid. ii. 10. He estimates the number of the deserters at 210,000.

⁶ Ibid. Sic. i. 67. He says they exceeded 200,000.

⁷ This is the only place within the limits of the known world the course of the Nile is from west to east. (See Herod. ii. 31.)

9°. • Here they were known as the Asmach or Automoli, under which latter name they are often mentioned by the geographers¹

The introduction into Egypt of a large body of Asiatic Greeks, warlike and yet civilised and refined, and the close relationship in which they henceforth stood to the king, of whose throne they must have been the chief physical support, were events of considerable importance in their effect upon Egyptian art, manners, and habits of thought. The spirit of inquiry was suddenly awakened in the inert Egyptian mind, which had hitherto been content to work in a traditional groove, and had eschewed all needless speculations. Psammetichus himself had his curiosity aroused, and began experiments and investigations. A strong spring, which welled forth from the rock in the neighbourhood of Elephantiné, and was called by some—absurdly enough—the true source of the Nile, was reputed to be unfathomable. Psammetichus brought a measuring line, with a heavy weight attached to it, and had the fountain sounded, but failed to reach the bottom.² A question having been raised, probably by some of the newcomers, as to the relative antiquity of different races of mankind, Psammetichus had two children isolated from their species, brought up by a dumb herdsman,³ and suckled by a goat, in order to see what language they would speak, since he presumed that, if they never heard a word uttered, they would revert to the primitive type of speech. The result of his experi-

¹ Pomp. Mela in 10; Plin. *II* N vi 35 § 101, Steph. Byz. ad voc. Ἀσμάχοι. Strabo loc. cit., gives as the name of Scythia (xvii 1, § 2)

² Herod. ii 28

³ Dumb, not by nature but by command—being forbidden to utter a word in presence of the children

ment was thought to prove the Phrygians to be the most ancient nation; and the Egyptians, we are told,¹ thenceforth acquiesced in that conclusion as an established one.

A second consequence of the Greek influx was the establishment of a class of 'interpreters,' who acted as intermediaries between the Greeks and the native Egyptians in business transactions, being equally conversant with the languages of both nations.² The Greeks, with that self-conceit which characterised them above all the other peoples of antiquity, declined to speak or understand any language but their own, and this depended on the interpreters—persons in a humble position—for all their knowledge of the history, antiquities, and religious opinions of the Egyptians. Hence probably the frequent mistakes which disfigure their accounts of these matters, and detract so largely from their value.

It would seem³ that another consequence was the opening of free communication and commercial intercourse between Egypt and Asiatic Greece, such as had certainly not existed previously. The Egyptians had hitherto been jealous of foreigners, and scarcely allowed them to land upon their coast.⁴ Now Greek trade and even Greek settlements were encouraged. The Milesians established a fortified port on the Bolbitine mouth of the Nile, and shortly afterwards founded Naucratis on the western or Canopic branch.⁵ The

¹ Herod. ii. 2.

² Ibid. ii. 154.

³ There is some question as to whether Psammetichus I., or Amasis first threw Egypt open to foreigners. Taglio with Mr. C. A. that 'the establishment of the

the merchants and merchants at Naucratis may be rather considered as dating the opening of free communication. (*History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 43.)

⁴ Herod. ii. 170.

⁵ Strab. xvii. p. 801.

city became an important *entrepôt* of Greek commerce, and the monopoly of the lucrative traffic thus established was not long confined to a single state. Chios, Phocæa, Rhodes, Halicarnassus, Mytilêné, Egina, Samos claimed a share in the Egyptian trade,¹ and Naucratis shortly received immigrants in considerable numbers from these and other Greek cities. The wines of Greece were highly appreciated by Egyptian epicures;² and Greek pottery and glyptic art attracted a certain amount of favour. Greek courtesans, moreover, established themselves at Naucratis, and accumulated immense fortunes.³ Thus the influence exercised upon Egypt by the Greek settlement was one not altogether for good; but on the whole it is probable that the benefits which resulted from it outweighed the disadvantages.

The loss of military strength consequent upon the desertion of the 'warriors' did not deter Psammetichus from attempting, like other founders of dynasties, to obtain for himself the *prestige* which is derived from foreign conquests. The Assyrian power declined rapidly in the decade of years which followed the loss of Egypt,⁴ Western Asia became disorganised, and a tempting opportunity was thus offered for Egypt to claim once more dominion over Syria. Psammetichus, if there is any ground at all for the statement of Herodotus that he besieged Azotus (Ashdod) for twenty nine years,⁵ must have commenced his aggressions in this quarter very soon after he became king of all Egypt.⁶

¹ Herod. ii. 178.

² Chianus the brother of Sappho, traded in wine between Lesbos and Naucratis (Strab. xvii. p. 807). On the large quantity imported, see Herod. iii. 6.

³ Herod. ii. 185.

⁴ See *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii pp. 504-6.

⁵ Herod. ii. 157.

⁶ The latest date assigned to Psammetichus by modern writers is

Ashdod was the key of Syria upon the south, and was a city of great strength, as indeed the name implies.¹ Psammeticus can scarcely have blockaded it continuously for the time mentioned,² but he may have attacked it frequently, or indeed annually,³ during that space, and his efforts may only have been crowned with success in the twenty-ninth year from the date of his first assault. The Jewish history of the time shows that he did not carry his arms inland, or make any attempt to interfere with Manasseh, Amon, or Josiah; but it would seem that from Ashdod he proceeded northwards along the Syrian coast, and reduced Phœnicia to a species of vassalage, establishing the Egyptian power over the coast line as far north as Aradus, where he built a temple to the Egyptian goddess, Sechet or Bast, and left a statuette inscribed with his name.⁴

It was probably after Ashdod had fallen, and when Psammeticus regarded his power as firmly fixed in Philistia and Phœnicia, that a sudden danger manifested itself which no wisdom could have foreseen and no

no 610 (Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 121) Brugsch (*Hist. of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 277, 18 ed.) makes the date of his last year 612. Others (as Lenormant) carry it back to no 618. If this view is correct, three years only would have elapsed between his establishment of himself as king of all Egypt and his first attack on Ashdod. If the date of Brugsch be preferred, the interval would have been one of nine years.

¹ Ashdod, אֲשְׁדּוֹד, is properly derived from a cognate root with the Arabic *shedeed*, 'strong.' Compare Hebrew עָרִי.

² The ten-years' sieges of Troy and Venetia have been rejected as of impossible duration (Grote *History of Greece*, vol. i. p. 218. Niebuhr,

History of Rome, vol. ii. p. 408. F.T.) but too far longer and more incredible siege of Azotus is given with no type of measure (Grote *History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 408, Lenormant *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne* vol. i. p. 470). Wiedemann however suggests a doubt (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 131) which is considerably well-founded.

³ The Egyptian wars like those of the Orientals generally consisted, for the most part, of a series of spring or summer campaigns, begun and ended in the course of a few months and continued year after year till the enemy was exhausted, and submitted.

⁴ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, 180.

statesmanship have averted. Breaking through the great barrier of the Caucasian range, a horde of fierce barbarians—Ugrian or Tatar spread themselves (about B.C. 630–620) over Armenia and Mesopotamia,¹ defeated the armies sent against them by the civilised nations of those parts,² became complete masters of the open country, and, having desolated and exhausted one region after another, finally descended upon Syria, and threatened to invade Egypt. Baffled by the high walls which for the most part defended the towns, it was their ordinary practice to pass them by, and to ravage only the unwall'd villages and the cultivated plains;³ but occasionally a weak town, reputed rich, tempted their attack, and succumbed to it. Pressing towards Egypt along the coast route, they must have come upon Ashdod; but Ashdod was too strong for them to meddle with. They passed on and reached Ascalon, an ancient city,⁴ famous for its temple of Derceto, the Philistine Ashtoreth. This place fell into their hands, and proved so seductive that in a short time the invading host was reduced by its excesses to such a condition as made it little better than an army of women.⁵ Psammeticus, under these circumstances,

¹ Compare *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. pp. 508–16.

² Herod. i. 104.

³ The description in Ezek. xxxviii may have a general bearing on the struggle between good and evil (see *Speaker's Commentary*, vol. vi. p. 157), but its more striking features are probably derived from the Scythian invasion with which the prophet was contemporary. Elog. is made to say 'I will go up to the land of *unwall'd villages*, I will go to them that are at rest, and that dwell safely, *all of them dwelling without walls and*

having neither bars nor gates, to take a spoil and to take a prey, to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land' (verses 11, 12).

⁴ Judg. i. 18, xiv. 19, Xanth. Lyd. i. 25, Herod. i. 105.

⁵ Compare Justin, ii. 3, § 14, with Herod. l.c., and, for the nature of the malady which came on the Scythians at Ascalon, see

found no difficulty in persuading the chiefs, on receipt of a moderate bribe, to give up their project of invading Egypt, and even evacuate the portion of southern Syria which they had occupied. Whether they retired is uncertain,¹ but there is reason to think that from the time of their stay at Ascalon their power declined. The Philistine city proved then Caput and Western Asia in a short time was able to rid itself of its oppressors.

During the later years of his life, Psammetichus would seem to have devoted his attention to art and architecture. Herodotus tells us that he built the southern gateway, which gave entire completeness to the great temple of Phthah at Memphis,² and also 'made a court for Apis, in which Apis was kept, whenever he made his appearance in Egypt.'³ This latter was surrounded by a colonnade, adorned with Osirid figures eighteen or twenty feet high. Psammetichus also made a new gallery for the reception of the Apis bulls after their death, in the burial-place of Saccarah,⁴ piercing the solid rock with arched embrasures, in each one of which at least one Apis was to be deposited. He likewise adorned Memphis with a new temple to Sechet,⁵ where she was long honoured as the wife of Phthah and the Goddess of Life. In Thebes he restored those portions of the great temple which had been injured

Hipparchus *De Aere, Aqua, et Locis*, vi. 108.

¹ It is suspected that they made a settlement at this time in the Judan valley occupying Be-el-sha, which from them took its later name of Seythopolis (Syncell *Chronogr.* p. 214 c).

² Herod. ii. 153. Three courts had been made, and three gateways built on three sides of the temple

previously (ib. 101, 121, § 1, and 130) — possibly alone by

manu twitani — Egyptian word

³ Herod. ii. 153. For a representation of the court see the frontispiece to vol. i. of Sir G. Wilkinson's *Ancient Egyptians*.

⁴ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, pp. 175-6.

⁵ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 127.

by the Assyrians,¹ and at Medinet Abou he constructed works which attracted the attention of later ages.² Sais, Mendes, Philæ, and Heliopolis were likewise objects of his care, and their sites have yielded specimens of the arts which he fostered and encouraged.³ An invention of his reign,⁴ which cannot, however, be assigned to the initiative of the monarch, was the later *enchiridion* or *demotic* writing, which superseded the hieratic, being simpler and easier to write rapidly, though somewhat more spread out over the paper.

Besides his wife, Shepenput, the daughter of King Piankhu, Psammetichus is thought to have been married to a lady called Hen, or Mont,⁵ who was the mother of his eldest, if not his only,⁶ son, Neku—the Necho of Scripture. By Shepenput he had a daughter, whom he called Netakeitimmout, or ‘Nitocris beloved of Mont; and this princess was taken to wife by her half brother, Neco.⁷ Thus the legitimacy supposed to attach to the descendants of Bocchoris was transferred to this prince, who reigned partly in his own right, partly in that of his wife.

¹ Wiedemann, *l. c.*

² Rosellini, *Monumenti Storici*, vol. iv. p. 169.

³ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 175, Wiedemann, *l. c.* Among the works of Psammetichus at Heliopolis was the ‘elegant obelisk of red granite, which now adorns the piazza of the Monte Citorio at Rome (Vulsey, *Travels in Italy* p. 561). This monument was transported to Rome by Augustus, and set up there originally in the Campus Martius, where it formed the monument of a gigantic sundial (Plin. *H. N.* xxxvi. 4).

Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 177.

⁴ Lepsius, *Ueber die XXXII ägyptische Königsdynastie*, p. 304,

and Tafel II. at the end of the work.

⁵ Wiedemann speaks of another son, Ilous, of whom there is a statue in the museum of the Louvre (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 145).

⁷ Lepsius, *l. c.* Dr. Wiedemann suspects that Psammetichus himself took his daughter, Nitocris, as a secondary wife, in order to strengthen his title to the throne (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, pp. 143-4), but his ground for this, that she is called ‘royal wife, as well as ‘royal daughter, on a tomb (*Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 270 b) where the only king mentioned by name is Psammetichus, does not seem to me sufficient to establish such an improbability.

Neco,  , who must have been tolerably advanced in years when he ascended the throne,¹ was nevertheless one of the most enterprising and energetic of Egyptian rulers. Inheriting his father's designs against Syria and Phœnicia, and convinced that the successful prosecution of such an enterprise as the conquest of those countries required the employment of a powerful fleet,² his first efforts³ were directed towards the construction of a navy capable of contending with any that the Phœnician monarchs could bring against him. As Egypt was washed by two seas, and he had ports on both, dockyards were established and ship building actively pursued simultaneously in the two quarters, the work being pushed with such vigour that in a short time he possessed two fleets of *triremes*,⁴ one in the Mediterranean and the other in the Red Sea. Egyptian fleets had hitherto consisted of vessels having one rank of rowers only;⁵ but biremes, or vessels with two ranks, had been built by the Phœnicians⁶ as early as B.C. 700, and triremes had been invented by the Greeks at about the same date.⁷ Neco's Greek and Carian mercenaries were

¹ Psammetichus cannot have been less than seventy at his death, since he must have been fourteen or fifteen at least when he was associated by his father (supra, p. 453). Probably he was as much as seventy-four or seventy-five. His *eldest* son would most likely have been fifty by that time.

² The Pharaohs of the eighteenth dynasty had constantly been supported in their Syrian invasions by fleets. (See above, pp. 233, 240, &c.) Cambyses took care to be accompanied by one when he attacked Egypt. (Herod. iii. 119.) It was the loss of his fleet in the

battle of the Nile that forced Napoleon to abandon the idea of holding Egypt and Syria.

Herodotus notices the canal attempt intended for the construction of two ports (ii. 155). But probability is against this. I agree with Wiedemann, who says, 'Scheinbar die Sonje, welche er den Pharaonen bestellte, war eine Flotte zu gründen' (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 147).

³ Herod. l. c.

⁴ See above, vol. i. p. 470.

⁵ *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. ii. p. 176, 1st ed.

⁷ Pliney i. 13.

probably well acquainted with them, and would recommend them to their master as excelling all other vessels of war. The vessels in which they, or rather their predecessors, had reached Egypt forty years earlier, and which were laid up in dry docks near Bubastis,¹ may have been of this class, and have served the shipwrights of Neco as patterns. At any rate two fleets of triemes were built on the two Egyptian seas, and their active services were put in request, Herodotus tells us, on more than one occasion.²

Closely connected with these naval projects and aspirations was, beyond all doubt,³ another enterprise in which the active minded monarch engaged at the same period. The great kings of the nineteenth dynasty had, as we have seen,⁴ established water communication between the two Egyptian seas by means of a canal carried across from the Nile near Bubastis to the Bitter Lakes, and thence to the head of the Gulf of Suez. But this work had been intended for commercial, not military, purposes, and had been constructed on a moderate scale, the width of the cutting being probably not much greater than that of the canals of our own country. Neco's design was of a far grander character. He wished to construct a ship canal, along which his triemes might pass, and designed it on a scale which would have allowed of two vessels of this class being rowed along it abreast,⁵ and therefore of their meeting and crossing each other without shipping their oars. Had the work been successfully completed, it would have been feasible to unite the

¹ Herod. ii 151.

² Ibid 150.

³ So Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 117. I have long

been of the same opinion.

⁴ Supra, pp 207 and 310.

⁵ Herod. ii 158.

two fleets on any occasion when it seemed desirable, and to employ the entire naval force of the kingdom, either in the Mediterranean or the Red Sea, against Phœnicia or Arabia. Unfortunately the enterprise failed. According to Herodotus,¹ it was stopped by an oracle which warned Neco that he was doing the work of the foreigner. But, if any such prophetic announcement was really made—which is, to say the least, doubtful²—the priestly warning was probably itself based upon another quite separate fact—namely, the loss of life which occurred when the king attempted to put his plan into execution. In a climate like that of Egypt, and still more of the deserts which border it, hard labour under the scorching sun is itself dangerous; the concentration of many labourers on one spot increases the peril; insufficient provision of supplies and shelter multiplies it. So small a work as the Alexandrian canal cost Mehemet Ali the lives of 10,000 men;³ how many were sacrificed in the construction of the great cutting of M. de Lesseps will probably never be known. Neco is said to have lost, before he desisted, 120,000 of his labourers.⁴ The number may be an exaggeration, but it indicates a fact. Excavators having been unwisely concentrated, or too much labour required of them, or an insufficient provision having been made of the necessary supplies, a fearful mortality was the consequence. Thousands perished in the course of a few months; and either compassion for his subjects' woes, or fear of their resentment,

¹ Herod. ii. 158.

² It is not likely that the idea embodied in the supposed oracle would have presented itself to the mind of any Egyptian until the attempt of Neco was carried to a

successful issue by Darius.

³ Wilson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 207, note 2, 2nd ed.

⁴ Herod. l. c.

induced the monarch reluctantly to forego his purpose, and leave his great work unaccomplished.

But the idea of uniting his two navies still haunted him. If it could not be effected in one way, might it not in another? His Greek friends would tell him that the Ocean surrounded the whole of the earth,¹ and he might conclude from this that Africa was a peninsula. If so, might it not be circumnavigated? To obtain an answer to this question, Neco despatched from a port on the Red Sea a body of Phœnician mariners, who, starting with abundant supplies, sailed southward until they reached the extremity of the African continent, rounded the Cape of Storms, and returned, by way of the Atlantic, the Straits of Gibraltar, and the Mediterranean, to the country from which they had taken their departure.² The attempt was a success, but the success involved a disappointment. So much time was taken up by the voyage that the junction between the two seas, thus proved to exist, was of no practical service. Neco had to content himself with the glory of a geographical discovery, and to relinquish wholly his project of uniting his two fleets into one.

Having occupied in these enterprises the first two or three years of his reign,³ Neco, in B.C. 608, proceeded to commence active military operations,⁴ invading Syria with a large army by land,⁵ while no

¹ Herod. iv. 8.

² See Herodotus (iv. 42). The fact of the circumnavigation has been much disputed, but it is accepted by Grote (*History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 411), Junker (*Lehrbuch der Geschichte des Alterthums*, No. 3), Wiedemann (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 140), Buch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 178), and others.

³ Neco's accession is placed by his contemporaries between 610 and 608. His attack on Syria seems to have been certainly in 608.

⁴ Herod. ii. 159.

⁵ That the land force consisted to a large extent of the Greek and Cyprian mercenaries, especially the former, is indicated by the fact that

doubt his fleet co-operated by advancing along the shore. Already possessed of Ascalon and Ashdod, he found no difficulty in penetrating by the coast route¹ as far north as the city of Megiddo on the border of the great plain of Esdraelon. There, however, he was confronted by a hostile force, which blocked his way. Josiah, king of Judah, an energetic monarch, who had taken advantage of the fall of Nineveh, and the general unsettlement of Western Asia consequent thereupon, to reunite under his sway the greater part of the old kingdom of David,² determined on opposing the further progress of the Egyptian army,³ either from a sense of duty, because he regarded himself as a Babylonian feudatory, or from a suspicion that, if the Egyptians became lords of Syria, they would not allow him to retain his sovereignty. In vain Neco tried to disarm his opposition, and induce him to retire, by an assurance that he had no hostile intentions against Judah,⁴ but was on his way to Carchemish, the great stronghold upon the Euphrates, where he hoped to meet and engage the forces of Nabopolassar, king of Babylon. Josiah was obdurate. Even Neco's assurance that God was with him, and had commanded the expedition,⁵

Neco sent the vision in which he fought at Megiddo to be hung up as a thank-offering in the Greek temple of Apollo at Branchio, near Miletus the first offering which any Egyptian monarch had made to a Greek shrine (See Herod. *loc. cit.*, and compare Strab. xvii. p. 634.)

¹ The ordinary coast route proceeded northwards as far as Dor, when it bent inland to avoid the *détour* round the base of Carmel and crossed the spur joining Jarmel to the Samaritan highland. Here Megiddo was situated. On the

natives of Tyndaris in substituting Megdol in Megiddo's name and its form in Herodotus (v. 1. ii. p. 208, note 1, 2 *id. ed.*).

² 2 Kings xxiii. 15-19, 2 Chron. xxxiv. 1-13.

³ 2 Kings xxiii. 29.

⁴ 2 Chron. xxxv. 21.

⁵ *Id. ibid.* The Egyptian kings generally ascribed their victories to divine direction. Sometimes visions were seen, as by Menephtah (*Records of the Past*, vol. iv. pp. 3-4), sometimes the king claimed that God spoke to him by an internal voice (See the 'Inscription of Piankhi' in

failed to alter his resolution. A battle was thus forced on the Egyptian monarch who would gladly have avoided one; and the hosts of Egypt and Judæa met, for the first time since the days of Asa, in the neighbourhood of Megiddo, the scene of so many conflicts. As might have been expected, the Jewish king, not being miraculously helped, as Asa was against Zerah,¹ very soon succumbed; his army was completely defeated, and he himself mortally wounded by an arrow. Hastily quitting the battle field, he made his way to Jerusalem, where he shortly afterwards died of the hurt received at Megiddo.² The Egyptian monarch, having brushed away the obstacle in his path, pursued his march through Galilee and Cœle Syria to the Euphrates. Whether he fought any more battles or no is uncertain; but it appears that his expedition was entirely successful, and that the whole country submitted to him³ as far as Carchemish (Jerabolus). Three months sufficed for the conquest,⁴ and at the expiration of that time the victorious monarch returned to Egypt, taking Judæa on his way, and making new arrangements for its political status and government. As a king had been set up in the place of Josiah without his authority, he deposed him, loaded him with chains, and carried him to Egypt as a prisoner.⁵ He did not, however, abolish the Jewish state. On the contrary, he selected from the family of Josiah the prince who had the best

vol. i of the above cited work, p. 8 § (9 ad fin.)

¹ See 2 Chron. x. 12 xxv. 8

² Ibid. xxxv. 24

³ This is evident both from 2 Kings xxiv. 7, where we hear of Nebuchadnezzar taking 'from the river of Egypt unto the river Euphrates' all that pertained to the king of Egypt, and also from Be-

rosus (ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 11 § 2), where we find an account of this conquest.

⁴ It appears from the three months' reign of Jehoahaz (2 Kings xxiii. 31) who was made king when Josiah died of his wound, and deposed on the return of Neco from Carchemish.

⁵ 2 Kings xxiii. 33 and 34.

title to the throne,¹ and established him at Jerusalem as subject or tributary monarch. He then fixed the tribute² which Juda should pay at a hundred talents of silver (40,625*l*) and a talent of gold (1,000*l*), which may be considered a very moderate requirement, and returned to his own country.

The subjection of Syria to Egypt continued for three years.³ But in B.C. 605 Nabopolassar, king of Babylon, having perhaps associated his eldest son, Nebuchadnezzar,⁴ sent him at the head of a large army to win his spurs in a campaign against King Neco. That monarch, aware of what was intended, marched in person to the defence of his newly acquired territory, and took up a position resting upon Carchemish,⁵ where he awaited the onset of the enemy. The Egyptian force comprised, as usual, a large body of chariots, consisting besides of horsemen and footmen. It was an immense host, and is described under the metaphor of a flood, whose waters toss to and fro, and cover the face of the earth.⁶ Seemingly the Greeks and Carians did not on this occasion form any part of the expedition, African auxiliaries alone being employed—Ethiopians, Nubians, and Marmaræ.⁷ It

¹ Jehoiakim, the people's choice was Josiah's second son. Taken Neco's choice his eldest (See 2 Kings xxiii 31 and 36 2 Chron xxxvi 2 and 5)

² 2 Kings xvi 13

³ Thl xxiv 1

Nebuchadnezzar was lastingly regarded as 'king of Babylon' at this time by the Jews (2 Kings xxiv 1, Jer xlvi 2, Dan i 1) That his father was still alive appears from Hieronimus (l.c.)

⁶ Jeron. l.c. 'The army of Pharaoh-Necho, king of Egypt

which was by the river Euphrates in the year 605

⁴ He was 8 with the command of David Paine Smith in the *Scriptural Commentaries*, vol. v p 532

⁷ Jer i xlvi 10 M. S. u. Poole has suggested that the 'Ladim' of the Septuagint may represent the Greek and Carian mercenaries (*Dictionary of the Bible*, vol. ii p 160); that the Ladim were elsewhere always an African people (Gen x 13, 1 Chron i 11; Is lxvi 10; Ezek xxx 5).

was not long before Nebuchadnezzar made his appearance, and joined battle with his adversary. We have no particulars of the engagement, but its result is abundantly apparent. Neco suffered a complete and shameful defeat. His 'valiant men were swept away,'¹ they 'fled apace,'² and 'stumbled one over another.'³ The prestige of Egypt, which lately stood so high, was utterly lost. The cry went forth, 'Pharaoh, king of Egypt, is but a noise,' an empty sound, and nothing more; 'he has passed the appointed time,' outlived his energies, and is no longer formidable.⁴ The victorious Babylonians carried all before them, swept down the Coele Syrian valley, overran Galilee and Samaria, and appeared shortly before Jerusalem. Jehoiakim resisted them, and the city stood a siege, but was quickly taken and plundered by the irresistible invaders.⁵ Nebuchadnezzar then continued his march southwards, with the intention of attacking Egypt, and would probably have made himself master of the country, had he not been suddenly called away to Babylon by intelligence of the decease of his father. Leaving his prisoners and the bulk of his troops to make the long march by the ordinary circuitous route, he himself with a few light armed crossed the desert and hurried to the capital.⁶

Neco thus obtained a respite, and was able in some measure to repair his losses and redeem his position, before Nebuchadnezzar found himself at leisure to return into Syria, and see to the consolidation of his

¹ Jer xlv. 15

² Ibid verse 5

³ Ibid verse 16

⁴ Jer xlv. 17.

⁵ Dan i. 1, 2 2 Chron xxvi. 1 & c
6, 7. It was at this time that Daniel

and his companions were carried off, to be eunuchs in the royal palace at Babylon.

⁶ Berossus ap Euseb *Chron Can*

power in that distant and not very submissive region. The Egyptian monarch saw clearly that it was of the utmost importance to raise up opponents to the Babylonians in the Syrian territory, and prevent them from obtaining quiet possession of a tract which would bring them to the very doors of Egypt. He therefore intrigued with Judæa,¹ and probably also with Phœnicia, inciting the newly subjected kings to rebel and throw off the Babylonian yoke. In two instances he was successful. Jehoukim, after three years of submissive endurance, in B.C. 602, declared the independence of his country;² and the king of Tyre, a few years later,³ followed the example of his Jewish brother. Nebuchadnezzar had to begin the conquest of Syria afresh, and, recognising the importance of the crisis, made preparations accordingly. Collecting an army of above 300,000 men, partly composed of his own subjects, partly of Median allies,⁴ he, in the year B.C. 598, marched for the second time westward, crossed the Euphrates, and led his troops into Palestine. Dividing his army into two portions, he formed the sieges of Tyre and of Jerusalem simultaneously.⁵ Jerusalem was soon reduced, but Tyre resisted with the utmost stubbornness. For thirteen years⁶ the further progress of the Babylonian arms was arrested by a single city of no great size, but strong in her wealth and her situation. Under these circumstances, Egypt escaped

¹ Josephus *Ant. Jud.* x. 6, § 2, Winkel, *Realwörterbuch*, s. 113, voc. JEHOUKIM. The instigation of Neco is glanced at in 2 Kings xxiv. 7.

² 2 Kings xxiv.

³ Before Nebuchadnezzar's seventh year (Josephus, *Contr. Ap. on* i. 21), which was B.C. 598.

⁴ Alex. Polyhist. I. i. 24.

⁵ Compare 2 Chron. xxxvi. 6 with Josephus, *Contr. Ap. on* l. c. Both sieges seem to have commenced in B.C. 598.

⁶ Josephus, l. c. Compare Ezek. xxix. 18 where the seven 'servicos' which Nebuchadnezzar served against Tyre is mentioned.

all further attack; and Neco must have felt that his intrigues had had a success which he had scarcely dared to anticipate.

From B.C. 605—the year of the battle of Carchemish—to B.C. 596, when he died, Neco undertook no military expeditions, but nursed his strength, and remained persistently on the defensive. It was probably during this interval that he occupied himself with the buildings which are mentioned in some of his inscriptions. Though not a monarch who greatly interested himself in architecture or art, Neco still regarded it as incumbent upon him to leave some memorials of his reign. He made additions to the temples of Phthah and Neith at Memphis,¹ embellished Sais,² and set up tablets in the quarries of Toora and in the valley of Hammamât.³ A statue, which represents him on his knees making an offering, adorns a private collection in Paris.⁴ Several vases and scarabæi bear his name,⁵ but, on the whole, he must be placed among the kings whose remains are scanty and insignificant. He is thought to have been buried at Sais,⁶ whence, early in the last century, was brought a scarabæus, taken from a mummy, which bore his name and had probably been placed by the embalmers upon the region of his heart.⁷

According to Lepsius,⁸ Neco had two wives, Nektakert minaut, his half sister, and Takhaut or Takhot. It was the latter who bore him the son by whom he was succeeded,⁹ and whom he named after his own

¹ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 155.

² Buch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 180.

³ *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 273 a b.

⁴ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 154.

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 153.

⁶ Buch, *l. c.*

VOL. II.

⁷ *Ibid.* Compare Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, I. 153.

⁸ *Ueber die XXII. ägyptische Königsdynastie*, Tafel II. at the end of the work.

⁹ Wiedemann, *l. c.* Compare Buch, *l. c.*

father, Psamatik. This prince, called by Herodotus Psammis,¹ and known to modern historians as Psammetichus II., was distinguished from his grandfather by the throne name² of Nefarapra, ⲛⲉⲫⲁⲣⲁⲓⲣⲁ, the throne name of Psammetichus I. having been Uaapra, ⲙⲁⲁⲡⲣⲁ. His short reign of six years, or rather of five years and a half,³ was not very eventful. As Tyre still baffled all the efforts of Nebuchadnezzar,⁴ there was for the time no danger of the Babylonians troubling Egypt; and Psamatik seems to have felt himself so secure upon this side that he ventured to employ the main strength of the empire in the directly opposite quarter. Herodotus tells us that he made an expedition into Ethiopia;⁵ and his own monuments give numerous indications of his presence and directing energy upon the Ethiopian border. Two inscriptions on the rocks at Elephantine, one in the island of Bigeh or Beghe, two at Philæ, and one in the island of Konosso,⁶ imply a stay of some considerable length at the extreme south of his own proper territory. If we refer to his reign the celebrated archaic Greek inscription of Abu Simbel,⁷ we may consider that we have actual evidence of his Ethiopic expedition having penetrated deep into Nubia, under the joint command of a Greek and an Egyptian general, in the latter of whom we may perhaps recog-

¹ Herod. ii. 150. Manetho called him Psammis (see Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 750).

² Lepsius, *Keopshuch*, Taf. xlvii. No. 614.

³ The Assyrian and other stelæ show that the six years of Manetho (180) and Herodotus (ii. 161) must be cut down to five years and a half (Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, pp. 117-16.)

⁴ Psamatik II. probably reigned from B.C. 593 to B.C. 591 or 590. Nebuchadnezzar's siege of Tyre lasted from B.C. 598 to B.C. 585.

⁵ Herod. ii. 161.

⁶ See Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens* p. 158.

⁷ See the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 44, and compare Beckh, *Corp. Inscript. Gr.* No. 5120. Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. vi. pls. 98, 99, &c.

nise the later Egyptian monarch, Amasis¹. Whether a contingent of Jews also lent their aid to the Egyptian monarch, as stated by Aristeas,² is perhaps more doubtful, yet is certainly not beyond the range of possibility. Egypt and Judæa were at this time closely drawn together by common fear of Babylon; and though Zedekiah, the king of Judæa contemporary with Psamatik II, was a Babylonian feudatory, yet in his heart he was thoroughly disaffected, intended to revolt, and looked to Egypt to support him. The friendly act of sending some of his own subjects to aid Psamatik would strengthen his claim for a return in kind when the fitting hour came, and may thus be accepted, though the authority upon which it rests is weak.

Psamatik would seem not to have brought the Ethiopian war to an end. An inscription upon a statue now in the Louvre tells us that an Egyptian general, named Hor or Horus, was engaged in a struggle with the 'miserable Kush' in the first year of Apries, and completely vanquished them, thus terminating the war which had been commenced by that king's predecessor.³

Though little distinguished as a warrior or as a statesman, as a patron of art Psamatik II followed worthily in the footsteps of his grandfather. He adorned with bas reliefs the temples of Abydos and Philæ,⁴ made additions to the great fane of Ammon at Thebes,⁵ erected an obelisk (or obelisks)⁶ to Ra-

¹ Wilkinson in Rawlinson's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 45. The identification is barely possible, since the King Amasis outlived the expedition by at least sixty-three years.

² See Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens* p. 157, note 2.

³ Wiedemann, *l.s.c.*

⁴ See Mariette, *Fouilles en Egypte*, pl. 16 bis, b, *Abydos*, pl. 2 b. Lepsius, *Denkmäler*, pt. iii. pl. 274 d.

⁵ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 159.

⁶ Obelisks were almost always set up in pairs. The obelisk of Psamatik II. still stands in Rome, and is

Harmachis and Tum, probably at Heliopolis, and adorned Saïs with a statue of himself and another of the goddess Neith.¹ Statuary seems to have received great attention during his reign. Besides the two figures already mentioned, the museums of Europe and Africa contain at least five others, mostly, however, incomplete, which belong to this period.² One of these, in the collection of the Vatican, is said to be remarkable for its beauty.³

The wife of Psamatik II was a Nitocris, distinguished as Seret pi-Mentu,⁴ the daughter of Neco and Nitocris-Mimaut. She bore him two children, a son, to whom was given as a name the throne name of his great-grandfather, Ua ap ra, and a daughter, called Ankhnes neferapra.⁵ The son succeeded, and was known among the early Greeks as Apries,⁶ among the later as Uaphris.⁷ He was a vigorous and enterprising prince, not afraid of measuring his strength against that of Babylon, and having it for his especial aim to re-establish Egyptian influence over the Asiatic regions formerly held by the great kings of the eighteenth, nineteenth, and twentieth dynasties, and recently occupied for three years by Neco. Having rapidly brought the Ethiopian war commenced by his father, Psamatik, to a successful conclusion⁸ (B.C. 591-0), he lent a ready ear, in B.C. 588, to the ambassadors of Zedekiah, king

known as the 'Obeliscus Campensis' (Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 100.)

¹ Ibid. pp. 100-1.

² Ibid. 180.

³ Ibid. p. 107. 'Eine schöne, reich mit Inschriften geschmückte Statue.'

⁴ See Lepsius *Ueber die XXII ägyptische Königsdynastie*, p. 304, and Taf. II. at the end of the work.

⁵ The Ankhnes-Neferapra of Lepsius (ibid. p. 305), called Ankhnes-Neferah by Wiedemann (*Geschichte Aegyptens*, p. 100).

⁶ Herod. ii. 161.

⁷ Manetho ap. Euseb. *Chron. Can.* i. 20 p. 105; Syncell. *Chronograph.* p. 225 c; p. 227 B. 'The same,' or nearly the same, form was used by the LXX.

⁸ See above, p. 483.

of Judæa, who proposed a close alliance between the two countries, and engaged that Zedekiah should throw off the Babylonian yoke and openly rebel, if Apries (Hophra) would agree to support the movement by a considerable army.¹ A treaty was at once concluded on these terms; Judæa revolted, and towards the close of the year Nebuchadnezzar laid siege to Jerusalem, building forts around it,² and blockading it so strictly that no one could either quit the city or enter it. Apries, under these circumstances, redeemed his pledge, levied an army, and, quitting Egypt, marched to the relief of the beleaguered city, and actually raised the siege.³ The Babylonian monarch did not wait to be placed between two fires, but broke up from before Jerusalem, and proceeded southward to meet the more important enemy. Hophra, advancing along the coast route, had, it would seem, taken Gaza,⁴ and perhaps Ascalon,⁵ when he received intelligence of the approach of the Babylonians. It is generally supposed that he at once withdrew into Egypt, so avoiding a battle;⁶ but so sudden a change of mind seems improbable, and Josephus distinctly asserts that an engagement was fought in which Nebuchadnezzar was

¹ Ezek. xvii 15: 'He (Zedekiah) rebelled against him in sending his ambassadors into Egypt, that they might give him horses and much people.'

² 2 Kings xxv 1, Jer. li 4

³ Jer. xxxvii 5 'Then Pharaoh's army was come forth out of Egypt, and when the Chaldeans that he sieged Jerusalem heard tidings of them, they departed from Jerusalem'

⁴ Ibid. xlvii 1. I agree with Rie 1, and the author of the *Seder Olam*, that the capture of Gaza by

Apries was probably on this occasion

⁵ See verse 5 of the same chapter, where Gaza and Ascalon are coupled together.

⁶ Dean Payne Smith says (*Speaker's Commentary*, vol. v p. 503) that the more literal interpretation of Jer. xxxvii 7 would be that he retired without fighting and so P. Smith, *Ancient History*, vol. 1, pp. 180, 284, Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i p. 306, and others. But the words of Jeremiah really leave the question an open one

victorious¹ Apries, worsted in the fight, had to retire, and made no further effort. The blockade of Jerusalem was re-established, famine set in, the Holy City fell in B.C. 586, and the last remnant of the Jewish people was led away into captivity². Tyre surrendered in the next year,³ and the schemes of Apries, for the moment, came to nought. Babylon triumphed, the great king returned in B.C. 585 to Babylon, with more than one conquered monarch in his train, victorious over Egypt, Phœnicia, and Judæa, master of Asia from the range of Zagros, on the one hand to the 'river of Egypt' on the other.

But success is apt to beget security, and periods of exertion are, in the East, especially, apt to be followed by periods of repose and indolence. Nebuchadnezzar, when he returned home from the captures of Tyre and Jerusalem, must have reached an age at which the physical powers begin to decay, and when rest becomes an object of desire to most men⁴. The silence of the Babylonian historian⁵ and of the Babylonian monuments with respect to military expeditions at this period of his reign gives rise to the suspicion that, having, as he thought, done enough for glory, he now proceeded to console himself for the hardships of warfare by giving himself up to the seductive enjoyments of an Oriental court. In any case, Apries seems to have been emboldened to resume his projects of aggrandise-

¹ Joseph *Ant. Jud.* x. 7. § 3.

² 2 Kings xxv. 2, 21, 2. Chron. xxxvi. 17, 20.

³ See the author's *Ancient Monarchs*, vol. iii. p. 51, 2nd ed.

⁴ We cannot suppose Nebuchadnezzar to have been less than twenty-four or twenty-five when he undertook the war against Neco

in 606. If he was born in 630 he would have reached the age of forty-five in 606. It is an age at which repose becomes very dear to orientals.

⁵ Berossus. It is true that we have only fragments of his works, but still the argument & silence loses some of its force.

ment, and to have attacked Syria with a combined fleet and army¹ We are told by Herodotus that he fought a battle with the king of Tyre at sea, and sent an expedition against Sidon by land² Diodorus adds that he took Sidon, and defeated the combined fleet of Phœnicia and Cyprus in a great engagement.³ These grand successes so elated him that he is said to have defied the gods to cast him down,⁴ just as at an earlier date he had called the Nile his own creation—‘the stream which he had made for himself.’⁵

It was, however, in the counsels of Providence, that he should suffer a severe reverse of fortune and perish miserably⁶ What degree of credence, indeed, we ought to attach to the story told by Herodotus of the circumstances under which he was deposed and put to death, is doubtful. Herodotus was informed by the Egyptians that the revolution which brought his reign to an end arose out of an unsuccessful expedition against Cyrène, in which he was thought to have intentionally sacrificed the lives of some thousands of his soldiers;⁷ but Josephus believed that he was put to death by Nebuchadnezzar⁸ Inscriptions have recently been discovered which show that Nebuchadnezzar did really invade Egypt in his thirty seventh

Some historians place the Phœnician war of Apries immediately before the last siege of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (P. Smith, *Ancient History* vol. i p. 134, Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, pp. 103-4) but they appear to forget that exactly at this time Tyre was being besieged by Nebuchadnezzar and was probably in alliance with Egypt, certainly advancing Egyptian interests.

¹ Herod ii. 161.

² Diod. Sic. i. 68.

³ Herod. ii. 169.

⁴ Ezek. xxix. 3-9.

⁵ Jeremiah had prophesied (ch. x. 585): ‘Thus saith the Lord, Behold, I will give Pharaoh Nophra king of Egypt into the hand of his enemies, and into the hand of *them* that seek his life’ (Jer. xlv. 50).

⁶ Herod. ii. 161-9. Diodorus (l. c.) simply repeats Herodotus, and cannot be regarded as a separate witness.

⁷ Joseph. *Ant. Jud.* x. 9, § 7.

year (B.C. 568), a date which falls within the lifetime of Apries,¹ and coincides so nearly with the accession of Amasis as to render it highly probable that the two events were connected. The Babylonian monarch, it appears, overran the whole of Egypt as far as Syêné, and only there encountered the Egyptian troops,² who were under the command of the general Hor, the hero of Apries's Ethiopian campaign.³ This commander claims the merit of having inflicted a check on the Babylonian arms, and caused Nebuchadnezzar to retire; but he does not dispute the fact that all Egypt lay at his mercy, and that he had it in his power to remodel the government as he pleased. To depose one monarch and set up another was the usual practice of the Babylonians to execute a prince who had offended against their code of international law was a proceeding not unknown to them;⁴ it cannot but be suspected, more now than ever, that the true course of events was concealed from Herodotus by the self-love of the Egyptians, and that, whatever discontent may have arisen from the failure of the Cyrenæic expedition, Apries was really deposed and executed, and Amasis made king in his stead, by Nebuchadnezzar.

The victim of a monarch's offended dignity, or, if we are to believe Herodotus, of a mob's hatred, was not deprived of the funeral honours to which his birth entitled him. His body was embalmed, and buried in

¹ The sole reign of Apries term- *für ägyptisch Sprache* to 1878, manded 571, but is a pre- pp. 20, 1167. Conjecture is bably six years longer, slaying the *Geschichte Ägyptens*, p. 168. ³ *Sprache* p. 182.
royal palace with Amasis, and being by some regarded as still ⁴ Joseph *Ant. Jud.* x. 6. It is not so that his account of the execution of Apries by Nebuchadnezzar is inconsistent with the account in the *Zeitschrift* *Scripture*.
² (B.C. 571-565) See Herodotus, *Geschichte* Wiedemann, *Geschichte* Wiedemann in the *Zeitschrift* *Scripture*.
³ *ms.*, p. 167.

the royal burial place, inside the temple of Sais, very near the sanctuary.¹ The passions which had pursued the living man calmed themselves in the presence of death, and the last monarch of the line of Psammethichus I was allowed to find a resting place in the sepulchre of his fathers.

Apries was wholly undistinguished as a builder, and cannot be said to have been even a liberal patron of art. We have no evidence of his having employed more than a single sculptor on a single occasion in the highest kind of glyptic art, namely statuary.² His stelæ are, however, common, and are sometimes adorned with bas-reliefs;³ but these have little merit. Nor can more praise be given to the wall fragments belonging to his reign which have been found at Nahariyeh⁴ and elsewhere. His most noted work is that small obelisk which now stands in the Piazza Minerva at Rome, placed by the fantastic Bellini on the back of an elephant.⁵ It is one of a pair,⁶ which the Romans brought from Egypt to adorn the temple of Isis and Serapis, when they adopted the worship of those Egyptian deities. Originally dedicated to Neith,⁷ and erected probably at Sais, it became the symbol of a very different and far lower worship in a remote and alien capital.

If Apries, however, cared little for artistic memorials, he did not neglect to leave behind him numerous records of his reign in the way of inscriptions. At least six inscribed stelæ belonging to his time are still

¹ Herod. ii 169

² One single fragment of a statue of Apries is all that remains to us. It is now in the British Museum (No 600)

³ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, pp 171 and 175

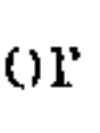
⁴ *Denkmäler*, pt iii pl 271 h i

⁵ Valéry's *Italy*, p. 549.

⁶ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens*, p 174

⁷ Valéry, lsc

extant;¹ and he has left rock inscriptions at the Biban-el Moluk,² at Silsils,³ at the island of Bigeh,⁴ at Philæ,⁵ and at the island of Konosso.⁶ His most important memorial is one found on the site of the temple of Phthah at Memphis, which has been translated by Dr Wiedemann.⁷ It secures the rights and privileges of the god Phthah, and of the priests attached to his worship at Memphis, in very stringent terms, requiring all officials to protect the priests in the possession of the temple-lands, to impress for the public service none of their slaves or peasants, and even to maintain in good repair the canals by which the temple lands were intersected. It is evident that under Amasis the priest class retained its ascendancy and that even a monarch, who thought no god could cast him down, regarded it as prudent to court priestly favour.

It is agreed on all hands that Amasis,   , or Amasis, who succeeded Apries, was entirely unconnected by blood with the Psamatik family. According to Herodotus, he was a native of Siothis, a small town in the neighbourhood of Saïs,⁸ and was not even a member of a distinguished house, but a man who sprang from the middle class. This is not disproved by his possession of high military rank, even if he was an officer under Psammetichus;⁹ since in the Egyptian military service advancement was obtained solely by merit. Various tales were told, not greatly to his credit, of the conduct pursued by Amasis in his younger days,¹⁰ when

¹ See Wiedemann's excellent description of this *Geschichte Aegyptens*, pp. 171-5.

Denkmäler, pt. iii. pl. 271 k.

² *Ibid.* pl. 271 i.

³ *Ibid.* pl. 271 l.

⁴ Champollion, *Notices Descriptives*, p. 616.

Denkmäler, pt. iii. pl. 27 f.

⁵ *Geschichte Aegyptens* on Psamatich I. pp. 171-2.

⁶ *Ibid.* ii. 7. Plato (*Timæus* p. 21 i) makes an allusion to Siothis.

⁷ See above, p. 189, note 1.

⁸ Herod. ii. 171.

he was 'sowing his wild oats;' but it is questionable whether much credit should be attached to them. Even the anecdotes of his behaviour as king¹ are of the legendary type, parallel to those which the early Persians loved to tell of Cyrus, and the later ones of Artaxerxes, son of Babek, the historical value of which is about equal to that of the tale, with which each English child is made familiar in the nursery, of King Alfred having his ears boxed by the neatherd's wife. We may perhaps conclude, from the general tone of the tales, that among the characteristics of the monarch was a rough and not over delicate humour, which pleased the common people but shocked the more refined among his subjects. He compensated, however, for this unseemly trait by numerous good qualities. He was active and energetic, exemplary in his devotion to business, distinguished as a builder, as a conqueror, as a legislator, and above all as an administrator. If he began his reign under discreditable circumstances, holding his crown as a Babylonian feudatory, and bound probably to the payment of a tribute, he ultimately succeeded in raising Egypt to a high pitch of prosperity and a lofty position among the nations. The decline and fall of Babylon,² complete in B.C. 538, gave Egypt wholly into his hands, and enabled him to pursue a policy of his own devising, which, whatever its effect on the national spirit and on the ultimate fate of his country, had at any rate the immediate result of enormously developing Egypt's resources and increasing her wealth and population. Herodotus declares that Egypt had in his day 20,000 inhabited cities,³ and though this statement may be

¹ II. i. d. ii. 172-3

the death of Nebuchad 107/101

² Cor. ii. c. ii. about B.C. 561, at

³ Herod. ii. 177 Theocritus,

pronounced impossible, yet it is strongly significant of the extremely flourishing condition of the country under the rule of Amasis. A series of high inundations is said to have intensified the productive power of the land,¹ while an active commerce² encouraged the chief Egyptian industries, led to the accumulation of fortunes, and rendered easily procurable a great variety of luxuries. Amasis induced the Greeks to settle in large numbers at Naucratis, and to adorn the town and neighbourhood with temples of the peculiar Grecian type. He had friendly dealings with the important Greek state of Cyr  n  , and even took for one of his secondary wives a Cyrenaean lady, called Lad    , whom he treated with especial favour.³ He also removed the Greek mercenaries from the position assigned to them by Psammeticus I., and brought them to the capital city of Memphis,⁴ where he made them the garrison of the place. To mark his affection for the Greeks, he offered rich presents to Delphi,⁵ Samos, Lindus, and Cyr  n  , sending to the last mentioned place a statue of Ath  n   covered with plates of gold, as well as a painted likeness of himself.⁶

The only warlike expedition in which Amasis is known to have engaged was one against Cyprus. That important island had formed a part of the Egyptian dominions under the eighteenth dynasty,⁷ and was now

writing under the Ptolemies, exaggerates still more, making the number of cities in Egypt 33,333 (*Idyll* xvi 81-4). One pardons, however, anything to a poet.

¹ Herod. l. c.

² *Ibid.* ii 178.

³ *Ibid.* ii 181. The dealings of Amasis with Cyr  n   spoken of by Plutarch (*De virtut. Mulier.* ii p.

200) and Polyanius (*Strateg.* viii 11) come to us with too little authority to be regarded as authentic against the silence of Herodotus.

⁴ Herod. ii 151.

⁵ *Ibid.* ii 180.

⁶ *Ibid.* ii 182.

⁷ See above pp. 240-51.

again subjected and forced to pay tribute.¹ Its reduction implies the temporary weakness of Phœnicia, which always threw the ægis of its protection over its near neighbour, when sufficiently strong to do so, and frequently claimed and exercised a certain authority over the whole island. It would seem that the long war of Nebuchadnezzar against Tyre and the subsequent expedition of Apries against both Tyre and Sidon had so brought down the Phœnician power at this time, that no help could be given to the Cypriots. To suppose, however, that Phœnicia itself was subject to Amasis, is to intrude into the narrative a fact of which there is absolutely no evidence,² monumental or other; while to state³ that 'he led an army into Syria and made himself master of the Phœnician towns,' is to indulge in a flight of fancy scarcely worthy of a serious historian.

Amasis lived at a time in the world's history when vast changes were impending, when the entire East was in a condition of ferment and transition, old things being on the point of vanishing away, and all things of becoming new. It is doubtful whether any amount of political wisdom could have enabled him to pursue such a course as would have saved Egypt from invasion and conquest, and the kingdom of the Pharaohs from extinction. As it was, the mere shrewd common

¹ Herod. ii. 182 ad fin. Compare Diod. Sic. i. 68.

² Such evidence as exists is rather the other way. By a cuneiform inscription recently brought from Babylon it appears that the people of the Lower Sea, or Mediætanæan, i.e. the Syrians and Phœnicians, were subject to Nabonidus, king of Babylon, up to the last year of his war with Cyrus,

which was B.C. 538. In that year they revolted and probably re-claimed their independence. (See the *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. vi., p. 143.)

³ As Dr. Wiedemann does (*Geschichte Aegyptens von Psammetich I.* pp. 179-80). 'Er zog in Asien gegen Syrien zu Felde, machte sich zum Herrn der phœnizischen Städte,' &c.

sense which characterised him was a very insufficient guide amid the difficulties of the situation; and the course which he actually took was one certainly not calculated to keep him free from entanglements, and master of the situation. In the year B.C. 555, yielding to the representations of the Lydian king, Croesus, he allowed himself to be drawn into a tripartite treaty,¹ which bound up his fortunes irrevocably with those of two Asiatic kingdoms, exposed to far more immediate danger than his own. The rise of the Perso-Medic power was a new feature in Asiatic history, and might have been expected to revolutionise Asia; but its effects did not necessarily flow on into another continent. Prudence should have suggested to a monarch geographically isolated to pursue a policy of abstention. Instead of so doing, Amasis was tempted by the apparent advantage of uniting three powers against one, to join with Lydia and Babylon in an alliance against Persia, and so to give Cyrus, the Persian king, a ground of quarrel with him. Whether he actually sent troops to the assistance of Lydia, or not, is perhaps doubtful, being denied by Herodotus² and asserted by Xenophon.³ Subsequently, however, when he attacked Cyprus, he clearly took a second step on the road to hostilities with Persia, since, after conquering Babylon (B.C. 538), Cyrus undoubtedly regarded himself as inheriting the whole of the Babylonian empire, which embraced Phœnicia, and Cyprus,

¹ Herod. i. 77.

² Ibid. i. 80-1. The account of Herodotus is that Croesus had called in the help of his allies on his return to Sardis from Persia, that he summoned them then to appear in the fifth month, that his envoys had scarcely taken their departure, when the army of Cyrus appeared before Sardis, gave the Lydians a second

defeat, and took the city within a fortnight. No Egyptians are mentioned, and it is plain that they could not have arrived in time.

³ Xen. *Cyrop.* vi. 2, § 10, vii. 1, §§ 30-5. The completely unhistorical character of the *Cyropædia* has been sufficiently exposed by M. Choix (*History of Greece*, vol. ii. p. 415; vol. iii. p. 157).

as depending on Phœnicia. It would appear that Cyrus at once took umbrage, and with hostile intent sent an embassy to Egypt, with the demand that Amasis should give him one of his daughters as a secondary wife.¹ Such a demand, made by equal of equal, was an insult. Amasis, however, did not dare openly to reject it. He devised a sort of compromise, and sent a princess of the house of Apries, under pretence of her being his own daughter, to take the discreditable position. The fraud was discovered after a time, and a further cause of quarrel was thus added to those existing before.

Actual invasion did not, however, befall Egypt in Amasis' time. Cyrus, soon after his conquest of Babylon, became involved in a war on his north-east frontier,² which terminated disastrously. He died in B.C. 530-529, and his son Cambyses was at first occupied with a disputed succession.³ Thus Egypt had a respite. It was not till after the death of Amasis, in B.C. 528-7, that war actually broke out between the two powers, and the hosts of Persia made their attack on the kingdom of the Pharaohs.

During his long reign of forty-four years,⁴ Amasis found abundant time to encourage art and architecture. The chief object of his fostering care was his capital city of Sais, which owed to him much of its ornamentation. He added a great court of entrance to the temple of Neith in that city, with propylæa of unusual dimensions, adorned the diomos conducting to it with numerous andro sphinxes, erected colossal statues within the temple precincts, and conveyed

¹ Herod. iii. 1-2

² Ibid. i. 201-11, Otes. *Pers. Exc.* §§ 6-8

³ *Rehast. Inser.* col. i. pp. 10
Compare Otes. *Pers. Exc.* § 10

⁴ Herod. iii. 10, Manetho, ap. Synz. *Chronograph.* p. 75-6
Diodorus (ii. 68) gave him forty-five years, counting in probably the six months of Psamtik III.

thither from Elephantine a monolithic shrine or chamber of extraordinary dimensions¹. The length of the chamber was, according to Herodotus, twenty-one cubits, or thirty one feet six inches; its width, twelve cubits, or eighteen feet; and its height five cubits, or seven and a half feet. It must have weighed several hundreds of tons². Another similar shrine, but of smaller dimensions, was erected by Amasis at Thmus, or Leontopolis, and still remains *in situ*; the length of this is about twenty two feet, the breadth thirteen, and the height eleven³.

Amasis also adorned Memphis with statues and buildings. A colossal work of the former class reached the great height of seventy five feet, and is said by Herodotus⁴ to have been 'recumbent,' the truth perhaps being that it had never been erected. This statue, in the time of Herodotus, lay in front of the great temple of Ptah, where it seems to have been also seen by Strabo⁵. Two lesser colossal were placed by Amasis on either side of the same temple.⁶ The temple of Isis, which he erected at Memphis, was a large and handsome building.

Thebes, Abydos, and Bubastis were also scenes of his architectural activity. At Thebes the great Karnak temple is said to have been 'restored' by Amasis;⁷ at Abydos that of Osiris was beautified;⁸ at Bubastis, that of Bast or Pasht was adorned⁹. Mate

¹ Herod. ii 175. On the present condition of Sais, and the site of the temple of Neith see Wilkinson's paper at the end of vol. ii of the author's *Herodotus*.

² Birch (*Ancient Egypt*, p. 182) estimates the weight at 'about 500 tons.'

³ See Wilkinson in the author's

Herodotus, vol. ii p. 203, note², and ed.

⁴ *Ibid* ii 176.

⁵ Strab. xvi. 1, § 31.

⁶ *Ibid* loc. cit. The height of these was only twenty feet.

⁷ Wiedemann *Geschichte Aegyptens von Psammetik I.* p. 198.

⁸ *Ibid* p. 187. ⁹ *Ibid* p. 188.

ials for the restorations and embellishments were derived from the quarries of Toora, of Hammamât, and of Silsilis, in all which places there are inscriptions dated in this monarch's reign, set up apparently by his officers.¹

Statuary received its full share of attention at this period, and the king himself was among those who gave this highest form of art the greatest encouragement. Besides his colossi, Amasis caused numerous statues to be made of himself, some of which have come down to our day. There is one, much injured, in the Villa Albani at Rome; another, in a still worse condition, at the Hague; and a third, or rather the head of a third, in the Museum of Boulaq.² To his reign belong also the statue of Pefanet in the Museum of the Louvre, that of Nekau-menchit in the Museum of Berlin, and those of Psamatik, Uta hor suten-net, and Henâatâ, in the Museums of Florence and London. Statues are also mentioned among the presents which he bestowed upon Greek communities, as Cyrêné, Samos, and Lindus.⁴ Some were in stone, others in wood, a material very commonly used by the Egyptians.

The picture of himself, painted on panel, which Amasis presented to the Cyrenæans,⁵ shows that he did not confine his attention to statuary, but was likewise a patron of the sister art of painting. Wilkinson says⁶ that works of art belonging to this class were produced by the Egyptians as early as the twelfth century; but it may be doubted whether painting at

¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, l. s. c.
Denkmäler, pt. iii. pl. 275 a d.

² Wiedemann, *Geschichte*, &c., p. 194.

³ *Ibid* pp. 198 &c.

⁴ Herod ii 182

⁵ See above, p. 492

⁶ In the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii p. 271, note ^o, 3rd ed.

that early date was not limited to the coarse colouring of bas-reliefs, and whether portraits on a flat surface were not, at the time of Amasis, of recent introduction into Egypt from Asia (Crete or Lycia) where the art seems to have originated.

Amasis appears to have had at least three wives.¹ The most important of them was Anknes-neferata, daughter of Psamatik II. and of Ntoers, the sister of Apries, by espousing whom he sought to acquire a legitimate title to the throne of the Pharaohs. Another, as we have seen,² was Tadiet or Tadiet, the daughter of a Greek of Cyrène, whom he wedded to cement his friendship with that state. A third, named Pentkhet, was the daughter of an Egyptian prince of Punt, Ptem, or Patumit.³ The last named of these royal ladies bore him the prince who succeeded him upon the throne under the name of Psamatik Ankh ka-en-ra, $\circ \text{ } \text{Ankh ka-en-ra}$. Anknes-neferata seems to have held the principal rank in the royal harem. She alone of the royal wives was allowed to exhibit herself upon the walls of temples, where she appears sometimes alone, sometimes accompanied by her husband, sometimes attended by an official called Sheshonk.⁴ Her sarcophagus in black marble is of the finest quality, covered with hieroglyphs, and wrought with care and delicacy. It was found at Luxor, behind the Ramesseum, in a deep

¹ Plin. *Hist. Nat.*, xxxv. 8. vii. 50.

² Wiedemann adds another whom he calls Oti-tet-ti-ti-tet and of whom he finds evidence in Mariette's *Monuments Divers*, pls. 95, 98 and in Brugsch's *Pecunia*, p. vii. Nr. 2. Brech. says: 'Amasis married at least three, and apparently four, wives during his lifetime' (*Ancient*

Egypt, i. 183). Mariette calls him Oti-tet-ti-ti-tet.

³ Supra, i. 101.

⁴ Lepsius, *Ueber die XXII ägyptische Königsdynastie*, p. 40. Wiedemann, *Ueber die*, &c., i. 100.

⁵ See the *De kmello*, pt. iii. pls. 273 c-h, 274 a, b, c, d.

pit, by the French expedition of the beginning of the present century,¹ and is now to be seen in the great Egyptian gallery of the British Museum.²

Amasis³ was buried at Sais, in a tomb which he had prepared for himself within the precincts of the temple of Neith.⁴ It was a sepulchral chamber, opening out of one of the cloistered courts, with folding doors, and with the tomb at the further end. Though violated by Cambyses,⁴ it was not destroyed, but appears to have been seen by Herodotus in its pristine condition. There are, however, at present no remains to be seen of it.⁵

Psamatik III. succeeded his father at a time when the Persian invasion was a thing that could not be arrested. As his whole reign did not exceed six months,⁶ and the expedition must have been some months upon the march, we may presume that it was on its way at the time of his accession. All that he could do, therefore, was to make preparations for a stubborn resistance. He gathered his Greek and Carian mercenaries together, and took up a position near Pelusium,⁷ the point at which an invader from the north-east necessarily approached Egypt. The foreign corps was supported by a large army of native Egyptians; but it may be suspected that the two elements did not very heartily coalesce, and the result was a crushing defeat which decided the fate of the empire. If we may believe Ctesias,⁸ the loss on the Egyptian

¹ Wiedemann, *Geschichte*, &c., p. 107

² Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 183

³ Herod. ii. 109.

⁴ Ibid. iii. 10

⁵ The remains of Sais are altogether scanty and insignificant, and the site of the Temple and

the royal sepulchres can only be guessed (See Wilkinson in the author's *Herodotus*, vol. ii. p. 255, note ^o)

⁶ Herod. iii. 74; Manetho ap. Syncell. *Chronograph* p. 75 D

⁷ Herod. iii. 10

⁸ Ctes. *Exc. Persic* § 9.

side was 50,000 men, which implies a complete rout; while, as the Persians lost 7,000, there must have been some stiff fighting before the rout began. No doubt the Greeks fought well; but in the broad plain wherein the battle took place they would be outflanked, surrounded, and overpowered by numbers. The Persians were at no time contemptible soldiers, and they were now at the height of their national vigour; they had recently conquered the whole of Western Asia, were full of confidence in themselves, brave, strong, and accustomed to fighting. The Greeks, on the other hand, had acted as a mere civic guard for nearly half a century, and the native Egyptians were still more unaccustomed to warfare, having seen but little active service¹ since the time of Psamtek I. It is not surprising, therefore, that the army of Egypt was defeated, and driven in headlong flight from the field; nor can we even wonder that no second stand was made in the open, since it must have been felt that the same causes which had given Persia the victory on the Pelusiac plain would secure her arms success in any other similar encounter.²

Nothing then remained for Psamatik but to place his troops behind walls, and see if in this way he could baffle or tire out the invaders. Memphis was a strong city, and, had it been well provisioned or able to maintain its communication with the sea, might have stood

¹ They had perhaps been employed against Tyre (II. i. 101) and had certainly served against Cydnus (ib. iv. 150). They had also, according to Herodotus (ii. 160) or one account engaged the Greeks and Carian mercenaries, and defeated them. But then services had not often been required and during the long reign of Amasis

they had probably never possessed swarms with an invading army.

² Egypt had no strategic positions; the Nile valley being never less than two miles in width and considerably above the level, and the lack of water in the marshes. Thus the fate of Egypt has been almost always decided by a single battle.

a prolonged siege¹. But no special preparations for a siege seem to have been made; and Cambyses had taken care to bring with him a strong fleet,² which blockaded the mouths of the Nile, and even mounted the river to the vicinity of the capital.³ Thus it was impossible to continue the defence very long. After murdering the crew of a Greek vessel, sent to summon them to surrender, and thus deservedly incurring the extreme displeasure of Cambyses, the entire garrison, regarding resistance as hopeless, gave themselves up. Cambyses punished the deed of blood severely. He selected from the Egyptians who had surrendered themselves two thousand chief men—ten for each of the murdered Greeks⁴—and condemned them to be publicly executed. A son of the fallen monarch shared their fate. As for the king himself, it would seem that at first his life was spared,⁵ and that he was even treated with some favour; but it was not long before suspicion arose. Psamatik was accused of having taken part in a conspiracy against Cambyses, and was forthwith put to death. Thus perished this unfortunate monarch, the last of the long line of Pharaohs, which commencing with Menes, or at any rate with Seneferu,⁶ had ruled Egypt, as a great independent monarchy, for not less than twenty centuries.

It is not within the scope of the present history to pursue the fortunes of the Egyptian people any fur

¹ Under Artaxerxes Longimanus Memphis (or at least its citadel) stood a siege of considerably more than a year, even though communication with the sea was cut off (See *Dial Sic* xi 71 7).

² Herod. ii 1 iii 1, 19, 44.

³ *Ibid* iii 13.

⁴ *Ibid* iii 14.

⁵ Herodotus believed that it was

the intention of Cambyses, on quitting Egypt, to leave Psamatik as tributary king. But it is very questionable whether he would have done so. Cyrus did not so treat either Croesus or Nabonidus.

⁶ On the doubtfulness of all Egyptian history before Seneferu, see above, p. 32.

ther. Frequent revolts characterised the period of their subjection to Persia; and from time to time it probably appeared to the people themselves that the throne of the Pharaohs was re-established. But again and again the Persians proved their superiority in the field, and forced the Egyptians to submit to them. Thus during the Persian period—from B.C. 527 to B.C. 332—Egypt must be considered to have occupied, in the main, the position of a Persian province; and her revolts and re-subjugations belong therefore to the history of Persia. The present writer, in his ‘Fifth Ancient Monarchy,’ has already treated of them;¹ and the reader who desires to pursue the subject may be referred to that work for information.

Still, it remains to touch briefly upon the art and civilisation of this final period, which have peculiar features not destitute of interest. The time is one of revival, and has been called ‘the Egyptian *renaissance*’² Under the Ethiopians, and still more under the Assyrians, Egyptian art had declined, nay, had almost sunk into abeyance. Such creations of it as we possess are coarse and tinged with foreign ideas. It was the object of the Persian king to re-establish a native school. We have small remains of their architecture, but enough to show clearly that it went up on the old lines; and we know that it included colossal statues, obelisks, enormous propylæa, pillared courts,³ and the other main elements of early Egyptian architectural effect. Some novelties in the ornamentation

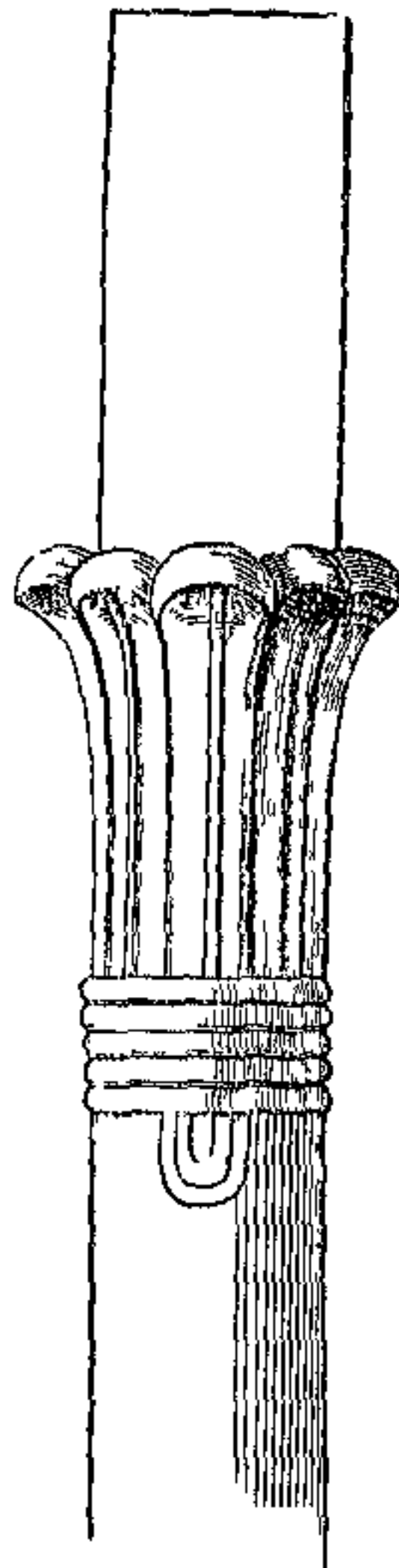
¹ Birch, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 185; Bunsen, *History of Egypt*, London, 1843, vol. i. p. 283; 1844, vol. ii. p. 175.

² See the author's *Ancient Monarchies*, vol. iv. pp. 451–5, 487–90, 498–9, 534–8, 1843.

³ Bunsen, *History*, vol. ii. p.

400; Bunsen, *History of Egypt*, vol. i. p. 283; 1844, vol. ii. p. 175, and for the obelisks, see Pichard's *Egyptian Chronology*, vol. i. p. lxxv.

are pleasing.¹ Of their plastic art, on the contrary, we have abundant specimens, and we can see that it aims at a 'return to the good old times,'² the representations calling vividly to remembrance the master-pieces of the old empire. True relief is used, instead of the *cavo rilievo* which was in fashion under the eighteenth and nineteenth dynasties. 'An extreme neatness of manipulation in the drawings and lines, in imitation of the best epochs of art in the earlier times, serves for the instant recognition of the work of this age, the fineness of which often reminds us of the performances of a seal engraver.'³ Extreme delicacy and extreme elaboration are the main characteristics of the plastic art of the period. Faces are finished with great care, the ear and nose being well rendered, and the hair worked out in the utmost possible detail.⁴ Some of the bas-reliefs seem to show traces of Greek influence. There rests upon these works, as has been well said 'a gentle and almost feminine tenderness, which has impressed upon the



Capital of Pili (the one of the Psammétique).

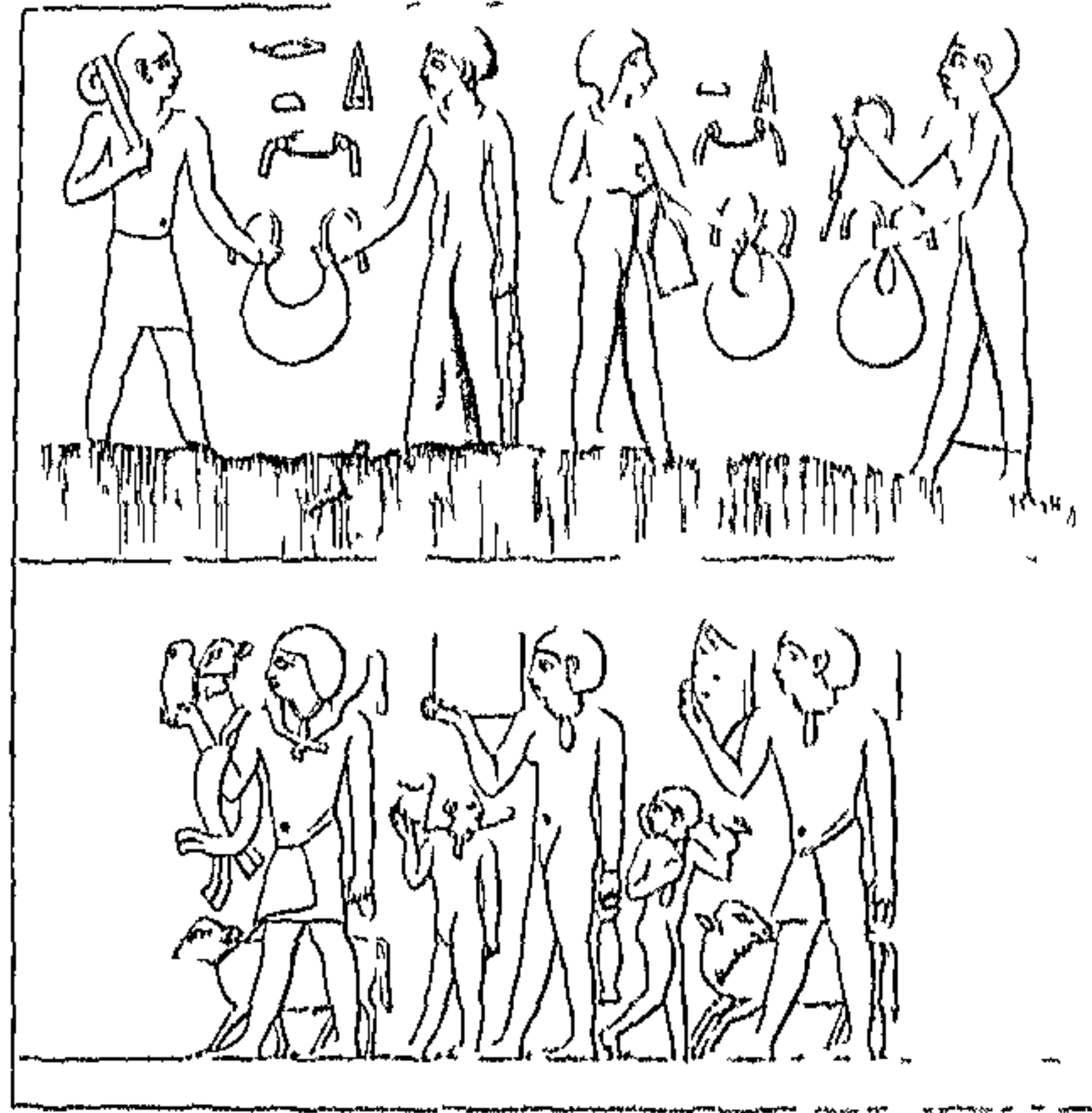
¹ On the other hand, some are displeasing. The 'columnar slab, which, used to about four feet, linked column to column, and kept the view of the sacred shrine from the eyes of the profane vulgar' (E. H. *Ancient Egypt*, p. 177), may have been proper under the circumstances of the time, but cannot be pronounced satisfactory artistically.

² Brugsch, *II story of Egypt*, vol. II, p. 283, 1st ed.

³ Ibid. p. 282.

⁴ Wiedemann, *Geschichte Aegyptens von Psammétique* I. p. 128.

imitations of living creatures the stamp of an incredible delicacy both of conception and execution.¹ Wood-engraving is incapable of expressing such soft and tender treatment,² but the accompanying illustrations will perhaps help to give some slight idea of



Figures of the 'Akh'.

the art in question—of its beauty, delicacy, and approximation to the Greek type.

Similar refinement is observable in the statues and statuettes. The Pastophorus of the Vatican, the Horus of the Louvre, the bronze statuette of Anmon-Arsaphes

¹ Brugse, *History of Egypt*, etc. nothing to be said. (See also

² The photographs of M. Mariette, on the other hand, leave no doubt as to the truth of the statement. (See also *Mémoires de la Commission des Monuments Égyptiens*, pl. 35.)

in the British Museum, the 'little statues, holding a shrine, of the Sute dignitary, Pitebhu,'¹ the 'famous cow of the celestial Hathor, and the statues of Osiris and Isis, the offerings of a certain Psamatik, which now form the admired master-pieces of the collection at Boulac, the numberless standing images in bronze of the goddess Neith of Sais—these, and a hundred similar works of sculpture, furnish instructive examples of the refinement and delicacy of the monuments which came from the hands of the artists of this period.'² The proportions of the figures are defective, the limbs being too long and slim, the muscular development is but slightly indicated;³ and the whole result is wanting in strength and vigour; but grace, softness, tenderness characterise the period, and give it a beauty and elegance which are 'charming.'⁴

But, while in artistic matters there was thus an effort—albeit only moderately successful—to return to antiquity and to produce works of an archaic type, in religion and in manners the spirit of the age was different, and exhibited an unwholesome craving after what was strange and novel. 'Beside the great established gods of the old Egyptian theology, there now come forward upon the monuments,' says Dr. Brugsch,⁵ 'monstrous forms, the creations of a widely roving fancy, which peopled the whole world—heaven, earth, and the subaqueous and subterranean depths—with demons and geni of whom the older age with its pure doctrine had scarcely an idea.' By the time of Nectanebo I

¹ Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 282, 1st ed.

² Ibid.

³ Birch, *Guide to Galleries*, p. 17.

⁴ Lenoirant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 469.

⁵ *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 283-4, 1st ed.

half the gods of the Pantheon were new;¹ and though this extreme development was the work of a later age than that of the Psimmeteli, the spirit from which it proceeded was already abroad. As a poured the fetid stream of her manifold superstitions into Africa, and to the old theology was added a wild and weird demonology which proved wonderfully attractive to the now degenerate Egyptians. At the same time the belief in magic and witchcraft became general. 'Exorcisms of the demons in all manner of forms, from wild beasts with their ravening teeth to the scorpion with his venomous sting, form henceforth a special science, which was destined to supersede the old and half lost traditional lore of past ages. The demon-songs of "The old man who regained his youth, the hoary one who became young again," the exorcisms of "The hand and the powers of witchcraft in league with him, are the favourite themes which cover the polished surfaces of the monuments of this remarkable time."² Apis worship became also more pronounced. Ever-increasing honours were paid to the sacred bulls, as time went on. The tablets recording their birth, life, and burial grew in length,³ the ceremonies accompanying their sculpture become more complicated and more expensive,⁴ and the adornment of their tombs more magnificent. Granite sarcophagi were provided for them; and these were cut and polished with great care;⁵ they were

¹ See the *Transactions of the Society of Bibl. Archaeology*, vol. iii. pp. 425-6.

² Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 281, 1st ed.

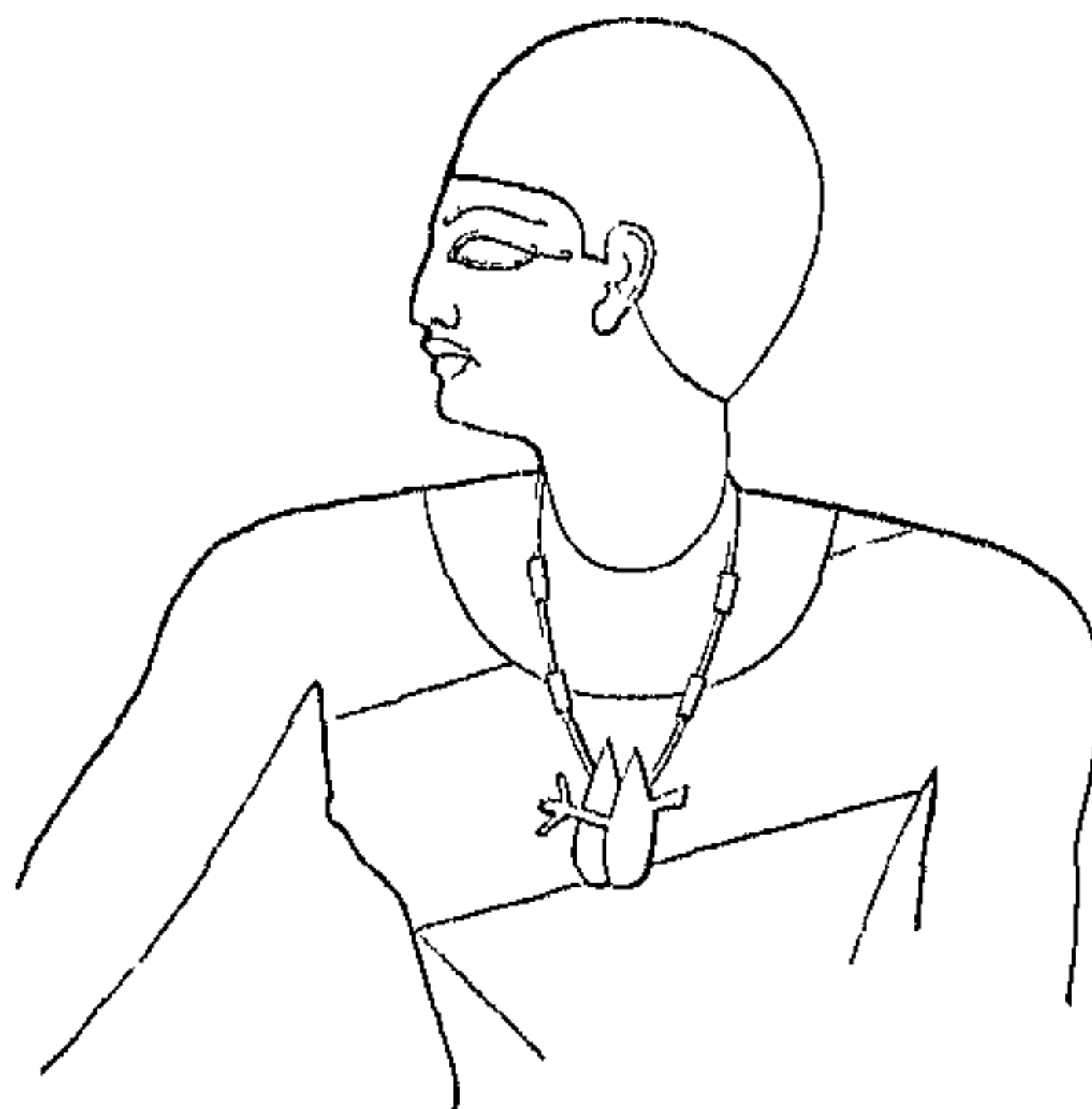
³ See Mariette, *Sérapéum de Memphis*, p. 28, and compare Brugsch, *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. pp. 285-8, 1st ed.

⁴ Brel, *Ancient Egypt*, p. 176. Diodorus says (i. 81) that the cost was sometimes as high as 21000l.

⁵ Mariette (*Cher de Monuments*, p. 6), speaking of these sarcophagi says "Tous sont de granit lustré."

from twelve to thirteen feet high and from fifteen to eighteen feet long; the smallest did not weigh less than sixty-four tons.

Manners likewise suffered a transformation. The women were degraded by having the heavier forms of



Curious Ornament worn by a man of the Persian period. It may be a charm

labour thrown upon them,¹ and were otherwise burdened and placed under restrictions.² The men were demoralised by being cut off from military training, and from the bracing effects of active service both upon mind and body. National spirit was sapped by the devolution of the royal favour on a race of foreigners, to whom Egyptian customs and Egyptian ideas were abhorrent, and who no doubt openly showed their contempt for the unwarlike nation which had hired

¹ Herod. ii 35, Soph. *Œd. Col.* 330-41

² Herod. l. c.

their services. Commerce with Greece and with Asia unsettled all the old Egyptian opinions and habits, and introduced a thousand novelties of belief, dress, and behaviour. The Saitic kings had thought to renovate the old monarchy by an infusion of fresh blood into its veins¹. But the experiment, always hazardous, failed, since the patient was too weak to bear so violent a remedy. The civilisation of the Egyptians had grown up under circumstances which completely isolated it. Its continuance depended on the isolation being continued. The basis upon which it rested was immobility. From the time that it was brought into contact with the spirit of progress, as it existed in the Greek race and the Grecian civilisation, it was necessarily doomed to perish. It did not possess the vigour or vitality which could enable it to start afresh on a new path; nor was it sufficiently solid and self-poised to remain unaffected by the new ideas. Like a building, grown old and unstable through the long lapse of years, which it is attempted to restore and renovate by new work alien in character, the Egyptian civilisation collapsed under the difficulties of the times and the experiments made upon it, disappearing from the ken of man in a heap of unsightly ruins. That it had a revival under the Ptolemies is what we should not

¹ 'Les Saïtes Suïtes avaient cru à nouveau les idées de civilisation vivifier l'Égypte et renouer un peu de jeune sang à la vieille monarchie tendue par Ménès on y mettait au grand courant d'idées helléniques, dont la Grèce se faisait à l'instant patrie, de sorte que des Saïtes, des Suïtes eux-mêmes, ils virent à leur insu leur civilisation grecque, ne pouvant se lancer dans une nouvelle, qui était la régénération de son génie, ni continuer son existence immuable. (Ensomnant, *Malet d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. 1, p. 277.)

have expected, and must be regarded as an indication of its having possessed an extraordinary force and power—a force and power which enabled it to rise from the grave after a trance of two centuries and become once more for nearly three hundred years a living entity.

APPENDIX.

NOTE A. (See p. 9.)

The fragments of the Turin 'Papyrus of the Kings,' after all the care and labour bestowed on them by Seyffarth,¹ Lepsius,² and Wilkinson,³ admit still of so much variety of arrangement, that only in a comparatively few cases can we compare with absolute certainty its statements as to the length of kings' reigns with those of Manetho. In far the greater number of cases where such a comparison has been regarded as possible, the possibility rests upon a hypothetical arrangement of the fragments, which is more or less probable; and thus an element of uncertainty comes in. We shall therefore, in the subjoined comparative list, distinguish the certain from the doubtful cases by printing the former in italics. With regard to the latter, which are printed in the ordinary Roman type, we shall in each case give in a separate column the authority by whom the arrangement producing the result has been made.

¹ See his work *Theologische Schriften der alten Aegypten nach dem Turiner Papyrus zum ersten Male übersetzt*, Göttingen, 1855.

² Lepsius has arranged the fragments in his *Königsbuch der alten Aegypten*, zweite Abtheilung, Berlin, 1858.

³ Wilkinson's work on the Turin papyrus is of the most elaborate character. He not only represents

in *fac simile* the face of the MS., containing the names and length of reigns of the kings, but gives the back also, which contains writing on an entirely different subject, but of great value towards determining the true position of many of the fragments. Another *fac-simile* edition, which I have not seen, was published by Pleyte and Rossi in 1869-70.

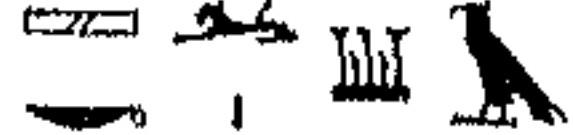
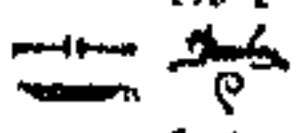
MANFROTTO, according to

THE PAIN INDEX

Names of Kings	Africans	Armenian Basehans	Basehans of Syncehans	Names of Kings	Years	Months	Days	A. L. H. V.
	Yrs	Yrs	Yrs		Yrs	Months	Days	
2ND DYNASTY								
Nepherchosis	25	—	—	Nepherchosis	8	3	1	D. R. H. V. & H. V. H. V.
Sosochosis	18	18	18	Hutochosis	11	8	1	
Chenochosis	—	—	30	B. I. ()	7	2	1	
3RD DYNASTY								
Nepherchosis	28	—	—	Nepherchosis	10	2	2	
Tosorthosis	20	—	—	Sir	10	12	0	
4TH DYNASTY								
Sosochosis	20	—	—	—	10	0	0	B. I. H. V.
Sosochosis	63	—	—	—	0	0	0	
Sosochosis II	60	—	—	***	0	0	0	
Menchochosis	63	—	—	—	21	0	0	
Ratochosis	25	—	—	—	21	0	0	
Belochosis	22	—	—	—	21	0	0	
Seberchosis	7	—	—	—	8	0	0	
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
5TH DYNASTY								
Usochosis	28	—	—	—	8	0	0	B. I. H. V.
Sophochosis	13	—	—	—	8	0	0	
Nepherchosis	20	—	—	—	3	0	0	
Sinichosis	7	—	—	*** kn	7	0	0	
Chochosis	20	—	—	—	11	0	0	
Rathochosis	11	—	—	—	7	0	0	
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
—	—	—	—	—	21	0	0	
Menchochosis	0	—	—	Meichochosis	8	0	0	B. I. H. V.
Tosochosis	11	—	—	Tosochosis	28	0	0	
Othochosis	33	—	—	Uthochosis	30	0	0	
6TH DYNASTY								
Othochosis	30	—	—	—	—	—	—	D. R. H. V. & H. V. H. V.
Phochosis	63	—	—	—	9	0	21	
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
—	—	—	—	—	20	0	0	B. I. H. V.
Menchochosis	7	—	—	—	12	0	0	
Phochosis	94	—	—	—	11	0	0	
Menchochosis	1	—	—	—	1	1	0	

all with the short Greek *α* that the *α* is altogether superfluous, as also is the *n* of the final syllable. By saying that *Tānanna* represents the 'Dinians,' this supposition is concealed, since 'Dinian' has an *n*; but the *an* is an English adjectival ending, to which there is no equivalent in the Greek *Dinai*. It has been sought to overcome the objection from the double *α* by supposing *Daunni*, instead of *Danu*, to be meant; but the second *n* remains superfluous in this case no less than in the other.

Sharuton, . Here again the final *n* is superfluous. The people of Sardinia were known to the Romans always as *Sardi*, to the Greeks generally as 'Sardoi.'² It is true the Greeks called them 'Sardomoi' occasionally;³ but their own name for themselves is likely to have had a form like the Latin.

Sheshsha, . In this word the last two signs are superfluous. In *Sikoloi*, *Siculi*, there is no second *s*; and the best Egyptian equivalent would be *Shoku*, or rather *Seku*,  there being no necessity of changing the initial *s* into *sh*.⁴

Tubasha, . The lion may no doubt be read as *r* no less than as *t* and *Turasha* may be the proper articulation. It is said that the word well represents the *Tusci* of the Romans, or still better the *Turæci*, *Turæci*, or the *Eugubine Tables*.⁵ We are told, however, that the *Tuscans* or *Etruscans* called themselves *Rasena*, so that the initial *t* would appear not to be a root letter of the name.

¹ Chabris, *Recherches*, p. 39.

² Herod. i. 170, v. 106, &c., Scylax, *Periplus* § 7, Strabo, v. 2, § 5 &c.

³ Mr. Bunbury in the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography* (vol. ii. p. 907) gives Σαρδῶνες as the only Greek etymology.

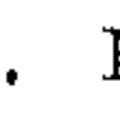
But Σαρδῶνες is found in Herodotus (vii. 145).

⁴ The objection I have good also in reference to the *Shuaiti*, which is *sh*, and *Unshasi*.

⁵ Chabris, *Recherches*, p. 47.

⁶ Dionysius Hal. *Antiq. Rom.* i. 30.

Uashasha, ♂     . If the name 'Osci' is a contracted form of 'Opisci' (through Opisci), and *p* consequently a root letter of the name, we should expect the *p* to appear in an Egyptian representation of the word bearing date about B.C. 1300. Further, the second *sh* is superfluous, 'Osci' having one *s* only.

Purusata,    . Here the difficulty is admitted to be considerable, since, if the Pelasgi are meant, the *t* of the last syllable is inexplicable. It is true that the Egyptians had no *g*; but they had several forms of *k*, and would naturally have expressed the *g* in Pelasgi by one of them.² There would also have been no reason why they should have used the long *u*,  to express the Greek epsilon in Πελασγοί. These grounds of objection to the proposed identification are so strong, that many think them insuperable, and suggest that the *Purusata* are really the Philistines,³ פלשתים, Φυλιστινέμ, whom they suppose to have migrated from Crete at this time, and, after their repulse by Ramses, to have been settled by him in Gaza, Ashdod, and Ascalon. This view, however, if free from etymological, is beset by historical difficulties;⁴ and the result is that the *Purusati*, like most of the other tribes named, remain an enigma for future ages to unravel.

Tekaru,   . The identification of the *Tekaru* with the *Teucri* (Τευκροί) is wholly unobjectionable. Etymologically the two words are exact equivalents, while historically the *Teucri* are known as powerful and bold adventurers, dissatisfied with their old settlements in Asia, and desirous of spreading themselves into remote countries. The *Teucrican*

¹ As Niebuhr argued (*History of Rome* vol. i. p. 66, L. T.) on the authority of the grammarian Festus (ad voc. *Oscim*)

² As they expressed Gozan by Qazantana, Megiddo by Maketu, Gaza by Qazata, Migdol by Mak-

tal, &c

³ So Lenormant, *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne*, vol. i. p. 438

⁴ These are well pointed out by M. Chabris (*Recherches* pp. 40-7)

and Mysian invasion of Tanope, mentioned by Herodotus, which began at the Canal of Constantine and ended at the Abiatic, is a fair parallel to the expedition of the Teku and Purusata in the eleventh year of Ramesses III, which began in Asia Minor and terminated on the confines of Egypt.

The argument which has the greatest force in favour of the proposed identifications is the cumulative one. While, severally and separately considered, the identifications are in almost every case doubtful, they lend support to each other by the way in which they blend into an harmonious whole. No counter theory has been proposed which is nearly so plausible. Dr. Brugsch's 'Cum Colchum' invasion, in which the natives proceed from Armenia and Cilicia, partly by land through Asia Minor, and partly by water on the Mediterranean,² in which the Uashasha are the Ossetes of the Caucasus,³ the Tekanu and the Purusata Zygitæ and Prosoditæ from Cyprus,⁴ the Turusha people of Mount Taurus, the Sharuten Colchian Caucasians, and the Shekash the people of Zagylis,⁶ has no coherency, and approves itself to no one. In the theory of De Rougé, adopted by M. Chabas and Dr. Birch, there is the double charm of consistency and of surpassing interest. The nations form a group, widely dispersed yet still continuous, extending from Sardinia and Sicily on the one hand to northern Asia Minor on the other. They represent the chief tribes of these parts and leave no manifest gap. The parts, by land and sea, are distributed as we might expect. And the result is that most minds accept the view as probably or even as the truth. They delight to think that the European nations, so far back as the thirteenth century B.C., showed signs of their inherent vigour, possessed fleets, fought naval battles,

¹ Herod. vii. 20. Comp. no. v. 13

² *History of Egypt*, vol. ii. p. 117, 1st ed.

³ *Ibid.* p. 10. ⁴ *Ibid.*

⁵ *Ibid.* p. 15.

⁶ *Ibid.* pp. 23-5.

and concluded with the most advanced and the most powerful of the existing monarchies. They cannot but feel that there is no subject is encompassed with difficulties; but the theory which has been put forth attracts them, and they embrace it with entire satisfaction. If it is not true it ought to be. *Se non è vero è ben trovato.*

LIST OF AUTHORS AND EDITIONS

QUOTED IN THE NOTES

- ABD ATTAFIR, *Relation de l'Egypte*, traduite et enrichie de Notes par M. Silvestre de Sacy, Paris, 1810 4to
- ACHILLIS TATIUS ed Jacobs, Lipsiv, 82
- ALHAN, *Nitma Annahum*, ed Jacobs, Jena, 1892.
- ALMADRIDIS, in O. Muller's *Geographi Minores*, Paris, 1855 1861
- ALIOANUS, Fragments, in the *Oriographum* of Syriellus (See SYRIELLUS)
- ALMANACH, Bishop Briccio Lectures London, 1877
- ALVAN and PLYNOR in the *English Hist. Chron.* of C. Muller, vol. iii Paris, 81-5
- ARISTON, Sir A., *History of Egypt*, Edinburgh and London 1852
- ASYRIANUS MARCERINUS ed Chronicon, Lugd. Bat., 1613 4to
- ANDERSON, *Geography for the Use of Schools*, London, 1808
- ARISTOTELI Opera, ed Acad. Reg. Bonon., Bonon., 1811
- ARISTOTELIS, *De philosophia*, ed Schweighauser, Argentorat, 1801, &c.
- BAKER, Sir S., *Albert Nyanza*, London, 1866
- BAKER, Sir S., *Nile Tributaries*, London, 1867
- BARON DE, *Wanderungen*, &c., Berlin, 1849
- BELISIAN INSCRIPTION, ed H. O. Rawlinson, in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vols. x and xi London, 1847-8
- BIRON, *Nature des Oyseaux*, Paris, 1555, folio
- BLIZON, G., *Operations and Discoveries in Egypt and Nubia*, London, 1822, 4to
- BEROSUS, in C. Muller's *Fragment Hist. Græc.*, vol. ii, Paris, 1818
- BIRCH, Dr. S., *Ancient Pottery*, London 1873
- , *Egypt from the Earliest Times*,¹ London (no date), about 1875
- , *Egypt in Grammar*, in Bunsen's *Egypt's Place*, vol. v., London, 1867
- , *Guide to First and Second Egyptian Rooms*,² London, 1871
- , *Guide to Egyptian Galleries*, London, 1874.
- , *Hieroglyphical Dictionary*, in Bunsen's *Egypt's Place*, vol. v., London, 1867.
- BRADSHAW, *Dein Herodotus with a Commentary*, London, 1854
- BOECKH, *Carpi's Inscription in Græcæ*, Berlin, 1828, &c., folio
- BRUER, *Travels to discover the*

¹ Quoted some times in this work as 'Ancient Egypt'

² Quoted as 'British Museum'

- Source of the Nile, 3rd edition, Edinburgh 1815
- BRUESCH, Dr H., Etudes sur un Papyrus Médical de Berlin, Leipzig, 1853
- , Geographische Inschriften altägyptischer Denkmäler, Leipzig 1857-60.
- , Grammaire Démotique, Berlin, 1855, folio.
- , Geschichte Aegyptens unter den Pharaonen, Leipzig, 1878
- , Histoire d'Egypte, 2ème édition, Leipzig, 1875
- , History of Egypt under the Pharaohs, translated by H D Seymour and P Smith, London, 1879
- , Hieroglyphisch demotisches Wörterbuch, Leipzig 1867-8, folio
- , L'Exode et les Monuments Egyptiens, Leipzig, 1875
- , Recueil de Monuments Egyptiens, Leipzig, 1859-63, 4to
- , Scriptura Aegyptiorum demotica Berolini 1848, 4to
- BUNSEN Ch O J, Egypt's Place in Universal History, translated by C H Cottrell, with additions by Dr S Birch, London, 1848-1867
- BURCKHARDT, Travels in Nubia, 2nd ed, London, 1822
- BURTON, Excerpta Hieroglyphica, Cairo, 1825-1837
- CALTIMACHUS, ed Ernesti, Lugd Bat, 1761
- CAMBRIDGE ESSAYS London, 1855-8
- CENSORINUS, ed Haverkamp Lugd Bat, 1767
- CHABAS F J, Etudes sur l'Antiquité Historique, Paris, 1872
- , Le plus ancien Livre du monde, Paris, 1857.
- , Les Pasteurs en Egypte, Amsterdam, 1868, 4to.
- , Mélanges Egyptologiques, Séries I et II, Paris 1862-4
- , Mélanges Egyptologiques, Série III, Paris, 1870-3
- , Recherches pour servir à l'Histoire de la XIXme Dynastie, et spécialement à celle des temps de l'Exode Paris, 1873 4to
- CHAMPOLLION-FR-JEUNE, Dictionnaire Egyptien ou Centime Hieroglyphique, Paris 1841-4, folio
- CHAMPOLLION-FR-JEUNE Grammaire Egyptienne, Paris, 1836-41 folio
- , Lettres écrites d'Egypte et de Nubie en 1828 et 1829, Paris, 1868
- , Notices Descriptives des Monuments de l'Egypte et de la Nubie, Paris 1835-45, folio
- CICERO ed Ernesti, Londini, 1819
- CLAUDIAN ed Heber, Londini 1836
- CLEMENS ALEX, ed Potter, Venetius 1757
- CONTEMPORARY REVIEW, London, 1879
- CORY, Ancient Fragments, London, 1839
- CRASIAS, ed Bahr, Frankfurtii, 1824
- CUDWORTH, Intellectual System of the Universe, London, 1678, folio
- CURETIUS, Q, Vita Alexandri Magni ed Pitiscus, Hagae, 1708
- D'ANVILLE, Mémoires sur l'Egypte Ancienne et Moderne, Paris, 1766, 4to
- DECRET OF CANOPUS, in the 'Records of the Past,' vol. viii (See RECORDS)
- DESCRIPTION DE L'EGYPTE, publiée sous la Direction de M. Jomard, 6ième édition, Paris, 1802-1829, folio
- DEYRIA, Mélanges d'Archéologie Egyptienne Paris, 1867
- DICTIONARY OF LANGUAGES, a Rudimentary Dictionary of Universal Philology, London, 1873
- DIO CASSIUS, ed Reimer, Hamburg, 1752, folio.
- DIONORUS SICULUS, ed Dindorf, Parisii, 1813-4
- DIODORUS LAERTIUS, ed Wetstein, Amsterdam, 1692
- DIONYSIUS HALICARNASSENSIS, ed Reiske, Lipsiae, 1774-7
- DIOSCORIDES, Materia Medica, ed Kuhn, Lipsiae 1820
- DOLLINGER, Dr., Jew and Gentile,

- Translated by N. Darnell, London, 1862
- DUMICHN, Die Flotte einer ägyptischen Königin, Leipzig, 1868
- , Historische Inschriften alt-ägyptischer Denkmäler, Leipzig, 1867, folio
- ENCYCLOPEDIA BRITANNICA, 8th ed. Edinburgh, 1853-60
- ERATOSTHENES, in the Chronographia (or Syncellus) (See SYNCHELLUS)
- EUSBIUS PAMPHILI, Chronicon Canonum libri duo, ed. Maus et Zohrab, Mediolan, 1818
- , Præparatio Evangelica, ed. Guisford, Oxoni, 1843
- EUSIATHUS, Comment ad Dionys Perieget, ed. H. Stephanus, Parisiis, 1577
- FALKNER, Ephesus, and the Temple of Diana, London, 1862
- FLETCHER, Sir O., Travels in Asia Minor, London, 1830
- , Travels in Lycia, London, 1841
- FERGUSON, J., History of Architecture, 1st ed., London, 1865 2nd ed., London, 1873
- FORSKAL, Descriptions Animalium, Avium &c., ed. C. Niebuhr, Havniæ, 1775, 4to
- GALY, C., Catalogue of May's Collection, Liverpool 1877
- GEMINUS, Elementa Astronomica, Alodii 1590
- GENTIANUS MACAZINI, London, 1800 et seqq.
- GERARDI, W. E., Homeric Synonymisms, London, 1876
- , Juvetus Mundi, London, 1861
- GROTE, G., History of Greece, London, 1862
- HASSERQUIST, Voyages and Travels in the Levant, London, 1706
- HICLÆUS, Fragments, in O. Muller's Fragment Hist. Græc., vol. 1., Parisus, 1846.
- HINDEN, Works, translated by T. Briggs, Oxford, 1833
- HIERONYMUS, Fragments in O. Muller's Fragment Hist. Græc., vol. 1., Parisus, 1846
- HIEROSOLYMUS, Aegypten und Mose, Berlin, 1810
- , Egypt and the Pentateuch Translated from the above by Mr. Robbins, with additional notes by Dr. Cooke Taylor, Edinburgh, 1845
- HIERONYMUS, ed. Bahr, Lipsiæ, 1876 1861.
- , ed. Blakesley, London, 1851
- , History of, a new English Version, by Canon Rawlinson, assisted by Sir H. Rawlinson and Sir Gardner Wilkinson, 2nd ed., London, 1862, 3rd ed., London, 1873.
- HIERONYMUS, Opera, Benedictio ed., Paris, 1693, folio
- HIPPOCRATES, ed. Kuhn, Lipsiæ, 1826.
- HOMER, Iliad, ed. Heyne, Lipsiæ, 1802
- , Odyssea, ed. Lowe, Lipsiæ, 1828
- HORACE, ed. Döring, Oxoni, 1838
- HORAPOLIO, Hieroglyphica, ed. De Pauw, Traject ad Rhèn, 1727, 4to
- HUMBOLDT, Asia Centrale, Paris, 1843
- ISOCRATES, in the Orationes Atticæ ed. Baier und Saupp, Lincei, 1850.
- JAMERTHUS, De Vita Pythagoræ, ed. Kießling, Lipsiæ, 1855.
- JOSIUS, Opera, ed. Hudson, Oxoni, 1720.
- JOURNAL OF ASIATIC SOCIETY London, 1840, et seqq.
- JOURNAL OF THE ASIATIC SOCIETY, London, 1840, et seqq.
- JUNKER, Forschungen aus der Geschichte des Alterthums, Leipzig, 1863
- JUSTIN, ed. Gronovius, Lugd. Bat., 1700.
- JUVENAL, ed. Ruperti, Lipsiæ, 1841 1820

- KALISCH Historical and Critical Commentary on Exodus, London, 1865
- KENRICK, Ancient Egypt under the Pharaohs, London, 1860
- KUNZ, History of the Old Covenant, translated by J. Martin, Edinburgh, 1859
- LACIANTIVS, Opera, ed. Baulhi, Traject ad Rhenum, 1692
- LANE, Modern Egyptians, London, 1836
- LARCHELLE Histoire d'Hérodote, Paris, 1786.
- LAYARD Sir H., Nineveh and Babylon, London 1853
- LEHMANS, Monumens Égyptiens du Musée d'Antiquités des Pays Bas à Leide, Leide, 1830 1870, folio
- , Lettre à Silvolini, Leide, 1838
- LENORMANT, Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient, 3me éd., Paris 1869
- , Frammento di Statue di uno dei Pastori di Egitto, Roma, 1877
- LEO AFRICANUS, Africa Descriptio, Antwerp, 1556
- LEPSIUS Dr. R., Denkmale aus Aegypten und Aethiopien Berlin, 1849 58, folio
- , Chronologie der Aegypter, Berlin, 1849, 4to
- , Grundplan des Grabes König Ramses IV, Berlin, 1867, 4to
- , Königsbuch der alten Aegypter, Berlin 1858, 4to.
- , Lettre sur l'Alphabet Hiéroglyphique, Rome, 1837
- , Todtenbuch der Aegypter, Leipzig, 1842, 4to.
- , Ueber die XXII. ägyptische Königsdynastie nebst einigen Bemerkungen zu der XXVI und andern Dynastien des neuen Reichs, Berlin, 1856 4to.
- LEVIS, Sir G. C. Astronomy of the Ancients, London 1862
- LETRONNE Statue Vocale de Memnon, Paris 1833, 4to.
- LINANT DE BELLEFONDS, Mémoire sur le Lac Méris, Alexandria, 1843, 4to
- LIVY, ed. Travers Twiss, Oxoni, 1810 1
- LUCAN, Pharsalia, ed. Oudendorp, Lugd Bat, 1728
- LUCIAN, ed. Heisterhaus, Bapmti, 1789 et seqq
- MACROBIUS ed. Gronovius, Lugd. Bat, 1670
- MANEHO, Fragments, in O. Muller's Fragment Hist. Græc, vol. II Paris, 1818
- MANNIUS, ed. Stebel, Argentorat, 1767.
- MARBLIN Choix de Monuments et de Dessins découverts ou exécutés pendant le déblaiement du Sérapéum de Memphis, Paris, 1856, 4to
- , Fouilles exécutées en Égypte, en Nubie et au Soudan d'après les ordres de S. A. le Viceroi d'Égypte, Paris 1867, folio
- , Monuments d'Abydos, vol. III, Paris, 1880, 4to
- , Monuments Divers recueillis en Égypte et en Nubie, Paris, 1872 7, folio
- , Renseignements sur les soixante-quatre Aris trouvés au Sérapéum, Paris 1855.
- , Sérapéum de Memphis, Paris, 1857, folio
- MARITAL Epigrammata, ed. Maittino, London, 1716
- MARINRAU H., Eastern Life, Present and Past, London 1818
- MIGASIMYRES, in the Fragment Hist. Gr of O Muller, vol II Paris, 1816 51
- MELA, De Situ Orbis, ed. H. Stephanus, Paris, 1577
- MERRIVALL, Dean, History of the Romans under the Empire, London, 1865
- MORELL Thesaurus Morellianus, ed. H. Worp, Amstelodam, 1734
- MOSHEIM, Latin Translation of Oudworth's Intellectual System of the Universe, Jenæ, 1733, folio
- MÜLLER, O., Fragmenti Historicorum Græcorum, Paris, 1816 1870

- MULLER, C., *Geographi Minores*, Paris, 1855 61
 MULLER, K. O., *Ancient Art*, translated by Leitch, London, 1852
 MULLER, Max, *Languages of the Scit of W.*, 2nd ed., London, 1855
- NIJHUIS, B. G., *Voortge over alte Geschiedte*, Berlin, 1847
 — *History of Rome*, L. T., Cambridge, 1831 42
 —, C., *Description de l'Arabie*, Amsterdam, 1774
- OPPERT, *Expédition Scientifique en Mésopotamie*, Paris, 1850 63
 —, *Inscriptions des Sargomides*, Versailles, 1863
 OVID, ed. Bipont, Argentorat, 1807
- PALMER, W., *Egyptian Chronicles*, London, 1861.
 PAUSANIAS, ed. Siebelis, Lipsie, 1822
 PICKERING, *Races of Man*, London, 1855
 PLATO, ed. Stallbaum, Lipsie, 1821 5
 PLINY, *Hist. Nat.*, ed. Silbg., Hamburg et Gotha, 1851 7
 PIVARON, *Opera* (ex officina Hack), Lugd. Bat., 1660
 PLAGIUS, ed. Luchtmans, Lugd. Bat. 1660
 PORPHYRIUS, Alex., in C. Muller's *Fragn. Hist. Græc.*, vol. iii., Paris, 1847
 PORPHYRIUS, *De Abstinentia*, ed. De Rhæ, Tricet ad Rhenum, 1767
 PRISSE D'AVALLNES, *Monuments Égyptiens*, Paris, 1830 47, folio
 PROPERTIUS, in the edition of Biskervill, Birmingham, 1772
 PTOLEMY, *Geographia*, ed. Batius, Amsterdam, 1618
- RAWLINSON, G., *Ancient Monarchies*, 1st ed., London, 1862 7; 2nd ed., London, 1871
 —, *History of Herodotus* (See HERODOTUS)
 —, *Historical Illustrations of the Old Testament*, London, 1877.
 —, *Origin of Nations*, London, 1877
 —, *Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy*, London, 1876
 RAWLINSON, Sir H., *Cuneiform Inscriptions*, in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vols. x., xi., &c.
 RECORDS OF THE PAST, ed. Dr S. Birch, London, 1873 8
 REPORT OF BRITISH ASSOCIATION, London, 1875
 REVUE ARCHÉOLOGIQUE, Paris, 1863 et seqq.
 REVUE ASIATIQUE, Paris, 1830 et seqq.
 RAYNOLDS, Sir J., *Discourses before the Royal Academy*, London, 1798.
 RICHARDSON, *Voyage along the Mediterranean and Persia adjacent*, London, 1822
 RITUAL OF THE DIAD, translated in Bunsen's *Egypt's Place*, vol. v (See BUNSEN)
 ROBERTS, D., *Egypt and Nubia*, London, 1846, folio
 ROSMINI Ippolito, *Monumenti Civili*, Pisa, 1844 6, 8vo and folio
 —, *Monumenti del Culto*, Pisa, 1841, 8vo and folio
 —, *Monumenti Storici*, Pisa, 1842, 8vo and folio
 ROSMINI STORI, in the *Records of the Past* vol. iv (See RECORDS)
 ROUGÉ DE, *Catalogue des Monuments Égyptiens de la Salle du Rez-de-chaussée*, Paris, 1849
 —, *Études sur le Rituel Linéaire des anciens Égyptiens*, Paris, 1861 4, folio
 —, *Inscription Historique du Roi Pianchi Mennou*, reprinted from the *Revue Archéologique*, Paris 1863
 —, *Recherches sur les Monuments qu'on peut attribuer aux six premières Dynasties de Mésopotamie*, Paris, 1866, &c.
- QUARREY REVIEW, London, 1831 1875

- RUSKIN, J., *Stones of Venice*, London, 1851 3
 —, *Seven Lamps of Architecture*, London, 1849
 RUSSILL, D., *Ancient and Modern Egypt*, published in the Edinburgh Cabinet Library, Edinburgh, 1830 4
- SE HIRAIR, J. B., *Egypt and the Suez Canal, a Narrative of Travel*, London 1857
 SE LÉON, E. de, *Egypt and the Khedive*, London, 1877
 SCHEIA AN ARTISTOTELIUM, in the edition of Aristotle's Works published by the Acad. Reg. Boruss., vol. iv 1836
 SCHOLIA AD ARATUM, in the *Phenomena of Aratus* ed. Buih., Lipsie, 1793.
 SCHWIMMER, *Heart of Africa*, London, 1873
 SCYLAX, Periplus, in the *Geographi Minores* of C. Muller, Parisus, 1855 61
 SENECA Opera, ed. Gronovius, Amstelodami, 1672
 SHARPE S., *History of Egypt from the Earliest Times to the Conquest of the Arabs*, London, 1859 (4th ed.)
 —, *Egyptian Inscriptions*, London, 1836 56, folio
 SHAW, D., *Travels in Barbary and the Levant*, Oxford, 1738.
 SMITH, Dean Payne, *Bampton Lectures*, London, 1860.
 SWINE, Dr. W., *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities*, 2nd ed., London, 1853
 —, *Dictionary of the Bible*, London, 1863
 —, *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Geography*, London, 1854
 SMITH, George, *History of Assyria*, London, 1871
 SMITH, Philip, *Ancient History from the Earliest Records to the Fall of the Western Empire*, London, 1865
 SMYTH, C. PIAZZI, *Antiquity of Intellectual Man*, Edinburgh, 1868
- SMYTH, C. PIAZZI *Astronomical Observations*, Edinburgh, 1847 63
 SOLINUS, Polyhistor, ed. H. Stephanus, Parisus, 1577
 SOPHOCLES, ed. Bianch., London (Valpy), 1824
 SPANHEIM, *De præstantia et usu Numismatum*, Romæ, 1664, 4to
 SPEAKERS COMPTONARY, London, 1870 1880 (continuing)
 STANTON, Denn, *Sinai and Palestine*, London, 1856
 STEPHANUS BYZANTINUS ed. Bekker, Lugd. Bat. 1694
 STRABO ed. Krause, Berlin, 1844 1852
 SYNCRITUS, Georgius *Chronographia*, ed. B. G. Niebuhr, Bonn, 1829
 SYNTESIUS, *Opera omnia*, Paris, 1612
- TACITUS Opera, ed. Walther, Hildæ Saxonum, 1831
 THEOCRIUS, *Idyllia*, ed. Kiessling, London, 1829
 THEOPHRASTUS, *De Lapidibus*, in his Works, ed. Hemsius, Lugd. Bat., 1613.
 —, *Historia Plantarum*, ed. Sackhouse, Oxoni, 1813
 THUCYDIDES, ed. Bekker, Oxoni, 1821.
 TRANSACTIONS OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF LITERATURE (NEW SERIES), London, 1850 et seqq.
 TRANSACTIONS OF THE SOCIETY OF BIBLICAL ARCHÆOLOGY, vols. i. vii London, 1872 80
 TRANSACTIONS OF THE SOCIETY OF BRITISH ARCHÆOLOGISTS, London, 1851 et seqq.
 TRAYOR, C. M., *Ancient Egypt its Antiquities, Religion, and History*, London, 1863.
 TRISTRAM Canon, *Land of Israel*, London, 1865
- VARIUS MAXIMUS, ed. Rudmann, Londini 1673
 VALLEY, Historical, Literary, and Antiquarian Travels in Italy, translated by C. D. Chilton, Paris, 1839

- VIRHIUS, Olearius, ed. Teubner, Lipsia, 1836 0
- VISCONTI, Museo Pio Clementino, Romæ, 1782 08, folio
- VIRUVIUS, ed. De Laet, Amstelodami 1619
- VYSE, Col. Howard, Pyramids of Ghizeh, London, 1840 2.
- WERNER, Geschichte Aegyptens von Psammetich I bis auf Alexander den Grossen, Leipzig 1880.
- WILKINSON, Sir J. G., Architecture of Ancient Egypt, London, 1850
- , Hieratic Papyrus of Turin London, 1851, 4to
- , Manners and Customs of the Ancient Egyptians, 1st ed, London, 1837 41, New Edition by D. S. Bick, London, 1878
- , Materia Hieroglyphica, Malta, 1821 30 4to
- , Notes and Essays on Wilkinson's History of Herodotus (q. v.)
- WILKINSON, Sir J. G. Topography of Thebes, London, 1835.
- WINCKELMAN History of Ancient Art, L. T., London, 1850
- WINER, Realwörterbuch, 3rd ed., Leipzig, 1817 8
- XANTHUS LYDUS, Trigon in the Trigonometria of C. Muller, vol. 1, Parisus, 1846
- XINOPHON, Cypria, ed. Schneider et Dindorf, Oxoniæ, 1817 et seqq
- ZEITSCHRIFT FÜR AEGYPTISCHE SPRACHE UND ALTERTHUMSKUNDE, ed. Lepsius, Berlin 1860-1880 (continuing)
- ZONA, Numi Aegyptii, Romæ, 1787, 4to
- † De Origine et Usu Obeliscorum, Romæ, 1767, folio

Errata in Vol I

Page 130, line 19, for  read 
,, 303, ,, 14, 16, 17, for  read .

Errata in Vol II

Page 12, line 9, for 'twenty five' read 'nineteen, and modify the following numbers accordingly

,, 20, , 12, for 'Thothmes IV' read 'Thothmes III.'
,, 61, ,, 26 for 'an incarnation' read 'incarnations.'
,, 99, note ³, line 4, for 'and Sahura' read 'Sahura, and Ranuser
,, 143, line 21, for 'that frontier' read 'the frontier.'
,, 326, , 11, for 'Moses' read 'Joseph'
,, 482, ,, 5, for  read .

Addendum to Vol II

Pages 107 and 110 Since the earlier part of this volume was printed off, the pyramids of Pepi, and his son, Meroma, have been identified. They belong, as might have been expected, to the Saccarah group, and correspond to Nos 1 and 2 on Colonel Howard Vyse's plan. The sepulchral chambers, which contained the bodies of the kings, are covered with hieroglyphics of a religious and funereal character.

INDEX.

AAH

AAI-IHOTEP, wife of king
Kames, ii 205
— wife of Amenhotep I, ii 212
Aahlu, the Egyptian Elysium, i 318
Aa khepi-ka ia (see Thothmes I)
Aa-khepi ia (see Sheshonk IV)
Aalu ia (Ajalon?), a city of the
Kharu, ii 231
Aahmes, son of Baba Abana, inscrip-
tion of, at El Kaab, ii 185, his
account of the fall of Avaris,
201 202, commands the Nile
fleet, 206, serves under Amen-
hotep I, 211
(Neb pehti-ia), king, ii 205
achieves the expulsion of the
Hyksos, 206 207, his expeditions
against the negroes of the south,
207, restores the temples, 208
209 marries an Ethiopian prin-
cess 209
queen of Thothmes I, ii 217
Penushom, military officer under
Amenhotep I, ii 211, tablet of,
i 111 n
king of the twenty-sixth dynasty
(see Amasis)
Aahpehti (see Meti)
Aah-abu, princess, ii 178
Aah of Quinah, tomb of Amenophis
II at, ii 257, memorial tablet of
Thothmes IV at, 259
Aahna (see Sabu)
Abousu, pyramid of Sahma at, ii
71 72 of Ranusei, 73 74
Abtu, Egyptian name of Abydos, i
360
Abu (see Elephantine)

AGR

Abu en-peiao, state officials, ii 368
Abu Simbel, rock-temple of Rameses
II at, ii 318 320, 322, 341,
memorial of Seti II at, 337,
Greek inscription at, 482
Abydos, present name of, i 16
Egyptian name, 360, special city
of the god Osiris, ib, seat of the
sixth dynasty, ii 98 temples of,
205, 320, 377, 483, 496, inscrip-
tion of Rameses II at, 325 n,
New Table of 26, 298
Abyssinia included in ancient E hio-
pia, i 36 fertilising power of the
Nile derived from, 24, ethnic
connection between the ancient
Egyptians and some of its present
tribes, 97
Acacia trees i 52
Acho, town of (see Aigatu)
Aemhe p, the god, described, i 379
380
Africa, British exploration of, i 8
North, occupied by the Libyans,
37; route between Asia and,
40 41 alleged circumnavigation
of, by Neco's ships, ii 475
Africanus, his epitome of Manetho,
ii 8
Age, Egyptian respect for, i 553
Agriculture, Egyptian, excellence
of, i 153 condition of the la-
bourers, 154 156, 479 482, im-
plements of, 157 160, processes
of cultivation for the various crops,
160 171, breeding and rearing of
cattle and other animals, 171-178,
ii 87 88 carriage of produce, i

AI

- 179 state of, during the fourth and fifth dynasties, n 87
 Ai, king, n. 277, 278
 Aina, reservoir constructed by Ramesses III. n, n 377
 Anštu, the, n 301
 Ajalon (*see* Aaluna)
 Aka-usa, nation so called, n 330
 Akheikh, tribe of the, n 151
 Alabaster quarries, i 92
 Albert Nyanza, i 9 11
 Alexander the Great, confuses Kneph with Ammon, i 330 n adopts the name of Si Ammon, n 410
 Alphabet, Egyptian, i 122
 Am, the god, i 400
 Amida, temple of Amenôphus II at, n. 257
 Amam, territory of, n 104, 111
 Amnus, mount, i 40 n
 Amai, negro tribe, n 375
 Amasis (Aahmes), king, length of his reign, n 12 thought to have served in the Ethiopian campaign of Psamatik I, 488, of plebeian origin, 490, his character, 490-491 flourishing state of the kingdom under his rule 491 492 cultivates the friendship of the Greeks, 492, restores Cyprus to the Egyptian dominion, 249, 492 493 unites with Lydia and Babylon against Persia, 494, deception practised by him upon Cyrus 495 his adornments of Sais Memphis and other cities, 495 496, his statues, 496, 497 picture of presented to the Cyrenians, i 518 n 497 his wives, 498, tomb at Sais, 499
 Amenemah, his picture of the condition of the peasant farmer, i 480 appointed director of the public library at Thebes, n 360
 Amen em-ahet, 'royal son of Kush,' n 294
 Amen em-hat I accession of, n 141 142 attempted assassination of, 142 143, wars of, 143, Asiatic frontier wall built by, 144, 186, his statues, palace, and pyramid, 144 145 his pursuit of the chase, 145 n, n 145, associates his son,

AME

- 145 146, his 'Instructions' to him, 146 147
 Amen em hat II. (Nub-kau ia), reign of, n 153 his tablet at Sarabit-el Khadim, and statue to his queen, ib
 III (Ra n-mât) constructs Lake Moeris, n. 159 163, establishes a Nilometer at Semneh, 163 his palace (the 'Labyrinth') pyramid, and other works, 161, his inscriptions and tablets, 165
 IV, reign of, conjointly with his sister, Sabak nefu ia, n 165 166, their pyramids at Biamo 166 a functionary of Mentuhotep II, n 138 n, 142
 Amen em heb, inscription of, n 229, his account of an elephant hunt of Thothmes III, n 235 236
 Aneu hotep, high priest of Thebes, n 395
 Amen, inscription of, n 150, 151 152
 Amenôphus I (Amenhotep, Tser ka ia), reign of, n 211 212, dress of, 352
 II (Ra aa khepu), campaigns of, against his rebellious Asiatic tributaries, i 255; his slaughter of captives, 255 256. list of countries reduced to obedience by him, 256, his tomb at Abd el Quina and other monuments, 257, his family ib
 III (Ma-nob-ia), accession of, n 260, son of an Ethiopian mother, 261, marries a foreign princess, ib, favours disk-worship, 262, his military enterprises unimportant, 263 264, his temple to Ammon at Luxor and other buildings, 264 265 twin colossal statues of, one known as 'the vocal Memnon,' 265 268 his fondness for the chase 268-269, his character, 269 270, his personal appearance, 270 271, his family, 271
 — IV, peculiar personal appearance of, n 271 adopts the designation of Khu en-aten, 272 introduces disk-worship, 273, hostility of the priests against him, 274 founds

AMD

a new capital with the name of
 Khu aten, 275; success of his
 reign there, *ib.*, happiness of his
 domestic life, 276; his seven
 daughters *ib.*, his military expe-
 ditions, 276-277 the succession
 to his throne, 277
 Aménôphis (Hapu), grandson of
 Aménôphis II, ii 257 258
 sculptor of the colossal statues of
 Aménôphis III, ii 267 268
 Aménôphthis, Manetho's rendering
 of Amen-hotep, ii 211
 Amén sat, sculptor's wife, ii 133 n
 Amén-te, the goddess, i 400
 Amén-ti, the lower world, judgment
 of the dead in, i 317 318, 348,
 352 372, 384, 386, 388, 395, the
 four geni of, 397; the forty two
 names of, 398 399
 Aménu king ii 153
 Aménemmes, Manetho's name for
 Amenemhat IV, which *see*
 Aménephthes, Manetho's rendering
 of Menephtah, which *see*
 Ammon or Amon, great god of
 Thebes, described, i 322 326
 examples of prayers and hymns
 addressed to, 326 327 first monu-
 mental evidence of, ii 133 ele-
 vated to the headship of the
 Pantheon, 171, 172 temple of,
 at Thebes, begun by Amenemhat
 I, 144, continued by Usurtasen
 I, 149 enlarged and embellished
 by Thothmes I, 216, decorated
 with obelisks by queen Hatshe-
 put, 221 chamber added by Thothmes
 III 238 239 hall built by
 Aménôphis II, 257, hymn of
 victory inscribed there by Tho-
 thmes III 250 251 office of the
 high-priest of, i 434, temples of,
 at Luxor, erected by Aménôphis
 III ii 264 265, at Medinet-
 Abou, 376 sacred boat of 291
 Ammon-Khem or Kamutef, i 326
 Ammon Kneph, i 326
 Ammon-Ra, i 325, 326, 345 ex-
 amples of hymns addressed to,
 327, 404 405, Hittite representa-
 tive of ii 199, festival of Thothmes
 III to, 228

ANK

Ammon hi khopeshef (*see* Rameses
 V. and X.)
 Amon mes, or Amon-meses, anti-
 king, ii 336, 337, tomb of, *ib.*
 Amon Zephes, princess, i 529
 Amorites, the, subject to the Hit-
 tites ii 280
 Ampère, *quoted*, concerning the Great
 Sphinx, i 269 n
 Amphicræ, Egyptian, i 405
 Amset, one of the four geni of
 Ament, i. 397
 Amten tomb of, ii 37 n, 42 n 44 n,
 statue of, 37
 Amtes, first wife of king Pepi, ii
 110
 Anu people so called, i. 111, ety-
 mology of the name *ib.* n, cam-
 paign of Pepi against the, 103 105
 migration of a family of, into Egypt,
 in the time of Usurtasen II, ii
 154
 An (Heliopolis) (*see* On)
 — (Cushites), conquered by Tho-
 thmes I, ii 214
 Anamu, the, i 101
 Anaugas, a town of the Ruten, ii.
 228, 231
 Ancestors, worship of, i 423 424
 its prevalence in primitive times,
 ii 35
 Andriossy, General, on the nation
 lakes i 35 n
 Angiab, the an affluent of the At-
 bara river i 19
 An, 'royal son of Kush' ii 204
 Animals, of the farm, i 171 178 ii
 87 88; sacrificial, i 408-410 sa-
 cred list of, 411 412, worship of,
 412 419, incarnations of deities
 in, 413 416, processions in honour
 of, 432, pot 540 n. 44, 88
 An khuf-ka, priest of Sakhia, ii 72
 Ank divine emblem, i 324
 Ank sa en-na, throne title of
 Psamatik III, ii 498
 Ank-Menna, a minister of Pepi, ii
 109
 Anki-ies amen, wife of king Tut-
 ankh amen ii 277 n
 Ankhes-Menna, second wife of
 king Pepi ii 110 her tomb at
 Abydos, *ib.*

ANK

- Ankhnes-neferapna, daughter of Psamatik II, ii 484 married to Amasis, 498, her sarcophagus, i
Anointing, unguents used for, i 61-62
Anon (*see* Buon)
Anta, or Anatis, foreign deity adopted into the Egyptian Pantheon, i. 400
Antef I (Enantef), coffin of, ii. 127-128
priest, ii 145
the Great (Antef aa), king, to whom and sculptured tablet of, ii 128
III i 130
Antelopes, varieties of, i 72; hunting of, ii 44, domestication of, 83
Antylla, wine of i 171
Antilibanus, i 40 n, 41
Antony, St monastery of, i 34
Anubis, the jackal headed god, i 317, 396 397, ii 38 n, 61, 85
Anuka, the goddess, described, i 384 385
Apachnas a shepherd king, ii 197
Apep or Apepi, otherwise Apophis, *whence*
Apepi (Apophis) Shepherd king, position of, in his dynasty, ii 197-198, makes Avaris his capital, 199, permits a native dynasty (Ra-Sekenen) to rule at Thebes, ii his quarrel and war with Ra-Sekenen III, 199 202 contemporaneous with Joseph, 202 204
Apet (Apé, Tapé), the native name of Thebes, ii 126
Apis bulls, i 414-415, ii 85, 460, 506, example of an inscription relating to, 481
Apollinopolis Magna (*see* Edfou)
Apophis, evil principle, his connection with the myth of Osiris, i 358, 395
— Shepherd king (*see* Apepi)
Apuia or Uaphis, king (Ua-ap-ia), date and length of his reign, ii. 12, concludes the Ethiopian war, 484, enters into an alliance with Zedekiah, 485 raises the siege of Jerusalem, ii; subsequently defeated by Nebuchadnezzar, ii attacks Syria with a combined

ARG

- fleet and army, 487 captures Sdon and defeats the Phœnician and Cypriot fleet, ii; disposed and put to death by Nebuchadnezzar, 487 488; funeral honours permitted to him 488, his stelæ, obelisks, and inscriptions, 489-490, his charter to the priests, 490
Apuia or Apepi, supposed identity of, with the Hebrews, ii 314, 315
Arabat el-Matfou, modern name of Abydos, i 16
Arabia, origin of the Egyptians from i 98, trade of, with Egypt 482 conquests of Sheshonk I. in, ii 422
Arabian desert i 7
Arabiab, fish, i 85
Aradus, a town of the Ruten, ii 231 233 temple built by Psamatik I at 468
Aiban, Egyptian remains found at ii 235, 263 n, 278
Arcadia, Roman name for the Hep tmonis, i 25 n.
Archers, i 450, 460, 464
Architects, hereditary, i 430, royal 528 529 profession of, 528 530
Architecture, Egyptian character of i 98 103, 208, 210 224 wooden anterior to stone, 184 n, ii 33 of tombs, i 182 214, ii 78 80, of temples, i. 214 237, ii 80 81 qualities on which it depended for effect, i. 237, peculiarities of the columns employed in, 239 244 caryatide piers, 244, obelisks 215, employment of colour in 246-248 domestic, 248 255, non-employment of the arch 255 257 symmetriophobia, 257 258; artificial augmentation of apparent size 258, state of, in primitive time ii 32 36; at other periods, 78 81 115, 137, 170-171, 341 344 401, 430 502 (*see* Columns).
Aichles, joint king with Apepi, i 198
Ainet, land of, ii 104, 111
Aigatu (Aciap), a town of the Ruten ii 231

ARI

Aristotle on the astronomical know-
 ledge of the Egyptians, i 299
 Arithmetic, notation employed in, i
 294
 Ar non, mail, i 446
 Armonen, life of the, i 507; a dis-
 tinct class, ii 116
 Arms of the Egyptian soldiers, i
 456 462, manufacture of, 506, ii
 116
 Army, Egyptian, general description
 of the, i 442 478, promotion in
 the, ii 490 (*see* Soldiers)
 Arrows, Egyptian i 459 460
 Aisenoite nome, ancient name for
 the Fayoum district, i 32
 Aisu, usurpation of, ii 339
 Art, condition of in the earliest
 times, ii 32 38, religious censor-
 ship of, i 272, epochs of, 289
 292 renaissance of, ii 502 (*see*
 Architecture, Sculpture)
 Artemis, cave of, ii 295
 Artists, social status of, i 519 520
 Asa, revolt of, ii 427
 Asbystæ, the name, ii 370
 Ascalon (Ashkaluna), a city of the
 Khari, ii 231; revolt and recon-
 quest of, 309 *n*, taken by a horde
 of Scythians, 469
 Aseskaf king, accession of, ii 66,
 marries his daughter to Ptah-aseq,
 and loads him with benefits, 66-
 67 builds a pyramid, 67
 Ashdod (Azotus), siege and cap-
 ture of, by Psamatik I, ii 467-
 468
 Asia, route between Africa and, i
 40 41 superstitions of, grafted
 on the Egyptian religion, ii 506
 — Western, war of retaliation in,
 commenced by Thothmes I, ii.
 213, four principal nations of,
 231 233, conquests of Thothmes
 III *n*, 233 235 rebellion on his
 decease, 255 league of, against
 Rameses I, 286 against Seti I,
 287 against Rameses II, 304
 Asmach (*see* Automoh)
 Asp, Egyptian i 88
 As, the, i 74 88
 Assa (*see* Tat-ka-na)
 Assessors, the forty-two, i 398 399

ATD

Aashui (Kileh Sheghit), the capital
 of Assyria, 229, tribute exacted
 from, by Thothmes III, 235
 Aashui bun pal, coats the Eryp-
 tians and Ethiopians at Karbanit,
 ii 455 storms Memphis and
 Thebes *ib.*, drives Rut ammon
 out of Egypt, 455
 Assis, Shepherd king, ii 198
 Assouan (Syêné), the southern boun-
 dary of Egypt i 15 tablet of
 Meremnat, ii 111 inscription of
 Nefertotep at, 179 of queen Ita-
 tasu, 221 stela of Seti I. at, 295
 Assyria, trade of, with Egypt, i 482
 hieroglyphic name of, ii 416, ,
 strength of, relative to Syria, at
 the Hyksos period 196 *n*, con-
 dition of, in the time of Thothmes
 III, 229 alleged foundation of
 the twenty-second dynasty by,
 416 417, obtains the supremacy
 over Egypt, 447 448
 Ast net, Ashtoreth, or Astarte, Phœ-
 nician goddess adopted into the
 Egyptian Pantheon, i 400
 Astes, the god, i 400
 Astrology, Egyptian, i 304 305
 Astronomy, early study of, by the
 Egyptians i 296, included obser-
 vations of eclipses, 297 298, of
 planetary occultations, 299 of
 the motions of planets, and de-
 termination of their periodic and
 synodic times, 299 301; tabu-
 lation and grouping of stars, 301
 302 settlement of the exact length
 of the true solar year 302 303
 its empirical nature 304 com-
 paratively slight association of
 astrology with, 304-305 astro-
 nomical ceilings, ii 296 301, 401
 Asua or Asua, an affluent of the
 Nile, i 12, 18
 Atubet, place alluded to in Hann's
 narrative, ii 132
 Ataka, a copper producing country,
 ii 378
 Atbara, an affluent of the Nile, i 14,
 16 its tributaries 19
 Atob place alluded to in Hann's
 narrative, ii 133
 Atef, a divine crown, i 329

ATE

- Aten (the solar disk), sun god, i 363
 364 establishment of his worship
 by Amenôphis IV, ii 278
 Atet, a supposed early king, ii 27
 Athor, the goddess described i 364
 366, animals sacred to, 81, 411,
 416, earliest monumental evi-
 dence of, ii 38 distinct from Isis,
 81 derived from Punt, 131, 222
 Athôthis the name ii 27
 Athu, the marsh land of, ii 114, 280
 Ati, a supposed early king ii 29, 100
 Atum, the same as Tum, which *see*
 Atumna (*see* Idom)
 Aunton, African tribe, ii 112
 Aup, or Aupa, northern boundary of
 the Khau, ii 231
 Aupot, or Shupot, prince ii 424
 vassal king, ii 437 439, 442
 Auseris, the name, ii 370
 Automoli, or Asmach, name of a sat-
 tlement of reculant warriors, ii
 464
 Avaris or Auvaris, fortified camp of
 the Hyksos at, ii 192 196, ten-
 ples erected there by the Hyksos,
 194 siege and capture of, by the
 Egyptians, 201 202, 207

- B**A, name of a pyramid, ii 73
 Babylonia, commencement of
 monarchy in, i 112; revolt of
 ii 460 incites Egypt to throw off
 the Assyrian yoke, 461 conquest
 of Egypt by, 480, 488, decline and
 fall of, 491 allied with Egypt
 and Lydia against Persia, 495
 Bacis, the sacred bull of Hermon-
 this, i 415 416
 Bahari, Arab designation of Lower
 Egypt, i 25 n
 Bahi belama, Arab term, i 36 n
 Bah-el Azrak, or Blue Nile, i 13, 18
 Bah-el Ghazal, an affluent of the
 Nile i 18
 Bahi Yousuf, the Great Canal of
 Egypt, i 16, formation of Lake
 Moeris from, 32, 167, ii 162
 Bahi Zuafe, or Gnafe river, a
 branch of the Nile, i 13
 Bahu, the god, i 399
 Bai, official of Seti II, ii 388

BFE

- Bai u, name of a pyramid, ii 100
 Bakatamen, conspiracy of, ii 379
 383
 Baker, Sir S., *quoted* on the creation
 of Egypt by the Nile, i 7 n
 Bakhtan, marriage of Rameses XII
 with a princess of, ii 397, trans-
 port of Khonsu's image to, and
 detention of the god there, i 370
 371, ii 398, identification of the
 name, 399 401
 Banquet, description of a, i 547
 552
 Ba or Bial Phœnician god adopted
 into the Egyptian Pantheon, i 400
 Barber, occupation of the, i 535
 Bargylus, mount, i 40 n
 Bailey, Egyptian, i 60 mode of
 cultivation, 163
 Basillah, Egyptian plant, i 34
 Bas-reliefs, faults of drawing and
 composition in, i 273 276; supe-
 riority of animal to human forms
 in 276 277 ii 346, foreshorten-
 ing in, i 278 non observance of
 proportion in, ib absence of per-
 spective in, 279 281 hideous re-
 presentations of the gods in, 281,
 of common life, 283 285, 290, of
 warlike scenes, 275, ii 346, cha-
 racter of the earliest, 36 37, of
 other periods, 83 115, 137 138,
 171 316 347, 402, 430, 503 504
 (*see* Sculpture)
 Bast, the goddess, described, i 380
 381 animal sacred to, 411,
 annual festival in honour of, 421;
 temple of, at Bubastis, ii 496 (*see*
 Sekhet)
 Bastinado, punishment of the, i
 105 use of, by taskmasters, 480,
 481, ii 361
 Battering ram, Egyptian, i 469
 Battle axe, Egyptian, i 450, 457
 Beans, whether ever indigenous in
 Egypt, i 70
 Bebi, king, ii 29
 Bedouins, representative of the
 Shams, ii 186, 369
 Beer, brewing of, i 163, used at
 banquets, 550, ladies sentenced
 to keep a beehouse, ii 382
 Beetle, why dedicated to Ra, i 345

BEI

- Bent el Walli, temple built by Rameses II at, ii 320
 Beka, sepulchral inscription of, i. 407
 Bek en nifi, vassal king, ii 438 439
 Bek en ianf (*see* Bocchoris)
 Belzoni, tomb of, so called, ii 205 206
 Beni Hassan, rock-sepulchres of, i. 213, has relief of a hunting scene at, 276, 278, tomb of Khnum-hotep at, ii 154, temple of Sekhet near, 290
 Benn, a species of crane or heron, i 82
 Benoni, compared with Bnon, ii 197
 Bentaresh, princess of Bakhtan, delivered of an evil spirit by the god Khonsu, ii 397 398
 Berenice, site of, i 3 n
 Bes, a principle of evil, described, i. 394 395, figure of, 266 267 the god of joviality and the toilet, ii 134
 Bet anath, ii 309 n
 Biano, ancient pyramids of, ii 106
 Biban el Moluk, tomb of Amon mes in the, ii 237, of Rameses IV, 390 n, of Rameses V and VI, 391 rock inscriptions of Apries at, 460
 Bichores, king, probably fictitious, ii 69
 Bigeh, island of, inscription of Psamtik II. at, ii 482, of Apries, 480
 Bimutei, king, permits female succession, ii 31
 Binny fish, the, i. 84
 Birch, D., on the syllabic nature of hieroglyphic signs, i 120 n on the literary style of the Egyptians, 132 n, *quoted*, on the ethnic resemblances of the Egyptians, i. 97 n; on the absence of the domestic fowl in Pharaonic times, 177 n; on the glazed tiles of the Egyptians, 498, on the mythical character of Mena, ii 26 n
 Bukit el Keroun, a lake in the Fayoum, i 31 distinct from Lake Moeris, ii 161 n
 Blue Nile, i 13, 18, 24, 36

BUR

- Bnon (Anon, Beon), a Shepherd king, ii 197
 Boan, wild, whether an inhabitant of ancient Egypt, i 70
 Boats, sacred, i 422, of the Solar Disk, ii 262 n, of Ammon, 291, river, 39 406
 Boat building, i 507 510
 Boatman, vocation of, i 531
 Bocchoris or Banchoris (Bek-en ianf), successful revolt and reign of, ii 444, burnt alive by Shabak, i 474, ii 445, date of his accession, 3
 Boulos, late, i 29
 Bows, Egyptian, i 459
 Bread, sacrificial offering of, i 408
 Breccia verde, quarries of, i 94
 Bronze, Egyptian, composition of, i. 458 n, how rendered suitable for cutting stone, 485 manufacture of articles in, 505 507
 Briggsch, his identifications of ethnic names, ii 330 n; his paper on the Exodus, 335 n, his theory of a Chino-Celtic invasion in the reign of Rameses III, 516, *quoted*, on the monumental evidence of the origin of the Egyptians, i 97 98, on the cheerful temperament of the Egyptians, 101 n on the slave element of the population, 108 n, on the astronomy of the Egyptians, 304, on the social status of the architect, 528 529, on the chronological defects of the Turin papyrus, i 34, on the traditional history of the early kings, 31 n, on the land of Punt, 132; on the animal and plant collection of Thothmes III, 238, on the opening of the historic period 47 n his translation of the hymn of victory of Thothmes III, 250 251; on the rock-temple of Rameses II at Abu Simbel, 318 319 on the encroachment of the priesthood, 393 394, on the later religion, 566
 Bubastis (Tel Basta), temple and worship of Bast at, i 381 382 ii 418, tradition of an earthquake at, 31 capital of the twenty-second dynasty 418

BUI

- Bulder, craft of the, i 483
 Building, i 483 (*see* Architecture)
 Bukaan, the i 40
 Bulls, sacred (*see* Apis, Bacis, Mevis)
 Bulti, a Nile fish, i 84
 Bursen, on the duration of the Old Empire, ii 18
 Butau, king ii 29; tradition concerning, 31
 Biticus, Lacus (Lake Boulos), i 29
 Buto, Herodotean goddess, i 337 n
 Byad, fish, i 85
 Byblus (*see* Papyrus)

CALASIRIES, soldiers so called, i 443

- Calendar, Egyptian, i 302
 Cambyses, date of his conquest of Egypt, ii 12, tomb of Amasis violated by, 499, defeats the Egyptians at Pelusium, 499 500 captures Memphis and executes Psamtik III., 501
 Camel, use of the, by the Egyptians, i 75
 Camps, Egyptian i 475 477, of Greek and Carian mercenaries, ii 464, 491
 Canal, from the Nile to the Red Sea, commenced by Seti I., ii 297, finished by Rameses II., 316, attempted enlargement by Neco, 473 474
 Canopic branch of the Nile, i. 17
 Caper plant, the, i 59
 Carchemish (Karkamasha, Jerablus), capital of the Hittites, ii 292; battle of, 478
 Carians, foreign legion of, ii 461
 Carp, Nilotic, i 85
 Carvings, Ethiopian, ii 357
 Caryatide piers, i 244
 Casius, Mons, i 30, 40 n
 Cast, non-existent among the Egyptians, i. 430 431
 Castor oil tree, the, i 54, 61
 Cat, fondness of the Egyptians for the i 70, wild, 72, its mode of attacking the scorpion, 90 sacred to the goddess Bast, 411; used in hunting, 541

CCEL

- Cataracts of the Nile, i 15
 Cattæ, Egyptian, i 75, breeding and rearing of, 171 174, wild, chase of, 543
 Cavalry, limited employment of by the Egyptians, i 400, ii 216 (*see* Soldiers)
 Cerastes, or horned snake, i 87
 Chabas, *quoted*, on the ascription of male titles by queen Hatshepsut, ii 220 n on the anarchy preceding the accession of Rameses III., 304 n, on the order of the wars of Rameses III., 369
 Chabyses (*see* Shafia)
 Chameleon, the, i 89
 Chariots, introduction of, into Egypt, i 206 n use of, in war, 450 451, ii 215 216, construction of, i 451 453, 490 492 equipment of, 453-455 hoisting of, 456 cost of, 491, exportation of, 490 ii 216; substituted for palanquins, 358
 Chase the (*see* Hunting)
 Chebros, king ii. 15 n, 212 n.
 Chedorlaomer, invasion of Syria by, ii 212 n
 Chemmis (Panopolis), special god of, i 332
 Cheops (*see* Khufu)
 Chephren, supposed temple of, i 215, ii 38 80 (*see* Shafia)
 'Choricon' grass, oil procured from, i 62
 Chronology, confused state of, ii 1; illustrated by the various dates assigned for the accession of Menes, 2; no scheme of, deducible from the monuments, 2 4, untrustworthiness of the schemes of Herodotus, 5; of Diodorus Siculus, 5 6, of Manetho, 6 9, limits of the uncertainty, 11 19 basis of, introduced by the Hylksos, 194
 Chushan Rishaim, Mesopotamian king, time of, ii 400
 Circumcision, i. 439
 Cleopatra's needles, i. 350, ii 241, 252
 Clover, Egyptian i 60
 Clubs, war i 458
 Cnidium, oleum, i. 62
 Coesyrina, i 40 ii 477

COL

Colossi, mode of erecting, i. 308, great, of the Ramesseum, 223, canyotide, 244, erected upon truncated pyramids, ii 166 170 of Amenophis III, 265 268, of Rameses II, 318, 321, of Seti I, 322
Columns used in the construction of tombs, i 212 214 'Proto Doinc, 213, ii 171, examples of, at Beni Hassan, i 213; at Kalabshe ii 526 diverse forms of shaft and capital, i 239 242, hall of, in the temple of Karnak, 226, close aggregation of 213
Combs, Egyptian i 537
Congo, river, i 8
Constantinople, memorial of Thothmes III. at, ii 252
Copper, how obtained by the Egyptians, i 93 94 imported from Ataka, ii 378
Coptic language, connection of, with the ancient Egyptian, i 115
Coptos (Kebtu), ii 129, temple of Isis at, i 369
Copts, physical resemblances of, to the ancient Egyptians, i 96, 99
Cossen (Leucos limen), commercial route to, in ancient times, ii 133 134
Cotton, use of, i 63
Cows sacred to Athor, i 366, 409, 416
Crime, punishment of, by the bastinado, i 105 by the 'happy despatch,' ii 382, by sentence to keep a bee-house, ib
Crocodile, the, habits of, i 65, destroyed by the ichneumon, 69 n; why invested with a sacred character, 376, modes of chasing, 516 546, n. 116, worship of, 172, 177
Crocodilopolis (see Hasehek)
Cressus induces Amasis to join a league against Persia, ii 494
Cudworth, his belief that the Egyptians recognised a Trinity in Unity, i 320
Cush Cushites (see Kush)
Cypriote the, i 62 64
Cyprus, subject to Egypt, ii 240, 250, 251 252. reconquest of, by

DIO

Amasis, 492, Phœnician protectorate of, 493, claims of Cyrus to, 494
Cyrenaica ii 374 (see Marmarica)
Cyrene, painted portrait of Amasis sent to, i 518, ii 492, 497, alleged expedition of Apries to, 487
Cyrus, tomb of, i 378 n, demands a daughter of Amasis for his harem, ii 435
DAGGERS, Egyptian, i 458 459
Danaoi, supposed Egyptian rendering of ii 513
Dancing, i 525, 549, ii 91
Darabooka, modern Egyptian drum, i 522
Dauout-el-Sheuf, i. 16
Dashoor, pyramids of i 210 211, n. 53 alleged burial place of Usutaten III, 159
Date palm, i 49 50, 61
Decalogue, the, and the Egyptian moral law, i 101
Delta, the, area of, in the time of Herodotus, i 4 n, the Lower country of ancient Egypt, 25 n, geography and natural features of, 27 31, plain of the, 4
Demoniac possession earliest recorded instance of, ii 397
Demons, i 306
Demotic writing, i. 116, invention of, ii 471
Denderah (Per tjais), temple to Athor at, ii 56, 107; buildings of Thothmes III at, 242
Dei, temple built by Rameses II at, ii 320
De Rougé, his identifications of Egyptian ethnic names with European names, ii 330 331, 511 517, *quoted*, concerning the last three kings of Manetho's fourth dynasty, 69 n, on the truncated form of the pyramid of Unas, 78 n
Desert, Eastern, a division of Egypt, i 32 34, climate of, 45, Arabian, 7; Nubian, 36
Dinder, a tributary of the Nile, explored by Sir S. Baker, 13 n
Diodorus Siculus, his assertion respecting silver-mines. i 93. his

DIS

- arrangement of Egyptian classes, 432, chronology of, *ii* 5-8; *7* *noted*, on the solicitude of the Egyptians for their tombs, *i* 182
- Disk-worship (*see* Aten, Sun)
- Dogfish, *i* 85
- Dogs, Egyptian, varieties of, *i* 77-78, *ii* 80 116, 140, 169 special names borne by, 90, 140; king Antefaa's, 128, 137
- Dom palm, *i* 47 49, 64
- Domitian, obelisk erected to, *i* 234 *n*.
- Doora, an Egyptian grain, *i* 60; mode of cultivating, 160, harvesting, 163 164 (*see* Zea)
- Doshé, memorial of victory of Sati at, *ii* 293
- Dotterel, Egyptian, *i* 81
- Diah aboul neggah, obelisk of one of the Antef kings at, *ii* 148
- Draughts, game of, *i* 551
- Dress, *i* 525, 536 538, *ii* 42 43 85, 116, 139, 168 169 351 354, 361, 406-407
- Drums, Egyptian, *i* 478, 522
- Drunkenness, *i* 106, 551
- Duck, Egyptian, *i* 81
- Dumichen Dr., his work on queen Hatshepsut's naval expedition, *noticed*, *ii* 221 *n*
- Dynasties, contemporary, not always distinguished from consecutive, *ii* 8, 6, 7, 10 total duration of, according to Manetho's epitomists 8 probable average duration of, 20; kings of the first, second, and third, 26 32 the fourth, 46-67, the fifth, 67 78, marked division between it and the sixth, 97; the sixth (ruling in the south), 99 115 no monumental traces of the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth, 121; the eleventh (first Theban), 127 134; closed in bloodshed and confusion 135; the twelfth, 141 166; the thirteenth, 175-180 the fourteenth (Xo te), 175, 182, the fifteenth and sixteenth (Shepherds), 175, 182 the seventeenth (Hyksos), 184-204, the eighteenth, 205 283 the nineteenth, 284 339; closed in anarchy, 339, the twentieth,

EGY

363 401 the twenty-first (Tanite, priest kings), 408 415, the twenty-second (Bubastite), 416 430, the twenty third, 430, the twenty fourth (one king), 13, 444 the twenty-fifth (Ethiopian), 446 458; the twenty-sixth, 458 501

EAGLES, Egyptian, *i* 78

Eclipses, observation of, *i* 297

Edfon (Apollinopolis Magna), *i* 15 *n*.

Edkou, lake (*see* Metelites)

Edom (Atuma), connection of the Shasu with, *ii* 186

Eduction, Egyptian system of, *i* 553

Eels, Nile, *i* 84

Egypt (Ta meia) originally the Greek name of the Nile, *i* 2, Hebrew name of, 25 *n*, boundaries, dimensions, and character of the country, 2 cultivable area, 4-5; dependence on the Nile 7, *n*. 160, territorial divisions severally described, *i* 25 36; border countries 36 42, 108-113, accessibility to invasion from the north east, 39, *ii* 185, 499; climate, *i* 43 47, vegetable productions, 47 61, animals, wild 61 74; domestic, 74 78, *ii* 44, 87, 88, 89, 116, 140, 169, 358, birds, *i* 78 83, fish, 83 85, reptiles, 65 66, 72 73, 85 90; insects, 90 91, mineral products, 91 95, 500; the people, 96 108, north and south countries, 102; why designated a bruised reed, 106 commencement of monarchy in, 112 *n*, its extraordinary productiveness in ancient times, 152, land tenure, 154, anciently divided into distinct kingdoms, 321, *ii* 6 *n*; classes, professions, trades, and manufactures of, *i* 431-554, *ii* 117 *n*; old, middle, and new empires, *ii* 15-20; history of, prior to Senefertu, doubtful, 32, early seat of dominion in, 97 98 first evidence of national unity, 99, 'second civilisation' of, 136 137, periods of anarchy and decline, 122 124, 135, 141, 176, 337, 339, 340, 401, 429, causes of de-

EGY

ERH

cline, 386 389, 508, periods of foreign domination in, 188 189, 437 458, 488 491, 502, limited maritime dominion, 240, 251, exodus of the Israelites from, 333 336 divided into twenty governments by Esahaddon, 452, renaissance period of, 502
 Egyptian language, its general character, i 115 its connection with the Coptic, ib, intrusion of Semitic words into the, ii 181, 195, 387 (see Alphabet, Grammar, Hieroglyphics)
 Egyptians the of Asiatic origin, i 97 not a colony from Ethiopia, 97 98 immigrants from Syria or Arabia, yet a separate race, 98, 99 their complexion dark, but not black, 99, their hair not woolly, ib their features, 100, their form, ib, anciently divided into tribes, 101 their intellectual characteristics, 102 their artistic powers, 103, their morals 104 107, 147, 293, 552, ii 361 362, 404 their number, 107, their neighbours, 108 113 their language and writing, 114 131, ii 45, 181, 195, their literature, i 132 151 their architecture, 181 259 their mimetic art, 260 292, their science, 293 310, their religion, 310 426; separation of, into classes, 430 432; their dress, 536 538 their amusements, 538 546
 Eleithya (see El-Kaab)
 Elit-hai, variant of Athor which see
 El Assisif, valley of, ii 128
 El Gimsheh, sulphur mines at, i 94
 El Kaab (Eleithya), quarries of, ii 98, inscriptions at, i 333, ii 108, 185, 263 temple of Nukhebat, 295
 El-Khargeh, inscription relating to Khem at, i 333
 El Tij, desert of, i 38
 Elephant, chase of the, i 544, ii 236, 255
 Elephantine (Abu), special deities of, i 327, 339, connection of the sixth dynasty with, ii 97 temples to Kneph or Khnum at, 242, 264,

inscriptions of Psamatik II at, 482
 Elakim appointed king of Judæa by Neco, ii 178
 Embalming, jars used in, i 397 statistical estimate of, 510 511 process of 511 514 character of those employed in, 514 antiquity of, ii 39
 Emerald mines, i 91
 Empire, old chronology of the, ii 7 19 history of the, 23 183 Middle, chronology of the, ii 15 17, 22, history of the, 184 204 New, chronology of the, ii 11 15, 22, history of the 205 502
 Employments, hereditary character of, i 430
 Enantef, kings, ii 127, obelisk of one of the, 148 (see Antef)
 Enchorial writing, invention of ii 471
 Engineering, Egyptian, i 307 (see Hydraulic)
 Eratosthenes his correction of Manetho's figures for the duration of the Old Empire, ii 7, 18
 Esahaddon divides Egypt into twenty governments, ii 452, expulsion of his vassal kings by Tahaka i, 455
 Esné (Latopchis), ruins of, i 15 n
 Etham, a Semitic name, introduced into Egypt ii 181
 Ethiopia, ancient, i 36 not the primitive home of the Egyptians, 97 98 the people of, called Kush by the Egyptians, 110 its geography and people, ii 433, war of Usutasen I with, 150 152 subjugation of, by Usutasen III, 155, invaded by Thothmes I 214, expedition of Thothmes IV into, 250, war of Seti I in, 293, embassy from, to king Tutankhamen, 277, 278; humbled by king Horemheb, 281 282 war of Rameses III with, 375; the kingdom, Ethiopia Proper or Meroë, claimed by Egypt, 434, position and importance of its capital, Napata, 435 436, supposed rise to power there of a branch of the Herho family, 437 rule of

ETH

- over Egypt 437-458, expedition of Psamatik II into, 482, war with, finished by Apries, 484
 Ethiopians, marriages of Egyptians with, n. 209 210
 Etiaia, trade of, with Egypt, i 482
 Eudoxus, his statements concerning planetary movements and periods, derived from Egypt, i 300 301
 Europeans alleged appearance of, in Egypt in the time of Menephtah, ii 330 331
 Eusebius, his epitome of Manetho, ii. 8, *quoted*, on contemporary dynasties, ii 6 n
 Evil, views of Egyptians concerning difficult to make out, 316 317, deities of, 300 306
 Exodus (*see* Moses)

- FALCONION**, Egyptian, i 456, 457
 Falcons, Egyptian, i 78
 Farming, i 156 180, ii 87 88
 Fayoum, basin of the, i 31 32, scheme of Amenemhat III for the irrigation of the, 167, ii 161 163; broken obelisk of Usutaten I in the, 149, special deity of the, 172 (*see* Moais)
 Feasts, social, i. 517 552, sacred, ii 139; calendar of, 370
 Fellahin, condition of the, i 155, 479 482 modern less industrious than the ancient Egyptians, i 22
 Ferguson, *quoted*, on Egyptian tombs, i 183, on the mechanical skill displayed in the construction of the Great Pyramid, 208, concerning the temple of Karnak, 231 233 concerning Egyptian houses, 254 concerning the rock-temple of Rameses II at Abu-Simbel ii. 319 320, on the architectural genius of the Egyptians 343 n
 Fish, Nilotic, i 83 85 forbidden to the priests as food 438
 Fish hooks, i 506
 Fishing trade of, i. 531 532, sport of, 539 546
 Fitneh, an acacia so called, i 52
 Flax, cultivation of, i 63

GOD

- Flutes, Egyptian, i 520
 Foits, modes of attacking, i 465 468
 Fowl, domestic, unknown in Pharaonic times, i. 177
 Fowling, trade of, i 531 532, sport of, 540 541, ii 90
 Furniture of Egyptian houses, i 488 490

- GARMOOT** fish, i 84
G Garu or Zalu, Egyptian outpost, ii 227
 Gaza or Gazatu, a city of the Khariu, ii 227, 231, capture of, by Apries, 485
 Gazelle, the i 71
 Gebel e Dokhan, porphyry quarries of, i 92 n
 Gebel el-Mokattam, a mountain of the eastern desert, i 33 n, limestone of, i 91
 Gebel Silsilis, sandstone of, i 91
 Gebel Zabara, emerald mines of, i 94, ii 125
 Gebel-el Zayt, petroleum springs at, i 94
 Gecko, the, i 86 87
 Gems, engraving of, i 484-485
 Gem, i 396 399
 Geometry, Egyptian knowledge of, i 295 296
 Ghizeh, the three great pyramids of, i 189 202 the third pyramid the work of two sovereigns, ii. 113
 Gibelet, pass, i 16
 Gilban, the *Lathyrus sativus* of Pliny, i 60
 Grial river (*see* Bahi Zarafie)
 Girard, M., on the cultivable area of Egypt i 5 n, on the occupation of the Nile valley by sands, 6
 Glass, invention of, i 492
 Glass-blowing, i 492 493
 Goats, breeding of, i 175
 God, views of the Egyptians concerning, i. 314, personification of His attributes or aspects, 315 316, 418; supposed recognition of His true nature, 320 321
 Gods, esoteric views of the Egyptians concerning the, 315 316

GOL

original local character of, 321; amalgamation of, 325, interchangibility of, 330, severally described 322 300, orders of, i 401 403; local triads of 403 404 hymns to, 327, 350 351, 404-405, prayers to, 326, 403 407, sacrifices to the 407 411, animals sacred to the, 411-413; incarnation of, in bulls 413 416, why represented with the heads of forms of animals, 418 festivals and processions in honour of the, 420-423, worship of, in the early period, ii 38, list of, in king Pepi's dedicatory altar, 117 divided into universal and local, 118, personalities and abstractions, 119, introduction of, from the land of Punt, 134, Semitic, admitted into the Pantheon, 181, 387, transpositions of, 398 (see Pantheon)

Gold mines, i 93, 500

Goldsmith, craft of the, i 501 504

Gordon, Col., his exploration of the Nile, i 11 n, 12 n

Goshen, settlement of the Israelites ii n 203 situation of 246

Grabatusa, charioteer of Khitasu, ii 308

Grammar, Egyptian, i 125 131

Granite quarries of, i 92, whence obtained by the kings of the pyramid period, ii 99 n

Grasses, Egyptian artificial, varieties of, i 60

Greece temples of modelled upon those of Egypt, i 237, trade of, with Egypt, 482, commercial intercourse of, with Egypt, ii 466, its prejudicial effect, 508

Greek mercenaries employed by Psammetichus I, ii 461, formation of two permanent camps of, 464, effects of this measure upon Egyptian civilisation, 465 467, removed to Memphis by Amasis, 492 overpowered by the Persians, 500

Greeks, pursuit of study in Egypt by, i 103, 298, 300

Guitars, i 522

HAI

Gyges furnishes auxiliary troops to Psammetichus I, ii 461

HADAD, a refugee in Egypt, ii 414

Hades, Book of, ii 101 n

Hak, the goddess, described, i 38)

Hak, the god, i 400

Hak ma (see Rameses IV)

Hakon, title of Rameses III, ii 367

Hakhab, or Khab city of ii 336 bricks from, containing Menkheprasa carouche, 413

Hail of the Two Nuths, judgment of the dead in the, i 138 139

Hamat, fig tree so called, i 55

Hammamat, quarries of, ii 98, 131, 144, valley of, 125, wells sunk there by Mentuhotep II, 129 inscriptions at, 100, 165, 300, 181

Hand, amputation of the, from the bodies of slain foes, i 474

Hanher, the same as Onuris, which see

Hannu, commander of Sankhkara's expedition to Punt, ii 132

Haisatu, on Lake Nubiana, captured by Thotmes III, i 233 234

Hapi, the Nile god, i 369, one of the four gods of Amenti, i 397

'Happy despatch, the, an Egyptian institution, ii 382

Harem conspiracy against Rameses III, ii 379 380, 404

Harmachus, a name of Horus, i 361, 363

Huper, Song of ho, i 143 144

Harpocrates, a name of Horus, i 361, 363

Harpoons, i, 506

Haps, Egyptian, i, 521

Huas, acacia so called, i 52

Haus papyrus (see Papyrus)

Hasi (Aucses), i, 370

Hasebek (Crocodilopolis), ii 439 n, 460

Hatasu or Hasheps (Ra-ma-ka), queen, name of, ii 217 conjoint reign of, with her elder brother, Thothmes I 218; erases his name

HAT

- from the monuments on his de-
 cease, 219, her harsh treatment of
 her younger brother, 220 assump-
 tion of male titles and attire by,
 220, her temple at Den-ol Bahui
 and other great works, 220-221,
 despatches a grand expedition to
 Punt, 221; acknowledged suc-
 cessors there, 224 admits her
 younger brother, Thothmes III,
 to a share of the throne, *ib.*, her
 end uncertain, 225
- Hatasu Menma, wife of Thothmes
 III., *n.* 254, associated with her
 son, Amenôphis II., 257
- Hawkr, sacred to R., *i.* 344, 411
- Head rest, article of furniture, *i.* 490,
n. 43
- Hebrews, alleged identity of, with
 the Apeiru of the monuments, *n.*
 314 315 (*see* Israelites)
- Hebunmozanath, father of queen
 Hesi, *n.* 383
- Hebun, African tribe, *n.* 312
- Heka, same as Hakt, which *see*
- Heliopolis, special deities of, *i.* 346,
 348, 363 worship of sacred bulls
 at, 415, obelisk of Usutasen I
 at, *n.* 147 148; temple of the Sun
 at, 241, temple built by Ra-
 meses II at, 320, 321
- Helmets, Egyptian, *i.* 445 446
- Hemariozath, foreign name borne by
 the wife of Rameses III (*see*
 Hesi)
- Henâtâ, statue of, *n.* 497
- Hent (*see* Hont)
- Hents, a daughter of Khufu, *n.* 57
- Heptanomis, the, *i.* 25 *n.*
- Heracleopolis Magna (Sutensenen),
n. 438, 439, 460, confederate
 prince defeated by Piankhi at, 440
 Paiva, rival kingdom of, *n.* 122
- Hermionthis, worship of Mentu at,
i. 354, bull worship of, 415 416
- Hermopolis (Sesennu), storm and
 capture of, by Piankhi, *n.* 440
 441
- Hermotybies, soldiers so called, *i.*
 443
- Hes-hor or Pe-hor (Si-Ammon), first
 priest-king *n.* 408 *avalat* *h...*

HIE

- quiet usurpation of the throne,
 409, obtains military successes in
 Syria, *ib.*; his Semitic connection,
 409 410, his titles, 410 Revolves
 the high-priesthood on his eldest
 son, 411 his personal appearance
 and character, 410 411 uncer-
 tainty as to his immediate suc-
 cessor, 411
- Heimokol, or Humankal, a town of
 the Rutu, *n.* 228, 231
- Herodotus his theory of the forma-
 tion of the Nile Valley *i.* 7 date
 of his visit to Egypt, 21 *n.*,
 chronological scheme of, *n.* 5, his
 judgment of Egyptian manners and
 customs, *i.* 427 428, his account
 of a remarkable hereditary succe-
 sion of priests, 430 431, his ar-
 rangement of Egyptian classes, 432
n., on the use of mummied forms
 at banquets, 550; on the number
 of Egyptian cities in the reign of
 Amasis, *n.* 491 *quoted*, on the re-
 ligious character of the Egyptians,
i. 310, on embalming, 514, on
 the chase of the crocodile, 546
- Heroopolis, *n.* 317
- Hesha, campaign of Pepi against
 the, *n.* 103 105, 107
- Hesep, or Hesepti (Manetho's Usa-
 phredus), an early king, *n.* 28,
 tradition concerning, 31
- Hesi, or Isis (Hemariozath), wife of
 Rameses III, *n.* 383
- Hesi-em-kheb, wife of king Men-
 khepi I a, *n.* 413
 , wife of Osakon II, *n.* 428
- Hetau, African tribe *n.* 312
- Hezelnah, negotiation of, with Th-
 hakah, *n.* 450
- Hieratic writing, *i.* 119
- Hieroglyphics, cursive forms of *i.*
 116 then pictorial character, 117,
 representative signs, 118, signa-
 tive signs, *ib.*; determinative signs,
 119 phonetic signs, 120 123, dif-
 ficulties of decipherment, 123;
 mode of arrangement, 124, signs
 for numerals, 124 for gods and
 months, 125, invention of the en-

HIP

- Hierophant, Hierostolistæ, Egyptian priests, i 434, 435
 Hippopotamus, the, i 65; chase of the, 544
 Hitites identified with the Hyksos, ii 191 country and people of the, described, 232 picture-writing of the, ib expedition of Siltis IV against the, 259, their menacing attitude on the accession of Rameses I, 286, masters of Syria in the time of Seti I, 288
 •289, wars of Rameses II with the 303 309 treaty of peace between Egypt and the, 310, import corn from Egypt in a time of scarcity, 329 (*see* Hyksos, Khita, Set)
 Hec, Egyptian, i 159 160
 Hener, on the medicinal plants of Egypt, *quoted* i 63
 Hent, or Hent, wife of Psamatik I and mother of Neco, ii 471
 Hent-mi heb, daughter of Amenôphis III, ii 271
 Hephia, Hebrew name of Apries, ii 484
 Hor or Horus, general of Apries, ii 483, 488
 Hor em heb, title of king Usulfak, ii 69
 Hor em heb, general of Amenôphis IV, ii 277
 Hor em-heb-Menenammon, king (Manetho's Horus), restores the ancient cult suppressed by Kronaton, ii 279 281, conducts an expedition into Ethiopia, 281; his tablets of victory at Silsils, 282, length of his reign, 283
 Horoscopes, casting of, i 304
 Hn-Pasebasha, king, ii 414
 Horse, the, introduced into Egypt by the Hyksos, i 71, ii 203 n, 206 n 215 excellence attained by the Egyptians in breeding, 216 seldom employed in agriculture, i 179 180, special names bestowed upon, ii 358
 Hottetef, son of Menkaura, discovers an important religious document,

HYK

- of Osiris i 358, 361 the question concerning two Horuses, 361, his titles, worship, and names, 362 363 earliest monumental evidence of, ii 38, incarnation of, in kings, 40 41 royal designation of, 84 title of triple conquering, assumed by king Sesi, 108 109
 Horus alleged son of Psamatik I, ii 471 n
 , king (*see* Hor em-heb)
 Hoshea synchronis u of, with Shabak, ii 13, embassy of, to Egypt, 416
 Hotep, meaning of ii 177 n
 Hotep hi ma (*see* Menophthal)
 Houses, dwelling, architecture of, i 248 255 extant example of, erected by Rameses III, 248, peculiar window ornament of 250 n, representations of, 251 254 character of the most ancient, ii 33 34, furniture of, i 488 490, ii 43 160, 355 357, façades of, 180 colonnades of, 160 interior and exterior arrangements of, 354 355 built on piles in the land of Punt 223
 Howara, brick pyramid of i 211 n
 Hu god of touch, i 400
 Hum, king ii 29 significance of the name, 30 succeeded by Senoferu, 46
 Hunig, i 511 546 ii 44, 90, 145, 69, 236 255 351, sculpture relating to, i 277 ii 128
 Huranku (*see* Herimoku)
 Hut-khepi na-sot-p-en na, the throne name of Sheshonk I, ii 419; of Takelut II, ii 420
 Hut na sotep-en Ammon-netor-hakunas, throne name of Takelut I, ii 426
 Hyæna, the, i 66
 Hydulic works on the Nile, ii 161, 165 167
 Hyksos, etymology of the name, i 111 n, deity worshipped by the, 361, no monuments left by the, ii 44 chronology of the 15 17 destruction of the national monuments by the, 23 24, deposed by

IBE

by, indubitable, 184 185, conjectures concerning their nationality, 190. probably Hittites, 191, conquest and devastation of Egypt by, 192, fanatical destruction of temples by, 193. subsequent adoption of Egyptian manners by, 193 194 203 204 the country benefited by their rule, 194 195, duration of the dynasty 198, expulsion of from Egypt, 200 202, 205 207 introduction of the horse and chariot into Egypt by, i 74 ii 203 n 206 n, 215 n.

IBEX, the, i 71

Ibis, Egyptian, i 79 81, sacred to Thoth, 411

Ichneumon, the, i. 67 68, extraordinary stories concerning, 69

Idumæa ravaged by Seti I, ii. 288

Igiana, the, i 80

Illahun, brick pyramid at, i 210 n

Imhotep, king, ii 101

Inaros, a kinsman of Psamatik I, ii 462

India, trade of, with Egypt, i 482

Indigo use of, i 63

Intaglio, peculiar Egyptian use of, i 260

Interpreters, class of, ii 466

Inunam, a town of the Ruten, ii 228, 231

Ioniæ foreign legion of, ii 461

Ipsambul (*see* Abu Simbel)

Intisen a statue of Mentuhotep II, ii 130 tomb of, i 519 stèle of, ii. 137

Iron, how obtained by the Egyptians, i 93 94 1810 employment of, 504 505

Irrigation, i 165 167

Itika, mystic name of Ammon i 326

Iseum, probable site of, i 16 n

Isi nefert, wife of Rameses II., ii 324

Isis, the goddess, connection of, with the myth of Osiris i 358, 367 her name, representations, title and worship, 368 369, earliest monumental evidence of, ii. 38 distinct from Athor, 84, temple to,

KAD

built by Khufu, 56, temple to, at Memphis, 496

Isis, daughter of Amenophis III, ii. 271

queen of Rameses III (*see* Hesi)

Israel, kingdom of, ii 214, cities of, captured by Sheshonk I, ii 422

Israelites condition of, under Thothmes III, ii 244 247 Exodus of, in the reign of Menephthah, 333 336

JACHIN and Boaz, i 229, 243 n

Jaham (Jammia?), a city of the Khariu, ii 227, 231, battle at, 289

Jannas Shepherd king, ii 198

Javelins, i. 461 462

Jehoahaz deposed by Neco, ii 477

Jehonkim, intrigue of Neco with, ii. 480

Jeribolus (*see* Carchemish)

Jerboa, the, i 70; kept as a pet, ii 44

Jeroboam, a fugitive at the court of Sheshonk I, ii 419 420. induces Sheshonk to invade Judæa, 420; and to reduce the refractory cities of Israel, 422

Jerusalem, capture of, by Sheshonk, i 469, ii 121, sieges of, ii 479, 480, 485

Joseph, synchronism of, with Apepi, ii 202 201, 245 246

Josiah, defeat of, at Megiddo, ii 476-477

Juaa, father of queen Taia, ii 261

Judæa invaded by Sheshonk I, ii 421, Neco's arrangements for the government of, 477 revolts against Nebuchadnezzar, 485

Jugglers, i 651

Justice, administration of, i 386, ii 381 383

KA-AB, a son of Khufu, ii 57
Kaan, territory of, ii 104

Kadesh, capital of the Hittites, ii. 228, 231, 233 capture of, by Seti I, 289-290 battle of, between Rameses II. and Hittites, 305 308

KAK

- Kaka, king, n 72
 Kakau, king, meaning of the name, n 30 · tradition concerning, 31
 Kalabshe, temple of Rameses II at, n 320
 Kama, princess, n 178
 Kames (Uot khepi ra), king, n 201, 205
 Kanu, town of, i 140 n
 Karmut, title of Khem, i 326 332
 Kaneser, name of a pyramid built by Amenemhat I, n 144
 Kapes, wife of Takelut I, n 427
 Kapu, Maxyan king, n 37
 Kaibant, battle of, n 453
 Kankamasha (see Carchemish)
 Karnak, great temple of, i 224-233, n 341, southern temple of, i 236 building of Rameses III at, n 377 great tablet of, 238 239 pillared hall of Thothmes III at, 240, hall of columns begun by Seti I, 201, completed by Rameses II, 320, temples to Ammon and Maut, 264, sculptures of Rameses IV, 390, bas reliefs, i 276 n, n 423, Bubastite portico of Sheshonk I, 423, 425, temple restored by Amasis, 406
 Kashi, Egyptian name of the Cushites, which see
 Katu, people so called, n 238
 Keb, name of a pyramid, n 67
 Kebismut, one of the four genu of Amentu, i 397
 Kebtu (see Ooptos)
 Kelbel bahu, Nile dog fish, i 85
 Ken, title of Ra Sekenen III, which see
 Ken or Kun, foreign deity adopted into the Egyptian Pantheon, i 460
 Kemick, *quoted*, on the unprogressive character of Egyptian art, i 289 n
 Kenipat, wife of Sheshonk I, n 418 wife of Osakon I, n 426 wife of Osakon II, n 428
 Kenyan or Karawan, species of dotterel, i 81 n
 Khaboui, eastern limit of empire under Thothmes III, n 236
 Khaia, same as Shuia which see
 Khalt, the goddess, i 399

KHU

- Kha useen, wind so called, i 46 47
 Khai um, latitude of i 13
 Khau, the (Cherethites?), i 111, n 186 nationality of, 230, geographical situation, cities, and people of, 231
 Kheb (see Hukheb)
 Khem, the god, described i 331 334, worship of, in the eleventh dynasty, n 13
 Khem a-f, a son of Klifu, n 57
 Khensut, princess i 529
 Khepi, the sun god, described, i 33 347
 Khepi kaia (see Usutasen I)
 Khesea, tribe of the, n 151
 Khetam (Ltham), n 288
 Klulu (Aleppo), a Hittite city, n 232, 304, king of, at the battle of Kadesh, 308
 Khupusai, Hittite officer, n 308
 Khisap, a Hittite city, n 232
 Kinta or Kieta, the (the Hittites of Scripture), i 111 the only Canaanite nation of Egyptian records, n 230 n (see Hittites)
 Khutisi, war of, with Rameses II, n 301 308, obtains a treaty of peace, 308, 310 marriage of his daughter with the Egyptian king, 311
 Kunu (see Kneph)
 Khun-hetep, priest of king Usurkaf, n 61, rock-ono of, at Beni-Hassan, 154; his governorship 154, 155
 Khuis, or Khonsu, a moon god, described, i 309-371 transported to Bakatan for the cure of a possessed princess, n 398 temple to, at Thebes, 377, 390 401
 Khu, father of queen Ankhes-Merita, n 110
 Khuaten, new capital founded by Amenophis IV, n 275
 Khu-en-ten name adopted by Amenophis IV, n 272
 Kufu (Oheops), king, accession of, n 1), builds the Great Pyramid of Gizeh, 50, 79, hated of after times against, 52 his retreat of, at Wady Maghrah, 54; two expeditions of, into the Sinaitic peninsula, 54 55, identifies himself

KHU

- with the god Khnum, 55, other proofs of his piety, 55 56, his family, 56 57, sarcophagus cf, found in the Great Pyramid, 1 201 inscription of, 363
 Khufuhotep, royal architect, 1 529
 Khumhat, vizier of Amenôphis III, 1 269
 Khut hotep, a pyramid priest, 1 77
 Kings method of recording the reigns of, 1 3, 7 10 early, then uncertain succession, 23 24 lists of, 26 variations in these, 26 general character of their names, 30 earthly parentage of, merged in their heavenly, 24, 100 *n* worshipped as incarnations of Horus, 40 41, 84 first instance of original and throne names borne by, 73 association cf, 146, addressed as gods 173, absolute deification of, 351
 Kip kip, Nubian town, 1 454
 Kish (*see* Kush)
 Kite, Aetolian, 1 79
 Kneph (Khnum) iam headed god, 1 327 330, distinct from Ammon and Khem, 330 331, animal sacred to, 411, temple to, at Elephantine, 242
 Konosso inscriptions &c at, 1 129, 179, 260 *n*, 264, 482, 490
 Koommeh, fort built by Usurtasen III at, 1 156 remains of the temple of Thothmes III at, 242 temple to Totun built by Amenôphis II at 257
 Korosko, inscription of Amenemhat I at, 1 143 *n*
 Kudun mabuk, invasion of Syria by, 1 212
 Kush (Oush) Kish, or Kashi, Ethiopeans, 1 110, not known to Pepi, 1 106, royal sons of, 294 prince of, title of Egyptian viceroys, 338, 391 (*see* Ethiopia)

LABOURING classes, condition of, 1 154-155, 479 482, 1 96, 361

Labyrinth name given to the palace of Usurtasen III, 1 164

LIB

- Laodicé or Laodice, secondary wife of Amasis, 1 492, 498
 Lilib, the fruit of the persica, 1 54
 Land, property in, hereditary, 1 41 tenure of, 1 154 allotted to the military class, 412
 Lapidary, business of the, 1 481-485
 Latopolis (*see* Esneh)
 Latus, a Nile fish, 1 84
 Lead, how obtained by the Egyptians, 1 93 94, rarity of its employment, 504
 Lebanon, timber of, 1 291
 Lobbek, acacia so called, 1 52
 Leka, the, 1 304
 Lenoirant, M., his supposition of a foreign conquest after the close of the sixth dynasty, 1 123 124, his theory of Egypt's maritime empire, 248 251 *quoted*, on Egyptian art, 1 280 *n*, 290 *n*, 291 *n*, 292 *n*, 1 82 83, 115 *n*, 347 *n*; on the religion of the Egyptians, 1 312, 313 418 *n* on the contemporary character of some of Manetho's dynasties, 1 40 *n*, on early hieroglyphic writing, 45 *n*; on the non-existence of Egyptian monuments relating to the Hyksos period 193 *n*, on the character of the military expeditions of Amenôphis III, 263 *n*, on the slave hunts of Rameses II., 313, on the employment of Egyptian captives, 326 *n*, on the collapse of Egyptian civilisation, 508 *n*
 Lentils, cultivation of, 1 164
 Leontopolis (*see* Thmuis)
 Leopard, skin of worn by the high priest, 1 488, 489
 Lepidotus the, 1 84
 Leprosy believed to be communicated by the crocodile 1 83
 Lewis Sn G O, on the testimony of the Greeks to Egyptian literature, 1 134 *n*; *quoted*, on the astronomical tastes of the Egyptian priests, 1 296 *n*, 297 *n*
 Libanus, mount, 1 40 *n*, 41
 Libya, country of, 1 87
 Libyans, invasion of Egypt by, in Menephtah's reign, 1 109, 11

IIM

- 29 war of Rameses III with
e, 370 (*see* Ribu, Tahenna)
estone, Egyptian, i. 91
n, use of, by the ancient Egyp-
ans, i. 62, 512· excellence of the
manufacture, 487
us, i. 66, hunting of, 543 544, ii
69, 268 used in the hunting of
her animals, i. 543 same em-
ployed in religious processions, ii
38
an, African club, i. 458
n, river, i. 40
nature Egyptian character of,
i. 102, 132; peculiarities of style
i. 133 extent and variety of,
i. 55 religious treatises 136 141
ems, 141 144 book of travels,
i. 55 novels, 146 147 autobio-
graphical story of Saneha 147
i. 50 correspondence, scientific
treatises and works on magic,
i. 50 151, pursuit of, as early as
the pyramid period, ii. 91, flourish-
ing state of under the nineteenth
dynasty, 359 360 succeeded by
i. 403, mystic, 431
n, Egyptian i. 535, ii. 170
unds, i. 72 74, 86, 89
ist, varieties of, i. 90
m Egyptian i. 486, 487
is the, i. 56, use of, at feasts,
i. 48, ii. 94 407
niba, river i. 8 n
lira the i. 101 interpretation
of the name, ii. 478
i. 1, nation so called, ii. 330
n, Egyptian, i. 60
uf. the fruit of the caper plant,
59
n (*see* Ruten)
n, temple of Ammon at, found-
ed by Amenophis III ii. 264
completed by Seti I 320, 321
a, dealings of, with Egypt, ii
1, 404
s, i. 521, ii. 168
n
A, the goddess of truth de-
scribed, i. 385 387, associated
with Phthah 336
territory of, ii. 111

MAT

- Maasu, the, ii. 304
Maces, battle, i. 457, 458, cylindri-
cal 523
Madyeh, lake (*see* Marea)
Mafki, or turquoise of Wady Ma-
gharah, ii. 48 n, 76, 166
A gklon the name ii. 181, con-
founded with Megildo, 476
Mgie belati, i. 151 ii. 379, 506
Mahioudyeh emul, i. 28
Miku, the god i. 400
Milouh, same as Merula which *see*
Ma ma (*see* Rameses IV)
Mammisi temples, i. 236, used as
models of Greek temples, 237
Manetho, his history of Egypt, i.
2, 6, its epitomes, 8, his chrono-
logical scheme untrustworthy, 7
9 contemporaneousness of some
of his dynasties 10, 18 19 chro-
nology of his three periods of
Egyptian history, 11 19, worth-
lessness of his traditions concern-
ing the early monarchs, 31 32
quoted, on the conquest and devas-
tation of Egypt by the Hyksos,
192
Manufactures, excellence of Eryp-
tian, i. 483
Maram (Merem), ii. 300 n
Marea or Marcotis, lake, i. 28·
wines of i. 171
Muriette Bey, on the duration of the
Old Empire i. 18 *quoted*, rela-
tive to the second civilisation
122 n
Markati, mystic name of Ammon,
i. 326
Marmun, Libyan king, i. 329 333
Marmarici (Oxyenaca), region in-
habited by the Maxyes, i. 374
Marriage, i. 531, ii. 324, allowed to
priests, i. 430
Martinian, Miss, *quoted*, giving her
impressions of the statues of
Amenophis III, ii. 267
Mashadi Maxyan prince, ii. 374,
375
Misunasha (*see* Maxyes)
Mat interpretation of ii. 417
Mathm (Maten), nationality of the,
ii. 251 n

MAT

- Mat sha, daughter of king Asa
kat, given in marriage to Ptah
ases, ii 6
- Matsuiama Iltite prince, ii 308
- Maut, the goddess, described, i 337
339
- Maut ena Iltite king, ii 280, his
treaty with Seti I, 291
- Maves (Mashamsha), the a tribe
of Libyans i 38 n, ii 113, 29 n,
war of Ramesses II. with the, ii
312, 370, invade Egypt in the
time of Ramesses III 374
- Medicine, plants used in, i 64. p ac-
tice of, 150, 305-306, 527 528
- Medinet-Abou, temples at erected
by Thothmes II and Hatasu i
217 220, ii 218 by Thothmes
III, 242, by Amenophis III,
265 by Ramesses III, 376
pavilion of Ramesses III. at i
248 251, temple court built by
Tuthakha at, ii 458 n, bas relief
of a lion hunt at, i 277; bas relief
of captured princes at, ii 375 n
- Mediterranean, the, volume of water
it receives from the Nile, i 14 23;
eastward current of, 28 its al-
leged encroachment on the Delta
30, not the sea of the Hebrew
encampment 334
- Meziddo, or Maketu, a city of the
Khari, situation of ii 476 n,
battles of, between Thothmes III
and the Iltite king, 228 be-
tween Neco and Josiah, 477
- Mibt en-hont (Meht en-usekh), fa-
mily princes, ii 4 8
- Memnon, vocal statue of, ii 235
266, impression produced by, 267
- Memnonium, the, constructed by
Ramesses II i 220 224, ii 318
(see Ramesseum)
- Memphis Egyptian name of con-
nected with that of Mena, ii 7,
founder of 31 antiquity of, 41
n seat of government of the
fourth and fifth dynasties 68, 67,
of the seventh and eighth, 122,
supposed eight great gods at, i
402, worship of the sacred bulls
at, 414, ii 324; Serapeum of
(see Serapeum), necropolis of,

MEN

- 182, temples of, 330, 337, 381,
ii 320, 451, 456, 470, 481 490,
victory of Miammonut at, 456
memorial of Apries at, 490; sta-
tues of Amasis at, 490, siege of,
by Cambyses, 500 501
- Mena (Mna), dates assigned for the
accession of, ii 12 doubtful
existence of, 26 meaning of the
name, 27, tradition concerning,
30 priests of, 41 n
- Men-nu sat, the, conquered by
Seneferu, ii 48
- Mencleres, Manetho's rendering of
Menkauhor and Menkaura, which
see
- Menclerian branch of the Nile, i
17 n
- Menclaites (Madyeh), lake, i 28
- Menephthah (Hotep hi ma the Am-
menephthes of Manetho), office
held by, under his father, ii 326
accession of, 327, troubles of his
reign, ib insignificance of his
monuments, 328 pacific charac-
ter of his foreign policy, 329,
repels a formidable invasion of
Libyans and then allies, 329 331-
his calamities in connection with
the Hebrew Exodus, 333 336,
not drawn down the Red Sea, 336,
his later troubles, ib, tomb of, at
Thebes, i 212
- Menn or Menhi, the goddess, de-
scribed i 389
- Menkauhor, king (the Mencleres
II of Manetho), accession of, ii
75, portrait of, found in the
Serapeum, 75 76, pyramid of, 76
- Menkau-ia (Mencleres, Mycerinus)
accession of ii 63 builds the
Third Pyramid, 63, 80 sarco-
phagus and coffin of i 191 193,
ii 64, doctrine of the absorption
of the soul in Osiris traced to 64
his character, 65 66 (see Pyra-
mids)
- Menkhepru-ia, priest king, reign of,
ii 413-414
- Menkhepru-ia (see Thothmes III)
- Menkhepru-ia (see Thothmes IV)
- Men-n-ia-ia, a name of Ramesses
XIII, ii 401.

MEN

- Menna, royal charioteer, ii 306
 Men nefe, name of a pyramid ii 107
 Ment hept, kings, ii 127 (*see* Mentu hotep)
 Mentu, the sun god described i 353 354 Annual festival in hon-
 our of, 421; worship of, under the
 eleventh dynasty, ii 133
 Meritu, war of Sihun with the, ii
 70 71 war of Ranuser with the
 73, expedition of king Pep
 against the, 103
 Mentu hotep I, ii 128
 II (Nubkheper, Ra-ueh-ta),
 rock inscription and tablet of, ii
 129, wells sunk by, in the valley
 of Hamiamit, ib; monstrous
 sarcophagus of, ib
 III tablets of, ii 131
 prime minister of Usurtasen I,
 ii 152
 father of Sabakhotep IV, ii
 178 genealogical table of his
 descendants, ib
 Menzaleh, lake i 29
 Mer-ab, royal architect, i 529
 Mer-en-ra, king, accession of, ii
 110; his pyramid, 110; orders
 the construction of docks in the
 Uauat country, 111, his tablet at
 As-suan, ib
 Mer-het, a son of Khufu, ii 56
 Mer-immon, a name of Rameses
 XIII, ii 401
 Meri-aten, wife of king Si-nekht,
 ii 277 n
 Meribpu (Manetho's Miebides), an
 early king, ii 28
 Merna (*see* Pepi)
 Merisankh, wife of Shafu, ii 57,
 tomb of, at Saccarah, 61 exalted
 dignity of, 62
 Meri-pum, seventh son of Rameses
 III, ii 389, supposed to have
 reigned at Heliopolis during his
 brother's Theban rule, 391
 Merkareshu, capture of mercenaries,
 ii 412
 Merne (Dankalal), the kingdom of,
 so called, ii 434
 Merseket, the goddess, described, i
 388
 Meritites, wife of Senefnu and

MOM

- Khufu ii. 16 n, 49, children of
 56 57
 Merula, the god, described, i 378
 379
 Mesopotamia, conquests of Thothme
 III in, ii 223, 231 235 Opera-
 tions of Amenophis II ii 253
 held by Egypt down to the time
 of Amenophis IV 227 n, 278
 conquest of, by Seti I, 293
 limitation of Egyptian supremacy over,
 393, 400
 Metallurgy i 500 507
 Meteltes (Edict), laws, i 90
 Metopion, an Egyptian unguent, i
 62
 Mevdoun, pyramid of, i 183, i
 30 character of the sculptures
 found there, ii 290, its builder, ii
 49
 Mi-amnon Nut, king, connection of
 with Tuhakah, ii 455, his dream
 ib, marches into Egypt, ib
 retakes Memphis from the As-
 syrians, 456 makes additions to
 the temple of Ptah 456 receives
 the submission of the Assyrian
 feudatory princes, 457; returns to
 Napata ib
 Mi-bidus (*see* Meribpu)
 Migdol a Semitic name introduced
 into Egypt, ii 181
 Milukhi, the name, ii 461 n
 Mn a possible reading of the hiero-
 glyph of Khon, 331
 Mitrahemuy, ruins of the temple of
 Rameses II at, ii 322
 Mzdeh, Arab name of the oxyrhyn-
 chus, i 83
 Mizraim, the Hebrew name of Egypt,
 i 25 n its meaning, 101 n
 Mna (*see* Mena)
 Mnevis, the sacred bull of Heli-
 polis, i 415
 Moenis, lake, constructed by Amen-
 emhat III, i 167, ii 161 163,
 area of, i 6, supposed ancient
 pyramid's ii 166
 Molu, travels of, i 145
 Mokatani, quines of, ii 98, 144
 Mokhayt, the so called, i 51
 Momemphus (Mencu), sacred cow
 of, i 416, battle of, ii 401

MON

- Money, use of gold in, *see* for, i 501
 Monitor lizards i 72-74
 Monkeys, kept as pets, i 546 ii 407
 Monuments, chronological deficiencies of the, ii 2 4 contradictory of Manetho, 9 non existence of, for eight dynasties of the early period, i 11 20
 Moon, festivals in honour of the, i 470
 Moon gods, i 369-371
 Mosaic of the ante pyramid period, ii 37
 Moses, alleged indebtedness of, to the Egyptian sacred books, i 104 leads the Hebrews out of Egypt, ii 333 336
 Mummies, pectoral plates of, i 198 age of the, 511 ii, figures of introduced in banquets, 550 551 of cats 77, discovery of that of Antef I ii 128, of queen Aahhotep, 207
 Murt, office of, i 528
 Music and musical instruments, i 520 524, ii 91 92
 Mustabat el-Faraoun, pyramid of Unas, ii 78
 Mut em ut, wife of Thothmes IV, i 261, 269
 Mut no em, no one relative to the reading of Egyptian names ii 283
 Mutu-anthes, a wife of Osarkon II, ii 428
 Mycinus (*see* Menkamu)
 Mysteries, i 424-425, 439

NABO-NASI, the name, ii 418 ii Nabopolassar, despatches Nebuchadnezzar against Neco, ii 478
Naharai (Pidan Aiam), country and people of the, ii 232 233 tablets of victory erected by Thothmes III in 234 cessation of tribute from, 278, reconquered by Seti I, 292 war of Ramesses II against, 309 Pictoglyphic name of, 397 ii (*see* Nehai)
Nalmyeh, sculptures found at ii 489

NEC

- Nahr-el-Kelb rock-tablet of Ramesses II at ii 304
 Nahsi or Nahasu, inhabitants of Northern Nubia, i 109
 Nannut, the name, ii 417 ii father of Sheshonk I, ii 418 son of Osarkon III, ii 428
 — vassal king, ii 438, forced to join in Tanemkhat's revolt, 439, captures Hermopolis, 440 surrenders to Piankhi, 441
 Napata (Gebel Barkal), buildings of Thothmes III at ii 242, shrine of Amenophis III at, 264 position of, 435; adoption of Egyptian manners at, ib, natural wealth of, 436 supposed settlement of a branch of the Herihor family at, 437
 Niphtuhum, the i 101
 Nasakabi, mystic name of Ammon, i 326
 Nation Lakes, valley of the, i 34-36
 Natium, used in embalming, i 94
 Naucratis, foundation of, by Greek settlers, ii 466, 492
 Nausas, the goddess i 400
 Nebhept, the goddess, i 400
 Nebti Sidi, a fruit tree, i 54
 Nebmakhut, a son of Shafra, ii 62
 Nebtesha, the name, ii 417 ii
 Nebta, same as Nephthys, which *see*
 Nebuchadnezzar defeats Neco at Carchemish, ii 479, gains victory over Apries, 486, invades Egypt, 488; suspected to have deposed and executed Apries, 488
 Necherophis, king, tradition related of, ii 31
 Neco, father of Psamtik I, ii 453, non-Egyptian character of the name, 462
 — king, throne rights of, ii 471; constructs two fleets of triemes, 472, attempts an enlargement of the canal of Seti I and Ramesses II, 473 474, despatches an exploring expedition round the entire African continent, 475, invades Syria, 476, defeats Josiah

NEF

- at Migdo, 477 establishes his power as far as Carchemish, 477, arranges the government of Judæa, ib, defeated by Nebuchadnezzar at Carchemish, 479 intrigues with Judæa and Phœnicia against the Babylonian power, 480, his buildings, statues, &c., 481; his wives, ib, thank offering of, to the Grecian Apollo, 476 n; length of his reign, 12
- Nefereh, Nile salmon, i 84
- Nefei, name of Tatkna's pyramid, n 77
- Nefriapria, throne-name of Psamatik I, n 482
- Nefriakri-ia (the Nephelcheres of Manetho) king, n 72 73
- Nefr-asu, name of Unas pyramid, n 78
- Nefri Ietp, i 309
- Nefri-hotep (Shasenes-ia), king, tablets and inscription of, n 179
- Nefri-ka-ia, king of the early period, n 30, tradition relating to his reign, 31
king of the sixth dynasty, accession of, ii 111, his pyramid, 111 112 tablet of, in the Sinaitic papyrus, 112
throne-name of Shabak, n 449
- Nefri-ia-sotep-en-ia (see Rameses IX)
- Nefri-ka-Sokari, king the name of, n 30 tradition concerning, 31
- Nefri-khep-ia, a throne-name of Amenôphis IV, n 272
- Nefri-mat, son of Seneferu, n 49
- Nefrit, queen of Amenemhat II, statue of n 153
- Nefrit an Aahmes, wife of Aahmes n 209, called the wife of the god Ammon, 210; venerated as incestress and foundress of the eighteenth dynasty, 211, associated with her son Amenhotep I, 211, dress of, 352 353
- Nefritani-Mitenmut, wife of Rameses II, n 322, 324
- Nefri-t-kau, daughter of Seneferu, n 49
- Nefrit Tu, wife of Amenôphis IV, n 276

NILE

- Nefri Tum, i 347, 349, 350
- Nefru-ia, daughter of Thothmes III, n 254
- Negrees, Tepe's contingent of, n 103
date of their subjugation, 106; wars against, 203, 303, 313, 376
- Nehai, visit of Rameses XII to, n 397, proposed identification of with Naharaim untenable, 401
- Nehemao, the goddess, described, i 389 390
- Neith, the goddess, described, i 340 341; mystical ideas of the Greeks and Romans concerning, 342
annual festival in honour of, 421
temple at Memphis to, ii 480
- Nekau mencht, statue of, n 497
- Nekht, sor of Khnumhotep, n 155
- Nelumbo, the, i 57 58
- Nena, wife of Sabakhotep IV, n 178
- Neocori, Egyptian priests, i 435
- Nephelcheres (see Nekarkara)
- Nephthys, the goddess, described, i 383 384
- Nepia, god of corn, i 400
- Netakert-mimaut (see Nitocris)
- Neten, wife of king Hehhotep, n 409-410
- Nefer-asu, name of a pyramid, i 76
- Nefri-ia king ii 29
- Nefri-ha-on, a name of Rameses XIII, n 401
- Netpe, variant of Nut, which see
- Nets, fishing and fowling, i 531, 532
- Ni or Nn, believed to be Nineveh ii 234, elephant hunt at, 236, 255
- Nile, the, anciently called Egypt, i 2, the life stream of the country, 7, its sources, 9 course, 11 17 region of cataracts, 15, ancient branches, 17, total length, ib tributaries, 18 19, the annual inundation, its extent, 20 23 its causes, 23 24, its fertilising power (derived from the Abyssinian tributaries, 24 25, proximity to the ancient stone quarries 93 by diabolic works, 105 16", n 161

NIL

- 161, god of the, i 315, 316 399, hymn to the 405 boats of the, 472, 507 510, tradition concerning the ii 31 height of, recorded in the reigns of Amenemhat III and Sabakhotep III, 163 164, 178, joined by a canal to the Red Sea, 207, 316
- Nile Valley, course and extent of the, i 4, 26, sandy tracts, 5 6, 27 productive area of, in ancient times, 6, not originally submerged, 7 ii climate 43 45, fertility and natural resources of ii 12, 25
- Nilometer established at Semneh by Amenemhat III, ii 163 an emblem of Phthah, i 335 and of Osiris, 357
- Nimrod, identified with Namrut, which see
- Nineveh, supposed identity of, with Ni, ii 235 seal of Shabaka's treaty with Sargon found at, 447
- Nishem, or Nuneh, the god, i 400
- Nitocris, only queen accession of, ii 112, completes the Third Pyramid of Ghizeh, 113 singular tradition related of, 114, national disorder after her death, 122 124 (see Mencheres)
- (Netiker nimanu), daughter of Psamatik I, ii 471, 481
- (Seret pi Mentu), wife of Psamatik II, ii 484
- Noblemen, the class of, i 533, servility of, towards the monarch, 105, households of, 533-535, ii 41, costume of, i 536 537 ii 42 43 85 87, 108 169, 352 405 407, wives of i 537 538, daily life of, 538 547, i 89 95 entertainments provided by, i 547 552
- Nofehotep, princess, married to the architect Ti, i 520
- Notemmut, wife of king Horemheb ii 283
- Nubi, same as Nubti, which see
- Nubia, the name of, ii 151 course of the Nile in, i 12 15 desert of, 15 37, included in ancient Ethiopia, 36, people of, 109, not born, early manifestation of Egyptian power in, ii 103, 106, permanent

ORY

- annexation of, under Usurtasen III, 155; commercial intercourse established with, 167, war of Aahmes with, 208 conquests of Thothmes I in, 214-215
- Nubkau-ia (see Amenemhat II)
- Nubi, the god, i 392
- name adopted by king Set, ii 196 (see Set)
- Nuhai, the god, i 400
- Nukieb temple to, ii 295
- Num Khufu, title assumed by Khufu, ii 55, 84
- Nun, god of the primeval waters, i 399
- Nuneh (see Nishem)
- Nut, the goddess of the firmament, described, i 382 383, earliest monumental evidence of, ii 84
- O**BELISKS, invention of, i 216, of Karnak, 227, purely Egyptian creations, 233 largest existing specimens of, 234 their architectural utility, 235, 245, erection in pairs, 245, use of, as early as Khufu's reign, ii 57, of an Antef king, 148 of Apries, 489 of queen Hatshepsut, 221, of Psamatik I, 471 " of Psamatik II (Obeliscus Campanensis) 483, of Rameses II, 32 of Seti I (Flaminian), 295, of Thothmes I, 217, of Thothmes III, (Lutetian) i 234, ii 241, (Cleopatra's needles) i 350, ii 241 of Usurtasen I 147 149
- Officials, the class of, i 433 527 classification of, by Rameses III, ii 368
- Oil, manufacture and uses of, i 61 62
- Olive, cultivation of the, i 167
- Ombos, worship of Sabak at, i 370, buildings of Thothmes III. at, ii 242
- Ori, or An, called Heliopolis by the Greeks i 110 ii
- Onnos (see Unas)
- Onuris, the god, described, i 377
- Orontes, river, i 40, valley of the, seat of the Rutens, ii 231
- Oryx, the, i 71, 72

USA

PLF

- Osakon, the name n 417 n
 Osakon I (Sokhem khepi ia sotepe-
 en ia), adorns the temple of Bast at
 Bubastis, i 382 n, reign of, n
 424; confusion of, with Zerah the
 Ethiopian, 424 425, character
 and portrait of, 425, alleged con-
 test between his two sons for the
 succession, 426
 II (User ma ia sotepe en Am-
 mon), probable coincidence of
 his reign with the expedition of
 Zerah the Ethiopian, n 427 his
 mother perhaps an Ethiopian prin-
 cess, ib his three wives and
 family, 428
 king of the twenty third dynasty,
 n 429 n
 vassal king of the Eastern Delta,
 n 437, 439, 442
 Oscans, supposed Egyptian rendering
 of, n 515
 Osoid figures, i 244 245, pillars, n
 217
 Osiris, sun-god, i 354, animals
 sacred to, 82, judgment of the
 dead by, 138, 317 319, 355 dead
 person so called 140 n, titles,
 character, and name of, 355 356;
 his forms and emblems, 356 357;
 legends relating to, 357 360, 367;
 local worship of, 360, festivals in
 honour of, 420 421, earliest monu-
 mental evidence of, n 38 temples
 to, 295, 377, 495
 • Osiris Aah, i 357
 Osiris Phthah, temple at Memphis to,
 n 451
 Othoes, Manethonian king, n 100
 Oxyrhynchus, the, i 83
- PA** AMMON, city of n 317
P Paphnyia, festival so called, i
 429 n
 Pachnan (see Apachnas)
 Pacis, variant of Bicis, which see
 Paphan Aiam (see Naphan)
 Pabenuka, an official of king Nefer-
 aikar, n 73
 Painting, primitive, i 247, 251; cha-
 racter of, i 285, 518, n 428;
 colours used in, i 286 288, its
- effectiveness for wall decoration,
 288 289
 Panika, a Hittite city, n 232
 Palestine, i 3), invasion of, by
 Sheshonk I, ii 422 by Zerah the
 Ethiopian, 426 by the Scythians,
 468 470
 Palettes, Egyptian, i 519
 Palm trees, Egyptian, i 17 50
 Pa mai, king n 429
 Panopolis (Chemmis, Chemmo), city
 of the god Khem i 333
 Panbesa, letter of, describing the city
 of Iamnis, n 317
 Panodorus, supposed correction of
 Manetho's figures by, n 7
 Pantheon, modifications of the, at
 different periods n 38, 81, 117
 120, 138 139, 171 173, 177, 181
 348 350, 506
 Paper, manufacture of, from the
 papyrus, i 55
 Pa phthah, city of, n 317
 Papyrus, or byblus, the, i 55 used
 medicinally, 64
 Papyrus, Great Harris, i 116 n, n
 378 of Ptah-hotep, 77, 91 93
 Magical, 401 n, 490, first Salier,
 185 n., Turin, 380 n, its chrono-
 logical defects, 3 4; its list of
 early kings 26 comparison of its
 figures for the kings' reigns with
 those of Manetho, 511 513
 Piquin, king of Psaphis, n 457
 Pa Ra, city of, n 317
 Pa Ramessu, city of, probably the
 Ramesses of Exodus, ii 316
 Parih, king of Punt, n 224
 Pa salua, town thought to have
 been built by king Salua, n
 72
 Pa sebensha, king, n 414
 Pasht, same as Basht, which see
 Pastophori, Egyptian priests, i 434
 Patasu, the, n 304
 Pathusim, the, i 101
 Pa tum (Pitium, Hieropolis), n
 317
 Paul, St., monastery of, i 31
 Peasants (see Fellahin)
 Pectoral plates, i 498
 Pefnabast, vassal king, n 438, 441
 Pefanact, statue of, ii 497

PEH

- Pe hor (*see* Her-hor)
 Pehi as part of a throne name, ii 285
 Pelusai, supposed Egyptian rendering of, ii 515
 Pelusiac branch of the Nile, i 17
 Pelusium, the frontier guard of Egypt on the north east, ii 450 n, destruction of Sennacherib's army at, 151, defeat of Psamatik III. at, 499 500
 Pemphôs, a king alluded to by Lactantius, ii 29
 Penta-om, song of, i. 141-142, ii 307, 308 n, 359
 a conspirator against Ramesses III, ii 380
 Pepi, king, accession of, ii 102, his designation of Merneptah, 102 his long reign, 102-103, chastises the Mentu, 103, marches against the Amu and the Herusha, 103, his negro contingent, 103 104 makes a second campaign in boats, 105, his pyramid and other works, 107, his titles, 108-109, his glories partly due to his ministers, 109, his wives and family, 110, dedicatory altar of, 117 118
 Pepi-Nekht, minister of Pepi, ii 109
 Peisea, tree, i. 58 64
 Persia, hostility of, excited against Egypt, ii 494 invasion and conquest of the country by, 499 501
 Petasis, vassal king of Athubis, ii 437, 442
 Ptahmut, a deity, ii 118
 Petroleum, a product of Egypt, i 91
 Petii, a Libyan people, ii 113
 Petubastes (Pet si-bast), king, ii 429 n
 vassal of Esarhaddon, ii 453
 Pharaoh's cat, Arab name of the ichneumon, i. 68 n
 Pharaoh's hen, vulture so called i 79
 Pharaohs (*see* Kings)
 Pharmuti, the month, ii 227
 Philæ, temples of, i 246 300, 369
 ii 483, inscriptions at, 264, 482, 490
 Philistines, suggested identity of, with the Fuyusata, ii 515
 Philon, the shepherd, ii 190 n

PIA

- Phoenicia metal made of, with Egypt, i 91, subjugation of, by Psamatik I, ii. 468, war of Apries with, 487, connection of, with Cyprus, 493
 Phoenicians not shepherds, ii. 190
 Phthah, the god, described, i 334
 330 earliest monumental evidence of, ii. 30, 38, figure of, i. 261
 267, wife of 330 Apis, incarnation of, 415, his temple at Memphis, 336 337, ii 320, 321, 328, 470, 481, at Thebes, 241, king Pepi's altar to, 117-118
 Phthah Sokari and Phthah-Sokari-Oms, special form of Phthah i 335, chapel to ii. 456
 Phthaphis, prince, his 'Book of Egyptian Wisdom,' i. 107 n
 Physicians, laws relating to, i 605, specialism of, 306, 527 528
 Piankhi, son of Herhor, ii 411
 uncertain whether he held the crown, 112
 Piankhi (Pianchi), king, addressed as Horus, i 363 obtains sovereign power at Napata, ii 430, establishes a suzerainty over all Egypt, 430, 438 thought to have been a descendant of Herhor, 437; list of his vassal-kings 437
 438, revolt of Tefnekht and other badities against him, 439, overpowers the rebels, 440
 443 grants a general amnesty, 443; closing passage of his inscription, ib n
 — a descendant of Bocchoris, ii 463
 Pigs, employed in treading corn, i 76 156 n, 162 n. breeding of, 176, regarded as unclean, 513
 Pimut I, priest king, marries a Rameside princess, ii 412, sends his son Men-kheperia, to quell disaffection at Thebes, 413, revokes the edict of banishment against the Ramesides, ib
 II ii 414
 Pipes, musical, i 520 521
 Pison, royal architect, i. 529
 Pithon, Sais settlement under Menophthah at, ii 329 (*see* Patun)
 Planets, occultations of, noted by the

PLA

- Egyptians, i 299, results arrived at regarding their motions and periods, 299 301
- Plato's arrangement of Egyptian classes, i 432 n
- Pliny, *quoted*, on the dependence of Rome for corn supplies on Egypt, i 153 n, on the killing of Apis bulls, 414 n; on the commerce of Egypt, 482 n, on Egyptian linen coislets, 487 n on the invention of glass, 492 n
- Plouton, Egyptian, i 157 158
- Plover, Egyptian, i 82
- Pluralities, earliest example of, ii 66
- Plutarch, *quoted*, on the meaning of the name Ammon, i 322 n on the meaning of the name Kneph, 328, on the identification of Pithah with Hephaistos 331, on the meaning of the name Isis, 342 on the Egyptian form of the name Osiris 356 on the explanation of the Osiris myths 359 n on the supposed identity of Isis with Athor, 367 n on the connection of Isis with the Dog-Star, 369 n, on the sacred character of sheep 411 n on the inauguration of a new Apis bull, 415 n; on the origin of the annual worship 417 n on the character of the Paamylia, 420 n on the Egyptian mysteries, 426 n
- Pottery, Egyptian, character of, i 132
- Polk-axe, Egyptian, i 456, 457
- Polygamy, prohibited to priests, i 439, unknown to the people 552 introduction of, by Rameses II, ii 394
- Polytheism, Egyptian, essential monotheistic substratum of, i 315 325 gradual growth of, from local worships, 321
- Poole Stuart on the duration of the Chaldean Empire, ii 18
- Porcelain, manufacture of, i 497 499
- Porphyry quarries, i 92
- Pottery, i 493 500
- Poultry raising of, i 177 178
- Prayers, examples of, i 320 327, 406
- Priests, astronomical tastes of, i 296 n colleges of, 419; hereditary, 430, ii 408; allowed to serve in

PSA

- the army, i 431, various grades of, 433 435, then perfect working organisation, 435 endowments and other emoluments, 435 437 obligations with respect to personal cleanliness and food, 437 439, attire, 439 441, women not admitted to their order, 441 442; perpetual maintenance of, in connection with individual kings ii 41, 351 power vested in the, a cause of political decline, 388 389, then encroachment on the royal power strikingly manifest in the reign of Rameses IX, 393 395 usurpation of the throne by the, 408 409 chutes granted them by Apries, 490
- Prisoners of war, treatment of, i 472 474, 478
- Prosôpis, nome of, battle fought there between Mnephtah and a Libyan coalition, ii 332
- Proto Doric columns (*see* Columns)
- Psamatik I (Psammetichus), feudal-tory ruler of Sais, ii 461, allies himself with Gyges against his suzerain, ib his victory at Memphus and proclamation as lord of all Egypt, ib; supposed Libyan descent of, 462 463, his personal appearance, 463 his marriage with an Egyptian princess, ib, establishment of Greek mercenaries at Bubastis, ib secession of his native warriors, 464 stories of his spirit of scientific inquiry, 465, besieges and reduces Ashdod, 467 468, imposes the Egyptian yoke upon Phœnicia, 467 menaced by a Scythian horde, 469 470, his buildings and other works, 470, enchorial system of writing invented in his reign, 471, his family, ib, throne name of, 482
- II (Psammis of Herodotus), length of his reign, ii 12, accession of, 461 unfinished Ethiopian war of 482 483, his reliefs and other works of, 483 484, his wife and children, 484
- III. (Ankh-ka-ka), length of his reign, ii 12, accession

PSA

- of, 498 defeated at Pelusium by Cambyses, 499 500, besieged at Memphis, 500, executed by Cambyses, 501
 Psammus (Psamt), king, ii 429 n.
 Pshent, crown, i 338
 Psylli, the ii 293 n
 Ptah as a *protégé* of Menkaura, ii 66 equally favoured by Aseskaf, whose daughter he marries 66, plurality of offices held by, 67
 Ptah-hotep, the 'Book of the Precepts' of ii 77, 91 93
 Pterophori Egyptian priests, i 435
 Punt, the Holy Land of, locality of, ii 131 132, expedition of Sinuh-kara to, 132 134, introduction of gods from 134, 138 expedition sent by queen Hatshepsut to ii 221 224, bas-reliefs commemorative of the event 224 commerce of Ramesses III with, ii 378
 Purusata name of a people, ii 371, identification of, 510
 Pylons, i 220
 Pyramids, tentative advances in the art of building i 183 189; the germ of the, ii 35 ambition of kings to build 52 53 descriptions of those of Mejdun, i 185 ii 35, of Saccara, i 186, ii 35 36 of Ghizeh, i 189 202, object of their construction, 203 206, peculiar adaptation of their interior passages for mortuary purposes, 205; their merits, technical and aesthetic, 206 210, impressions they produce upon visitors, 209, reckoned by Greece and Rome among the seven wonders of the world, ib; ill-repute in after times of their builders ii 52, physical sufferings involved in their construction 52 53; not always the tombs of kings, 79 n, pyramids of brick i 210; with two inclinations, 211, truncated, ii 78, 170 absence of sculptures from the exterior surfaces of 342 of Amenemhat I, 144, 145, of Aseskaf, 67 of Assa, 77 of Khufu, i 197 202, ii 50 52; of Menkauhor, 76 of Menkaura, i 189-194, ii 65, 113, of Meremne, 110, 111;

RAM

- of Neferankara, 73, of Neferkara, 111 of Pepi, 107; of Ranuser, 73 74, of Sahura, 71 72 of Shafra, i 194-197 ii 59 60 of Teti, 101, of Unas, 78, of Usutkaf, 69, appropriations of, 367, 391
 Pythagoras, alleged indebtedness of, to Egyptian science, i 295, 297
 QODESII perhaps identical with Kadesh, i 145 n
 Quivers, i 461
 Quinat, memorial tablet of Thothmes IV at, ii 259
 Old, Ramesseum at, ii 295
 RA, the rising sun, i 144 n, the sun god, described, i 342 346, earliest monumental evidence of, i 30, 38 bull incarnations of, i 410 the royal title 'son of Ra,' ii 61, 84
 Ra-an-kheperu (*see* Amenôphis II)
 Raamses, temple to Sutech at, ii 377 (*see* Pa-Ramessu)
 Rabsura Hittite general, ii 308
 Ra-hem-Sementet, king named in the tale of Karna, ii 29
 Rakama (*see* Ramaka)
 Ra-khu-en-sotep-en-ra (*see* Siptah)
 Ram sacred to Kneph, i 329
 Ramaka or Rakama Rameside princess, wife of king Pinetem, ii 412
 Ra-ma-ka (*see* Hatshepsut)
 Rameses or Ramessu I (Ramessu I), accession of, ii 281, name and origin of, 285 swages worn in Syria, 286, representation at Karnak of his coronation, ib his tomb in the Biban-el-Moluk, 287
 II, accompanies his father, Seti I, in his campaign against the Tahennu, ii 293, honour paid by, to the god Sabak, i 376 n, his royal catalogue, ii 25 n, 26 representative of two rival houses, 300 early participation of, in the government, ii 300 301; length of his reign, 301, his throne-title, 302, exaggerated estimate of his

RAM

military capacity, 302 303 his wars with the negroes and Ethiopians, 303 with the Hittites, 303-309, his signal deed of valor, i. 141, ii. 306 307; his treaty of peace with the Hittites, 310 311, marries the daughter of Kintash, the Hittite king, 311 312, his later African wars, 312, slave hunts of, 312 large number of his captives, 312 313 his plan of locating them, 313 314, employments to which he put them, 315; completes the 'Great Wall' commenced by Seti I, ii. 315 and the 'Great Canal, 316, list of cities built by, 316 317, his capital, Tanis, 317 his temple at Thebes, i. 220 222, 318, rock temple at Abu Simbel, ii. 318 320; and other great works, 320, his obelisks and colossal statues, i. 223, ii. 321 322, the handsomest of Egyptian monarchs, 322 his fifty-nine sons and sixty daughters, ib., his long life and reign, 323; his wives, 324, the first introducer of polygamy into Egypt, ib. his affection for his son Shaemuas, 324, 325, summary of his character, 325 326 advances a claim to absolute deification, 351, his fourteen sons directing an attack upon a fort, i. 464

Rameses III (Hak On, Ra user ma meriamon) associated with his father, ii. 367, the Rampsinitus of the Greek historians, 368; makes a new arrangement of the official classes, 368 369, wages war with the Saian, a Shasu tribe, 369 370, with the Libyans, 370 with the great confederacy of the Tanuana, Shauten, Shekasha, Tulsha, Uashesh, Pusuata, and Tekaru, 371 373, routs an invading force of Maxyes, 374, marches against the Ethiopians and negroes, 375, restores the Egyptian dominion in Syria, ib.; builds the temple of Ammon at Medinet-Abou, 376 his pavilion there, i. 248-251, minor temples

RAM

of, ii. 377 constructs a reservoir in Aina, 377, plants trees over the country, ib. peaceful condition of his kingdom, 377 378, encouragement given by him to mining and trade 378; Harem conspiracy against him, i. 527, ii. 379 383, 401, his domestic history, 383 his personal appearance and character, 383 385, caricatured by contemporary satirists, 385, 404 his tomb and sarcophagus, ib. his death the closing event of Egypt's prime period, 386, honor paid by, to the god Sabak i. 376 ii. worship of Bast by 382 presents of, to temples 437 ii. lion hunt of, i. 513 ii., number of his children, ii. 383, his description of the disorders following Menephtah's death, 337 of his father's administration, 365 366

Rameses IV (Hak ma and Ma ma) associated by his father, ii. 383 unimportant reign of, 390

V (Ammon-hi khopeshef), usurpation of, ii. 390, his tomb and inscription, 391

VI, reign of ii. 391 astronomical ceiling discovered in his tomb, ib.

VII, reign of, ii. 392

VIII (Seti-hi khopeshef) reign of, ii. 392

IX (Nef ikara sotep en ia) bu glarious outrage of the royal tombs during his reign, ii. 392 393, priestly encroachment on his power, ib. 395 testifies gratitude to the high priest, 395

X (Khepi ia ma Sotep en-ia and Ammon hi khopeshef), ii. 396

XI (Sesha-en-ia Meriammon) ii. 396

XII (User-ma ia Sotep en ia), reign of ii. 396 story of his marriage with a princess of Bakhtan 396 401, i. 371 (see Bakhtan)

XIII, names, monuments, and reign of, ii. 401

Ramesseum or Memnonium, the of Thebes, i. 220 223 the great colossus in the, 223 224, com-

RAN

- menced by Seti I, ii 295 completed by Rameses II, 318
 Ra-n mât (*see* Amenemhat III)
 Rannu goddess of the harvest, i 400
 Ra n usei, king (An), accession of, ii 73 makes war against the Mentu, ib, his titles, ib built the middle pyramid of Abousir, subsequently plundered by the Mohammedans, 73 74, length of his reign 74 splendid tombs of his time, 74 75
 Raphia, battle of, ii 447
 Ra Sakenen I. and II., discovery of their tombs, ii 199
 III forced into war with Apepi, ii 199 200
 Ra-sokhem khu tauî (*see* Sabakhotep III)
 Ratatf, king (Manetho's Ratoises), ii 57
 Ra-nsér-ma Sotep en-ra Ramessu, Meriamen, full title of Rameses II, ii 302
 Rawlinson, Sir II, the first to notice Usuhaddon's scheme of government for Egypt ii 452 n
 Red Sea, distance of, from the valley of the Nile, i 32 n Egypt's defence on the east, 38, encampment of the Hebrews by the, i 334
 Redesieh, temple at, ii 295
 Rehoboam, synchronism of, with Shishak, ii 13 surrender of 421; supposed sculptured representation of 423 (*see* Sheshonk I)
 Religion, exposition of, contained in the 'Ritual of the Dead, &c., i 140 its mystical character, 137, 139, excessive regard of the Egyptians for, 310 312, exotic and esoteric forms of, 313, doctrines of, on the nature of God and the immortality of the soul, 314 321; its polytheistic character the result of local worship, 312 322, essential monotheistic substratum of 315, 325; place of the sun in, 342; condition of, at different periods, ii 38 41, 84 85, 117 120 198 139, 171 174, 177, 181, 347 351, 505 ceremonial observances of, 404 420, reform of,

SAA

- at emptied by Amenophis III and IV, ii 262 263, 273 275
 Repa, the goddess, i 399
 Reshu or Reseph, foreign god adopted into the Egyptian Pantheon, i 400
 Respiations, Book of the (*see* Saia i Sinsin)
 Rhampsinitis, Greek rendering of Ramessu-pa nutei, a popular appellation of Rameses III, ii 368
 Ribu or Labu, sometimes called Tabenu, identified with the Libyans, i 108
 Rato, the goddess, i 400
 'Ritual of the Dead, antiquity of, ii 39, sketch of the, i 136 139, said to have been composed by Thoth, 372
 Rock sepulchres, columns of, i 212 213
 Rock temples, improvements of Rameses II in the construction of, ii 320
 Rohan, visited by Hannu, ii 133
 Rokhama, Arab name for the *Pallu per enopter us*, i 79
 Rome, dependence of, on Egyptian cereal produce, i 153, appropriation of Egypt's architectural treasures by 233, obelisks at, 234 statue of the Nile at, 22 n, 57 n
 Rosetta, bar across the Nile at, i 28
 Royin, the, affluent of the Atbara river, i 19
 Russel, Dr, on the effects of the Khamseen wind, *quoted*, i 40
 Ruta, mystic name of Ammon, i 326
 Rut-immon, king, expels the Assyrians from Egypt, ii 454, defeated by Ashurbanipal, 455
 Ruton, Rutenna, or Luten, i 111, country and people of the, ii 291, 233; victories of Thothmes III. over the, 233, of Seti I, 289, war of Ilchou with, 409

 SA, god of taste, i 400
 Saa-nekht, king, ii 277
 Saaru, identification of, with the inhabitants of Mount Seir, ii 370

SÂB

- Sabaco (*see* Shabak)
 Sabak, same as Savak which *see*
 Sabak-hotep I (Ra-khu-tau), ii 177
 II, ii 178
 III (Ra-sohem-khu-tani), inscription of, recording the height of the Nile, ii 178
 IV (Ra-sokhem-sut-tau), his statues, ii 178, descent and family of, ib
 V (Sha-nefer-ia), inscription and statue of, ii 180
 VI (Sha-ankh-ia), memorial of, ii 180
 VII (Sha-hotep-ia), ii 180
 Sabak-nefer-ia, sister and associated queen of Amenemhat IV, ii 166 166
 Sahu or Abeba, a favourite of king Teti, ii 101
 Saccara, character of the sculptures found at, i 290 tomb of Ti at 529, ii 72 n, 74 75 81 pyramid of, i 186, ii 35 36 its table of early kings, 26
 Sacrifice, objects of and animals employed in i 408 410 mode of performing, 410 411
 Saf, a deity, ii 84
 Safflower, use of, i 63
 Saf-hotep, son and head architect of Khufu, ii 50, 57
 Sakhza, earrings so called, i 84
 Sahara, the, i 7
 Sa-hathor king, ii 180
 Sakhia, king (perhaps Manetho's Sephes), accession of ii 70, war against the Mentu, 70 71, pyramid of, at Abousir, 71 72 his worship there 72
 Su-an Smsu (the Book of the Resurrections), i 140 said to have been composed by Thoth, 373
 Sakh (or Upper Egypt), i 25 n
 Said, Ptolemy i 28
 Sulois, convertibility of soldiers into, i 450, 470
 Sais, special gold of, i 340 supposed burial of Nectanebus, ii 481, statues of Psamatik II. and the goddess Neith at, 481 temple to Neith at, 495, remains of, 499 n

SCU

- Saites (*see* Set)
 Satic branch of the Nile, i 17 n
 Sakti the, ii 143, war of Amenemhat I with, 186
 Saliu, the affluent of the Atbara river, i 19
 Salmon, Nile, i 84
 Samosuchus tree, i 62
 Sandals, i 536, ii 87, 116, 130, 351, 407
 Sandstone Egyptian i 91
 Saneha story of, ii 143 n, 146, 147 150, 173
 Sankh-karia, king, ii 127, inscription of, narrating the expedition to Punt, 131 133
 Saptel or Sepum, treaty of, with Rameses I, ii 286 304
 Sapt, foreign deity adopted into the Egyptian Pantheon, i 400
 Sarabit el-Khadim, tablets at, ii 153, 165, 265, 271 n; turquoise mines of, 377
 Sarapama, Hittite city, ii 232
 Sarcophagi, i 513; of queen Ankhnesneferaptra, ii 129 of Cheops, or Khufu i 201 of Mencheus, 191 193 ii 64 of Menephthah, i 212 n of Menphota II, ii 129 of Sakhara, 71 of Seti I, 296
 Sudimians, supposed Egyptian rendering of ii 511
 Sargo, defeats Shabak at Raphia, ii 447
 Satamo, daughter of Amenophis III, ii 271
 Sati, the goddess, described, i 339 340
 Savak, the crocodile-headed god, described i 376 377 his rank in the Pantheon, ii 172, 177
 Saw, Egyptian, i 481, 495
 Scarabaei different forms of, i 315
 Schools, public i 553 554
 Scorpion, the, i 90; how killed by the solpuga species, 91
 Scribe, profession of the, i 525, 553
 Sculpture, Egyptian (1) statuary, its peculiarities and faults i 261 267 its architectonic nature, 267, cases of its deficiencies, 270 272 (2) in relief and intaglio, 273 285, historical survey of the art,

SCY

- i 289 292 mechanical processes employed in, 515, cases of departure from conventional rules 11, 517, primitive, n 36 38 (*see* Statues, Bas-reliefs)
- Scythians, great irruption of into Western Asia n 468, capture of Ascalon by 469
- Sea fights, i 471
- Seb, the god, described, i 375
- Seba, place alluded to in Hannu's narrative n 133
- Sebennytic branch of the Nile, i 17
- Scheicheres, king, probably fictitious n 69
- Sedjra shrine of Amenôphus III at, n 261
- Seengâ, an oil plant, i 61
- Se'kl, goddess of wisdom, i 391
- Schel, island of, inscription at, i 38, tablet of Neferhotep at, n 170
- Sen, Mount, n 370 (*see* Saaru)
- Sekar, the god, i 400
- Sekhet, possible identity of with Bast, i 380 n temple to at Beni-Hassan, n 275, at Aiadus, 468
- Selk same as Seik which *see*
- Sem goddess of the west, i 399
- Sembitê the, n 465 n
- Semempses, king, n 23, tradition concerning, 31
- Semites migration of, into Egypt, n 151 180 181 their influence on the Egyptian language and religion, 181 195, 387
- Semitic languages, connection of, with Egyptian, i 115, 126, 127
- Semuch, fort built by Usutasen III at, n 156, statue of the same in much said to have been erected there 157, Nilometer established by Amenemhat III at, 163 remains of the temple of Thothmes III at, 212, inscribed tablet of Amenôphus III at, 261
- Sennôer, royal architect, i 529
- Sennut, architect of queen Hatshe, monument erected to n 221
- Seneb, goddess of childbirth, i 400
- Seneferu, king, accession of, n 46, titles assumed by, 40 n, 47, 48, tablet of, 48, war of, with the

SET

- Mena-nu sit, 48, 185 length of n 16 gn, 49
- Senka a or Senkareh, identification of, n 235 n
- Sennacherib marches against Tukuhah, n 150, his army destroyed at Pelusium, 451
- Senta, king, meaning of his name, n 30
- Sepa family, statues of, n 37
- Sepnes (*see* Sakura)
- Septim (*see* Sape)
- Serapion of Memphis the burial place of the Apis bulls, i 415 n 324 325 his chief monument of king Menkareh found in the, 75
- Serbôus lake, i 21
- Serct pi Mentu (*see* Nitocris)
- Seik, the goddess, i 400, connection of Isis with, 36
- Sesame plant, the, i 61, 62
- Sesbi, memorial of victory of Seti I. at, n 293
- Sesennu (*see* Heriopolis)
- Seser (i.e.) in Setep en Ammon (*see* Seshonk II)
- Sesha en ra Meriammon (*see* Rameses XI)
- Sesostus, army of, i 415 n, 449, 450 the original of, n 157 158; origin of the name, 276 n Colchian colony of, 278 n
- Set (Saites), the first of the Shepherd kings, n 6 name of, identical with that of the chief Hittite deity, 191, 199 n era of, 194 195 his rule over Egypt, 196; adopts the name of Nubti, ib., his title of Aahpehti, ib., length of reign, 197
- Set or Su'ech, a principle of evil, his connection with the myth of Osiris, i 358, 360; worship of, 361, his names, titles, and forms, 391 392, earliest monumental evidence of, n 38 worship of, 285, alternate use and fall of 347 350, obliteration of his emblems from the monuments, i 317
- Set hi khopshes (*see* Rameses VIII)
- Sethos, Egyptian commander, n 450
- Seti I (Seti Meriptah), a worshipper of Set, i 391, his wars with

SEE

the Shasu in 287-288 with the Khariu, 288-289; with the Rutu, 289 with the Khita 289-290 concludes a peace with the Hittite king, 291 cuts timber in Lebanon, ib, invades Libya, and vanquishes the Tahennu, 292-293; wages war in Ethiopia, 293, builds the Hall of Columns in the temple of Karnak, 294 his Rameseum temple, tomb, and other artistic works, 295-296, his care for the water supply of the mines, 296-297 supposed to have commenced a canal between the Nile and the Red Sea, ib his table of kings at Abydos, 298, his personal appearance 299, his religious zeal, 299-300 his family, 300, associates his son, Ramesses, 301, length of their reigns, ib, eastern frontier wall commenced by, 304, 315, colossi of, erected by his son, 322

Seti II (Seti Menephthah), struggle of with the pretender Amosis, n 336 monuments of, 337, his personal appearance, ib, succumbs to Siptah, another pretender, 338

Setnaui, Tale of, legend from the, 376

Setnekht, king, birth and parentage of unknown, n 366 brief reign of, 365-366, appropriates his predecessor's tomb 367

Set Nubti, worship of, by the Hyksos n 194

Settite, the, an affluent of the Atbara river, 1 19

Seyil, an acacia so called, believed to be the 'shittim wood' of Scripture, 1 52

Shabak, name of a pyramid, n 71

Shabak, the name, n 415 n

Shabir or Sabaco, Ethiopian king date of his reign n 438 n conquers Egypt from Bocchoris, 415, transfers the seat of dominion from Ethiopia to Egypt, 416, receives an embassy from Hoshea ib defeated by Sargon, the Assyrian monarch, 447, his treaty with the Assyrians, ib throne name of, 449

SHU

Shabutok, the name, n 445 n

Shabatol, king, his journey of homage to Sargon, n 418-419, memorials, personal appearance, and throne name of 419

Shadoof, or hand-swipe, 1 103

Shadunus or Khamis, priest, son of Amenophis II., n 257 favourite son of Ramesses II., 324-325 a name of Ramesses XIII n 40

Shaf Khufu a son of Khufu, n 57

Shafra (Khafra, Chepre Chabyses), accession of, n 57, personal appearance of, 58-59 builds the Second Pyramid, 59, 79 and probably the temple of the Sphinx 60, titles assumed by, 60-61 statues of 81

Shaf-Senefertu, grandson of Senefertu, n 49, 50

Shahotep I (see Sabakhotep VII)

Shakutia (see Usutisun III)

Shakhepru (see Usurtasen II)

Shakama (Shakm), n 309 n.

Shallish, 1 85

Shanefet, name of a pyramid, n 110

Shanefet I (see Sabakhotep V)

Shanina, a Hyksos city, probably the Hebrew Samaria, n 202, 231

Shartana, native so called, 1 350 employed in the Egyptian army, 314, 333

Shauler n 212

Shauashatakata, mystic name of Ammon, 1 326

Shutei (Shutia) n 311-371, supposed identification of 5 1

Shutisra (see Nebhotep)

Shutia (see Thothmes IV)

Shuti, the people so called, 1 111, n 186, etymology of the name, 1 111 n; how attracted to the Delta, n 187; campaign of Prince Amenophis against, 255 proclamation of, in the time of Seti I, 288, settlement of, by Menephthah, on the pasture lands of Pithom, 329; war of Ramesses III with the, 369

Shaw, Dr on elevation of soil in Egypt, quoted, 1 91 n

Sheat, tube of the, n 151

SHE

- Sheep, Egyptian, i. 70, breeding and use of, 175 wild, 71 sacred to Kneph, 411, forbidden as food, 438
- Sheklusha, a people, ii. 330, 371, identification of, 514
- Semik tribe of the, ii. 151
- Sherti, a garment, i. 324, 439, 530
- Shepanput, wife of Psamatik I, ii. 463, 471
- Shepherds, two dynasties of, established in the Eastern Delta concurrently with the thirteenth, ii. 182, not after Apophis, the last Hyksos monarch, 188 (*see* Hyksos)
- Sheseskaf, a variant of Aseskaf, which *see*
- Sheshach, mystical spelling of Babel ii. 417 n
- Sheshonk I (Shishak), erects statues to Bst, i. 382 n, Bubastite ancestry of, ii. 418, married to a Tanite princess, but mode of his accession doubtful, ib, his throne-name, 419, receives Jeroboam as a refugee, 420; invades Judaea and takes Jerusalem, 421 his victorious progress through Israel into Arabia, 422 has reliefs and hall of, at Karnak, 423 cavalry force of, i. 449, 450
- II. (Sesek-khepr-ia-sotep-en Ammon) reign of, ii. 428
- III (User-ma-ia-sotep-en-ia, Si-Bast) ii. 429
- IV (Aakhepr-ia), ii. 429
- a supposed king of Assyria, ii. 414
- son of Osakon I., ii. 426
- the name, ii. 417 n
- Shields, Egyptian, i. 446 447
- Shilbe fish, i. 85
- Shittim wood (*see* Seyal)
- Shoes, use of, ii. 139
- Shicwmouse sacred to Maut, i. 338
- Shu, the sun god, described, i. 351 353, connection of with Tefnuf, 387
- Siupot (*see* Aupot)
- Si-Ammon (*see* Ilei hor)
- Si-Bast, title of Osakon II and Sheshonk III, ii. 418, 426, 429

SOK

- Sicilians, supposed Egyptian rendering of, ii. 511
- Sic-sac, a species of plover, i. 82
- Sidon, capture of, by Apries, ii. 487
- Sidi (*see* Nebk)
- Sieges, conduct of, i. 464-469 impossible durations assigned to, ii. 468 n
- Si-Hesi, title of Takelut I and II, 425, 429
- Silhepyrium, castor oil tree, i. 54 61
- Silsila, ancient river barrier at i. 22 temple of Onuris at, 377 inscriptions at, ii. 265, 295, 323, 391, 488
- Silver, objects manufactured in, i. 504
- Silver mines, Diodorus's statement concerning, i. 93
- Samia, a town of the Ruten, ii. 231 233
- Samitic peninsula, invaded by Seneferu, ii. 48 by Khufu 54 55, by Samia, 70 by Ranusei, 73, by Thothmes I, 217
- Singara, identification of, ii. 309 n.
- Sioiph, ii. 400
- Siphthah (Ra-khu-en-sotep-en-ia), ousts Seti II from the throne, ii. 338 marries a Ra neside princess, 339 troubled and inglorious reign of, ib his tomb in the Biban el Mohuk, ib; anarchy after his death 339 340, 363 364
- Sorius (Sothis), heliacal rising of, i. 303
- Sistrum, Egyptian, i. 523 borne in the hand of Namiut ii. 441
- S-kem-ka-ia, a son of Shafia, ii. 62, tomb of, 40
- Slaves, treatment of, i. 105, employment of, 104, ii. 314, 315; royal hunts for, 313
- Slings, Egyptian, i. 449
- Snakes, Egyptian, i. 87
- So of Scripture representative of Shabak, ii. 13
- Sobat, an affluent of the Nile, i. 12, 18
- Sokai, a form of Phthah, i. 335, ii. 38 117, distinct from Phthah, 84

561

811

om khup-ia setop-on-ia (see Osakon I)
 diers, inferior military qualities
 f, i 106, conditions of their
 service, 431. number and social
 rank of, 442-443; divided into
 Iermotybies and Cilisines, 443,
 not maintained permanently, 444,
 training of, 444 445, infantry,
 heavy- and light armed, 445 449
 cavalry, conflicts and oments con-
 cerning, 449 450; use of chariots
 by, 450 456; weapons of, 456
 461 tactics of, 461 462, standards
 employed by, 463 464; command
 and organisation of 464, siege
 operations of, 464-469; service of,
 in war-galleys, 470 472; treat-
 ment of prisoners by, 472 474, ii
 361, and of the slain, i 474-475,
 ii 361; encampment of, i 475
 477 disposition of, on the march,
 477, signals used by, 477 478
 triumphal return of, 478 479
 Deb, temple of Amenôphis III at,
 ii 263, 264
 Iomon marries a Tanite princess,
 ii 414
 Alpuga spider, i 91
 mauhi country identified with the
 land of Punt, ii 131 132
 moiset river, on Victoria Nile, i
 10
 nt, native name of the acantha
 tree, i 52
 is, identified with Seneferu, ii
 46
 top-en-ptah, a name of Rameses
 XIII, ii 401
 thiac cycle, i 303, festival, ii 139
 thus, connection of Isis with, i
 369
 ul, belief in the immortality of
 the, ii 327 entertained from the
 beginning, ii 39 40, its judgment
 in the next world, i 138 139,
 317, its temporary resurrection
 on earth, 319, its absorption into
 the divine essence, ib, the doc-
 trine dated from Shafia, ii 64
 par fish, i 84
 Spears, Egyptian, i 456-457
 Sphinx, great, i 269, temple of the,

i 60, cleared of sand by Tho-
 mas IV., 258
 Spoon, i 549
 Stain, Shepherd king, ii 108
 Stahl, Mme de, *quoted*, on the sculp-
 tures of animal figures, i 270 n
 Standards, military, i 463 464
 Stanley, De m, *quoted*, on the colossus
 of Rameses II, ii 344, on the
 twin colossi of Amenôphis III,
 345, on the dedication of Rameses
 II, 351 n
 Stars, tabulation of, by the Egyp-
 tians, i 301 302
 Statues, Osuide, i 244; single, 261
 263; grouped, 263, peculiar back
 support of, ib, wooden, 265 n.,
 grotesque, of the gods, 266, fabri-
 cation of, 515, erection of, 516;
 of primitive times, ii 37; of the
 pyramid period, 81 83 of other
 periods, 115, 137, 171, 347, 403,
 430, 484, 497, 504, 505 (see Colossi)
 Statuettes, i 268 270, 499
 Stone, conveyance of, down the
 Nile, i 92, 308, cutting of, 484-
 486, ii 44
 Strabo, *quoted*, on the Aisinote
 nome, i 32 n
 Succoth, a Semitic name, introduced
 into Egypt, ii 81
 Suez canal, i 28, gulf of, a natural
 protection to Egypt, 38
 Suicide, detestation of the Egyptians
 for, i 119 n, ii 111
 Sulphur mines, i 94
 Sun, connection of, with the religion,
 i 342, festivals in honour of the,
 420, exclusive worship of the,
 favoured by Amenôphis III, ii
 262 263, adopted by Amenôphis
 IV, 273; not embraced by the
 people, 348; hymns of its votaries,
 274
 Sun dials, when first used by the
 Egyptians, i 209
 Sun gods i 315, 342 364
 Sûs (mare), etymology of, i 74 n
 Sutech, representative of the sun in
 the Hittite religion, ii 193; temple
 to, 377 (see Set)
 Suten rekh, title of the grandsons of
 kings, ii 41

SUR

- Suten-sat, title of the children of kings, ii 417 n.
 Swallow, sea, i 81
 Swineherds, the Pariahs of Egypt, i 532 533
 Swords, Egyptian, i 456, 457
 Sycamore, the, i 51
 Syêno, battle of, ii 488 (see Assouan)
 Syenite, i 92
 Symphony, triple, i 523 524
 Syicellus, the 'Chronography' of, ii 8 his assertion of the synchronism of Joseph with Apepi, 202
 Syria, i 38 42, origin of Egypt from, 98, trade of, with Egypt 482, ii 168, commencement of Egypt's wars with, 212 213 campaigns of Thothmes III in, 233, 234, of Amenôphis II, 255 embassy from, to king Tutankh-amen, 277, conquest of, by the Hittites, 287 288, campaign of Psamatik I in, 467 468 subjugation of, by Neco, 475 478, reconquered by Nebuchadnezzar, 478-479
 Syrians, character of the, i 41
 TAA, family name of the Rasesenen dynasty, which see
 Taanach, a city of the Khaur, ii 231
 Taananta, a Hittite city, ii 232
 Tacitus on Egypt as a Roman province, quoted, i 153 n, on the military fame of Rameses II, ii 302 n
 Tachas, military, i 461 462; naval, 471 472
 Taché, a lioness headed goddess, described, i 387 388
 Tachekht or Tachaphthus, a usurper, i 420, 437 revolts against Piankhi, 439, besieged in Memphis, 442, sends in his submission, 443
 Tachekht, vassal of Esahaddo, ii 453
 Tahai (see Zahi)
 Tahak or Tahak, Egyptian name of Thakah, which see
 Tahenau, Libyan people, dwellers in

TAT

- caves, ii 293, routed by Seti I, 293, war of Rameses II. with the, 312 (see Ribu)
 Tahak, the name, ii 415 n
 Tah (Tu), wife of Amenôphis III ii 261; apparently associated with her husband, 269; filial love of Amenôphis IV for, 276
 — a lady concerned in the harem conspiracy against Rameses III, ii 380
 Takelot, the name ii 417 n
 Takelut I or Takerut, accession of, ii 425 supposed struggle of, with his brother Sheshonk, 426; reign of 426
 — II, ii 429
 Takhaut or Takhut, wife of Neco, ii 481
 Takhoba, country of, ii 105
 Takhua, slaughter of captive kings by Thothmes III at, ii 255
 Talmis, worship of Merula at, i 378
 Tamahu, land of, ii 224
 Tamboumes, Egyptian, i 521 522
 Ta-Mera (see Egypt)
 Tanasa Tanasa, mystic name of Ammon, i 326
 Tanaia, name of a people, ii 371, identification of, 513
 Ta-netet, the 'holy land,' ii 222
 Tanganyika, lake, i 8 n
 Tais, city of, ii 316 318; inscription of, fixing the date of Sates, 16, temple built by Rameses II at, 320, the favourite residence of the Hyksos kings, 194, 405; temples built by the Hyksos in, 194
 Tante kings of the twenty-first dynasty, ii 408 415
 Tachuis, feminine principle of evil, described, i 393 394
 Tapé, the original of the Greek 'Theba,' ii 126
 Tapui (Dabu), ii 309 n
 Tarkennas, Hittite cavalry commander, ii 308
 Tarkos, Greek rendering of Thakah, which see
 Tawaa, negritude, ii 375
 Tatum, territory of, ii 104
 Tetasu, name of Teta's pyramid, ii 101

TAL

- Tatius, on the Egyptian origin of the sign of the Balance, i 302
 Tat-ka ia, a pyramid king (with the family name of Assa), accession of, ii 76 visits the mines of Wady Magharah, ib, his title of Sa ia, 77, extant papyrus belonging to his time, 77, 91 93
 Tatkauia, throne name of Shabatok, ii 440
 Tattu (*see* This)
 Ta usei or Ta useit, wife of king Siphthah, ii 330
 Teachon, Greek rendering of Thakakah, which *see*
 Tegnaphthus (*see* Tafnekht)
 Tekau, name of a people, ii 371 identification of, with the Teucri, 515
 Tel Basta (*see* Bubastis)
 Tel el Amarna, the site of Khu aten, ii 275
 Tel el Yahoudeh, i 498
 Temples, primitive, i. 215, ii 38, 80, progressive changes in the construction of, i 216, that of Medinet-Abou, 217 220, the Memnonium or Rameseum, 220 224 the great temple of Karnak, 224 233 obelisks as ornaments of, 233 235 245 246, 'palace temples,' 236, ii 342 southern temple of Karnak, i 236 *namus* temples, ib, worship in the 311, 401 411, endowments of the, 436, ii 85, offerings to the, 430 437, 479, the earliest, ii 38, 80
 Temu, the name, i 347
 Temu, African tribe, ii 312
 Tenfu, African tribe, ii 312
 Tenu, same as Silsilis, which *see*
 Terkheta, wife of Amasis, ii 498
 Termes, plant so named, i 61
 Terra-cotta, pottery in, i 498
 Teshe crown, i 341
 Tet, same as Thoth, which *see*
 Teta, a supposed early king, ii 27, 301, signification of the name, 30, tradition concerning, 31, priests of, 41 n
 Teta an, a Nubian chief, his contests with king Aahmes, ii 208

THO

- Thethmosis, Josephus's rendering of the name Aahmes, ii 209 n
 Teti, king, ii 29
 Tetrads of gods i 385
 Tetradon, a poisonous fish, i 35
 Teucri, identified with the Tekau, ii 515
 Thamphthis, king, probably fictitious, ii 60
 Thebaid, the, i 25 n, natural fortunes of, ii 125
 Thebes, site of ii 124 126, native name and early condition of, 126, independent monarchy established at, 127, special deities of, i. 322, 337, supposed eight great gods at, 402, high priest of, 434, the office made hereditary, ii 395, native dynasty at, under the Hyksos, 195 n., 199, depressed state of, at the close of the Ethiopian rule, 458, public library established at, 360, Memnonium or Rameseum at, i 220 223, other temples, 370, ii 144, 149, 216, 257, 280, 318, 321, 337, 377, 390, 401
 Theriotophi, Egyptian priests, i 435
 Thes bast-per, daughter of Osarkôn II, ii 428
 Theseus, the myth of, i 27 n.
 This (Tattu), antiquity of, ii 41 n worship of Osiris at, i 360, temple to Osiris at, ii 377
 Thmuis (Leontopolis), temple of Amasis at, ii 496
 Thoth, the month, i 303
 Thoth, or Tet, a moon-god, described, i 371 374 ascription of the 'Ritual of the Dead' to, 136, earliest monumental evidence of, ii 30, 38, office of, in Amenti, i 318, animals sacred to, 81, 411; tablet of, relating to the mafkamnes, ii 76
 Thoth em-hebi, a scribe, ii 397
 Thoth hotep, a functionary of the pyramid period, ii 38
 Thothmes I (Aa-khepi-ka ia), importance of his reign, ii 219 219, Nubian conquests of, 211 215; commences a war of aggression in Syria and Mesopotamia, 215, com-

1110

memorative tablet of, 216, enlarges and embellishes the temple of Ammon at Thebes, 216-217
 Thothmes II (Thothmes neter sennu, Ankheper-en-iti) his campaign against the Arabs, n. 217, subsequent inactive life of, 218 builds, with his sister Hatshepsut, the temple at Medinet-Ahmed, ib., extract from a tablet of, n. 142-143
 — III (Thothmes neter kheperu Men-kheper-iti), hush treatment of, by his sister Hatshepsut during his minority n. 220 admitted to a share of the throne, 22, erases his sister's name from her monuments, 225, recession of to the sole monarchy, ib., called the Egyptian Alexander, 226 invades Asia, 227 vanquishes the Kheta and the Kattiya Magidde, 228, campaigns of, in Judaea, Syria, and Mesopotamia, 229 against the Syrian coast cities, 233, against Hama, 233-234, his eighth campaign, in Mesopotamia, 234-235, his elephant hunt at Ni, 236, object and limit of his conquests, ib., his booty and collection of natural objects, 237, foreign plants and animals portrayed on his monuments 238 reconstructs Usertasen's cell in the temple of Karnak n. 240, his ancestral tablet and pillared hall, 241 n., 246, obelisks and their erections, 240-242 captives forced to labour upon his works, 242-243, condition of the Israelites under his rule, 244-247; his southern wars, 247 his supposed maritime empire, 247-249, hymn of victory on which this supposition is founded, 250-251; summary of his character, 251-253 his personal appearance 253-254
 IV (Men-kheperu n., Sakhmet), visit of Hatshepsut, n. 258; removes the sand from the phinx, ib., his memorial tablet and temple to the Sphinx, ib., expeditions against the Hittites and Uritas, 259 his hunt-

1111

ing and athletic tastes, 259-260
 Thowaset, used in fowling, 505-506, n. 91
 T, royal preceptor, n. 529, tomb of, 529, n. 727, 74, 75, 81
 Tjath-Pleser, n. 400 the name 417 n
 Tj, wife of Amenophis III (Sakhmet) wife of king Aa, n. 277 n
 Tj-m-ni-losi, wife of king Setnekh, n. 307 n
 Tiles glazed, manufacture of, n. 497-498
 Tin, how obtained by the Egyptians n. 4
 Tj-tak, king, length and date of his reign, n. 12, Egyptian and Greek forms of his name, 450, his connection with Hezekiah, 450 his monuments, 451 Greek titles of his military prowess, ib., defeated and driven into Egypt by Psamtik, 452 recovery of his Egyptian sovereignty, 453 defeated anew by Assurbanipal, ib., retakes Thebes, but retires before Neco, 454, coin added by, to the temple of Medinet-Ahmed, 458 n
 Tombos, memorial of Thothmes II, n. 25
 Tombs, a list of the Egyptian, n. 182 most ancient example of, 83 pyramidal, 181-21 rock-cut, 212-214, 217, 255; successive additions, suggested the idea of the pyramids, 183-189, 35-36, earliest, n. 181-189, 31-36, basic beliefs of the, n. 28-285 burglary of, n. 302 (Pyramids)
 Tota, tablets of Amenophis III, n. 201, of Neco, 481
 Toserthus, king, traditions related of, n. 31
 Tj-tan, temple to, at Karnak, 257
 Trade flourishing condition of, under the Pharaohs, n. 82-483, devoted most of, by the kings of the eleventh and twelfth dynasties,

IRA

- 167; encouraged with Greece by Psamatik I, 466 467, activity of, under Amasis, 492
 Irides, Tuafisakhiats, list of, n 117
 Irides, n 47 53, transplanted by Hatasu, n 223, Egypt planted with, by Rameses III, 377
 Triads of gods, i 320 321
 Trimity, doctrine of the, its imaginary connection with the divine triads of the Egyptians, i 320 321
 Trinemes, introduction of, into the Egyptian navy, n 472
 Triumphs, celebration of, i 478 479, n 282
 Troglodytes (*see* Tahennu)
 Troy, war of, n 415
 Trumpeters, Egyptian, i 477
 Truth, hall of, judgment of the soul in, i 317 319
 Tser ka ia (*see* Amenhotep I)
 Tua, or Tuaa, wife of Seti I, n. 306
 Tuaa, mother of queen Taia, n 261
 Tuamutef, one of the four genu of Amenti, i 397
 Tuafisakhiat, an Egyptian poet, his 'Praise of Learning,' n 117; *quoted*, on the oppression of the peasants, i 480 481, on the hardships of the weaving trade 488, on the armourer's business, 507, on the builder, 529
 Tuhl an acacia so called, i 52
 Tulusa (Tusha) n 330, 371, proposed identification of, 514
 Tum, the setting sun, i. 144 n, described, 347 350, figure of, in the British Museum, 350, his temple at Heliopolis, 350 hymn to, 350 351, Mnemis, incarnation of, 415
 Tumblers, i 551, n 170
 Tunep, city of, n 233, captured by Rameses II, 309
 Tushad languages, connection of, with Egyptian, i 115
 Tum, Egyptian altar at, i 119 n, papyrus of (*see* Papyrus)
 Turquoise, mines of, n 377
 Tusha (*see* Tulusa)
 Turtle, Nilotic, i 85
 Tuscans, supposed Egyptian rendering of, n 514

USE

- Tutankh amon, king, n 277, 278
 Tyre, trade of, with Egypt, i 482; siege of, n 480, fall of, 480
 UA AP RA, throne name of Psamatik II, n 482, birth-name of Apries, 481
 Uab isu, name of a pyramid, n 69
 Ua-en ia, a throne-name of Amenophis IV, n 272
 Uak, place mentioned in Hannu's narrative, n 193
 Uaphis (*see* Apries)
 Uas, divine emblem, i 324
 Uashesh, people, n 371 proposed identification of, 515
 Uatu, goddess of Lower Egypt, i. 399
 Ua nat, territory of, n 104, docks constructed there by Pepi, 111, war of Amenemhat with the, n. 143, 150
 Uer Khun, an official of king Neferkara, n 73
 Ueru, state officials, n. 361, 368
 Uja-hoi resenet, inscription of, 407
 Una an official of king Teta, n. 101, continued in office by Pepi, 103, narrates Pepi's campaign against the Herusha, 101 105, appointments held by, 109 made governor of Upper Egypt by king Meremna, 110, charged with the construction of docks in the country of the Ua-nat, 111
 Unas, king (the Onnos of Manetho), accession of n 77, pyramid of, 78, death of, i marked division in Egyptian history, 77 97
 Un-y-Amé, an affluent of the Nile, i 11
 Uot-khepi-ia (*see* Kames)
 Uidamané, Assyrian rendering of Rut-ammon, which *see*
 Uihet the god, i 400
 Ui-heku, a title of the goddess Bast, i 380
 Ui-maa neshu ia, wife of Rameses II, n 311 312, 324
 Usaphredus (*see* Heseb)
 Userchoros (*see* Uskat)
 Userkat, king, n 100

USE

- User-ma-ra-sotep-en-ammon, throne name of king Pamti, ii 429
 User-ma-ra-sotep-en-ra, throne name of Sheshonk III, ii 429
 Uskaf, or Usukaf, king (probably the Uscherees of Manetho), accession of, ii 67, pyramid and titles of, 69
 Usutasen I (Khepi-ka-ra), early military prowess of, ii 143, obelisks of, at Heliopolis, 147 148, in the Fayoum, 149, his additions to the temple of Ammon at Thebes, and other works, 149 150 expedition of, against the Cushites, 151 152, associates his son, Amenemhat II, 153
 — II (Sha-khepi-ra), prosperous reign of, ii 154
 — III. (Sha-kaui-ra), accession of, ii. 155 his distinguished reputation, 155, subjugates the Ethiopians, 155 156, 158, builds forts, Koommeh and Senneh, 156, his inscriptions and memorials, 157, the original of Sesostrius, 157, 158
 Uta-oi-suten-net, statue of, ii 407

VASES, earthenware, i 495 497
 gold, 502 503, for the viscera of the dead, 397, 496

Veterinary art, i 173

Victoria Nile, i 10

Nyanza, i 9; issue of the Nile from, 11

Vine, cultivation of the, i 168-171

Vostui (or Middle Egypt), i 25 n

Vulpanser, the, i 81

Vultures, Egyptian, i 79, belief in the unisexual nature of, 119 the type of maternity, 398

Vyso, Col., *quoted* on the masonry of the Great Pyramid, i 208 n on the impression produced by the pyramids, 209 n.

WADY EL ARISII, the 'river of Egypt' of the Hebrews, i 2

Wady Halia, memorial of Usutasen I at, ii 160

Wady Magharah, names of, i 93, n.

XOI

48, 54, 76, 98; tablets and inscriptions at, 48, 54, 73, 103, 108, 112, 145, 160

Wagons unknown to the Egyptians, i 178

Wall, the Great, of Rameses II, ii 315

War, mode of conducting, i 461 462, 464-478 (*see* Soldiers)

War-galleys, Egyptian, i 470 471

Warriors, secession of the, ii 464

Weaver, condition of the, i 488

Weaving, i 486-488

Wheat, Egyptian, varieties of, i 59, mode of cultivating, 162

White Nile, i 14, 18, 23

Wiedemann, on the secession of the warriors' of Psamatik I, ii 464 n.; on the duration of the siege of Ashdod, 468 n., on the relations of Psamatik I with his daughter Nitocris, 471, *quote*, on supposed Phoenician conquests of Amasis, 493

Willkinson, Sir Gardner, on changes in the Delta, i 30, *quoted*, on the uses of the date palm, 50 n.; on painted sculptures, 248 n.; on the chase of the crocodile, 546 n., *noticed*, on the Ancient Egyptians, 428 429, on the Turin Papyrus, 509 n

Wine, manufacture of, i 170, ii. 88, use of at table, i 550, ii 94

Witchcraft, belief in, ii 550

Wolves, i 67

Women, personal appearance of, i 99 100, immorality of, 104, ii 362, not admitted to the priesthood, i 441, dignified social condition of, 552; succession of, to the throne, ii. 81, 112, punishment of, 383, morality of, i 525; dress of 537 538, daily life of, 538, ii 43, 85-86

XENOPHON, 'Cyropædia' of its unhistoric character, ii 494 n.

Xerxes, Egyptian contingent of, serve as sailors, i 450 n.

Xois the modern Khasit, ii. 179; dynasty of, 175, 182

- YAM
YAM SUPIL, signification of, ii
• 334 n
Yé, the, an affluent of the Nile, i 18
Yem, Egyptia, i 302 303
Yuten-Malk, interpretation of, ii
423 n
- ZABARA, mount, i 34
Zah, country of the, ii 231,
233
Zahu (see Garu)
Zam, territory of, ii. 104
Ziouy or Zouyieh (Iseum?), i 16
- Zea, probably the doora-plant, i 66,
160
Zedekiah thought to have furnished
auxiliaries to Psamatik II, ii 183, ..
concludes an alliance with Apries,
485
Zerach or Zerach, not to be identified
with Osakon I, ii 424 425, may
be connected with Osakon II,
426
Zet (Seti?), king, ii 429 n.
Zodiacs, the, of Denderah and Esneh,
i 302 n

THE END.